THE NĀTYASĀSTRA

ASCRIBED TO

BHARATA-MUNI

TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH BY
MANOMOHAN GHOSH, M. A., Ph. D.

WORK NUMBER 272

ISSUE NUMBER 1559

CALCUTTA:
ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL
1. Park Street.
1951
BIBLIOTHECA INDICA

Work No. 272

THE NĀTYAŚĀSTRA

A TREATISE ON HINDU DRAMATURGY AND HISTRIONICS
THE NĀTYAŚĀSTRA

A Treatise on Hindu Dramaturgy and Histrionic

Ascribed to

B H A R A T A - M U N I

Vol. I. (Chapters I-XXVII)

Completely translated for the first time from the original Sanskrit
with an Introduction and Various Notes

by

M A N O M O H A N G H O S H M.A., PH. D. (C.A.)

CALCUTTA

THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY OF BENGAL

23 JEF 1959
SL no 19494
33000
Dedicated
to
the memory of
those great scholars of India and the West
who by their indefatigable study and ingenious interpretation of her Religion, Philosophy, Literature and Arts, have demonstrated the high value of India's culture to the World at large and have helped her towards a reawakening and political liberation,
and
who by their discovery of the Universal aspect of this culture have made patent India's spiritual kinship with the other ancient nations of the World and have paved the way for an ultimate triumph of Internationalism.
The preparation of an annotated English translation of the Nāṭyaśāstra entrusted to me as early as 1944, by the Royal Asiatic Society, has been delayed for various reasons which need not be recounted here in detail. But mention must be made of one important factor of this delay, viz., the inherent difficulty of this very old text which is not yet available in a complete critical edition. From my first serious acquaintance with it in 1925 in connection with the editing of the Abhinayadarpana (Calcutta, 1934) this work has always engaged my attention in the intervals of other duties. But it was only a few years ago, that I came to believe that the entire work could be translated into English. It was, however, only after making some actual progress in translation that I realised the difficulty of the task and understood to some extent at least why no complete translation of this very important text had so far not been made.

However, I considered it a duty to make strenuous efforts and proceeded patiently with the work and finished at last translating the major portion of the Nāṭyaśāstra. I am now genuinely happy to place it before the scholarly public, not because it could be done in an ideal fashion, but because it could be finished at all.

In handling a difficult old text like this it is natural that one has to offer conclusions and interpretations, here and there, which due to the absence of better materials cannot be placed on surer grounds. But whatever tentative assertions I have made, have been made after the most careful consideration with the expectation that they may prove helpful to others working in this field, and it may be hoped that their number has not been too many, and in a few cases where I myself had any doubt about the interpretation offered, the same has been expressly mentioned in the footnote.

The chapters on music covering a little more than one fourth of the Nāṭyaśāstra still remain to be done. These when completed will be published in the second volume. As the work on it, is progressing very slowly and it cannot be said definitely when it will be finished, it was thought advisable to publish the portion of the translation already prepared. Though the musical terms occurring in the present volume remain undefined, the absence of chapters on music where they have been discussed, will not, it is hoped, seriously interfere with the understanding of the dramaturgy and histrionics treated here.

For information regarding the plan and scope of the present work, the reader is referred to the Introduction, section I.

For the purpose of this volume, works of various scholars have been helpful to the translator and they have been mentioned
in proper places. But among them all, the American Sanskritist Dr. G. C. O. Haas deserves to be specially mentioned; for his plan of the translation of the Daśarūpa, has been adopted in a slightly modified manner in the present work.

I am indebted to Dr. S. K. De, due to whose kindness I could utilise the unpublished portion of the Abinavabhārati. It is also a great pleasure to acknowledge the uniform courtesy of different officers of the Society from 1947-1950, especially Dr. K.N. Bagchi, and Dr. Niharanjan Ray, the General Secretaries and Mr. S. K. Saraswati, the Librarian and Mr. Rakhahari Chatterji, the Superintendent of the office, whose patience I had to tax on different occasions in course of the publication.

I am grateful to my father-in-law Sri Kali Charan Mitra who read the original draft of the first fourteen chapters of the present work and made suggestions regarding the language, and to my esteemed friend Dr. S. N. Ray, M.A.,Ph.D. (London) formerly Head of the Department of English in the University of Dacca, for reading the proof of the first twelve formes and also for going through in Mss. the Introduction and for making welcome suggestions.

I wish to mention here very gratefully the debt I owe to Dr. Kalidas Nag in connexion with the preparation and the publication of this work. But for his suggestion to undertake this work it might not have reached at all the stage of publication.

Last but not the least it becomes my most cheerful duty to express my gratitude to Prof. Suniti Kumar Chatterji, who has also helped me otherwise in connexion with this work. This help and his constant encouragement have rendered this work less arduous than it might otherwise have been.

I should here also apologise to the readers for the many misprints that have crept into the volume. They are requested to make kindly, the necessary corrections pointed out in the corrigenda.

25th November, 1950

The Translator
ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

a. ... The first hemistich of a verse.
Abhi. ... Bhasa's Abhishekanataka.
AD. ... Nandikesvara's Abhiniyadarpana.
A. dy. ... Arthadyotanika, Raghabhattachita's commentary on the Sakuntala.
Ag., Abhinava ... Abhinavagupta or his commentary of the Nityasatra.
AMg. ... Ardhamagadhi.
Avi. ... Bhasa's Avimarka.
As. ... Kautilya's Arthasatra (ed. Jolly).
As. notes. ... Kautilya's Arthasatra (ed. Jolly). Vol. II.
B. ... Baroda ed. of the Nityasatra.
b. ... The second hemistich of a verse.
Bala. ... Bhasa's Balacarita.
Bhamaha. ... Bhamaha's Kavyalankara.
BhNC. ... Bhasa-nataka-cakra ed. by C. R. Devadhar
BhP. ... Sarasatanaya's Bhavaprakasana.
C. ... Chowkhamaba (Benares) edition of the Nityasatra.
c. ... The third hemistich in a stanza.
baru. ... Bhasa's Carudatta.
CSS. ... Chanda-sara-samgraha.
Danandin. ... Danandin's Kavyadarsha.
def. ... Definition or definitions.
De's Ms. ... The Ms. of the Abhinavagupta's commentary (Abhinavabhara) belonging to Dr. S. K. De.
DR. ... Dhanaujaya's Dasarupa.
Dutagha. ... Bhasa's Dutaghatotkaca.
Dutava. ... Bhasa's Dutavakya.
Ex. ... Example or examples.
Foundation. ... Nobel's Foundation of Indian Poetry.
G. ... J. Grosset's edition of the Nityasatra.
GOS. ... Gaikwar's Oriental Series.
Haas. ... Haas's translation of the Dasarupa.
I. Ant. ... Indian Antiquary.
IHQ. ... Indian Historical Quarterly.
ID., Ind. Dr. ... Sten Konow's Indische Drama.
Itihasa. ... Haldar's Vyakarana-darsaner Itihasa.
JDL. ... Journal of the Dept. of Letters, Calcutta University.
JK. ... Vidyalankara's Jivanikosa.
... Kāvyamāla ed. of the Nātyaśāstra.
K. ... Hemacandra’s Kāvyānusāsana.
KA. ... Bhāsa’s Karṇabhāra.
Karṇa. ... Ramakrishna Kavi or his commentary to
Kavi. the ch. XVII. of the NŚ.
KS. ... Vatsyayana’s Kāmasūtra.
Kumāra. ... Kalidāsa’s Kumārasambhava.
Kuṭṭa. ... Dāmodaragupta’s Kuṭṭanimata.
Lévi, ... Sylvain Lévi’s Le Théâtre indien.
Madhyama. ... Bhāsa’s Madhyamavyāyoga.
Mālati. ... Bhavabhūti’s Mālatimādhava.
Mālavī. ... Kalidāsa’s Mālvikāgnimitra.
MG. ... Coomaraswamy’s Mirror of Gestures.
Mrčeh. ... Śūdraka’s Mrčchakatika.
Mudrā. ... Viśakhadatta’s Mudrārakṣasa.
Nāṭakaalakshaṇa. ... Sāgaranandin’s Nāṭakaalakṣaṇaratnakośa.
NL. }
ND. ... Rāmacandra and Guṇacandra’s Nāṭyadarpaṇa.
NIA. ... New Indo-Aryan.
Nitti-Doloi. ... Nitti-Doloi’s Le Grammairiens Prakrit.
NŚ. ... Nātyaśāstra.
P. ... Purāṇa.
Pañc. ... Pañcarātra
Pañi. ... Pāṇini.
Piṅgala. ... Piṅgala’s Chandahsūtra.
Pischel. ... Pischel’s Grammatik der Prakrit-sprachen.
Pr. P. ... Prākt-Paṅgala.
Pr. ... Prātiśākhya.
Prak. ... Prakarana.
Pratimā. ... Bhāsa’s Pratimā-nātaka.
Pratijñā. ... Bhāsa’s Pratijñā-yaugandharāyana.
PŚ. ... Paṇiniya-Sīkṣa.
PSM. ... Pā.in-sadda-maṇḍapaṇa.
R. Bām. ... Rāmāyana.
Ratnā. ... Harṣa’s Ratnavali.
RŚ. ... Kalidāsa’s Rūtasambhara.
Śāk. ... Kalidāsa’s Abhijñānaśakuntala.
SD. ... Sāhityadarpaṇa.
SR. ... Śaragadeva’s Samgītaratnākara.
Śr. Pr. ... Bhoja’s Śṛngāraprakāśa.
Śvapna. ... Bhāsa’s Śvapvāsvadattā.
tr., trans. ... translation or translated.
Uttara. ... Uttararāmaçarīta of Bhavabhūti.
Úru. ... Bhāsa's Úrubhaṅga.
Vikram. ... Kālidāsa's Vikramorvasīya.
Winternitz. ... Winternitz's History of Indian Literature.

N.B. (a) Numerals preceding the paragraphs of the translation relate to the serial number of couplets in the original. When the same number is repeated in two consecutive paragraphs, in the first place it will indicate the first hemistich and in the second the second hemistich. Roman figures relate to the chapter of the NS.

(b) For the manner of referring to dramas, see under the Bhāsanaṭaka-cakra in the Bibliography (Original Texts).

(c) In the footnotes to the Introduction long vowels, cerebral sounds and the labial vibrant have been indicated by italics.
BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. General Works

Coomaraswamy, A. K. ... The Mirror of Gestures, New York, 1936.
Ghosh, Chandramohan ... Chandrasārasamgraha (CSS), Calcutta.
Haldar, Gurupada ... Vāyākaraṇa-dārsaner Itihāsa (Itihāsa). (An historical account of the grammatical speculation of the Hindus in Bengali), Calcutta 1350 B.E.
Jolly, J. ... Hindu Law and Customs, Calcutta, 1929.
Keith, A. B. ... Sanskrit Drama, Oxford, 1924.
Konow, Sten. ... Das Indische Drama, Berlin, 1929.
Lévi, Sylvain ... Le Théâtre indien, Paris, 1890.
Mankad, D. R. ... Types of Sanskrit Drama, Karachi, 1936.
J. Nobel. ... Foundation of Indian Poetry, Calcutta, 1925.
Pischel, R. ... Grammatik der Prakrit-sprachen, Strassburg, 1900.
Pussaker ... Bhāsa, Lahore, 1940.
Raghavan, V. ... Śrīgāra-Prakāśa, Bombay, 1940.
Seth, H. D. ... Pāśasaddamahapavavo, Calcutta, 1928.
Sircar, D.C. ... Select Inscriptions bearing on Indian History and Civilization, Calcutta, 1942.
Vidyālāmkür, S. B. ... Jivanikṣoṣa (A dictionary of the Puranic mythology in Bengali), Calcutta.

2. Original Texts

Abhinavabhāratī (Ag.) ... On chapters I-XX ed. Ramakrishna Kavi in B.
On chapters XXI-XXVII and XXIX-XXXI the Ms. of Dr. S. K. De. Reference to the Ms. are to its pages. Printed portion of the commentary when referred to, relates to the relevant text in B.
Abhiṣekanāṭaka (Abhi.). Ed. Devādhār in BhNC.
Arthadyotanīkā. Nirmayasagara ed.
Avimāraka, Ed. Devadhār in BhNC.
Uttararāmacarita of Bhavabhūti (Uttara.). Ed. Ratnam Aiyar, Bombay 1930. 
Urubhaṅga (Uru.). Ed. Devadhar in BhNC.
Karnaḥbāra (Karna). Ed. Devadhar in BhNC.
Kuṭṭānīmata, Ed. in Bibliotheca Indica, Calcutta.
Cārudatta of Bhāsa (Cāru). Ed. Devadhar in BhNC.
Daśārūpā (DR). Ed. K. P. Parab, Bombay, 1897. Our references are to this edition. The ed. of. G.C.O. Haas with an English translation has also been referred to. F. Hall’s ed. (Bibliotheca Indica) has also been used.
Dūtaghaṭotpaka of Bhāsa (Dūtagha.) Ed. Devadhar in BhNC.
Dūtavākya of Bhāsa (Dūtavā). Ed. Devadhar in BhNC
Madhyamavyāyoga of Bhāsa (Madhyama). Ed. Devadhar in BhNC.
Mālavikāgnimitra of Kālidāsa (Mālavi.). Ed. S. P. Pandit. 
(Bombay Sanskrit Series), Bombay, 1889.
Meghadūta of Kālidāsa (Megha). Ed. S. Vidyaratna, Calcutta, 1821, Śaka.
Nāṭakalakṣaṇa-ratnakosa of Sāgaranandin (Nāṭakalakṣaṇa, NL). M. Dillou, London, 1939. References are by lines unless otherwise mentioned.
Nāṭyadarpana of Rāmacandra and Guṇacandra (ND.). Ed. in GOS.
Nāṭyaśāstra of Bharata (NŚ). Chapters I-XIV. Ed. J. Grosset. Paris, Lyons, 1899; Chapters I-XX. ed. R. Kavi, Baroda, 1926, 1936. Numbering of couplets in this work is often wrong. In case of chapters I-III this has been corrected, but in case of other chapters wrong numbers have been retained and in some cases where confusion may occur, pages have also been referred to. The edition of Sivadatta and Parab (Bombay, 1894), and the Chowkhamba edition (Benares, 1926) have also been used.
Pañcarātra of Bhāsa (Pañca). Ed. Devadhar in BhNC.
Pañcatantra of Viṣṇusarman, Chowkamba, Benares, 1880.
Pratijñāya-yaugandharāyaṇa of Bhāsa (Pratijñā.), Ed. Devadhar-in BhNC.
Pratimānātaka of Bhāsa (Pratimā.) Ed. Devadhar in BhNC.
Bālacarita of Bhāsa (Bāla.), Ed. Devadhar in BhNC.
Bhāvaprakāśana of Śrādātanaya (Bh.P.) Ed. in GOS.
Bhāsa-nāṭaka-cakra (Plays ascribed to Bhāsa), critically edited by C. R. Devadhar, Poona, 1937. References are to acts, verse passages and lines after them, e.g. Svapna, I. 12, 23 indicates the twenty-third line after the twelfth verse in act I of Svapnavaśavadattā
Vikramorvaśiya of Kālidāsa (Vikram). Ed. S. P. Pandit. (Bombay Sanskrit Series), Bombay, 1898.
Śakuntalā of Kālidāsa (Śak.) Ed. Isvara chandra Vidyasagar, Calcutta.
Svapnavaśavadattā of Bhāsa (Svapna.), Ed. Devadhar in BhNC.
Harṣacarita of Bāṇabhaṭṭa, Ed. P. V. Kane, Bombay, 1912.
CONTENTS

PREFACE ... VII
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS ... IX
BIBLIOGRAPHY ... XII
INTRODUCTION ... XXXVII


III. Literary Structure of the Ancient Indian Drama, p. XLIX; The Ten Types of Play. The Nāṭaka, p. XLIX; (a) Subject-matter and the division into Acts, p. XLIX; (b) Explanatory Devices. p. LI; (i) Introductory Scene, p. LI; (ii) The Intimating Speech, p. LI; (iii) The Supporting Scene, p. LI; (iv) The Transitional Scene, p. LI; (v) The Anticipatory Scene, p. LI; (c) The Plot and its Development, p. LI; The Prakaraṇa, LII; The Samavakāra, p. LII; The Īhāṃga, p. LII; The Dīma, p. LIII; The Vyāyoga, p. LIII; The Utpāṭikāṇka, p. LIII; The Prahasana, p. LIII; The Bhāpa, p. LIV; The Vithi, p. LV. 2. Diction of Play, p. LV; (a) The Use of Metre, p. LV; (b) Euphony, p. LV; (c) Suggestive or Significant Names, p. LV; (d) Variety of Languages Dialects, p. LV.

IV. The Ancient Indian Drama in Practice, p. LV; 1. Occasions for Dramatic Performance, p. LV; 2. The Time for Performance, p. LXI; 3. The Playhouse, p. LVII; 4. The Representation, p. LVIII. (a) The Physical Representation, p. LVIII; (b) The Vocal Representation, p. LXI; (c) The Costumes and Make-up, p. LXI; (d) The Temperament, p. LXIII.

V. Literature on the Ancient Indian Drama, p. LXIV; 1. The Early Writers: Śilālin and Kṛśāśva, p.LXIV; 2. The Socalled Sons of Bharata (a) Kohaïa, (b) Dattila, (c) Šātakarṇi (Šātakarna, Šālikarna), (d) Asmakutṭa and Nakhabutṭa, (e) Bādarāyaṇa (Bādari), p. LXIV; 3. Sāv-
THE NĀTYAŚĀTRA (Translation)
CHAPTER ONE
THE ORIGIN OF DRAMA, Pages 1-17


CHAPTER TWO
DESCRIPTION OF THE PLAYHOUSE, Pages 18-32


CHAPTER THREE
PUṬĀ TO THE GODS OF THE STAGE, Pages 33-44

the stage, p. 48; 98-101. Evils following non-consecration of the stage, pp. 43-44.

CHAPTER FOUR
THE CLASS DANCE, Pages 45-75


CHAPTER FIVE
THE PRELIMINARIES OF A PLAY, Pages 76-99


CHAPTER SIX

THE SENTIMENTS, pages 100-117


CHAPTER SEVEN

THE EMOTIONAL AND OTHER STATES, Pages 118-147.


Chapter Eight

The Gestures of Minor Limbs, Pages 148-167


Chapter Nine

The Gestures of Hands, Pages 170-190


CHAPTER TEN
THE GESTURES OF OTHER LIMBS, Pages 191-196.

CHAPTER ELEVEN
THE CĀRĪ MOVEMENTS, Pages 197-206

CHAPTER TWELVE
THE MĀNDALA MOVEMENTS, Pages 207-212
1-5. The Māndalas, p. 207 ; 6-41. The aerial Māndalas, pp. 207-210 ; 42-68. The earthly Māndalas, pp. 210-212.

CHAPTER THIRTEEN
THE DIFFERENT GAITS, Pages 213-237

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

THE ZONES AND THE LOCAL USAGES, Pages 238-247


CHAPTER FIFTEEN

RULES OF PROSODY, Pages 248-261


CHAPTER SIXTEEN

METRICAL PATTERNS, Pages 262-292

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

DICTION OF A PLAY, Pages 299-322.


CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

RULES ON THE USE OF LANGUAGES, Pages 323-334


CHAPTER NINETEEN

MODES OF ADDRESS AND INTONATION, Pages 335-354


**Chapter Twenty**

**Ten Kinds of Play, Pages 355-379**

The second and the third acts of the Sama-

Chapter Twentyone

The Limbs of the Junctures, Pages 380-400


**Chapter Twentynwo**

**THESTYLES, Pages 401-409**


CHAPTER TWENTYTHREE

THE COSTUMES AND MAKE-UP, Pages 410-439


CHAPTER TWENTYFOUR

THE BASIC REPRESENTATION, Pages 440-482


CHAPTER TWENTYFIVE

DEALINGS WITH COURTEZANS, Pages 483-492.


CHAPTER TWENTYSIX

SPECIAL REPRESENTATION, Pages 493-510.


CHAPTER TWENTY SEVEN
SUCCESS IN DRAMATIC PRODUCTION, Pages 511-526

1. The Success in dramatic production, p. 511; 2. The two kinds

Chapter ThirtyFour

TYPE OF CHARACTERS, Pages 527-537


Chapter Thirtyfive

Distribution of Roles, Pages 538-532

CHAPTER THIRTY-SIX

THE DESCENT OF DRAMA ON THE EARTH, Pages 558-661


ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS

... p. 562
INTRODUCTION

I. The Present Work

1. General History of the Study

Since the West came to know of the Sanskrit literature through William Jones’s translation of the Šakuntalā, the nature and origin of the ancient Indian theatre have always interested scholars, especially the Sanskritists, all over the world. H. H. Wilson who published in 1826 the first volume of his famous work on the subject deplored that the Nāṭya-śāstra, mentioned and quoted in several commentaries and other works, had been lost for ever. F. Hall who published in 1865 his edition of the Daśarūpa, a medieval work on the Hindu dramaturgy, did not see any Ms. of the Nāṭyaśāstra till his work had greatly advanced. And for the time being he printed the relevant chapters of the Nāṭyaśāstra as an appendix to his Daśarūpa. Later on he undertook to critically edit the Ms. of the Nāṭyaśāstra he acquired; but this venture was subsequently given up, due perhaps to an insufficiency of materials which consisted of one unique Ms. full of numerous lacunae. But even if the work could not be brought out by Hall, his very important discovery soon helped others to trace similar Ms. elsewhere. And in 1874 Heymann, a German scholar, published on the basis of Mss. discovered up till that date a valuable article on the contents of the Nāṭyaśāstra. This seems to have been instrumental in attracting competent scholars to the study of this very important text. The French Sanskritist P. Regnaud published in 1880 chapter XVII and in 1884 chapter XV (in part) and the chapter XVI of the Nāṭyaśāstra. This was soon followed by his publication of chapters VI and VII in 1884. And J. Grosset another French scholar and a pupil of Regnaud, published later on (in 1888) chapter XXVIII of the Nāṭyaśāstra which treated of the general theory of Hindu music.

1 Šākontālā, or the Fatal Ring. Translated from the original Sanskrit and Pracrita, Calcutta 1789.
2 H. H. Wilson, Select Specimens of the Theatre of the Hindus (3 vols.), Calcutta, 1826-1827.
4 The Dasarupa by Dhananjaya (Bibliotheca Indica), Calcutta, 1861-1865.
5 Grosset, Introduction, v. iii.
6 See note 5 above.
10 Rhetorique sanscrita, Paris, 1814.
11 Contribution à l’étude de la musique hindou, Lyons, 1888.
But the different chapters of the work and studies on them, which were published up till 1888, though very helpful for the understanding of some aspects of the ancient Indian dramatic works, cannot be said to have thrown any considerable light on the exact nature of the ancient Hindu plays, especially the manner of their production on the stage. Sylvain Lévi's Théâtre indien (1890) in which he discussed comprehensively the contribution of his predecessors in the field and added to it greatly by his own researches, made unfortunately no great progress in this specific direction. Though he had access to three more or less complete Ms. of the Nāṭyaśāstra, Lévi does not seem to have made any serious attempt to make a close study of the entire work except its chapters XVII-XX (XVIII-XXII of our text) and XXXIV. The reason for his relative indifference to the contents of the major portion (nearly nine-tenths) of the work, seem to be principally the corrupt nature of his Ms. materials. Like his predecessors, Lévi paid greater attention to the study of the literary form of the ancient Hindu plays with the difference that he utilised for the first time the relevant chapters of the Nāṭyaśāstra, to check the accuracy of the statements of later writers on the subject like Dhanañjaya and Viśvanātha who professed their dependence on the Nāṭyaśāstra. But whatever may be the drawback of Lévi's magnificent work, it did an excellent service to the history of ancient Indian drama by focusing the attention of scholars on the great importance of the Nāṭyaśāstra. Almost simultaneously two Sanskritists in India as well as one in the West were planning its publication. In 1894 Pandits Shivadatta and Kashinath Pandurang Parab published from Bombay the original Sanskrit text of the work. This was followed in 1898 by J. Grosset's critical edition of its chapters I-XIV based on all the Ms. available up till that date.

Though nearly half a century has passed after the publication of Grosset's incomplete edition of the Nāṭyaśāstra, it still remains one of the best specimens of modern Western scholarship, and though in the light of the new materials available, it is possible now-a-days to improve upon his readings in a few places, Grosset's work will surely remain for a long time a landmark in the history of the study of this important text. It is a pity that this very excellent work remains unfinished. But a fact equally deplorable is that it failed to attract sufficient attention of scholars.

12 Chapters XVII-XX (XVIII-XXII of our text).
14 The author of the Sahityadarpana. See below.
15 Sri Bharatamuni-prasūtan, Nāṭyaśāstra, (Karyamala, 42) Bombay, 1894.
interested in the subject. Incomplete though it was, it nevertheless contained a good portion of the rules regarding the presentation of plays on the stage, and included valuable data on the origin and nature of the ancient Indian drama, but no one seems to have subjected it to the searching study it deserved. Whoever wrote on Hindu plays after Lévi depended more on his work than on the Nāṭyaśāstra itself, even when this was available (at least in a substantial part) in a critical edition. It may very legitimately be assumed that the reasons which conspired to render the Nāṭyaśāstra rather unattractive included among other things, the difficulty of this text which was not yet illuminated by a commentary.

Discovery in the early years of the present century of a major portion of a commentary of the Nāṭyaśāstra by the Kashmirian Abhinavagupta seemed to give, however, a new impetus to the study of the work. And it appeared for the time being that the Nāṭyaśāstra would yield more secrets treasured in the body of its difficult text. But the first volume of the Baroda edition of the work (ch. I-VII) including Abhinava's commentary, disillusioned the expectant scholars. Apart from the question of the merit of this commentary and its relation to the available versions of the Nāṭyaśāstra, it suffered from a very faulty transmission of the text. Not only did it contain numerous lacunae, but quite a number of its passages were not liable to any definite interpretation due to their obviously vitiated nature. Of this latter condition the learned editor of the commentary says, 'the originals are so incorrect that a scholar friend of mine is probably justified in saying that even if Abhinava descended from the Heauen and seen the Mss. he would not easily restore his original reading. It is in fact an impenetrable jungle through which a rough path now has been traced'. The textual condition of Abhinava's commentary on chapters VIII-XVIII (VIII-XX of our text) published in 1934 was not appreciably better.

But whatever may be the real value of the commentary, the two volumes of the Nāṭyaśāstra published from Baroda, which were avowedly to give the text supposed to have been taken by Abhinava as the basis of his work, presented also considerable new and valuable materials in the shape of variant readings collated from numerous Mss. of the text as well as from the commentary. These sometimes throw new light on the contents of Nāṭyaśāstra. A study of these together with a new and more or

---

11 Dr. S. K. De seems to be the first in announcing the existence of a more or less complete Ms. of Abhinava's commentary, and in recommending its publication. See Skt. Poetics, Vol I. pp. 120-121.


less complete (though uncritical) text of the work published from Benares in 1929 would, it is hoped, be considered a desideratum by persons interested in the ancient Indian drama. The present work has been the result of such a study, and in it has been given for the first time a complete annotated translation of the major portion of the Nāṭyāśāstra based on a text reconstructed by the author.  

2. The Basic Text

The text of the Nāṭyāśāstra as we have seen is not available in a complete critical edition, and Joanny Grosset’s text (Paris-Lyons, 1898) does not go beyond ch. XIV. Hence the translator had to prepare a critical edition of the remaining chapters before taking up the translation. For this he depended principally upon Ramakrishna Kavi’s incomplete edition (Baroda, 1926, 1934) running up to ch. XVIII (our XX) and including Abhinava’s commentary, as well as the Nīrṇayāsagar and Chowkhamba editions (the first, Bombay 1894, and the second, Benares, 1929). As the text of the Nāṭyāśāstra has been available in two distinct recensions, selection of readings involved some difficulty. After the most careful consideration, the translator has thought it prudent to adopt readings from both the recensions, whenever such was felt necessary from the context or for the sake of coherence, and these have been mentioned in the footnotes. But no serious objection may be made against this rather unorthodox procedure, for A. A. Macdonell in his critical text of the Bṛhaddevatī (Cambridge, Mass. 1904) has actually worked in this manner, and J. Grosset too in his edition does not give unqualified preference to any racension and confesses that due to conditions peculiar to the Nāṭyāśāstra his text has ‘un caractère largement éclectique’ (Introduction, p. xxxv) and he further says ‘nous n’avions pas l’ambition chimérique de tendre a la reconstitution du Bharata primitif,.....’ (loc. cit.). Conditions do not seem to have changed much since then.

10 Sri-Bharākmuni-pranitam Nāṭyāśāstram. (Kashi-Sanskrit Series), Benares, 1929.

11 This edition will be published later on. The following chapters of the N.S. have been translated into French: ch XIV and XV (our XV and XVI) Vayābhīnaya by P. Regnaud in his Métrique du Bharata; see note 8 above, ch. XVII (our XVIII) Ihasāvidhana by Luigia Nitti-Dolei in her Les Grammaires Prakrit. This has been partially (1-24) translated into English by the present writer in his Date of the Bharata-Nāṭyāśāstra, See JDL, 1930, pp. 73f. Chapter XXVIII by J. Grosset in his Contribution a l’étude de la musique hindou; see note 10 above. Besides these, ch. XXVIII by B. Breol in his Grund-lemente der alt-indischen Musik nach dem Bharatiya-natyasatra. Bonn. 1922, and ch. IV by B. V. N. Naidu, P. S. Naidu and O. V. R. Pantulu in the Tandavalahitram, Madras, 1938 and chapters I-III translated into Bengali by the late Pandit Asokenath Bhattacharyya in the Vasumati, 1352 B.S.
3. Translation

Though the translation has been made literal as far as possible except that the stock words and phrases introduced to fill up incomplete lines have been mostly omitted, it has been found necessary to add a number of explanatory words [enclosed in rectangular brackets] in order to bring out properly the exact meaning of the condensed Sanskrit original. Technical terms have often been repeated (within curved brackets) in the translation in their basic form, especially where they are explained or defined. In cases where the technical terms could not be literally rendered into English they were treated in two different ways: (1) they were given in romanised form with initial capital letters e.g. Bhāṇa and Vithi (XX. 107-108, *112-113), Nyāya (XXII. 17-18) etc. (2) Words given as translation have been adopted with a view to indicating as far as possible the exact significance of the original, e.g. State (bhāva) Sentiment (rasa), VI. 33-34. Discovery (prāśti), Persuasion (śiddhi), Parallelism ( udāharaṇa) (XVII. 1), Prominent Point (bindu), Plot (vastu) (XX.15) etc. Lest these should be taken in their usual English sense they are distinguished by initial capital letters. Constantly occurring optative verbal forms have been mostly ignored. Such verbs as kuryāt and bhavet etc, have frequently been rendered by simple 'is' or a similar indicative form. And nouns used in singular number for the sake of metre have been silently rendered by those in plural number and vice versa, when such was considered necessary from the context.

4. Notes to the Translation

Notes added to this volume fall generally into three categories. (a) Text-critical. As the basic text is not going to be published immediately, it has been considered necessary to record variant readings. For obvious reasons variants which in the author's opinion are less important have not been generally recorded. (b) Explanatory. These include among other things references to different works on allied subjects and occasional short extracts from the same. Abhinavagupta's commentary naturally occupies a prominent place among such works, and it has very often been quoted and referred to. But this does not mean that the worth of this work should be unduly exaggerated. (c) Materials for Comparative Study. A very old text like the Nātyaśāstra not illuminated by anything like a complete and lucid commentary, should naturally be studied in comparison with works treating similar topics directly or indirectly. Hence such materials have been carefully collated as far as the resources at the author's disposal permitted.

But even when supplied with these notes, readers of this translation may have some difficulty in reconstructing from the work written in a diffuse manner the picture of the ancient Indian drama in its theatrical as well as literary form, as it existed in the hoary antiquity. To give them some help the theory and practice of the ancient Hindu drama has been briefly discussed below together with other relevant matters.

II. The Ancient Indian Theory of Drama

1. The Meaning of Natya

The word “Nāṭya” has often been translated as ‘drama’ and the plays of ancient India have indeed some points of similarity with those of the Greeks. But on a closer examination of the technique of their production as described in the Natyaśāstra, the Hindu dramas represented by the available specimens, will appear to be considerably different. Unless this important fact is borne in mind any discussion on the subject is liable to create a wrong impression. As early as 1890 Sylvestre Lévi (pp. 423-424) noticed that Indian Nāṭya differed from the Greek drama from which the Westerners derived their early conception of the art. Though it is not possible to agree with Lévi on all points about the various aspects of this difference and the causes which he attributed to them, no one can possibly have any serious objection against his finding that, “Le nāṭaka par se nature autant que par son nom se rapproche de la danse scenique ; le drame est l’action même” (loc. cit). Lévi however did not for reasons stated above fully utilize in this connection the Natyaśāstra which contains ample materials for clarifying his conclusion.

The essential nature of the (Nāṭya) derived from its etymology cannot by any means be called fanciful. For in the Harivanśa1 (c. 200 A.C) we meet with an expression like nāṭakam namtuḥ (they danced a play) and the Karpūramañjarī2 (c. 1000 A.C.) has an expression like saṭṭaṃ maccidavam (a Saṭṭaka is to be danced or acted).

The terms like rūpaka or rūpa (representation) and prekṣā (spectacle), all denoting dramatic works, also characterise the Hindu dramas and show their difference from the drama of the Greeks who laid emphasis on action and not on the spectacle. Of the six parts of the tragedy, the most typical of the Greek dramatic productions, Aristotle puts emphasis on the fable or the plot and considers decoration to be unimportant. On this point the philosopher says:

“Terror and pity may be raised by decoration—the mere spectacle; but they may also arise from the circumstance of the action itself, which is far

1. Visnuparvan, Ch. 93. Sl. 28,
preferable and shows a superior poet. For the fable should be so constructed that without the assistance of the sight its incidents may excite horror and compassion in those who hear them only; * * * *

*But to produce this effect by means of the decoration discovers want of art in the poet; who must also be supplied with an expensive apparatus* (II. XIII).  

But in case of the Hindu dramas the decoration (i.e. the costumes and make-up) mostly plays an important part. Equally with five other elements such as gestures and postures (āṅgika), words (vācika), the representation of the Temperament (sattva), it gives the Nāṭya its characteristic form. But in the theatre of the Greeks, it was not the case. In the performance of the tragedies, for example, they did not care much for the spectacle, if the declamation was properly made. For Aristotle himself says that, "the power of tragedy is felt without representation and actors" (II. III).  

Another peculiarity of the Hindu dramas was their general dependence on dance (nrtya), song (gita), and instrumental music (vadya). Though the chorus of the Greek tragedy introduced in it some sort of dance and songs, the function of these elements seem to have been considerably different in the Hindu drama. The ancient Indian play was produced through words, gestures, postures, costumes, make-up, songs and dances of actors, and the instrumental music was played during the performance whenever necessary. But these different elements did not play an equal part in all the plays or different types of play. According as the emphasis was to be put on words, music, or dance, a play or its individual part took of the nature of what the moderns would call 'drama', 'opera', 'ballet' or 'dramatic spectacle'. Due to this nature the Hindu dramas which connected themselves in many ways with song, dance and instrumental music, had a literary form which was to some extent different from that of the ancient Greeks. But it was not so much due to this literary form as to the technique of their production on the stage that the Hindu dramas received their special character.  

After forming a general idea of this Nāṭya, from the various terms used to denote it, one should enquire what the ancient Indian theorists exactly meant by the term (Nāṭya) or what they regarded as being the essence of the dramatic art as opposed to the arts of poetry, fiction or painting. To satisfy our curiosity on this point the Nāṭyaśāstra gives us the following passage which may pass for a definition of the Nāṭya.

"A mimicry of the exploits of gods, the Asuras, kings as well as of householders in this world, is called drama" (I. 120).  

---

* Poetics (Everyman's Library), p. 27.  
* Ibid. p. 17.  
This description seems to fall in a line with Cicero’s view that “drama is a copy of life, a mirror of custom, a reflection of truth”. In this statement Cicero evidently takes his cue from Aristotle who considered that the art in general consisted of imitation (mimesis). But this does not help us very much to ascertain the nature of drama as an example of ‘imitation’. For the Greek philosopher nowhere defines this very essentially important term. So when he declares that “epic poetry, tragedy, comedy, dythrambs as also for the most part the music of the flute and of the lyre all these are in the most general view of them imitations”¹⁶, one can at best guess how drama imitates. There seems to be no such difficulty about understanding the view of the Hindu theorists. The Nāṭyaśāstra lays down very elaborate rules as to how the drama is to make mimicry of the exploits of men and their divine or semi-divine counterparts. It is due to rules of representation that the Hindu drama has been called by the later theorists ‘a poem to be seen’ (SD. 270-271). By this term epic or narrative poetry and fiction etc. are at once distinguished from drama which is preeminently a spectacle including a mimicry of activities of mortals, gods or demigods. It may now be asked what exactly was meant by the word mimicry (anukarana) used by the Indian theorists. Did this mean a perfect reproduction of the reality? For an answer to this question we are to look into the conventions of the Hindu drama.

2. The Dramatic Conventions

That the Hindu theorists turned their attention very early to the problem of dramatic representation and enquired about the exact place of realism or its absence in connection with the production of a play, is to be seen clearly from their very sensible division of the technical practice into “realistic” (lokadhārami, lit. popular) and “conventional” (nāṭyadharmi, lit. theatrical”). By the realistic practice, the Nāṭyaśāstra (XIV. 62-76; XXIII. 187-188) means the reproduction of the natural behaviour of men and women on the stage as well as the cases of other natural presentation. But from the very elaborate treatment of the various conventions regarding the use of dance, songs, gestures and speeches etc. by different characters it is obvious that the tradition of the ancient Hindu theatre recognised very early the simple truth that the real art to deserve the name, is bound to allow to itself a certain degree of artificiality which receives its recognition through many conventions. One very patent example of this conventional practice on the stage, is speeches uttered ‘aside’ or as soliloquy. The advocates of extreme realism may find fault with these as unnatural, and the accusation cannot be denied, but on closer examination of circumstances connected with the construction of a play as well as its production on the stage, it will be found that if the spectators are to demand realism very

¹ Poetics, p. 5
rigidly then no theatrical performance of any value, may be possible. Neither the Hindus nor the Greeks ran after this kind of absurdity. Critics of ancient Indian dramas will do well to remember this and to take care to understand the scope and necessity of various conventions relating to the production, so that they may better appreciate the art of great playwrights like Bāsa, Kālidāsa, Śūdraka and Viśākhadatta.

3. Time and place in Drama

Hindu playwrights, unlike the majority of Greek tragedians, did never make any attempt to restrict the fictional action to a length of time roughly similar to that taken up by the production of a drama on the stage. In developing plots they had not much restriction on the length of time, provided that individual Acts were to include incidents that could take place in course of a single day, and nothing could be put in there to interrupt the routine duties such as saying prayers or taking meals (XX. 23), and the lapse of time between two Acts, which might be a month or a year (but never more than a year)\(^7\) was to be indicated by an Introductory Scene (pravāsaka) preceding the last one (XX. 27-28).

Similarly there was almost no restriction about the locality to which individual Actors, and gods in their human roles were to be assigned, except that the human characters were always to be placed in India i.e. Bhāratavarṣa (XX. 97).

4. The Unity of Impression

In spite of having no rules restricting the time and place relating to different incidents included in the plot of a drama, the playwright had to be careful about the unity of impression which it was calculated to produce. For this purpose the Nāṭyaśāstra seems to have the following devices:

The Germ (hīja) of the play as well as its Prominent Point (bindu) was always to relate to every Act of the play and the Hero was sometimes to appear in every Act or to be mentioned there (XX. 15, 30).

An Act was not to present too many incidents (XX. 24), and such subsidiary events as might affect the unity of impression on their being directly presented, were merely to be reported in an Introductory Scene. Besides this, short Explanatory Scenes were sometimes put in before an Act to clarify the events occurring in it (XXI). 106-111. All these, not only helped the play to produce an unity of impression but also imparted to its plot a rapidity of movement which is essential for any kind of successful dramatic presentation.

5. Criticism of Drama

Indians from very early times considered plays to be essentially 'spectacle' (prakṣa) or 'things' to be visualised; hence persons attending

\(^7\) Bhāvabhūti however violates the rule in his Uttara, in letting many years pass between Acts I and II.
the performance of a play were always referred to (XXVII. 48-57) as 'spectators' or 'observers' (praksaka) and never as audience (ārotri), although there was always the speech element in it, which was a thing to be heard. This disposes of the question of judging the value of a drama except in connection with its production on the stage. This importance of the representational aspect of a play has possibly behind it an historical reason. Though in historical times we find written dramas produced on the stage, this was probably not the case in very early times, and the dialogues which contribute an important part of the drama were often improvised on the stage by the actors, and this practice seems to have continued in certain classes of folk-plays till the late medieval times. Hence the drama naturally continued to be looked upon by Indians as spectacles even after great playwright creators like Bhāsa, Kālidāsa, Śūdraka, and Bhavabhūti had written their dramas which in spite of their traditional form were literary master-pieces.

Now, dramas being essentially things to be visualised, their judgement should properly rest with the people called upon to witness them. This was not only the ancient Hindu view, even the modern producers, in spite of their enlisting the service of professional (dramatic) critics, depend actually on the opinion of the common people who attend their performance.

The judgement of the drama which is to depend on spectators has been clearly explained in the theory of the Success discussed in the Nāṭyaśāstra (XXVII). In this connection one must remember the medley of persons who usually assemble to witness a dramatic performance and what varying tastes and inclinations they might possess. For, this may give us some guidance as to what value should be put on their judgement which appear to have no chance of unity. In laying down the characteristics of a drama the Nāṭyaśāstra has the following: "This (the Nāṭya) teaches duty to those bent on doing their duty, love to those who are eager for its fulfilment, and it chastises those who are ill-bred or unruly, promotes self-restraint in those who are disciplined, gives courage to cowards, energy to heroic persons, enlightens men of poor intellect and gives wisdom to the learned. This gives diversion to kings, firmness [of mind] to persons afflicted with sorrow, and [hins of acquiring] wealth to those who are for earning it, and it brings composure to persons agitated in mind. The drama as I

* Praksasa occurring in N.S. III. 99. seems to be the same as 'pekha' mentioned in Padd Brahmajālaśuti Sūk Levi. II. p. 54.

I The Kranakirtana, a collection of Middle Bengali songs on Krama and Radha's love-affairs, seems to have been the musical framework of a drama. We saw in our early boyhood that extemporised dialogues were a special feature of the old type Bengali Yatras. These have totally disappeared now under the influence of modern theatre which depend on thoroughly written plays.
have devised, is a mimicry of actions and conduct of people, which is rich in various emotions and which depicts different situations. This will relate to actions of men good, bad and indifferent, and will give courage, amusement and happiness as well as counsel to them all" (1.108-112).

It may be objected against the foregoing passage that no one play can possibly please all the different types of people. But to take this view of a dramatic performance, is to deny its principal character as a social amusement. For, the love of spectacle is inherent in all normal people and this being so, every one will enjoy a play whatever be its theme, unless it is to contain anything which is anti-social in character. The remarks of the author of the Nātyaśāstra quoted above on the varied profits the spectators will reap from witnessing a performance, merely shows in what diverse ways different types of plays have their special appeal to the multitudinous spectators. And his very detailed treatment of this point, is for the sake of suggesting what various aspects a drama or its performance may have for the spectators. This many-sidedness of an ideal drama has been very aptly summed up by Kālidāsa who says, "The drama, is to provide satisfaction in one [place] to people who may differ a great deal as regards their tastes" (Mālavī. I.4). It is by way of exemplifying the tastes of such persons of different category that the Nātyaśāstra says:

"Young people are pleased to see [the presentation of] love, the learned a reference to some [religious or philosophical] doctrine, the seekers after money topics of wealth, and the passionless in topics of liberation.

Heroic persons are always pleased in the Odious and the Terrible Sentiments, personal combats and battles, and the old people in Purānic legends, and tales of virtue. And common women, children and uncultured persons are always delighted with the Comic Sentiment and remarkable Costumes and Make-up" (XXV. 59-61).

These varying tastes of individual spectators were taken into consideration by the author of the Nātyaśāstra when he formulated his theory of the Success. The Success in dramatic performance was in his opinion of two kinds, divine (daiviki) and human (mānuśī) (XXVII. 2). Of these two, the divine Success seems to be related to the deeper aspects of a play and came from spectators of a superior order i.e. persons possessed of culture and education (XXVII. 16-17), and the human Success related to its superficial aspects and came from the average spectators who were ordinary human beings. It is from these latter, who are liable to give expression to their enjoyment or disapproval in the clearest and the most energetic manner, that tumultuous applause and similar other acts proceeded (XXVII. 3, 8-18, 13-14), while the spectators of the superior order gave their appreciation of the deeper and the more subtle aspects of a play (XXVII. 5, 6, 12, 16-17). During the medieval times the approval of the spectators of the latter kind came to be considered appreciation par
XLVIII

excellence and pre-occupied the experts or learned critics. They analysed its process in every detail with the greatest possible care in their zealous adherence of Bharata's theory of Sentiment (rasa) built upon what may be called a psychological basis.

But in spite of this later development of this aspect of dramatic criticism it never became the preserve of specialists or scholars. Critics never forgot that the drama was basically a social amusement and as such depended a great deal for its success on the average spectator. Even the Nāṭyāsāstra has more than once very clearly said that the ultimate court of appeal concerning the dramatic practice was the people (XX. 125-126). Hence a fixed set of rules, be it of the Nāṭyaveda or the Nāṭyāsāstra was never considered enough for regulating the criticism of a performance. This seems to be the reason why special Assessors appointed to judge the different kinds of action occurring in a play (XXVI. 65-69), decided in co-operation with the select spectators, who among the contestants deserved to be rewarded.

6. The Four Aspects of Drama.

Though the Hindu plays are usually referred to as 'drama' all the ten varieties of play (rīpa) described in the Nāṭyāsāstra are not strictly speaking dramas in the modern sense. Due to the peculiar technique of their construction and production they would partially at least partake of the nature of pure drama, opera, ballet or merely dramatic spectacle. To understand this technique one must have knowledge of the Styles (vṛtti) of dramatic production described in the Nāṭyāsāstra (XXII). These being four in number are as follows: the Verbal (bhārati), the Grand (sātvati), the Energetic (ārabhāti) and the Graceful (kāśikī). The theatrical presentation which is characterised by a preponderating use of speech (in Śkt.) and in which male characters are exclusively to be employed, is said to be in the Verbal Style (XXII. 25ff.). This is applicable mainly in the evocation of the Pathetic and the Marvellous Sentiments. The presentation which depends for its effect on various gestures and speeches, display of strength as well as acts showing the rise of the spirit, is considered to be in the Grand Style (XXII. 38 ff.). This is applicable to the Heroic, the Marvellous and the Furious Sentiments. The Style which includes the presentation of a bold person speaking many words, practising deception, falsehood and bragging and of falling down, jumping, crossing over, doing deeds of magic and conjuration etc., is called the Energetic one. This is applicable to the Terrible, the Odious and the Furious Sentiments (XXII. 55ff.). The presentation which is specially interesting on account of charming costumes worn mostly by female characters and in which many kinds of dancing and singing are included, and the themes acted relate to the practice of love and its
enjoyment, is said to constitute the Graceful Style (XXII. 47ff). It is proper to the Erotic and the Comic Sentiments.

From a careful examination of the foregoing descriptions one will see that the Styles, excepting the Graceful, are not mutually quite exclusive in their application. On analysing the description of different types of play given in the Nāṭyaśāstra it will be found that the Nāṭaka, the Prakaraṇa, the Samavakāra and the Īhāṃga may include all the Styles in their presentation, while the Dīma, the Vyāyoga, the Prahasana, the Utsṛṣṭikāṅka, the Bhāṇa and the Vīthī, only some of these (XX. 88, 96). Hence one may call into question the soundness of the fourfold theoretical division of the Styles of presentation. But logically defective though this division may appear, it helps one greatly to understand the prevailing character of the performance of a play as it adopts one or more of the Styles, and gives prominence to one or the other. It is a variation of emphasis on these, which is responsible for giving a play the character of a drama (including a dramatic spectacle), an opera or a ballet. Considered from this standpoint, dramas or dramatic spectacles like the Nāṭaka, the Prakaraṇa, the Samavakāra and the Īhāṃga may, in their individual Acts, betray the characteristics of an opera or a ballet. The Prahasana, an one Act drama to be presented with attractive costumes and dance, may however to some extent, partake of the nature of a ballet. The Dīma, the Vīthī, the Bhāṇa, the Vyāyoga and the Utsṛṣṭikāṅka are simple dramas devoid of dance and colourful costumes.

III. Literary Structure of the Drama:

1. Ten Types of Play

The Nāṭaka. To understand the literary structure of the Hindu drama, it will be convenient to take up first of all the Nāṭaka which is the most important of the ten kinds of play described in the Nāṭyaśāstra1.

(a) Subject-matter and division into Acts.

The Nāṭaka is a play having for its subject-matter a well-known story and for its Hero a celebrated person of exalted nature. It describes the character of a person descending from a royal seer, the divine protection for him, and his many superhuman powers and exploits, such as success in different undertakings and amorous pastimes; and this play should have an appropriate number of Acts (XX. 10-12).

As the exploits of the Hero of the Nāṭaka have been restricted to his success in different undertakings including love-matters, it is a sort of ‘comedy’, and as such it can never permit the representation of the Hero’s defeat, flight or capture by the enemy or a treaty with him under compul-

1 NS. ignore the Upārṇapakas. For these see SD. NL. and BhP. etc.
sion. Such a representation would negative the subject of the play which is the triumph or the prosperity of the Hero. But all these except his (the Hero’s) death, could be reported in an Introductory Scene which may come before an Act. The presentation of the Hero’s death was for obvious reasons impossible in a comedy.

The first thing that attracts the attention of reader on opening a Nāṭaka, is its Prologue (sthāpanā or prasthāpanā). But according to the Nātyasāstra this was a part of the Preliminaries (pūrvaraṇa) and was outside the scope of the play proper (V. 171). That famous playwrights like Bhāsa, Kālidāsa and others wrote it themselves and made it the formal beginning of their dramas, seems to show that they made in this matter an innovation which as great creative geniuses they were fully entitled to.

But unlike the Greek plays the Hindu Nāṭakas are divided into Acts the number of which must not be less than five or more than ten (XX. 57). These Acts, however, are not a set of clearly divided scenes as they usually are in modern western compositions of this category. An Act of the Hindu drama consists of a series of more or less loosely connected scenes which due to its peculiar technique could not be separated from one another. It has three important characteristics.

(i) Only the royal Hero, his queen, minister, and similar other important personages are to be made prominent in it and not any minor character (XX. 18). This rule seems to be meant for securing the unity of impression which has been referred to before.

(ii) It is to include only those incidents which could take place in course of a single day (XX. 23). If it so happens that all the incidents occurring within a single day cannot be accommodated in an Act these surplus events are to be reported in a clearly separated part of it called the Introductory Scene (pravasāka) where minor characters only can take part (XX. 27, 30). The same should be the method of reporting events that are to be shown as having occurred in the interval between two Acts (XX. 31). Evidently these latter should be of secondary importance for the action of play. But according to the Nātyasāstra these should not cover more than a year (XX. 28). This allowance of a rather long period of time for less important events occurring between two Acts of a Nāṭaka was the means by which the Hindu playwrights imparted speed to the action of the play and compressed the entire plot distributed through many events over days, months and years within its narrow framework suitable for representation within a few hours.

(iii) An Act should not include the representation of events relating to feats of excessive anger, favour and gift, pronouncing a course, running

* See note 2 in IV. below.
away, marriage, a miracle, a battle, loss of kingdom, death and the siege of a city and the like (XX. 20, 21). The purpose of this prohibition was probably that, when elaborately presented in an Act, these might divert much of the spectator's interest from the line of the principal Sentiment which the play was to evoke and might therefore interfere with the unity of impression which it was to make.

(b) Explanatory Devices

(i) The Introductory Scene. It has been shown before how the Hindu playwrights divided the entire action of the Nāṭaka into two sets of events of which the one was more important than the other, and how they represented in its Acts the important set, whereas the less important ones were reported, whenever necessary, in an Introductory Scene giving one the idea of the time that intervened between any two Acts. This Scene is one of the five Explanatory Devices (artha-pakṣepaka) which were adopted by the playwright for clarifying the obscurities that were liable to occur due to his extreme condensation of the subject-matter.

The other Explanatory Devices are as follows: The Intimating Speech (caitkā), the Supporting Scene (viśkambha) the Transitional Scene (aṅkivālāra) and the Anticipatory Scene (aṅkāmukha).

(ii) The Intimating Speech. When some points [in the play] are explained by a superior, middling or inferior character from behind the curtain, it is called the Intimating Speech (XXI. 108).

(iii) The Supporting Scene. The Supporting Scene relates to the Opening Juncture only of the Nāṭaka. It is meant for describing some incident or occurrence that is to come immediately after (XXI. 106-107).

(iv) The Transitional Scene. When a scene which occurs between two Acts or is a continuation of an Act and is included in it, relates to the purpose of the Germ of the play, it is called the Transitional Scene (XXI. 112).

(v) The Anticipatory Scene. When the detached beginning of an Act is summarized by a male or a female character, it is called the Anticipatory Scene (XXI. 112).

(c) The Plot and its Development

The Plot or the subject-matter (vāstu) of a Nāṭaka may be twofold: "The principal" (ādhiḥkārika) and the "incidental" (prāsaṅgika). The meaning of the principal Plot is obvious from its name, and an incidental Plot is that in which the characters acting in their own interest incidentally further the purpose of the Hero of the principal Plot (XXI. 2-5).

The exertion of the Hero for the result to be attained, is to be represented through the following five stages (XXI. 8): Beginning (ārmbha), Effort (prayāna), Possibility of Attainment (prāpti-sambhava),
Certainty of Attainment (*niyādāpta*) and Attainment of the Result (*phalaprāpta*). These five stages of the Plot have five corresponding Elements of the Plot (XXI. 20-21) such as, the Germ (*bijā*), the Prominent Point (*bindu*) the Episode (*pālakā*), the Episodical Incident (*prakari*) and the Dénouement (*kārya*). Besides these aspects of the action and the Plot of the Nāṭaka, the elaboration of the latter has been viewed as depending on its division into the following five Junctions which are as follows: the Opening (*mukhā*), the Progression (*pratimukha*), the Development (*garbha*), the Pause (*vimarśa*) and the Conclusion (*nīvahāya*).

And these have been further subdivided and described to give detailed hints as to how the playwright was to produce a manageable play including events supposed to occur during a long period of time.

Kālidāsa’s *Śakuntalā* and Bhāsa’s *Svapna-vāsava-lāttā* are well-known examples of the Nāṭaka.

*The Prakarāṇa.* The second species of Hindu play, is the Prakarāṇa which resembles the Nāṭaka in all respects except that “it takes a rather less elevated range”. Its Plot is to be original and drawn from real life and the most appropriate theme is love. The Hero may be a Brahmin, merchant, minister, priest, an officer of the king or a leader of the army (XX. 49-51). The female characters include a courtesan or a depraved woman of good family (XX. 53). But the courtesan should not meet the Hero when he is in the company of a lady or gentleman of high family, and if the courtesans and respectable ladies meet on any account they are to keep their language and manners undistorted (XX. 55-56). From these and other features, the Prakarāṇa has been called a bourgeois comedy or comedy of manners of a rank below royalty.

Śūdraka’s *Mrčchakaṭṭika* and Bhavabhūti’s *Mālatimādhava* are well-known examples of the Prakarāṇa.

*The Samavakāra.* The Samavakāra is the dramatic representation of some mythological story which relates to gods and some well-known Asura, who must be its Hero. It should consist of three Acts which are to take for their performance eighteen Nāḍikās (seven hours and twelve minutes). Of these the first Act is to take twelve and the second four and the third two Nāḍikās only. The subject-matter of the Samavakāra should present deception, excitement or love, and the number of characters allowed in it are twelve. And besides this, metres used in it should be of the complex kind (XX. 63-76).

---

1. Wilson who did not see the N.S. said, “We may however observe to the honour of the Hindu drama that the *parakṣya* or she who is the wife of another is never to be made the object of dramatic intrigue, a prohibition which could hardly have cooled the imagination and curbed the wit of Dryden and Congreve” (Select Specimens of Hindu Theatre, Vol. I. p. xiv).

No old specimen of this type of drama has reached us. From the
description given in the Nāṭyaśāstra it seems that the Samavakāra was
not a fully developed drama, but only a dramatic spectacle on the basis of
a mythological story. It naturally became extinct with the development
and production of full-fledged literary dramas such as those of Bhāsa and
Kālidāsa.

Ihāmṛga. The Ihāmṛga is a play of four Acts in which divine
males are implicated in a fight over divine females. It should be a play
with well-ordered construction in which the Plot of love is to be based on
causing discord among females, carrying them off and oppressing [the
enemies], and when persons intent on killing are on the point of starting a
fight, the impending battle should be avoided by some artifice (XX. 78-82).

No old specimen of this type of play has been found. From the
description given in the Nāṭyaśāstra it seems that the Ihāmṛga was a play
of intrigue, in which gods and goddesses only took part.

The Dima. The Dima is a play with a well-constructed Plot and its
Hero should be well-known and of the exalted type. It is to contain all the
Sentiments except the Comic and the Erotic, and should consist of four
Acts only. Incidents depicted in it are mostly earthquake, fall of meteors,
eclipses, battle, personal combat, challenge and angry conflict. It should
abound in deceit, jugglery and energetic activity of many kinds. The
sixteen characters which it must contain are to include different types
such as gods, Nāgas, Rākṣasas, Yakṣas and Piśācas (XX. 84-88).

No old or new example of this type of play has reached us. It seems
that like the Samavakāra this was a dramatic spectacle rather than a
full-fledged drama. With the advent of literary plays of a more developed
kind, it has naturally become extinct.

Vṛyāyoga. The Vṛyāyoga is a play with a well-known Hero and a
small number of female characters. The events related in it are to be of
one day’s duration. It is to have one Act only and to include battle, per-
sonal combat, challenge and angry conflict (XX. 90-92).

Bhāsa’s Madhyama-vṛyāyoga is a solitary old specimen of this type
of play.

Uṭṣṭikāṅka. The Uṭṣṭikāṅka or Aṅka is an one-act play with
a well-known plot, and it includes only human characters. It should
abound in the Pathetic Sentiment and is to treat of women’s lamentations
and despondent utterances when battle and violent fighting have ceased, and
its Plot should relate to the downfall of one of the contending characters
(XX. 94-100).

Bhāsa’s Uṛubhaṅga seems to be its solitary specimen. This type
of play may be regarded as a kind of one-act tragedy.

The Prahasana. The Prahasana is a farce or a play in which the
Comic Sentiment predominates, and it too is to consist of one Act only.
The object of laughter is furnished in this, mainly by the improper conduct of various sectarian teachers as well as courtesans and rogues (XX. 102-108).

The Mattavilāsa and the Bhagavadajjukiya are fairly old specimens of this type of play.

*The Bhāṇa.* The Bhāṇa is an one Act play with a single character who speaks after repeating answers to his questions supposed to be given by a person who remains invisible, throughout. This play in monologue relates to one's own or another's adventure. It should always include many movements which are to be acted by a rogue or a Parasite (XX. 108-110). The Bhāṇas included in the collection published under the title Caturbhāṇi seem to be old specimens of this type of play.

*The Vithī.* The Vithī should be acted by one or two persons. It may contain any of the three kinds of characters superior, middling and inferior (XX. 112-113). It seems to be a kind of a very short one Act play. But one cannot be sure about this ; for no specimen of this type of play has come down to us.

2. Diction of a Play

(a) *The Use of Metre.* One of the first things to receive the attention of the Hindu writers on dramaturgy was the importance of verse in the dramatic dialogue. They discouraged long and frequent prose passages on the ground that these might prove tiresome to spectators (XX. 34). After giving a permanent place to verse in drama the Hindu theorists utilized their detailed knowledge of the structure of metres which varied in caesura as well as the number and sequence of syllables or moras in a *pāda* (XV. 38ff., XIV. 1-86), for heightening the effect of the words used, by putting them in a appropriate metres. In this respect they framed definite rules as to the suitability of particular metres to different Sentiments. For example, the description of any act of boldness in connection with the Heroic and the Furious Sentiments is to be given in the Āryā metre, and compositions meant to express the Erotic Sentiment should be in gentle metres such as Mālīni and Mandakrānta, and the metres of the Śakkāri and the Atidhyāti types were considered suitable for the Pathetic Sentiment (XVII. 110-112). In this regard the Hindu theorists, and for that matter, the Hindu playwrights anticipated the great Shakespeare who in his immortal plays made "all sorts of experiments in metre".

(b) *Euphony.* After considering the use of metres the author of the Nāṭyaśāstra pays attention to euphony and says, "The uneven and even metres which have been described before should be used in composition with agreeable and soft sounds according to the meaning intended.

The playwright should make efforts to use in his composition sweet and agreeable words which can be recited by women.

A play abounding in agreeable sound and sense, and containing no
obscure or difficult words, intelligible to the country people, having a good construction, fit to be interpreted with dances, developing Sentiments. becomes fit for representation to spectators" (XVII. 119-122).

(c) Suggestive or Significant names. Another important aspect of the diction was the suggestive or significant names for different characters in a play. It has been said of Gustave Flaubert that he took quite a long time to find a name for the prospective hero and heroine of his novels, and this may appear to be fastidious enough. But on discovering that the Hindu dramatic theorists centuries ago laid down rules about naming the created characters (XIX. 30-36), we come to appreciate and admire the genius of the great French writer.

(d) Variety of languages or dialects. The use of Sanskrit along with different dialects of Prakrit (XVIII. 36-61) must be ascribed to circumstances in the midst of which the Hindu drama grew up. The dramas reflect the linguistic condition of the society in which the early writers of plays lived. As the speech is one of the essential features of a person’s character and social standing, it may profitably be retained unaltered from the normal. Even in a modern drama dialects are very often used though with a very limited purpose.

IV. The Ancient Indian Drama in Practice

1. Occasions for Dramatic Performance

The Hindu drama like similar other forms of ancient art and poetry seems to have been of religious origin, and it developed probably out of dances and songs in honour of a deity like Śiva who in later times came to be styled the great dancer-actor (nārāṇa). As time passed, the dance with songs gradually assumed the form of regular dramatic spectacles, and the range of subjects treated was extended beyond the legends connected with the exploits of a particular deity. It is just possible that this development of the religious aspect came in course of time to be partially arrested, and plays began to be composed more with a purely secular character. And this change considerably loosened its original connexion with the popular deities. Possibly due to this the Hindu drama in the historic period of its career, is found to be acted sometimes for moral edification as in the case of the Buddhist plays, sometimes for the aesthetic enjoyment of the elite as in the case of Kālidāsa’s works, and sometimes in honour of a deity as in case of one of Bhavabhūti’s plays. In spite of various uses, the Hindu drama unlike its modern counterparts did possibly never become an ordinary amusement of everyday life. It was mostly on special occasions like a religious festival, a marriage ceremony, king’s coronation, a friend’s visit that dramatic performances were held (7. 269; AD. 12-14). But among all these occasions religious festivals
were the most common for the performance of drama. It was natural that on such occasions the drama was a popular entertainment as well, the public being then in a holiday mood.

Another fact about the dramatic performances of the Hindus was that these were sometimes held in the form of contests (XXVII. 21-22, 71, 77-79). Different groups of actors vied with one another for the popular appreciation, and reward for their skill in the particular art. This drama, however does not seem to have been a regular feature of the Hindu, as was the case with that of the Greeks, and theatrical troops gave, however, performance usually for money without any spirit of rivalry towards others, and were paid by the rich people or the different guilds.

2. The Time of Performance

Except in the midnight or at noon or at the time of the Sandhya prayers, the Hindu dramas could be performed almost at any part of the day or of the night. But this does not mean that any play could be produced at any allowable time during the twenty-four hours. Though at the command of the patron the Director of a theatrical party could overlook strict rules in this regard, the time of performance was to be regulated according to the nature of the subject-matter of the individual play. For example, a play based on a tale of virtue was to be performed in the forenoon; a performance which was rich in instrumental music, and told a story of strength and energy, was to be held in the afternoon, and a play which related to the Graceful Style, the Erotic Sentiment, and required vocal and instrumental music for its production, was to be performed in the evening; but in case of plays which related to the magnanimity of the Hero and contained mostly the Pathetic Sentiment, performance was to be held in the morning (XXVII. 88-99).

Though in the modern times dramatic performance is mostly held in the evening, the ancient Indian rules regarding the assignment of a play of a particular type to a particular part of the day or of the night need not be considered queer in any way. On the other hand, they appear very much to have been based on a proper understanding of the ever-changeable nature of human personalities. Even if a play based on a tale of virtue or of woe, when properly presented on the stage, could be appreciated at any time, it had better chance of impressing the spectator in the forenoon or in the morning, when after the night's sleep and rest, he could be the most receptive in regard to these Sentiments. That a play including a story of energy and strength can better be assigned to the after-noon is to be explained on the assumption that on taking rest after meals at the completion the morning's activities, one becomes psychologically more competent to appreciate stories of strength and energy presented on the stage. In a similar manner, a play with love as its principal theme (i.e. with
the Erotic Sentiment) may be more effectively presented on the stage in the evening, when after the day’s work, one is naturally inclined to enjoy the company of his dear woman, be she his wife or the hetaira.

3. The Playhouse or the Theatre

The Nāṭyaśāstra describes various types of playhouse, and their different parts have been mentioned to some extent in detail. But in the absence of evidence the like of which has been copiously available in case of the Greek theatre, it cannot be said how far the ancient Indian plays were performed in specially constructed theatres. It may be possible that only the kings and very wealthy people owned playhouses constructed according to the Nāṭyaśāstra, while dramatic spectacles meant for the common people were held in the open halls called the Nāṭ-mandir (Nāṭya-mandira) in front of the temples, or in a temporarily devised theatre under the cover a canopy, as in the case of the modern Bengali Yātrās which seem to have some resemblance and connexion with the ancient Indian Nāṭya described in the Śāstra. One remarkable feature of the playhouses described in the Nāṭya-śāstra is that they are of a very moderate size, the largest among them (meant for mortals) being only thirtytwo yards long and sixteen yards board, capable of accommodating about four hundred (400) spectators. This is in sharp contrast with the Athenian theatre which sometimes held as many as fifteen thousand (15,000) people.

The comparative smallness of the ancient Indian theatre was a necessary consequence of the peculiar technique of the dramatic production. For in a larger playhouse the spectators could not all have heard delicate points on which depended in no small measure the success of a performance. The inordinately large Athenian theatre was not much handicapped in this respect, for the Greek drama depended on a considerably different technique.

The Nāṭyaśāstra describes three main types of playhouse: oblong (viroṣṭha), square (caturāsa) and triangular (tryasra). These again might be the large, medium or small, with their length respectively as one hundred and eight, sixtyfour, and thirtytwo cubits. This gives altogether nine different varieties of theatres, viz. (i) the large oblong, (ii) the large-square, (iii) the large triangular, (iv) the medium oblong, (v) the medium square (vi) the medium triangular, (vii) the small oblong, (viii) the small square and (ix) the small triangular. These nine types can also be measured in terms of dāṇḍas instead of that of cubits. This will give us eighteen different diamensions of playhouse. But the Nāṭya-śāstra is silent about the use of the playhouse measured in terms of dāṇḍas, and the playhouse of the largest type measuring 108 cubits in length have been prohibited by the Śāstra for the mortals. And it has been mentioned before that a playhouse more in area than thirtytwo yards long and sixteen
yards broad has been prescribed for them. This should be divided into three parts: (i) the tiring room (nepathyā) (ii) the stage (raṅgāṭṭha or raṅgasīra) and (iii) the auditorium (raṅgamāṇḍala). Of these the tiringroom would be at one end of the theatre and would measure sixteen yards by four yards. On the two sides of the stage there should be two Mattāvāraṇis each occupying an area of four yards by four yards and having four pillars. Thus the area to be occupied by the seats of spectators would be twenty-four yards by sixteen yards.

The tiring room (nepathyā) was the place in which the actors and the actresses put on the costumes suited to the different roles, and from this place, the tumults, divine voices (daiva-vāṇi) and similar other acts proceeded. This part of the theatre was separated from the stage by two screens over its two doors, Between these two doors the members of the orchestra (kulapa) were to sit and the direction facing them was to be considered conventionally the east.

4. The Representation

To understand the technique of representation of the Hindu drama one must remember that it avoided stark realism and gave utmost scope to imagination and fancy. The one unmistakable evidence of this is the total absence of any painted scenery from the stage. This is but a negative side of it. If the Hindus avoided bringing in any kind of artificial scenery, they made positive efforts in communicating the meaning of the drama and calling forth the Sentiment (rasa) in the spectators through suggestive use of colour in the costume and make up of the actors and rhythmic movements of many kinds which have been summed up in their theory of four representations (abhinaya) such as angika, vācika, āhārya, and saṅhita (VI.23).

(a) The Physical Representation

Among these, the angika should be discussed first. This consists of the use of various gestures and postures of which the Nātyaśāstra gives elaborate descriptions. Different limbs have been named and their manifold gestures and movements described, with various significance attached to each one of them (VIII.-XII). For example, the head has thirteen different gestures which are as follows:

Ākampita: Moving the head slowly up and down.

Kampita: when the movements in the Ākampita head are quick and copious. (Uses): The Ākampita head is to be applied in giving a hint, teaching questioning, addressing in an ordinary way (lit. naturally), and giving an order.

The Kampita head is applicable (lit. desired) in anger argument understanding, asserting, threatening, sickness and intolerance.

Dhuta and Vidhuta: A slow movement of the head is called the
Dhuta and when this movement is quick it is called Vidhuta. (Uses): The Dhuta head is applicable in unwillingness, sadness, astonishment, confidence, looking side ways, emptiness and forbidding.

The Vidhuta head is applied in an attack of cold, terror, panic, fever and the first stage of drinking (i.e. intoxication).

Parivāhita and Udvāhita: when the head is alternately turned to two sides it is called the Parivāhita, and when it is once turned upwards it is known as the Udvāhita. (Uses): The Parivāhita head is applicable in demonstration, surprise, joy, remembering, intolerance, cogitation, concealment and [amorous] sporting.

The Udvāhita head is to be applied in pride, showing height, looking high up, self-esteem and the like.

Avadluha: When the head is once turned down it is called the Avadluha. (Uses): it is to be applied in communicating a message involving a deity, conversation and beckoning [one to come near].

Añīcita: When the neck is slightly bent on one side the Añīcita head is the result. (Uses): It is applicable in sickness, swoon, intoxication, anxiety and sorrow.

Niñācita: when two shoulders are raised up with the neck bent on one side the Niñācita head is produced. (Uses): It is to be used by women in pride, Amorousness (vilāsa), Light-heartedness (lalita). Affected Indifference (bīboka), Hysterical Mood (kilakiñcita). Silent Expression of Affection (mottiñvita), Pretended Anger (kuṭṭamita); Paralysis (stambha) and Jealous Anger (māna).

Parāvṛtta: when the face is turned round, the Parāvṛtta head is the result. (Uses): It is to be used in turning away the face, and looking back and the like.

Uktiñipta: when the face is raised up the Uktiñipta head is the result. (Uses): It is used indicating lofty objects, and application of divine weapons.

Adhogata: The head with the face looking downwards is called the Adhogata. (Uses): It is used in shame, bowing [in salutation] and sorrow.

Parilolita: when the head is moving on all sides, it is called Parilolita. (Uses): It is used in fainting, sickness, power of intoxication, possession by an evil spirit, drowsiness and the like.

The eyes are similarly to have different kinds of glances according to the States (bhāva) and Sentiments (rasa) they are to express. The eyeballs too are liable to similar changes to create impressions of different feelings and emotions, and so have the eyebrows, the nose,

1 For the definition of all these terms together with the preceding ones see N.S. XXIV. 15, 18-22.
the cheeks, the chin, and the neck. The hands, however, are the most important limbs in the making of gestures. Gestures and movements of hands fall into three classes, viz. single (asamyuta), combined (samyuta) and dance hands (nṛtta-hasta). Single-hand gestures and movements relate to one hand only, while combined hands to both the hands. The following are examples of the three kinds of hand gestures:—Pāṭāka (single hand): The fingers extended and close to one another and the thumb bent. Āṇjali (combined hand) Putting together of the two Pāṭāka hands is called the Āṇjali. Caturāsra (dance-hand): The Kaṭākāmuṅkha hands held forward eight Āṅgulis apart [from each other] on one’s breast, the two shoulders and elbows on the same level. Besides these gestures, the hands have varied movements which are characterised by the following acts: drawing upwards, dragging, drawing out, accepting, killing, beckoning, urging, bringing together, separating, protecting, releasing, throwing, shaking, giving away, threatening, cutting, piercing, squeezing and beating (IX. 161-163).

From the foregoing discussion about the gestures it is apparent that their uses fall into two different categories, viz. realistic and conventional. Of these two types, the gestures used conventionally far outnumber those of the other kind. But this should not appear strange. For the ancient Indian dramatists and theatrical producers were fully conscious of the limited scope of realism in arts of various kinds, and hence they conceived action as something very closely allied to dance. This demanded that while moving on the stage with or without uttering any word, the actors should gesticulate rhythmically, to impart grace and decorative effect to their figure. For this very purpose another set of gestures called Dance-hands (nṛtta-hasta) are also to be used. As their name implies these hands were exclusively to be used in dance, but for reasons mentioned above they were sometimes utilized at the time of declamation or recitation. The lower parts of the body down to the feet are also to be similarly used. Among these, the feet are the most important. On them depend the different movements of the entire body as well as the various standing postures. The movements of the feet are of three kinds, viz. ordinary gait, Čāri and Maṇḍala. Of these, the Čāri is a simple movement of the feet (XI.) while Maṇḍala, is a series of such movements considered together (XII.) During the stage fighting the two combatants are to move with Čāris and Maṇḍalas in accompaniment with suitable music. And the gait is very valuable for the representation of different roles. In this matter too convention plays a very considerable part. The Nāṭyasastra lays down elaborate rules about the width of footstep and the tempo of the gait for different characters according to their social position, age, sex, health and feeling as well as the peculiar environments in which they might be placed (XIII. 1-157).
(b) The Vocal Representation

The second means of theatrical representation consists of the use of speech. It relates to the proper musical notes (svāra) voice registers (stīna), pitch of vowels (varna), intonation (kāku), speech-tempo (laya) to be used in reciting or declaiming a passage for the purpose of evoking different Sentiments (rāsa) in the spectators. For example to call forth the Comic and The Erotic Sentiments a passage should be recited with the Madhyama and the Pañcama notes, and for the Heroic and the Marvellous Sentiments the Saḍja and the Rṣabha would be the suitable notes.

To call a person staying at a distance the voice should proceed from the head register (śiras) and when he is at a short distance it should be from the chest (śuras), and for calling a man at one’s side the voice from the throat register (kanyha) would be proper (XIX. 43).

For any speech with the Comic and the Erotic Sentiments the prevailing pitch would be Udātta (acute) and Svarita (circumflex) while in the Heroic, the Furious and the Marvellous Sentiments it should be Udātta and Kampita.

In the Comic and the Erotic Sentiments the speech-tempo should be medium, in the Pathetic slow, and in the other Sentiments a quick tempo is appropriate (XIX. 59).

Besides the above aspects of speech, close attention was to be given in observing rhythm and cadence. And the metrical character of any passage in verse was to be fully expressed in its recitation or declamation. For this propose the Nātyaśāstra devotes nearly two full chapters (XV, XVI) which discuss prosody and allied topics.

(c) The Costumes and Make-up

One important element in theatrical representation now-a-days is the various stage appliances such as, painted scenery, costumes and make-up. However, able the actors and actresses might be in delivering the speeches assigned to their roles, without being placed against properly painted scenery and without having proper costumes and make-up, by their acting and delivery alone they cannot create that kind of stage-illusion which is necessary for the success of a dramatic production. But in the ancient Indian stage there was no painted scenery. Hence the actors had to depend a great deal upon costumes and make-up. By the term śāhīrakbhūnaya the Hindu theorists understood these two items (XXIII).

Though painted scenery is considered indispensable in the modern theatre, the ancient Indians having a considerably different conception of the drama, did not require its aid for the production of a play. The wall that separated the tiring room (nepathyā) and the stage (raingapiha) together with the screens covering the two doors connecting the stage and the tiring room, served as the back-ground to show off to advantage the
figures of the performers. And these, the wall and the screens, possibly did not contain anything other than the usual decorative designs. This simplicity in the character of the scenic apparatus was a necessary concomitant of the peculiar technique of the Hindu drama, and its cause may be looked for in its early history. The introduction of magnificent scenery appears to be a later development in the history of drama. Similarly the back scene of the Shaksperean stage consisted of a bare wall, and anything in the way of spectacular effect was created by the movements and grouping of actors.

The production of an impression by means of painted scenery would have been alien to the taste of the ancient Hindus who were more or less conscious of the limitation of realism in their various arts. In order to make the spectators visualise the place and time of the dramatic story in hand, the Hindus had a different device. Numerous descriptiues of place and time composed in rhythmic prose and verse, which are scattered over the classical Hindu plays, served very efficiently indeed the purpose of painted scenery. When properly read or sung, these passages very easily created an illusion of the place or the time described. The elaborate description of Vasantasena’s magnificent residence in the Mrchakatika was calculated to call up vividly its picture before the mind’s eye. The same thing may be said of the grand description of the Daṇḍaka forest in the Uttararāmacarita. This device of making a scene lively, has been utilized by Shakespeare also. In appreciation of his very beautiful description of place and time, one critic says “The plays are full of such descriptive passages as can nullify the achievements of decorators and mechanics.” It has already been mentioned that in the Shaksperean stage too painted scenery was unknown.

There being no scenery of any kind in the Hindu theatre which made no effort at realism, the spectators were required to use their imagination to the utmost. The demand on the spectator’s imagination made by the ancient Indian producers of plays was further testified by their rules of conventional Zonal division (kaṭṣa-vibhāga) of the stage (XIV. 1-15). Some of these are as follows:

A Zone might change with the actor walking a few steps over the stage. Any ancient Hindu play will furnish numerous examples of this convention. For example in the first Act of the Śakuntala the king appears for the first time at a distance from Kaṇva’s hermitage, but shortly afterwards he enters it by simply taking a few steps over the stage, looking around and saying, “This is the entrance of hermitage and let me enter it”.

By the same kind of convention the inside and outside of a house was

---

9 Due to this kind of convention, scenes of the Hindu plays were not clearly separated as they are in a modern drama. This puzzled F. Hall who says:
simultaneously presented. The rule relating to this was as follows: According to the Zonal division, those who entered the stage earlier should be taken as being inside [a house] while those entering it later are known to be as remaining outside it. He who enters the stage with the intention of seeing them (i.e. those entering earlier) should report himself after turning to the right. To indicate going to a distant locality one is to walk a good few steps over the stage and to indicate going to a place near by, a short walk only is needed, while a walk of medium duration will indicate going to a place of medium distance. But in case a person leaves one country and goes to a distant land, this is to be indicated by closing the Act in which such an event occurs, and mentioning again the same fact in an Explanatory Scene at the beginning of the next Act.

An example of some of these conventional rules occurs in the ninth Act of the Mrêchakatika where Sodhanaka appears first as being at the gate of the court of justice and enters it by making a pantomimic movement; then again he goes out to receive the judge and re-enters the court room after him by simply walking over the same stage. And when the judge has started work, Sodhanaka again goes out to call for the complainants. This going out also consists of actually walking a few steps over the stage.

Though painted scenery was not in use in the Hindu theatre objects like hills, carriages, aerial cars, elephants etc., were represented on the stage by suggestive models (pusta) of these. According to the Nâtyaââstra the model works were of three kinds, viz. sandhima which was made up of mat, cloths or skins, wrapping cloth, or other materials wrapped round something, and vyâjima which was a mechanical contrivance of some kind. From Dhanika, the commentator of the Daârarupa (II. 67-58), we learn about a model-work of an elephant for the production of the Udayanacarita, and the Mrêchakatika owes its name to the toy cart which plays an indispensable role in the story.

(d) The Temperament

The fourth or the most important means of representation is the Temperament (sativa) or the entire psychological resources of a man (XXIV). The actor or the actress must for the time being feel the States that he or she is to represent, and only then will the Sentiments related to them follow. This kind of representation was indispensable for giving expression to various delicate aspects of men's and women's emotional nature.

So far as is known, Hindu dramas have always been parted into acts; but never have they had scenes. It is somewhat to be wondered at, that the Hindus, with theirordinate love for subdivision, should have left those unvented. (Introduction to Dararupa, pp. 28-29.)

* See note 2 above.
V. Literature on the Ancient Indian Drama

1. The Early Writers

Śilālin and Krṣāva. Pāṇini (circa 500 B.C.) refers (IV. 3.110-111) to the Nātāstraśtras of Śilālin and Krṣāva. As the works of these two authors have perished beyond recovery we are not in a position to have any exact idea about their contents. But Lévi and Hillebrandt have taken them to be manuals for actors (nata) though Weber and Konow have considered these to have been sets of rules for dancers and pantomimists, and Keith has accepted their view. Konow further thinks that the treatises of Śilālin and Krṣāva were absorbed in the body of the Nātyaśāstra (ID. p. 1).

2. The so-called sons of Bharata

After Śilālin and Krṣāva come the writers whose names have been included in the list of the one hundred sons of Bharata, given in the extant version of the Nātyaśāstra, (I. 26-22). Among these Kohala, Dattila (Dhūrttāla), Śālikārṇa (Śātakārṇa), Bādarāyana (Bādari), Nakhakuṭṭa and Aśmakukṭa have been referred to and quoted by later writers as authorities on dramaturgy and histrionics. Besides these, Vātasya and Śāṇḍilya have been named as authorities on drama by some writers. Such references and quotations are our only source of knowledge of them and their work.

(a) Kohala Among the writers on drama who wrote after Śilālin and Krṣāva, Kohala seems to be the most important. In the extant version of the Nātyaśāstra (XXXVI. 63), it is given in the form of a prophecy that Kohala will discuss in a supplementary treatise all those topics on drama that have not been touched by Bharata. From quotations of his works made by Abhinava and another commentator, as well as from their references to his opinion, it appears that Kohala wrote on dance and dramaturgy as well as histrionics and music.

(b) Dattila, Śāṇḍilya, and Vātasya. Dattila seems to be identical with Dantila or Dhūrttāla mentioned in the Nātyaśāstra (I. 26). Abhinava too quotes from one Dattilāśārva and it is likely that he is not other than this Dattila. From these quotations it appears that he wrote on histrionics and music. Śāṇḍilya and Vātasya mentioned in the Nātyaśāstra (XXXVI. 63) along with Dattila (Dhūrttāla) are to us nothing but mere names. It is possible that they were writers on some aspects of drama and theatre.

2 BhP. pp. 204, 210, 236-245, 251.
3 Ag. I. p. 205. Besides this Ag. quotes and refers to Dattila no less than 14 times while commenting on chapter on music. See De's Ms. pp. 544, 573, 578, 580, 583, 588, 590, 621, 615, 626, 633, 631, 640, 642, 644, 650, 655. See also Kūtta sl. 123.
(c) Śātakarnī (Śātakarnī, Śālikarnī). Śātakarnī as a proper name is found in inscriptions from the first century B.C. to 149 A.C. Hence it is possible (though not quite certain) that Śātakarnī the writer on drama flourished about the first century A.C. Like kings in later times who were sometimes found to take interest among other subjects in drama and poetics and to write treatises on them, this Śātakarnī might well have been a king or a person of royal descent. From the quotations made by later writers from him it appears he wrote on dramaturgy.

(d) Āśmakutṭa and Nakhatutṭa. These two writers from their names appear to have been contemporaries, probably belonged to the same locality. Sāgaranandin6 and Viśvanātha7 quote from Nakhatutṭa, and Sāgara only is known to have quoted from Āśmakutṭa8. From these quotations it appears that Āśmakutṭa and Nakhatutṭa wrote on dramaturgy.

(e) Bādarīyaṇa (Bādari). Sāgara quotes from Bādarīyaṇa twice9 and possibly names him once as Bādari, and from the extracts quoted it seems that this early writer discussed dramaturgy.

3. Samgrahakara

Abhinavagupta once mentioned the Samgraha and once the Samgrahakāra.10 In the Nātyaśāstra (VI. 3, 10) itself also one Samgraha has been mentioned. It seems that the reference is to the identical work. From these facts it appears that the work might have been a compendium treating of dramaturgy as well as histrionics.

4. The Present Text of the Nātyaśāstra (circa 200 A.C.).11

5. Medieval Writers on Drama

(a) Nandi (Nandikesvara) Tumburu Viśakhila and Čāriyaṇa. Besides the writers mentioned above Abhinava and Śāradātanaya refer to Nandi or Nandikesvara12 and the former also names Tumburu13 and Viśakhila14 with occasional reference to their views or actually quotations from them, and Čāriyaṇa has once been quoted by Sāgaranandin.15

(b) Sadāśiva, Padmabhī, Drauhini, Viśva and Āñjaneya.

---

4 Select Inscriptions, pp. 191-207.
6 NL. 1101-1102, Rucipati’s Comm. on AR. p. 7.
8 NL. 2769-2769, 2904-2905.
7 SD. 294, Nakhatutta has also been mentioned by Bahurupe in his Comm. on Darāpā (Indian and Iranian Studies presented to D. Ross, Bombay, p. 201, p. 201 f.m.
9 83, 437, 2706-2707, 2774-2775.
11 See below sections VI. and VIII.
12 Ag. I. p. 171, De’s Ms. p. 569. This Nandikesvara may be identical with the author of the AD.
13 Ag. I. pp. 165.
14 Ag. I. p. 199 also De’s Ms. pp. 547, 564, 573, See also Knut’s, sl. 123.
15 NL. 362-363.
Abhinava and Śaradātmanāya once refer to Saḍāśiva while some writers on drama, such as Padmabhū, Draupāṇī, Vṛṣṇa and Ajānapya, have been named by Śaradātmanāya only. But we are not sure whether they were really old authors or these names have been attached to some late treatises to give them an air of antiquity.

(c) Kātyāyana, Rāhula and Garga. These three writers, quoted by Abhinava and Sāgara may be counted among the medieval writers on drama. From the available extracts from his work Kātyāyana seems to have been a writer on dramaturgy. Rāhula has been twice quoted in Abhinava's commentary, and Sāgara has once referred to his view. From these it appears that Rāhula was a writer on dramaturgy as well as histrionics. Garga as an authority on drama has been mentioned by Sāgaranandin. In the absence of any quotation from him we cannot say what exactly he wrote about.

(d) Śakaligarbha and Ghaṅṭaka. Abhinava mentions among others the names of Śakaligarbha and Ghaṅṭaka. Of these two, Ghaṅṭaka seems to be a contemporary of Śaṅkukka, and as for Śakaligarbha, we have no definite idea about his time. From the references to their views it appears that they wrote on dramaturgy.

(e) Vārtika-kāra Harṣa. Abhinava once quotes from the Vārtika-kāra and once from the Vārtika and next time from the Harṣavārtika and besides this he once refers to the views of the Vārtika-kārya. Sāgaranandin and Śaradātmanāya refer to one Harṣavikrama or Harṣa. It seems possible that they all referred to the same author, and the name of the author of the Vārtika was Harṣa or Harṣavikrama. From these quotations and the references it appears that this Vārtika was an original treatise on dramaturgy and histrionics.

(f) Mātyagupta. Mātyagupta has been taken to be a commentator of the Nāṭyaśāstra by Sylvain Lévi. Though this view has been accepted by authors who have written later on the subject, from the metrical extracts made from his work by some commentators it appears...
that he composed an original work on the subject. It is probable that in this he occasionally explained in prose the view expressed by the author of the Nāṭyaśāstra.\textsuperscript{85} Interpreting in this manner one can understand the words of Sundara-mśra, who, commenting on Bharata’s definition of the Benediction (māṇḍa), remarks that ‘in explaining this Mārgaṇa said etc’.\textsuperscript{87} About the time of Mārgaṇa, we have no sufficient evidence. All that can be said is that, Abhinava quotes from his work once\textsuperscript{88} and hence he was earlier than this great well-known commentator. Besides this Sāgaranandin, who is possibly earlier than Abhinava, names Mārgaṇa along with old writers such as Āśākutṭa, Nakakutṭa, Garga, and Bādāryāṇa (Bādāri);\textsuperscript{89} hence it appears that he was not a late writer.

From the meagre information available about him scholars have identified him with the poet of that name living during the reign of Harṣavikramāditya of Kashmir who seems to have been the author of a work on drama called Vārtika. This would roughly place his work at the end of the 4th century A.C. or in the beginning of the 5th.\textsuperscript{90} From the extracts made from his works it appears that wrote on dramaturgy and music.

(g) Subandhu. Śaradātanaya refers to one Subandhu who wrote on dramaturgy.\textsuperscript{91} If it is possible to identify him with the famous author of the Vāsavadatī, then he may be placed roughly in the 5th century A.C.

(h) The compilers of the Agnipurāṇa and the Viṣṇudharmottara, The Agnipurāṇa treats of nāṭya, mṛtya, and rasa, but this treatment depends considerably on the Nāṭyaśāstra. There is literal borrowing from this work as well as paraphrases of some of its metrical passages in this Purāṇa. This portion of the Agnipurāṇa is usually placed after Dayālīn (circa. 7th century).\textsuperscript{92} The Viṣṇudharmottara too treats of nīta, nāṭya and abhinaya, and this treatment too is dependent on the Nāṭyaśāstra and does not appear to be earlier than the 8th century.

6. Late writings on Drama
(a) Daśarūpa. The Daśarūpa (Daśarūpaka) of Dhananjaya was composed in the last quarter of the 10th century A.C. during the reign of Muṇja (Vākpatiūrīja, II) the king of Malawa. This work, as its name implies, treats of the ten principal forms of dramatic works (rūpas) which constitute the subject-matter of chapter XX of the Nāṭyaśāstra, but it

\textsuperscript{85} For example Sagara, (N.L. 5342f) discusses Mārgaṇa’s view in his compilation which is written in verse and prose. It seems that this author was his model.

\textsuperscript{87} Skt. Poetics Vol. I, pp. 102-103.

\textsuperscript{88} Ag. Do’s Ms, p. 543. Dr. S. K. De thought that Mārgaṇa was unknown to Ag. (Skt. Poetics, Vol. I, p. 33).

\textsuperscript{89} See note 23 above.

\textsuperscript{90} Keith, Skt. Drama, p. 231.

\textsuperscript{91} Bhāp. p. 238.

actually brings in a few other relevant matters scattered over other parts of this comprehensive work.

Any careful student of the Nātyaśāstra will easily discover that Dhanañjaya in restating the principles of dramaturgy in a more concise and systematic form has carried too far the work of his abridgment and left out quite a number of important matters. The special stress which he lays on the literatary aspect of drama by his exclusion of its histrionics and other technical sides, very clearly indicates the general decadence of India’s aesthetic culture at the time. With his professed reverence for the rules of the Nātyaśāstra (ascribed to Bharata), he seems to have misunderstood the aims and objects of its author who composed his work for the playwrights as well as the producers of plays.

But whatever be its limitation, the Daśarūpa, and its commentary Avaloka without which it was only half intelligible, attained in course of time a wide popularity and gradually superseded the Nātyaśāstra which seems to have become very rare with the passage of time. And the Daśarūpa so thoroughly supplanted other dramaturgic works as existed before its time, that with the exception of the Nātyaśāstra it is the most well-known work on the subject and very frequently drawn upon by the commentators of plays as well as later writers on dramaturgy like Viśvanātha.

(b) Nāṭakalakṣaṇa-ramakōśa. Slightly earlier than the Daśarūpa or contemporaneous with it, is the Nāṭakalakṣaṇa-ramakōśa (briefly Nāṭakalakṣaṇa) of Sāgaranandin. Till about a quarter of a century ago our only knowledge of the work consisted of a few quotations from it in different commentaries. But in 1922 the late Sylvain Lévi discovered its Ms. in Nepal and published a report on its contents and other relevant matters (Journal Asiatique, 1922, p. 210). Since then the work has been carefully edited by M. Dillon and published (London, 1937). Just like Dhanañjaya, Sāgaranandin too discusses in his Nāṭakalakṣaṇa, dramaturgy in detail and mentions only incidentally certain topics connected with histrionics. But unlike the Daśarūpa the Nāṭakalakṣaṇa does not treat exclusively of dramaturgy, but refers to histrionics whenever necessary. Though the author professedly depends on no less than seven different authorities such as Harṣa-vikrama, Mātrgupta, Garha, Aśmakūṭṭa, Nākhkūṭṭa, Bādari (Bādarstäyaṇa), and Bharata (the mythical author of the Nātyaśāstra) yet his dependence on the last-named one seems to be the greatest. A large number of passages have actually been borrowed by him from the same. Besides these borrowings the extent of Sāgaranandin’s
dependence on the Nātyasāstra is apparent from his echoing of the numerous passages of the latter.

(c) Nātyadarpana. The Nātyadarpana of Rāmacandra and Guṇacandra is the next important work on dramaturgy after the Daśārūpa. Of the two joint-authors of this text, who were Jains Rāmacandra lived probably between 1100 and 1175 A.C., and he was a disciple of the famous Hemaçandra. Rāmacandra wrote a large number of works including many plays. But of Guṇacandra, the collaborator of Rāmacandra, very little is known except that he too was a disciple of Hemaçandra. The Nātyadarpana which is divided into four chapters, treats of dramaturgy.

This work has been composed in Anuṣṭup couplets. Its brevity of the treatment is comparable to that of the Daśārūpa, and as in the latter many of its passages cannot be fully understood unless a commentary is consulted. Fortunately for us the joint-authors of the work have left for us a very clearly written and informative vṛtti (gloss). It is evident from the metrical text that the authors had access to the Nātyasāstra and exploited it very thoroughly. And whatever could not be accommodated in the text has been added in the prose vṛtti which has utilised also Abhinava's famous commentary. Besides this the authors have occasionally criticised the views of other writers among whom the author of the Daśārūpa figures most prominently. All this has given the Nātyadarpana a unique value and some superiority over the Daśārūpa.

(d) Ruyyaka's Nātakamimānsā. Ruyyaka alias Rucaka, who was a Kashmirian and flourished probably in the 12th century, was a voluminous writer on poetics. It was from one of his works (a commentary of Mahima-bhaṭṭa's Vyaktiviveka) that we learn of his Nātakamimānsa, a work on dramaturgy. No Ms. of this work has so far been discovered.

(e) Bhāvaprakāśana. Śaradātana, who seems to have been a Southerner and flourished in the 12th century, wrote the Bhāvaprakāśana which dealt with dramaturgy in greater detail than either the Daśārūpa or the Nātyadarpana. And his work acquires an additional authority from the fact that Śaradātana had as his teacher one Divākara who was the Director of a theatre and might be taken as deeply conversant with the theory and practice of Indian drama as it was current in his time. Though Śaradātana's work depends much on earlier authors for the materials of his work, yet his approach to the subject is to some extent original. As the name of his work implies, it deals with the "expression" prakāśa of the

---

44 Printed out by M. Dillon in the margin of NL.
45 Ed. in G.O.S. Baroda, 1929. ** See Introduction of ND. p.3.
46 But they have also drawn materials from older writers like Kohala, Bucukaka and Ag. See ND. p. 224. ** See ND. Introduction p. 3. ** Skt. Poetics, p. 190ff.
"State" (bhaāva). Now the proper expression of the States by the actors according to the Nāṭyasastra gives rise to the Sentiments (rasa). Hence Śāradātānayā begins his work with the description of the States and everything connected with them. Next he passes very naturally to the discussion of the Sentiments. These being thoroughly discussed, he takes up the Heroines of different classes who are the main stay of the Sentiments. The time factor in the plot and the diction of the play which also are means of developing the Sentiments are considered next. Afterwards he analyses the body of the play and its different parts.

This brings him to the consideration of the ten major and twenty minor types of play (rūpa), and finally of the miscellaneous matters connected with drama and theatre. To avoid prolixity we desist from giving here any detailed account of its contents which include all possible topics relating to dramaturgy. It may be briefly said that Śāradātānayā’s treatment of the subject is in many respects more comprehensive than that of the Daśarūpa, the Nāṭakalakṣāṇa, and the Nāṭyadarpaṇa. And to attain his object Śāradātānayā has freely referred to the Nāṭyaśāstra as well as the works of early writers like Kohla, Mātṛgupta, Harṣa and Subandhu. Besides this he has sometimes mentioned authors like Dvārakītṛ, Rudraṭa, Dhanika, Abhinava, Bhoja and, sometimes referred also to their views and criticised these. All this adds to the great value of his work.

(f) Sāhityadarpaṇa and Nāṭakaparibhāṣa, Viśvanātha Kavirāja, who flourished about the thirteenth century was a poet and a scholar and in this latter capacity he wrote among other things the famous Sāhityadrapaṇa which treats all branches of the Skt. literature including drama. It was the sixth chapter of this work dealing with drama on which the early western writers of the ancient Indian drama mostly depended. For his treatment of drama Viśvanātha seems to have utilised the Nāṭyaśāstra, the Daśarūpa and its commentary Avaloka as well as the work of Rudraṭa and others.

Śiṅga-Bhūpala’s Nāṭakaparibhāṣa is known only in name. But his Rāṣṭrapavasudhākara also treats of drama towards its end. It seems that no important treatise on drama was written after all these works.
VI. The Natyasastra: The Text and its Commentators

1. Its Author

The Natyasastra is commonly attributed to Bharata Muni. But Bharata cannot be taken as its author, for in the Natyasastra itself his mythical character is very obvious, and the majority of the Puranas are silent about the so-called author of the Natyasastra, and there is not a single legend about him in any of the extant Puranas or the Ramayana and the Mahabharata. The word Bharata which originally meant 'an actor' seems to have given rise to an eponymous author of the Bharataashastra or the Natasastra (the manual of actors).

2. Its Two Recensions

Whoever might be the author of the Natyasastra it is certain that the work itself possesses undoubted signs of great antiquity, and one of these is that its text is available in two distinct recensions. In having two partly divergent recensions the Natyasastra can well be compared with works like the Nirukta, the Bhaddevata and the Sakuntala. The editors of these works have differently settled the claims of their shorter and longer recensions. At first sight the tendency would be to accept the shorter recension, as representing the original better, because elaboration would seem in most cases to come later. But opinion is divided in this matter: Pischel regarded the longer recension as being nearer the original, Macdonell has also given his verdict in favour of the longer recension but he has not ventured to reject the shorter recension entirely as being late, and Lokeshman Sarup has definitely suggested that the shorter recension is the earlier one. All these go to show that the problem of the relation between two recensions of any ancient work is not so simple as to be solved off-hand. So in this case also we should not settle the issue with the idea that the longer recension owes its bulk to interpolations.

The text-history of the Natyasastra shows that already in the tenth century the work was available in two recensions. Dhanaanjaya the author of the Daasarupa quotes from the shorter recension while Bhoja, who closely follows him, quoted from the longer one. Abhinava in his commentry of the Natyasastra, however, used the shorter recension as the basis of his work. It is likely that the long time which passed since then has witnessed at least minor changes, intentional as well as unintentional, in the

---

2 See NSI, 2-3 note 2.
3 Kalidasa's Sakuntala, HOS, p. XI.
4 The Bhaddevata, HOS, Vol. I, p. XVIII-XIX.
5 Introduction to the Nighantu and Nirukta, p. 39.
7 See above, note 6.
text of both the recensions. Hence the problem becomes still more difficult.

But a careful examination of the rival recensions may give us some clue to their relative authenticity. Ramakrishna Kavi has examined no less then forty Mas of the text, is of opinion that the longer recension (which he calls B.) seems to be ancient, although it contains some interpolation (pointed at by him) going back to a time prior to Abhinav. Mr. Kavi, however, does not try to explain the origin of the shorter recension which he calls A. This view regarding the relative authenticity of the longer recension seems to possess justification. Reasons supporting it are to be found in the texts differentiating the two recensions, which are as follows:

(i) Chapters XIV and XV of the shorter recension dealing with prosody introduce the later terminology of Pingala (ra, ya, sa, na, and bha gonas etc.) while the longer recension uses terms like laghu and guru in defining the scheme of metres.

(ii) The shorter recension in its chapter XV gives definitions of metres in Upajiti, while the corresponding chapter (XVI) of the longer recension gives them in Anustup metre and in a different order. Considering the fact that the bulk of the Natyasastra is written in this (Anustup) metre the longer recension in this case seems to run closer to the original work.

Though Ramakrishna Kavi, has overlooked it, there is yet another point which may be said to differentiate the two recensions. The chapter dealing with the Natyaagunas and Alankaras have nearly forty stolkas differently worded in the two recensions. These stolkas in the longer recension (ch. XVII) are written in the usual simple language of the Natyasastra while (ch. XVI) in the shorter recension (the stolkas) betray a later polish. The opening stanzas of the chapter (XVI) in the shorter recension are in Upajiti metre while in the longer recension (ch. XVII) they are in the sloka metre. This points to the earlier origin of the latter for the bulk of the Natyasastra as has been pointed out before is composed in the same metre. Now the shorter recension which appears to be of later origin, does not seem to be totally devoid of worth. It appears that this has in certain cases preserved what once existed but are now missing in the longer recension. The cases in which the shorter recension gives in a different language the corresponding passages of the longer recension may be explained by assuming that the passages in question were probably written from memory of the original in the prototype of the recension.

3. Unity of the Natyasastra

Some scholars have entertained a doubt the unity are authorship of the Natyasastra. They think that there are indications that "it (the
Nātyaśāstra) has been subjected to considerable rehandling in later times before it assumed the present shape...........

The alleged indications may be summed up as follows:

(i) The colophon at the the end of the KM. text of the Nātyaśāstra.

(ii) The mention of Kohala as the future writer on certain topics in the Nātyaśāstra (XXXVI. 63). (iii) Bhavabhūti's reference to Bharata Muni, the so-called author of the Śastra, as the Tauryatrika-sūtrakāra.

(iv) The mention of the sūtra, the bhāṣya and the kārikā as its constituent parts in the Nātyaśāstra itself along with the the existence of prose passages in it. As for the first alleged indication Dr. S. K. De has tried to connect the colophon of the Nātyaśāstra (samāpta cāyam Nandi-Bharata-sangīta-pustakam with the chapter on music only. He opines that the Nandi-Bharata of the colophon indicates that the chapters on music (XXVIII-XXXIII) are Bharata's original teaching on the subject as modified by the doctrine of Nandi. If we could accept the view it would have been easy to believe in the composite authorship of the Nātyaśāstra. But this does not seem to be possible for the following considerations:

(a) The colophon in question stands at the end of two Mss. copied from the same original and are missing in all the rest of the available Mss.

(b) The word sangīta occurring rarely in the Nātyaśāstra includes according to Śrīnādeva (c. 1300 A.C.) gīta (song), vādyā (instrumental music) and nyāya or nyāta (dance). Hence the colophon may be taken in relation to the entire text and not with the chapters on music alone.

(c) Nandi as a writer or authority on sangīta alone has not been mentioned anywhere else.

As for the prediction that Kohala will treat certain topics not discussed in the Nātyaśāstra, it may be said that there is nothing in it to show that Kohala is later than the author of this treatise. He was in all likelihood a predecessor or a contemporary of his.

The most important of all the alleged indications of the plural authorship of the Nātyaśāstra is the third one. The idea that the work was originally written in prose and was subsequently turned into verse, arose probably from a misunderstanding of the word sūtra. In spite of its traditional definition as alpākṣaram asandigdham sūnadh viśvatomukham etc. there is nothing in it to show that the sūtra must always be in prose. Indeed the Nātyadārpaṇa-sūtra is entirely in verse, and the Saddharma-puṇḍarika-sūtra of the Mahāyāna Buddhists is partly in verse and partly in prose. In the Maṅgalācaraṇa ślokas of his commentary Abhinava too mentions the extant Nātyaśāstra as the Bharatanāṭya. Thus on taking the sūtra in its oldest sense, the theory of the supposed original prose version of the Nātyaśāstra falls to the ground. The existence of the prose passages in the Nātyaśāstra does not in the least help this theory, and

it may be explained on the assumption that the author found it more convenient to write certain things in prose. All this will remove the difficulty in understanding the words of Bhavabhuti who mentioned Bharata as the śūtrakāra.

4. It Scope and Importance

It has already been shown what a great variety of topics the Nāṭyaśāstra discusses in connection with its principal theme, the dramatic art. In sharp contrast with almost all the later writers on the subject its author treats of dramaturgy as well as histrionics. In justification of this twofold aspect of this work Abhinava says that 'it is for the guidance of the producers as well as playwrights'17. As the drama in any form is primarily and essentially a spectacle, laws of its production should be considered indispensable for the playwrights. It is a wellknown fact that many good literary dramas often get rejected by the theatrical directors because of their construction being found unsuitable for successful and profitable representation in the stage. The author of the Nāṭyaśāstra was evidently conscious about this vital connection between the literary and technical aspects of a drama, and treated of both very elaborately. It is a very unique text dealing with every possible aspect of the dramatic theory and practice. It is no wonder therefore that the Nāṭyaśāstra was often quoted or referred to in later treatises on gestures, poetics, music, prosody and even on grammar, besides being often laid under contribution by commentators of different Sanskrit and Prakrit plays. And all the later writers on dramaturgy too depended greatly if not exclusively on this work, and most of them expressly mentioned their debt to the Muni Bharata, the supposed author of the Nāṭyaśāstra.

5. Its Style and Method of Treatment

In style the Nāṭyaśāstra differs very largely from all the later writers on drama who professed adherence to it and formulated their rules in a concise manner. Those latter are sometimes so very brief, that without the help of a commentator they are not easily intelligible. Though some passages remain obscure without commentary or similar help yet the major portion of the Nāṭyaśāstra is written in a simple language in the Śūkla and the Āryā metres. Though composed mainly in verse, a very small number of its passages are in prose. As the work is in the form of dialogue between Bharata, its mythical author, and some ancient sages, it has some similarity with the Purāṇas. One of the charge, brought against the Nāṭyaśāstra is that it is very diffuse. This is true. On a careful examination of his method of treatment it will be found that the author of the Nāṭyaśāstra, like the famous Pāṇini, treated of the subject analytically. He has taken

17 Ag. I p. 7. 18 Has. p. XXVIII.
up individual topics and considered them in every possible detail and has found it necessary to repeat things for the completion of the matter in hand. This has given it diffuseness. But the adoption of this method was unavoidable in a technical work which aimed at completeness. This however may be said to have rendered it difficult to some extent. The difficulty with which we moderns are confronted in studying this ancient work, is however primarily due to its discussing an art which has practically gone out of vogue for quite a long time. That the text was transmitted through a defective Ms. tradition is no less responsible for occasional difficulties it presents.

6. The Early Commentators

According to Śāṅgadeva (SR. I. 1. 9) the commentators who set themselves to the task of explaining or elucidating the Nāṭyaśāstra are Lollaṭa, Īḍbhaṭa, Saṅkuka, Abhinavagupta and Kirtidhara. Abhinava in his commentary refers in addition to Bhaṭṭa Yantra and Bhaṭṭa Nāyaka who may be taken as commentators of the Nāṭyaśāstra, and quotes from one, Bhūṣya and one Vārtika. The Vārtika however seems to be an independent treatise on drama though the Bhūṣya an old commentary. But in the absence of suitable data our knowledge about the date of these commentators and the nature as well as the value of their work, is very inadequate. We are however discussing below whatever meagre informations may be gathered about them.

(a) Aśārya Kirtidhara and Bhūṣyaṅkara Nānyadeva. Abhinava has referred to Kirtidhara only once. But from the special respect shown him by the commentator who calls him ṛṣya, it appears that Kirtidhara was a very early commentator of the Nāṭyaśāstra, and as such he was possibly anterior to Bhaṭṭa Udbhaṭa and hence may be placed in the 6th or the 7th century. And Nānyadeva quoted by Abhinava as the author of the Bharata-Bhūṣya seems to be another early commentator of our text.

(b) Bhaṭṭa Udbhaṭa. Bhaṭṭa Udbhaṭa’s opinion has been thrice quoted by Abhinava. As his views were controverted by Bhaṭṭa Lollaṭa who flourished in the 8th century it is possible that Udbhaṭa was a person of the early 8th or the late 7th century. Though it has been doubted whether Udbhaṭa was really a commentator of the Nāṭyaśāstra, from the reference to his work by Abhinava we may be fairly certain in this matter.

(c) **Bhaṭṭa Lollāṭa.** Bhaṭṭa Lollāṭa has been referred to as many as eleven times.\(^20\) From these he appears to be a commentator of the Nāṭyaśāstra. As the *rasa* theory of Śaṅkuka was known to have been lavelled against Lollāṭa’s view on the same, this latter writer flourished possibly in the middle of the 8th century.\(^21\)

(d) **Śri Śāṅkuka.** Abhinava referred to Śri Śāṅkuka or Śaṅkuka as many as fifteen times.\(^22\) About his time we seem to have some definite information. For he is probably identical with the author of the poem Bhuvanābhyanayāduya written during the Kashmirian king Ajitāpiḍa whose date is about 818 or 816 A. C.\(^23\)

(e) **Bhaṭṭa Nāyaka.** Bhaṭṭa Nāyaka has been referred to as many as six times by Abhinava.\(^24\) Besides explaining and elucidating the Nāṭyaśāstra, at least in part, he wrote on the Dhvani theory an independent work named the Hṛdayadarpāya. He has been placed between the end of the 9th and the beginning of the 10th century.\(^25\)

(f) **Bhaṭṭa Yantra.** From the single reference to him in Abhinava’s commentary it appears that Bhaṭṭa Yantra \(^26\) was a commentator of the Nāṭyaśāstra. About him nothing more can be said except that he preceded the celebrated commentator.

7. **Bhatta Abhinavagupta**

Among the commentators of the Nāṭyaśāstra, Abhinavagupta or Abhinava is the most wellknown. But his fame rests also on his commentary on the Dhvanyāloka as well as numerous learned treatises on the Kashmir Śaivism. From the concluding portion of some of his books we learn a few facts of his family history, and on the strength of these he has been placed between the end of the 10th and the beginning of the 11th century.\(^27\) From the Abhinavabhārati we learn that his another name was Nysimhagupta.\(^28\)

Although like any other work of this class it professes to explain the text, Abhinava’s commentary is not always an adequate help for understanding the several difficult passages of the Nāṭyaśāstra. This drawback might be due to its defective text tradition, but a careful study of it will convince any one that all its weak points cannot be explained away on this assumption alone. There are instances of Abhinava’s not being sure about the explanation offered, for example, the word *kutapa* is once explained as

---


\(^{22}\) Ag. I. pp. 74, 217, 274, 285, 293, 298, 318; II. pp. 411; 434, De’s. Ms. pp. 443, 443, 437, 441, 448, 469.


\(^{24}\) Ag. I. pp. 4, 28, 278, II. p. 296, De’s MS. pp. 506, 508.

\(^{25}\) Skt. Poet’s. I. pp. 360ff. **Ag. I. p. 209.**

\(^{26}\) Skt. Poet’s. I. pp. 117ff. **See Ag. De’s. Ms. pp. 425, 511.**
‘four kinds of musical instruments’\(^*\) and next as ‘a group of singers and players of musical instruments’\(^*\) and then again as ‘four of musical instruments’,\(^*\) while explaining the \textit{matavāras} he gives four different views\(^*\) and does not give special support to his own preference. Besides this, his explanation in some cases seem to be fanciful. For example, he explains \textit{khandana} as (meaning) ‘also fanning by means of a fan made of palmleaf’.\(^*\) This evidently is wrong, for in the same context \textit{vyajanakam} ‘fanning’ has been mentioned, and \textit{khandana} may better be interpreted as ‘drawing patterns or designs’\(^*\). But such instances are not many. That Abhinava had as the basis of his commentary a defective text of the \textit{Nātyaśāstra}, is apparent from its published portion, and his text was in places to some extent different from any of the versions that have reached us. It is due to this latter fact that sometimes particular passages of the commentary cannot be connected with any portion of the text (given above the commentary) in the Baroda edition. For example, once Abhinava writes “there are four \textit{ca-kāras}”,\(^*\) but in the text indicated by the \textit{pratika} two \textit{ca-kāras} only are available. And curiously enough a part of this text quoted elsewhere\(^*\) in the commentary corroborates the available reading of the text. In another place of Abhinava’s commentary we have the word \textit{ālambhana} explained, but we look in vain for it in the text.\(^*\) The same is the case with \textit{avayālīreka} and \textit{agama} occurring in the commentary later on.\(^*\) And some responsibility for its reduced usefulness must be ascribed to the fact that Abhinava had his commentary based on an imperfect text of the \textit{Nātyaśāstra}.

There is still another reason due to which Abhinava’s work does not prove to be quite adequate for our need. It is probably because he wrote the commentary with a view to help scholars of his time, whose knowledge on many things relating to the Indian drama, theatre and general literature he could easily assume, his commentary sometimes falls short of our needs.

But in spite of these limitations Abhinava’s work has its value. Whenever he has to explain any theory or problem concerning the dramatic art or general aesthetics, he does it very exhaustively by quoting all possible views on the same and often cites examples from a vast number of dramatic and other works some of which have perished. Often he sums up the discussion in a masterly fashion. That he was a voluminous writer on the abstruse philosophical topics gave him some facility in handling such matters. But, for the purpose of reconstructing the theory and practice of the ancient Indian drama, such scholastic discussions are often not of much value, though students of Indian poetics and aesthetics will surely

\(^*\) Ag. I. p. 73. \(^*\) Ag. I. p. 65. \(^*\) Ag. I. p. 186.
\(^*\) Ag. I. pp. 64-65. \(^*\) Ag. I. p. 41. \(^*\) See note 2 on IX 61-64.
\(^*\) Ag. II. p 34. \(^*\) Ag. I. p. 203. \(^*\) Ag. II. pp. 97, 226.
be profited by their perusal. But it must be said of Abhinava’s commentary that it gives considerable help in understanding some difficult passages of the very old obsolete text of the Natyasastra, and for this we should be genuinely greatful to him.

VII. Data of India’s Cultural History in the Natyasastra

Besides giving all sorts of information relating to the dramaturgy and histronics as well as the allied arts of dance and music, the Natyasastra includes considerable other materials for the cultural history of India. The most important among these will be discussed below under their several heads.

1. Language

The Natyasastra gives some description of Pkt. (XVIII. 1-25) and examples of Dhruvā songs in Pkt. (XXXII). From these materials it seems that the Pkt. of the Natyasastra lie mid-way between the Pkt. of the classical dramas and that of Āśvaghoṣa’s plays. Besides this there occur in this work (XVIII. 44, 48) some references about the nature of languages used by the ancient tribes like the Barbaras, Kirātas, Andhras, Dramidās, Ṣabaras and Caṇḍālas. There are besides other interesting matters relating to the language used by men of different professions and status in life.

2. Literature

In addition to Prakrit verses given as examples of Dhruvās, the Natyasastra cites numerous poetical stanzas in Skt. as examples of the Benediction and of the different metres (V. 108-112, 130-131: XVI). These are very early specimens of the ancient Indian literature. It is on the testimony of these which are free from the artificiality of the later classical poetry, that P. Regnaud placed the Natyaśāstra about the beginning of the Christian era (Introduction to Grosset’s ed. of the NŚ. p. VII-VIII). The Natyasastra contains also the earliest available discussion on figures of speech (ālamkāra), and the method of criticism based on the theory of Sentiments (rasa) which became very popular amongst Indian scholars during the medieval times.

3. Art

In the Viṣṇudharmottara (II. 2. 4) it has been said that the canons of painting are difficult to understand without an acquaintance with the canons of dancing. Now the Hindu drama as we have seen before depends a great deal on dance which is in fact its mainstay. The same work similarly connects the canons of painting with the canons of image-making. Thus the three arts being connected with one another, the Natyasastra receives an additional importance. This view is justified by the fact that the Natyasastra describes various male postures (śākāṇa) such as Vaiṣṇava,
Samapāda, Vaiśākha, Maṃḍala, Ṛkṣa and Pratyāśīḍha (XII. 50-71), and female postures (sthāna) (XIII. 159-169) such as Ayata, Avalitha and Aśvakrānta. These and the various gestures described in the Nāṭyaśāstra may also be helpful in studying specimens of the ancient sculpture and painting. It should be noted in this connection that the Samāṅgaṇa-sūtradhāra a medieval encyclopaedic work while describimg the rules of making images describes (ed. GOS. Vol. II. P. 301ff) the hand gestures etc. almost in the language of the Nāṭyaśāstra.

4. Metrics

Fiftyeight varieties of metre of sama, arīḥasama and viṣama types have been described in the Nāṭyaśāstra (XVI). All these are perhaps anterior in time to the Chandhaḥ-sūtras of Piṅgala. One important aspect of this description is that the name of the following metres are different in the NŚ, e.g. Drutavilambita=Hariṇapīṇa (NŚ), Bhujaṅgaprayāta=Aprameyā (NŚ), Srūvini=Padmini (NŚ), Mālini=Nāndimukhi (NŚ), Hariṇi=Vṛṣabha-cēṣṭita (NŚ), Māndākrāntā=Śrīdhārā (NŚ), Pīthvi=Vilambita-gati (NŚ), Kusumita-latā-vellitū=Citralekha (NŚ).

5. Poetics

The Nāṭyaśāstra enumerates (XVII. 43-106) four poetic figures (alamkāra), ten Guṇas and ten faults (doṣa) of a composition. In brief these may be called the earliest writings on poetics. To the theory of Sentiment (rasa) and the States (bhūva) (VI-VII) also the same remark applies.

6. Costumes and Ornaments

Detailed descriptions of ornaments, and directions about costumes to be used by characters in a play according to their social status, profession, religious faith, and tribal origin etc. are given in the Nāṭyaśāstra (XXIII. 1-67, 110-127). These may throw interesting light on the social life of the Indian people in the remote past.

7. Mythology

The Nāṭyaśāstra mentions (I-V, XXXIII-XXXIV, XXXVI numerous gods, goddesses, demigods etc. Classified according to the system adopted by Hopkin in his 'Epic Mythology' they are as follows:

(a) Lower Mythology: Serpent, Birds, Waters. (b) Spirits: Pitrs, Bhūtas, Rākṣasas, Asuras, Dāityas, Dānava, Yakṣas, Ghyakas. (c) The eight great gods: The Sun-God, the Moon-God, the Wind-God, the Fire-God, the God of death, Varuṇa and Ocean, Indra, the Dikpāla (World-protector). (d) The Host of Spirits: Gandharvas, Aparaśas, Kāma, Aśvina, Maruts, Rudras, Vīśvedavas, Ādityas, (e) Divine Seers: Bhṛṣapati, Nārada, Tumburu. (f) Earthly Rōṣ and Personages:
Bala (deva), Nahuṣa, Samaṇkunāra. (g) *The Three Supreme Deities*: Brāhmaṇa, Viṣṇu, Śiva. (h) *Lesser God*: Kārttikeya. (i) *Goddesses*: Sarasvatī, Lakṣumī, Umā, Pārvatī, Cauḍikā, Śiddhi, Medhā, Śmṛti, Mati, Niyati, Nīruṭi. It is probably significant that Ganeśa and the Avatāras of Viṣṇu are absent from this list.

8. Geography.

In its chapters XIV, XVIII and XXIII the Nātyāṣṭra mentions some geographical names such as Aṅga, Anta (Anti) rgiri, Andhra, Avanti, Arvada, Āvarta, Ānarta, Uśinara. Oḍra, Kaliṅga, Kāśmīra, Kośala, Khasa, Tāmralipta, Tosala, Tripura, Dākṣinātya, Dramīda, Nepāla, Pañcala, Puliṅda (bhūmi), Paunḍra, Prājīyotiṣa. Prāṇśu-pravṛtti, Plavanga, Bahrīgiri, Brahmtottara (Suhmottara), Bhārgava, Magadhā, Madraka, Malavarta, Mahārāṣṭra, Mārgava, Mālava, Mahendra, Mosalā, Vaṅga. Vatsa, Vanavāśa, Vārtika (Mārtika), Vāhlika, Vīśā, Vīdeha, Śrāvasa, Śīlaka, Sindhu, Sarasṭra, Suvarṇa, Gaṅgā, Cārvanvatī, Vravatī, Mahendrā, Malayā, Sahya, Mekala, Kālapanjara, Himālaya, Vindhya, Bhūrata.


The names of the following tribes occur in the Nātyāṣṭra, Kāśi, Kosala, Barbara, Andhra, Dramiḍa, Abhirā, Śābara, Cauḍala, Śaka, Pallava (Pahlava) and Yavana. From the costumes and colours to be assigned to their body it may be possible to trace them historically.

10. *Ars Amatoria*.

The Nātyāṣṭra mentions Kāmāntara or Kāmatantra (XXV, 38, 53-567) and Kāmasūtra (XXXV, 46). But as it divides women into twenty-four classes, and Vatyaṇya’s Kāmasūtra into four classes these names do not seem to relate to the Kāmasūtra which probably comes later.

11. *Arthasastra*.

The Nātyāṣṭra is of opinion that “The members of the court (sabhāstāra) should be appointed after consulting the views of Bṛhaspati who thinks that the following are the qualities required for this office. “They should be always ready for work, alert, free from indolence, undaunted by hard work, affectionate, forbearing, modest, impartial, skillful, trained in politity and good manners, deeply conversant with the art of argumentation and all other branches of knowledge, and not affected by sexual passion and the like” (XXXIV, 87-90). The word sabhāstāra which has been translated here as a member of the court, occurs in the Smṛti of Vyāsa who holds that this officer should hold discussion about morals (adharmeṣakya) for the edification of those who are present (in court). In Mbh 4.1.24, however sabhāstāra appears only as a courtier (sabhya, Nilakaṇṭha) who is particularly interested in gambling (Jolly, Hindu law and Custom, pp. 287-288).
The description of the king, the senapati, the amātya and the prājāvipāka as given in the Nāṭyaśāstra (XXXIV. 78-87) might well have been taken from the now lost work of Bhaṣapaṭi recognised by Kaṭṭila as one of his sources. The Nāṭyaśāstra gives besides one interesting information that the inmates of a royal palace included a snātaka (XXXIV. 84-69) and that there was besides a functionary named kumārādhikṛta (XXXIV. 76-77). As the definition has been lost, it is not possible to know what his duty was. Can he be identified with the kumārāmātya mentioned in Samudragupta’s inscription?

12. Psychology.

The Nāṭyaśāstra seems to be the first in recognizing the twofold importance of psychology in connexion with the production of a play. Its classification of Heroes and Heroines according to their typical mental and emotional states (XXIV. 210ff., XXXIV. 15ff.) proves its admission of the importance of psychology on the creative side of the dramatic art; for with the complete knowledge of all possible reactions of different objects and incidents upon such Heroes and Heroines, the playwright as well as actors and actresses could attain the greatest possible success in characterization. On the critical side also the importance of psychology was discovered by the Hindu theorists almost simultaneously. It was realised early that no strictly objective standard of beauty ever existed, and the enjoyment of a theatrical production consisted of peculiar reactions which the art of the playwright as well as that of the actors could successfully evoke in spectators of different types. It is on this assumption that the theory of Sentiments and States (VI-VII) important alike for the criticism of the theatre and the belles lettres has been elaborated by the author of the Nāṭyaśāstra. Such a view does not allow any kind of dogmatism in the criticism of art and literature, and will make due allowance for the views of people who may widely differ in their tastes because of their varying cultural equipment.

VIII. The Date of the Natyasastra

More than sixteen years ago, a careful investigation of the linguistic, metrical, geographical and ethnographic data, of the evidence to be drawn from the history of poetics and music, of the Kāmasūtra and the Arthaśāstra, and from inscriptions the present writer came to the conclusion that the available text of the Nāṭyaśāstra existed in the second century after Christ, while the tradition which it recorded may go back to a period as early as 100 B.C. (The Date of Bharata-Nāṭyaśāstra”, in the JDL. Vol. XXV. 1934). Since this conclusion was made, a more intensive

---

1 For a bibliography on the Date of the NS. see this paper p. 1.
study of the text as well as accession of fresh data has confirmed the writer’s belief in its soundness. These additional materials are being discussed below.

1. The Geographical Data

Geographical names occur in the Nāṭyaśāstra (XIV. 36ff.) mostly in connexion with pravṛttiś or Local Usages which seem to be a later conception and not at all indispensable for understanding the theatrical art as explained in the Nāṭyaśāstra. In fact the authors of the Daśārūpa and the Nāṭakalakṣaṇa, who speak of the vṛttiś are absolutely silent on pravṛttiś which are connected with them. Considering the fact that these works depend a great deal on the Nāṭyaśāstra their omission of this item may be taken as very significant. Geographical names occurring in connexion with the pravṛttiś are found in the Mbh. and some of the Purāṇas, some of these being almost in the same sequence (see D. C. Sircar, “Text of the Puranic Lists of Peoples” in IHiQ. Vol. XXI., 1945, pp. 297-314). It seems that some interpolator put them into the text of the Nāṭyaśāstra, for associating it with all the different parts of India, though the original work was an exposition of the dramatic art as it was practised in the northern India especially in the midland only. Hence the geographical data should not be used in determining the date of our text.

2. The Natyasatra earlier than Kalidasa

The argument that a particular dramatist who disregards any rule laid down in the Nāṭyaśāstra, will be earlier than it in time, will reverse the accepted chronological relation between the Nāṭyaśāstra and Kālidāsa.

(a) Though the fact has been overlooked by earlier writers on the subject, Kālidāsa too violates the rules of the Nāṭyaśāstra on the following points:

(i) Though the prescribed rule (XIX. 33) is that the king’s wives should be given names connected with the idea of victory, some of Kālidāsa’s royal Heroines have been named as follows: Dhūrīṇī, Irūvati (Mālavī) Harṣapadikā, Vasumati (Śak.).

(ii) It is also in disregard of the rule (XIX. 34) prescribing for the handmaids (prēṣyā) the names of various flowers, that Kālidāsa has Nāgarikā, Madhukarikā, Samībhṛtikā, Nipuṇikā, Candrikā, Kaumudikā (Mālavī), Parabhṛtikā, Caturikā (Śak.) as the names of handmaids in his play. Vakulāvalikā (Mālavī) is possibly an exception.

(iii) Though the prescribed rule (XIX. 34) is that the names having an idea of auspiciousness, should be given to the menials, Kālidāsa has Raivatuka and Sārasuka (Mālavī) as the names of servants.

(iv) The term svāmin has been used by an army-chief (senāpati) in addressing the king (Śak. II) in violation of the prescribed rule that it should be used for the crown-prince (XIX. 12).
(v) Besides these, Kālidāsa has written elaborate Prologues to his plays, though the Nātyaśāstra does not recognize anything of this kind as a part of the play proper. These as well as the departures from the rules in Bhāsa’s play, may be taken as great dramatists’ innovations which as creative geniuses they were fully entitled to.

(b) Besides these there seems to be other facts which probably go to show that Kālidāsa knew the present Nātyaśāstra. They are as follows:

(i) Kālidāsa uses the following technical terms of the Nātyaśāstra: aṅgahāra, vṛtti, sandhi, pāraya, (Kumāra, VII. 91), aṅga-salṭva-vacanā-śrayam nytaṃ (Raghu, XIX. 36), pātra, prāṣṭika, saṃśāvha, aśadeka, uṭpabhanā, sākha, vastu, māyuri mārjanā (Mālavī.)

(ii) Kālidāsa mentions the mythical Bharata as the director of the celestial theatre (Vikram, III).

(iii) According to Kātyāyana, Kālidāsa in his Mālavī. (I. 4.0 ; 21.0) refers to particular passages in the Nātyaśāstra (I. 16-19 ; NŚ (C.) XXX, 92ff.)

3. The Mythological Data

In the paper mentioned in the beginning of this chapter the present writer was mistaken in his interpretation of the word māhāgrāmanā which does not mean Gaṇapati as Abhinava the reputed commentator of the Nātyaśāstra opines (see notes on III.1-8). The absence from the Nātyaśāstra of this deity who does not appear in literature before the fourth century speaks indeed for the great antiquity of this work.

4. The Ethnological Data

The Nātyaśāstra in one passage (XXIII. 99) names Kirātās, Barbaras and Pulindas together with Andhras, Dramilas, Kaśis and Kosalas who were brown (āśīta, lit. not white), and in another passage (XVIII. 44) names Andhras and Dramilas together with Barbaras and Kirātās. Āpāstamba the author of the Dharmaśāstra who lived at the latest in the 300 B.C. belonged to the Andhra land (Jolly, Hindu Law and Custom, p. 6 and also P.V. Kane, Hist. of the Dharmaśāstra. Vol. I. p. 45). Hence it may be assumed on the basis of these names that the Nātyaśāstra was in all likelihood composed at a time when a section at least of the Andhras and the Dramilas (forefathers of the modern Tamils) were still not looked upon as thoroughly civilized. Such a time may not have been much after the beginning of the Christian era.

5. The Epigraphical Data

Sylvain Lévi has discovered parallelism between the Nātyaśāstra and the inscriptions of the Indo-Scythian Ksatrapas like Chastana who are referred to therein as svāmī a term applicable, according to the Sāstra to
the yuvrajś or crown-prince (I. Ant. Vol. XXXIII. pp. 168f). Though MM.P.V. Kane (Introduction to the SD p. viii) has differed from him, Lévi's argument does not seem to be without its force. It may not be considered unusual for common persons who are intimate with him to show the future king an exaggerated honour by calling him svāmin a term to be formally applied to the reigning monarch only. Besides the argument put forward by Lévi, there may be collected from the inscriptions other facts too which may incline us to take 200-300 A.C. as the time of the compilation of the Nāṭyaśāstra. These are as follows:

(a) The word gāndharvā probably in the sense in which the Nāṭyaśāstra uses it (XXXVI. 76) occurs in the Junagarh Rock inscription of Rudradaman, I (150 A.C.). This also mentions terms, like saunāthava and niyuddha which we meet in the Nāṭyaśāstra probably in the same sense (Junagarh Inscription of Rudradaman I. See Select Inscriptions, pp. 172-173).

(b) The respect for 'Cows and Brahmins' (go-brāhmaṇa) which the author of the Nāṭyaśāstra shows at the end of his work (XXXVI. 77) has its parallel in the inscription referred to above. And respect for Brahmins also finds expression in more than one inscription belonging to the 3rd century A.C. (op. cit. pp. 159, 161, 165)

(c) The three tribal names Śaka, Yavana, and Pahlava appearing in the inscription of Vasistiputra Pulomayi (149 A.C.) occur in the same order in the Nāṭyaśāstra (op. cit., p. 197,) and NŚ.

The cumulative effect of all these data seems to be that they may enable us to place the Nāṭyaśāstra about 200 A.C., the time of these inscriptions.

6. The Natyasastra earlier than Bhasa

Lack of conformity to the dramaturgic rules of the Nāṭyaśāstra has sometimes been cited as an evidence of the antiquity of Bhaśa, the argument being that as he wrote before the rules were formulated, he could not observe them. This view however, seems to be mistaken. For the rules occurring in the Nāṭyaśāstra cannot, for obvious reasons, be the author's fabrication without relation to any pre-existent literature.1 If the Nāṭyaśāstra was written after Bhaśa's plays, its rules had every chance of having been a generalisation from them as well as from numerous other dramatic works existing at the time, while the contrary being the case (i.e., Bhaśa being later than the Nāṭyaśāstra) some novelties are likely to be

1 F. Hall in his Introduction (p. 12) to the Dasarupa says: At all events, he (Bharata) would hardly have elaborated them (the rules) except as inductions, from actual compositions.
introduced by the dramatist in disregard of the existing rules. It is on this line of argument that the chronological relation between Bhāṣa and the Nāṭyāṣṭra, will be judged below.

(a) On no less than three points, Bhāṣa seems to have disregarded the rules of the Nāṭyāṣṭra. These are as follows:

(i) The sūtradhāra (Director) begins the plays, though according to the Nāṭyāṣṭra the sāhāpaka (Introducer) should perform this function (V. 167).

(ii) In contravention of the rule of the Nāṭyāṣṭra (XX. 20) Bhāṣa allows death in Act I of Abhiṣeka.

(iii) In the Madhyama-vyāyoga and the Dūtaghōtkaṇa, Bhāṣa does not give the usual bharatavaṇukaya (final benediction) and what he gives in its stead, may be an innovation.

Hence it may be assumed that the Nāṭyāṣṭra was completed before the advent of Bhāṣa.

(b) Besides this, there seems to be some good evidence in his works to show that the dramatist was acquainted with this ancient work on drama. For example, he mentions in a humorous context the Jester confounding the Nāṭyāṣṭra (Avi. II 0. 38-39) with the Rāmāyaṇa. Bhāṣa’s mention of some technical terms as well as the acquaintance which he shows with some special rules of the Nāṭyāṣṭra may also be said to strengthen the above assumption.

(i) First, about the technical terms. They are: sāuḍhava, prastāvanā, sūtradhāra, prēkaka, cāri, gati, bhadramukha, hāva, bhāva, māriṣa, mālakhyā, the root patha, ranga.

(ii) The hetāra in the Cārudatta (I. 26, 3.8) says within herself, “I am unworthy of being allowed entrance into the harem” (abhāṣīni aham abhantara-pavesassī). This seems to refer to the NS. XX. 54. The expression, “by means of a Nāṭaka suitting the time” (kūlasamvādīśā nāṭina) in Pratimā. (I. 4. 7) probably points to NS. XXVII. 88ff.

(iii) The vocal skill of the hetāra referred to by the Śakūra (Parasito) in the Cārudatta may also be said to point to the elaborate rules regarding intonation (kūku) in the NS. XIX 37-8.

(iv) Besides these, expressions like “the two feet made facile in dance due to training” (mṛtyupadeśā-nīṣaḍa-carṇam) and “she represents the words with all her limbs” (abhinaṇāt vācaṃsa saroğāra) in the Cārudatta (I.9.0, 16.0) probably relate to the elaborate discussion on dance and the use of gestures in the Nāṭyāṣṭra.

On the basis of all these it may be assumed that Bhāṣa was acquainted with the contents of the present text of the Nāṭyāṣṭra. Hence
it may be placed in the 2nd century A.C., i.e. one century before the time generally assigned to Bhaśa's works. (Jolly, Introduction to Āś, p. 10, but according to Korn Wall Rāṣṭa's date may be the 2nd century A. C. See I.D. p. 51).

From the foregoing discussions it may be reasonable to assume the existence of the Nāṭyaśāstra in the 2nd century A.C., though it must not be supposed that the work remained uninterfered with by interpolators of later ages. Such an interpolation may exist more or less in all the ancient texts. For example, Aristotle's Poetics too, in its received text, has been suspected to have interpolated passages in it. There are indeed interpolated passages in the Nāṭyaśāstra and some of these have been pointed out and a few more may by some chance be discovered afterwards. But this may not bring down the work as a whole to later times.

See notes on XVIII. 6, 48; XX. 63. Besides these cases, the seventeen couplets after XV. 101 and the five couplets after XVI. 169 are spurious. For these do not give any important information regarding the art of the theatre or dramaturgy and may be merely scholastic additions. The passage on pravritti XIV. 35-55 may also be spurious.
THE NĀṬYAŚĀSTRA

CHAPTER ONE

THE ORIGIN OF DRAMA

Salutation

1. With a bow to Pitāmaha¹ (Brahman) and Maheśvara² (Śiva) I shall explain the Canons of Drama³ (Nāṭyaśāstra) which were uttered by Brahman.

Sages question.

2-5. Once in the days of yore, high-souled sages such as, Ātreya¹ and others who had subdued their senses, approached the pious Bharata² the master of dramatic art during an intermission of studies (anadhyāya). He (Bharata) then just finished

1 (B.G. same). ¹ Pitāmaha (the Grand-father) is a Purānic epithet of the Vedic god Brahman. For, the Pitṛs (the Fathers) such as Aṅgiras, Bhṛgu, Dakṣa and Marici and others, whose descendants peopled this earth, were their progeny. In the later literature and religion of India, Brahman gradually recedes in the background and practically vanishes. His place is taken by the extra-Vedic Śiva, and Viṣṇu in his fullfledged Purānic character.

² Maheśvara (the Great God) is another name of Śiva who is originally a pre-Vedic deity. Salutation to Śiva along with Brahman, is very rare in Indian literature.

³ By ‘drama’ in this connexion is to be understood any play in its theatrical and literary character. For on this point Ag. (I. p. 7) says that the NŚ. is meant for the producer (of a play) as well as the poet (=playwright). कविताकोसीधिशीमयर वाचानिधि.

2-5 (B.G. same). ¹ Ātreya—There are two Ātreyas. One is a disciple of Yājñavalkya (Mbh.) and another that of Vāmadeva (Brahma P.) See Vidyalankar, jivam-kośa, sub voce.

² Purāṇas except the Matsya (24. 28-30) are silent on this Bharata, the authority on the Canons of Drāma.
the muttering of prayers (japa) and was surrounded by his sons. The sages respectfully said to him, "O Brahmān, how did originate the Nāṭyaśāstra  similar to the Vedas, which you have properly composed? And for whom is it meant, how many limbs does it possess, what is its extent and how is it to be applied? Please speak to us in detail about it all."

Bharata answers.

6. Hearing these words of the sages, Bharata began in reply to speak thus about the Nāṭyaśāstra:

7-12. "Get yourselves cleansed, be attentive and hear about the origin of the Nāṭyaśāstra devised by Brahmān. O Brahmīns, in the days of yore when the Golden Age (Kṛta-yuga) passed with the reign of Svāyambhuva (Manu), and the Silver Age (Tretā-yuga) commenced with the career of Vaivasvata Manu, and people became addicted to sensual

---

3 Nāṭyaśāstra—The 'Nāṭyaśāstra' according to Ag. is a synonym for the Nāṭyaśāstra', and is no Vedic work. He (I. p. 4) says: वह व धार्मिक सौदागः, साधुधार्मिक स्वरुप: सब्योऽसि सर: सब्योऽसि सर:.

4 pramāṇa=extent. Ag. takes the word in the sense of proof (pramāṇam atra niścaya-janakatvam), but he cites another view as well, which takes the word to mean 'number' and is as follows: बच सु नायस्य ताला इव शास्त्रिनां वायूविविभागिनीयानां का संक्षिप्तिः विभाविविभागिन्यां प्रश्न तथा, जस्ते.

5 From the five questions put in here, it is not to be assumed that the treatment of subjects mentioned will follow the order of these.

6 (B.G. same).

7-12 (B.G. same). The reference here is to the Nāṭyaśāstra alleged to have been composed by Brahmān in about 36000 ślokas. It is also believed that, later on a shorter work (in 12000 granthas) was based on this great work and it was in the form of a dialogue between Śiva and Pārvatī. This is considered by some to be the Ādibharata or Sādāśivabhārata. The present NŚ. contains about 12000 granthas and it is supposed to include the views of the authors of the now extinct Nāṭyaśāstra (composed by Brahmān) as well as of the Ādibharata. See Preface to NŚ. (B.) pp. 6-7. On this point Ag (I. p. 8) says: तद्भव नारायणं इत्यत्र शास्त्रसंस्कारसम्भवितमुपाल्लम आदित्याभारात्तमार्गीदायम् साधूव्यवस्थितविवेचनो षड्षां श्रावनं दीर्घिचित्तम् शास्त्रम्

1a A. K. Coomaraswamy has freely translated 8-17 (The Mirror of Gestures, New York, 1936, p. 16).
pleasures, were under the sway of desire and greed, became infatuated with jealousy and anger and [thus] found their happiness mixed with sorrow, and Jambudvīpa protected by the Lokapālas (guardians of the worlds) was full of gods, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Yaksas, Rākṣasas and great Uragas (Nāgas), the gods, with Indra (Mahendra) as their head, (approached) Brahmān and spoke to him, 'We want an object of diversion, which must be audible as well as visible. As the Vedas are not to be listened to by those born as Śūdras, be pleased to create another Veda which will belong to all the Colour-groups (varṇa)'.

13. "Let it be so", said he in reply and then having dismissed the king of gods (Indra) he resorted to yoga (concentration of mind) and recalled to mind the four Vedas.

14-15. He then thought: "I shall make a fifth Veda on the Nāṭya with the Semi-historical Tales (ītihāsa), which will conduce to duty (dharma), wealth (artha) as well as fame, will

---

2 grāmyadharma—Ag. explains the word differently and as follows : ग्राम्यदर्मिका जनावृत्तिविदार्थी वार्ता: अपनाल् त्रिविदार्थी वार्ता.

3 According to ancient Indian geography the earth was divided into seven dvīpas (continents). Jambudvīpa is one of them. It included Bhārata-varṣa or Bharata-varṣa, known at present as 'India'. Viṣṇu P. (ch. 1-12). See Winternitz, Hist. of Indian Literature, Vol. I, p. 548.

4 On this point Ag. says: इति हस्तिति सम्बन्धितसिंहनन्दिकान्.

5 This relates to the four classes such as Brāhmaṇa, Kṣatriya, Vaiśya and Śūdra.

13 (B.G. same). 1 Yoga has been defined in Patañjali's work as cittavṛtti nirodha. It however begins with the concentration of the mind.

2 After 13, B. reads one additional couplet. But G. considers this passage to be spurious and puts it in the footnote.

14-15 (B.G. same). 1 In the early Indian literature the ītihāsa alone was considered as the fifth Veda. See Chāndogya Up. VII. 1f. and 7b, and Suttramātī, II.7 (śeṭhāsūtta). Kaṇṭhila's Arthasastra too gives the same position to the ītihāsa. See Winternitz, Vol. I. p. 313.

5 On ītihāsa see note below.

3 dharma also means virtue, law and custom etc.
contain good counsel and collection [of other materials for human well-being], will give guidance to people of the future as well in all their actions, will be enriched by the teaching of all scriptures (śāstra) and will give a review of all arts and crafts (śilpa)\(^4\).

16. With this resolve the Holy One (bhagavat) from his memory of all the Vedas shaped this Nāṭyaveda compiled from the four of them.

17-18. The recitative (pāthya) he took from the Rgveda, the song from the Sāman, His trionic Representation (abhinaya) from the Yajus, and Sentiments (rasa) from the Atharvaveda, [and] thus was created the Nāṭyaveda connected with the Vedas principal and subsidiary (vedopaveda)\(^1\), by the holy Brahman who knows [them] all.

19-20. After the creation of the Nāṭyaveda Brahman said to Indra (lit. the lord of the gods), “Semi-historical Tales (itihāsa)\(^4\) have been composed by me, you are to get them [dramatized and] acted\(^2\) by gods. Pass on this Nāṭyaveda to those of the gods who are skilful, learned, free from stage-fright and inured to hard work.”

\(^4\) The word śilpa is very often synonymous with kālā. As the 64 kālās enumerated in different works include different arts and crafts, these two words may be translated as ‘arts and crafts’. Śilpa, however, is sometimes to be distinguished from kālā; and then it may mean merely ‘a craft’.

16 (B.G. same).

17-18 (B.G. same). 1 Vedopaveda—the Vedas and the Upavedas i.e. the Vedas principal as well as subsidiary. The Vedas are all well-known, and there are at least four Upavedas, one being attached to each of the Vedas. They are as follows: the Ayur-veda.(the Science of Medicine) to the Rgveda, Dhanur-veda (the Science of Arms)—to the Yajurveda, Gandharva-veda (Musical Science) to the Sāmaveda, and Sthāpatya-śāstra (the Science of Architecture) to the Atharvaveda.

19-20 (B.G. same). 1 Kauṭilya's Arthaśāstra in its definition of itihāsa enumerates purīna and itiṣṭhāta as belonging to its contents. An itiṣṭhāta, according to Winternitz, can only mean an “historical event” and purīna probably means “mythological and legendary lore.” Vol. I, p. 518. Pargiter has, however, extracted solid historical facts from some of the
21-22. At these words of Brahman, Indra bowed to him with folded palms and said in reply, "O the best and holy one, gods are neither able to receive it and maintain it, nor are they fit to understand it and make use of it; they are unfit to do anything with the drama."

23. The sages (muni) who know the mystery of the Vedas and have fulfilled their vows, are capable of maintaining this (Nātyaveda) and putting it into practice."

The Nātyaveda and Bharata’s one hundred sons

24. On these words of Śakra (Indra), Brahman said to me; "O the sinless one, you with your one hundred sons will have to put it (the Nātyaveda) to use."

25. Thus ordered. I learnt the Nātyaveda from Brahman

extant Purāṇas (See his Ancient Indian Historical Traditions, London, 1929). According to the native Indian tradition itihāsa is said to be an account of events that occurred in the past, carrying in it instructions about duty, wealth, enjoyment of pleasure, and salvation. The traditional śloka is—

The same tradition assigns the position of itihāsa to the Mahābhārata the great Indian epic. It is possibly this itihāsa that has been connected with the Nātyaveda by the author of the śāstra. Hence it appears that Oldenberg’s theory about the original connexion between epic and dramatic poetry, is worthy of serious consideration. Nātyukhyam pañcamam vedam setthāsam karomy aham (15) seems to be very significant. Ag. (I. p. 18) explains setthāsam as itihāsopadeśakaruripam sastrabhedam. See Winternitz, Vol. I. pp. 100 ff. 312 n. 2 See note on 14-15 above.

21-22 (B.G. same). 1 It may be tentatively suggested here that the gods represented the primitive Indo-Aryans who possibly had no drama. On this point see the author’s Prācin Bhāratar Nātya-kalā (in Bengali), Calcutta, 1945 p. 60 ff.

23 (B.G. same). 1 The word muni is evidently to be derived from the Pkt. root muṇya ‘to know’ which is most probably not of Indo-European origin.

24 (B.G. same). 1 The Purāṇas and similar other works totally ignore these one hundred sons of Bharata.

25 (B. G. same).
and made my able sons study it as also [learn] its proper application.

Names of Bharata’s one hundred sons

26-39. 1[Names of my sons are:] Śaṇḍilya, Vātsyya, Kohala, Dattila, Jatila, Ambandhaka, Taṅḍu, Agniśikha, Saindhava, Puloman, Śaḍvali, Vipula, Kapiṅjali, Bādari, Yama, Dhūmrāyaṇa, Jambudhvaja, Kākajangha, Svarṇaka, Tāpasa, Kedāra, Śālikarṇa, Dīrghagātu, Śālika, Kautsa, Taṅḍayapi, Piṅgala, Citraka, Bandhula, Bhaktaka, Muṣṭika Saindavyayama Taitila, Bhārgava, Śuci, Bahula Abudha, Budhasena, Pāṇḍukarṇa, Kerula, Rjuka, Maṇḍaka, Šambara, Vaṇjula, Māgadhā, Sarala, Kartr, Ugra, Tusešā, Pārṣada, Gautama, Bādarayaṇa, Viśāla, Šabala, Sunāhā, Meṣa, Kāliya, Bhramara, Pṛthunmukha Muni, Nakhakūṭa, Aṣmakūṭa, Śatpada, Utama, Pāduka, Upānat, Śruti, Āṣaśvaru, Agnikūṇḍa, Ājyakūṇḍa, Vitāṇḍya, Taṅḍya, Kartarākṣa, Hiranyākṣa, Kuśala, Duḥṣaha,

26-39 (B. same; G. 26-38). 1 B. and G. read some of these names differently. Some at least of the so-called sons of Bharata might in fact have been the authors who wrote on dramaturgy, histrionic art, dance and music etc. Śaṇḍiḷāṭupāla mention the first four. See below note 2-7.

2 Kohala has again been mentioned in Niś. (C.) XXXVI. 65. Ag. has referred to his opinion several times and quoted from his work on nāṭya (Vol. I. pp. 140, 173, 182, 183, 285; Vol. II. pp. 265, 281, 133, 142, 144, 146, 147, 151, 155, 407, 416, 421, 434, 452, 458, 459). Later writers like Dāmodararagupta, Hemacandra, Sāṅgadeva, Sāradātana and Śaṇḍiḷāṭupāla acknowledge him as an authority on drama and music. (See S. K. De, Skt. Poetics, p. 25 f.n.)

3 Ag. has quoted a passage from the work of one Dattilācārya (Vol. I. p. 205). He seems to be identical with this Dattila. See also note 1 above.

4 Śālikarṇa is probably identical with Śaṭakarṇa referred to and quoted in the commentary of the Anargharāṣṭhrava (p. 7. see Lévi, II. pp. 27, 65) and the Nāṭakalakṣaṇa. (p. 47, ed. M. Dillon). Cf. Śāliśvāhana = Śaṭavāhana.

5 The Nāṭakalakṣaṇa (pp. 46, 114) refers to and quotes from him.

6 The Nāṭakalakṣaṇa (pp. 114, 121) refers to and quotes from this authority. So does SD (295).

7 The Nāṭakalakṣaṇa (pp. 4, 19, 114, 115) refers to and quotes from this authority.
THE ORIGIN OF DRAMA

39-40. [Thus] at the command of Brahman and for the benefit of the people I assigned to my sons different roles suitable to them.

41. O Brahmins, I then prepared to give a performance (prayoga) in which was adopted dramatic Styles (ṛtī) such as the Verbal (bhāratī),¹ the Grand (sātratī), and the Energetic (arabhātī).

Need of the Kaiśiki Style

42-43. I [then went] to Brahman and] after bowing, informed him [of my work]. Now Brahman (lit. the gurū, of gods) told me to include the Graceful (kaiśiki) Style also [in my performance], and he asked me to name materials conducive to its introduction.

43-45. Thus addressed by the master I replied, "Give me materials necessary for putting the Graceful (kaiśiki) Style into practice. At the time of Nilakaṇṭha’s¹ (Śiva) dance I have seen his Graceful Style appropriate to the Erotic Sentiment, and this requires

---


41 (B. same ; G. 40). ¹ The four Styles probably related to four tribes such as Bharata, Sāttvata, Keśika and Arabhata. Among these Bharata and Sāttvata are wellknown. The remaining two names might have been lost.

42-43 (B. same ; G. 41). ¹ G om. 42a.

² prayāka (=embracing) has been taken to mean 'going to'.

43-45 (B. same ; G. 42-44a). ¹ Śiva is India’s traditional god of dance. See M. Ghosh (ed.) Abhinayadarpaṇa, Calcutta, 1934, English Translation, p. 1.
beautiful dresses and is endowed with gentle Āṅgārās and has Sentiments (vasa), States (bhāva) and action as its soul.

Creation of Apsarasas for practising the Kaiśiki Style

46-47. This Style cannot be practised properly by men except with the help of women. Then the powerful Lord (Brahman) created from his mind nymphs (apsaras) who were skillful in embellishing the drama, and gave them over to me [for helping me] in the performance.

Names of Apsarasas

47-50. [Their names are]: Mahiṣaśi, Sukaśi, Mārakeśi, Sulocana, Sandāmini, Devadatta, Devasena, Manoramā, Sudatti, Sundari, Vidagdha, Sumāla, Santati, Sunandā, Sumukhi, Māgadhī, Arjuna, Saralā, Keralā, Dhṛti, Nandā, Supuṣkalā and Kalabhā.

Śvāti and Nārada engaged to help Bharata

50-51. And by him (Brahman) Śvāti together with his disciples was employed to play on musical instruments, (lit. drums) and celestial musicians (gandharva) such as, Nārada and others were engaged in singing songs.

51-53. Thus after comprehending the dramatic art (nāṭya) which arose out of the Vedas and their [different] limbs, I along with my sons as well as Śvāti and Nārada approached Brahman (lit. lord of the worlds) with folded palms and

---

2 For āṅgāra see NS. IV. 16 ff. Read nityāṅgāhāra for nṛtīṅgāhāra in B. 2 For details on States see NS. VII.

46-47 (B. same; G. 44b-45). 1 nityāṅgāhāra here may be taken also to mean nityāṅgāhāras mentioned in NS. XXIV. 4-5.

47-50 (B. 47-50a, G. 46-4v). 1 B. and G. read some of the names in a slightly different manner.

50-51 (B. 50b-51a, G. 49). 1 One Śvāti has been mentioned in the Viṣṇu P. Nārada is also a well-known Purānic sage. He is mentioned as a musician in Bhāgavata and Viṣṇu P. See Vidyālankar. JK., sub voce.

3 Ag. thinks gīna in this connexion means the playing of stringed instruments and flutes.

51-53 (B. 51b-53a, G. 50-51).
said that the dramatic art (nātya) has been mastered, and prayed for his command.

The Banner Festival of Indra and the first production of a play

53-55. On these words, Brahman said, "A very suitable time for the production of a play has come: the Banner Festival\(^1\) of Indra has just begun; make use of the Nātyaveda now on this occasion".

55-58. I then went to that festival in honour of Indra's victory which took place after the Dānavas and the Asuras (enemies of the gods) were killed. In this festival where jubilant gods assembled in great numbers I performed for their satisfaction the holy\(^1\) Benediction (nāndī) containing blessings with words in their eightfold\(^2\) aspects (aśṭāṅga, lit. of eight limbs). Afterwards I devised an imitation of the situation in which the Daityas were defeated by gods (and), which represented [sometimes] an altercation and tumult and [sometimes] mutual cutting off and piercing [of limbs or bodies].

The pleased gods reward Bharata's party

58-61. Then Brahman as well as the other gods were pleased with the performance and gave us all sorts of gifts\(^1\) as a token of joy that filled their mind. First of all the pleased Indra

---

53-55 (B. 53b-55a; G. 52-53). \(^1\) This festival occurred on the twelfth day of the bright half of the moon in the month of Bhādra. It was a very popular festival in ancient India. Āśvaghoṣa mentions it in his kāvya. Maha, a part of the compound dhvaja-maha is simply a Pkt. form of the word makha meaning 'sacrifice'; cf. Indra-makha.

55-58 (B. 55b-58a; G. 54-56). \(^1\) Veda-sammita (veda-nimrita, G.) means 'like the Veda' i.e. 'holy'.

\(^2\) The eight aspects of words are noun (nāma), verb (ākhyāta), particle (nīpāta), prefix (upasarga), compound word (samāsā), secondary suffix (taddhīta), euphonic combination (sandhi), nominal and verbal suffixes (viśhakti). See NŚ. XV. 4.

58-61. (B. 58b-61, G. 57-59) \(^1\) Making gifts to dancers, singers and actors at a performance, is a very old custom in India. Such gifts were made by rich members of the audience, while the common people enjoyed
(Nakra) gave his auspicious banner, then Brahman a Kutilaka² and Varuna a golden pitcher (bhriguvara), Surya (the sun-god) gave an umbrella, Siva success (vibudhi), and Vayu (the wind-god) a fan. Vishnu gave us a lion-seat (simhasana), Kuvera a crown, and the goddess Sarasvati gave visibility as well as audibility³.

62-63. ¹ The rest of the gods, and the Gandharvas, the Yakas, the Rakshasas and the Pannagas (Nagas) who were present in that assembly and were of different birth and merit, gladly gave my sons speeches suited to their different roles [in the play], States (bhara)², Sentiments (rasa), [good physical] form, [proper] movement [of limbs] and strength as well as beautiful ornaments.

64-65. Now when the performance relating to the killing of the Daityas and the Danavas began, the Daityas who came there [uninvited] instigated the Vighnas (malevolent spirits) with Virupaksa as their leader, said, "Come forward, we shall not tolerate this dramatic performance."

66. Then the Vighnas (evil spirits) together with the Asuras resorted to supernatural power (maya) and paralysed the speech, movement as well as memory of the actors.

The performance without any payment. This old custom is now dying out under the influence of modern theatres which realise the price of the entertainment beforehand by selling tickets.

² Kutilaka.—Ag. takes it to mean 'a curved stick fit to be used by the Jester'. But he does not seem to be supported in this by the old dramatic literature. In Kalidasa's Malavi. however occur bhuangama-kutila-dayakatha and dayakatha (ed. Pandit, Bombay, 1889, IV, 150, 160). But it is not clear from the context whether it belonged to the Jester. The Ns. XXIII 167-170 describes probably this dayakatha, but does not connect it with the Jester.

³ From now on the numbering of complets is wrong in B.

² For details on States see Ns. VI.

64-65 (B. same ; G. 62-63). ¹ na ksamisyamahe (nettham icchamahe, B).

66 (B. same ; G. 64).
67-68. Seeing this injury to them, Indra sat in meditation to ascertain the cause of break in the performance and found out that, surrounded on all sides by the Vighnas (evil spirits), the Director (sūtradhāra) together with his associates (actors) had been rendered senseless and inert.

69-70. Then with eyes turning in anger he rose and took up that best banner staff (dhevaja), brilliant with all the jewels set in it. With this Jarjara Indra beat to death the Asuras and the Vighnas who were hanging about the stage [for mischief].

71-73. The Vighnas together with the Dānavas having been slain, all the gods said in joy, “O [Bharata,] you have got a divine weapon with which all destroyers of a play have been made jarjara (beaten to pulp). Hence it will have the name of Jarjara.1

73-75. The remaining enemies too who may come to do violence to [actors] will fare like this.” To the gods, Indra then said with pleasure, “Let it be so: this Jarjara will be the protection of all actors.”

75-76. [And afterwards], when the play was ready and Indra’s festival continued in full force, the remaining Vighnas began to create terror for the rest of the actors.

76-78. Having noticed these attempts caused by the insult of the Daityas1 I, along with my sons, approached Brahman [and said], “O the holy one and the best of gods, the Vighnas (the evil spirits) are determined to destroy this dramatic performance; so enlighten me about the means of its protection.”

---

1. This is evidently an instance of folk-etymology. We read 72b. as, साध्विन्वि विमो: च पूरे ते स अर्थसंस्कारात्: (C.) but B. G. अर्थसंस्कारसंस्कारात् मैत्रीभविति शास्त्रम्: कहत: नि: औषधोऽस्य हेमाशिकांशि:।
2. daityānām (madarthe, ḍ.)
78-79. "O the high-souled one," said Brahman then to Viśvakarman,1 "build carefully a playhouse of the best type."

79-81. After constructing it according to this instruction1 he (i.e. Viśvakarman) went with folded palms to Brahman’s court [and said], "O god, please have a look at the playhouse which has [just] been made ready." Then Brahman, along with Indra and all other good (lit. the best) gods, went to have a view of the playhouse.

82-88. On seeing it Brahman said to the rest of gods, "You ought to co-operate in the protection of the playhouse in its several parts [and of the objects relating to dramatic performance]: Candra (the moon-god) to protect the main building; the Lokapālas (guardians of the worlds) its sides, the Maruts its four corners, Varnā the space [within the building], Mitra the tiring room (nepathya), Agni its plinth1, clouds the musical instruments2, deities of four Colour-groups (varṇa)3 the pillars, the Ādityas and the Rudras the space between the pillars, the Bhūtas (spirits) the rows [of seats = dhāraṇī], the Apsarasas its rooms, the Yakṣīṇīs the entire house, the ocean-god the ground, Yama the door, the two Nāga kings (Ananta and Vāsuki) the two blades of the door (dvārapatra)4, the Rod5 of Yama the door-frame, Śiva’s Pike the top of the door.

88-93. 1 Niyati and Yama (Mṛtuyu) were made two doorkeepers, and Indra himself stayed by the side of the stage. In the
Mattavāraṇī was placed Lightning which was capable of killing Daityas, and the protection of its pillars was entrusted to the very strong Bhūtas, Yakṣas, Piśacās and Guhyakas. In the Jarjara was posted Thunder (vaijra) the destroyer of Daityas, and in its sections (parva) were stationed the best and powerful gods. In the topmost section was placed Brahman, in the second Śiva, in the third Viṣṇu, in the fourth Kārtikeya and in the fifth great Nāgas such as Śeṣa, Vāsuki and Takṣaka."

93-94. Thus for the destruction of the Vīghnas, gods were placed in different parts of the Jarjara, and Brahman himself occupied the middle of the stage. It is for this reason that flowers are scattered there [at the beginning of the performance].

95. Denizens of the nether regions such as, the Yakṣas, the Guhyakas and the Pannagas were employed to protect the bottom of the stage.

96. Let Indra protect the actor who assumes the role of the hero, Sarasvati the actress assuming the role of the heroine, Oṃkāraḥ the Jester and Śiva the rest of the characters (dramatis personae).

97. He (Brahman) said that the gods who were employed to protect it (i.e. the play) would be its guardian deities.

Brahman pacifies the Vīghnas

98-99. In the meanwhile gods in a body said to Brahman, "You should pacify the Vīghnas by the conciliatory method (sāman). This (method) is to be applied first, and secondly the making of gifts (dāna); and (these proving futile) one should afterwards create

98-94. (B. 95b-96; G. 92b-93). 1 See NŚ. V. 74.

95 (B. 97; G. 94).

96 (B. 98; G. 95). 1 Sarasvati mentioned here seems to be the Vedic goddess of the same name. See Rk. I, 142.9 and JK. sub voce.

2 Oṃkāra as a deity is very rarely to be met with.

97 (B. 99; G. 96).
dissension [among enemies], and this too proving unsuccessful punitive force (daṇḍa) should be applied [for curbing them].

100. Hearing these words of the gods, Brahman called the evil spirits and said, "Why are you out for spoiling the dramatic performance?"

101-103. Questioned thus by Brahman, Virūpākṣa together with the Daityas and the Vighnas, said these conciliatory words: "The knowledge of the dramatic art (nāṭya-veda) which you have introduced for the first time, at the desire of the gods, has put us in an unfavourable light, and this is done by you for the sake of the gods; this ought not to have not been done by you who is the first progenitor (lit. grand-father) of the world, from whom came out alike gods as well as Daityas."

104-105. These words being uttered by Virūpākṣa, Brahman said, 'Enough of your anger, O Daityas, give up your grievance (lit. sorrow), I have prepared this Nāṭya-veda which will determine the good luck or ill luck of you as well as of the gods, and which will take into account acts and ideas of you as well as of the Daityas.

Characteristic of a drama

106. In it (nāṭya) there is no exclusive representation of you or of the gods: for the drama is a representation of the state of the Three Worlds (bhāvānukirtana).

107. [In it] sometimes there is [reference to] duty, sometimes to games, sometimes to money, sometimes to peace, and

98-99. (B. 100-101 ; G. 97-98). ¹ This is an ancient Indian political maxim.

100 (B. 102 ; G. 99).

101-103 (B. 103-105 ; G. 100-102). ¹ This name occurs in Rām. and Mbh. and in some Purāṇas, but none can be identified with Virūpākṣa mentioned here. See Vidyalankar, JK. sub voce.

104-105 (B. 106-107 ; G. 103-104). ¹ For Virūpākṣa, B. reads vighnānām.


107. (B. 109 ; G. 106).
sometimes laughter is found in it, sometimes fight, sometimes love-making and sometimes killing [of people].

108-109. This teaches duty to those bent on doing their duty, love to those who are eager for its fulfilment, and it chastises those who are ill-bred or unruly, promotes self-restraint in those who are disciplined, gives courage to cowards, energy to heroic persons, enlightens men of poor intellect and gives wisdom to the learned.¹

110. This gives diversion to kings, and firmness [of mind] to persons afflicted with sorrow, and [hints of acquiring] money to those who are for earning it, and it brings composure to persons agitated in mind.

111-112. The drama as I have devised, is a mimicry¹ of actions and conducts of people, which is rich in various emotions, and which depicts different situations. This will relate to actions of men good, bad and indifferent, and will give courage, amusement and happiness as well as counsel to them all.

113. The drama will thus be instructive¹ to all, through actions and States (bhāva) depicted in it, and through Sentiments, arising out of it.

114-115. It will [also] give relief to unlucky persons who are afflicted with sorrow and grief or [over]-work, and will be conducive to observance of duty (dharma) as well as to fame, long life, intellect and general good, and will educate people.

116. There is no wise maxim, no learning, no art or craft, no device, no action that is not found in the drama (nātya).

---
¹ All these lay stress on the educative aspect of dramatic performances.

110 (B. 112 ; G. 109).

111-112 (B. 113-114 ; G. 110-111). ¹ Aristotle also brings in 'imitation' to explain poetry and drama (See Poetics).

113 (B. 115 ; G. 112). ¹ See above 108-109 note.

114-115 (B. 116-117 ; G. 113-114).

116 (B. 118 ; G. 115).
117-118. Hence I have devised the drama in which meet all the departments of knowledge, different arts and various actions. So, (O, Daityas) you should not have any anger towards the gods; for a mimicry of the world with its Seven Divisions (saptadvipa)¹ has been made a rule of, in the drama.

119. ¹ Stories taken out of Vedic works as well as Semi-historical Tales (itiṣa) [so embellished that they are] capable of giving pleasure, is called drama (nātya).

120. ¹ A mimicry of the exploits of gods, Āsuras, kings as well as house-holders in this world, is called drama.

121. And when human nature with its joys and sorrows, is depicted by means of Representation through Gestures, and the like (i.e. Words, Costume, and Temperament or Sattva) it is called drama.²

Offering Pūjā to the gods of the stage

122-123. The Brahman said to all the gods, “Perform duly in the playhouse a ceremony (yajña) with offerings, Homa,¹ Mantras², (sacred) plants, Japa³: and the offerings in it should consist of eatables hard as well as soft (bhajya and bhaksya⁴).

124. Thus this Veda (i.e. this Nātyaveda) will have a

¹ (B. 119-120; G, 116). According to the Purānic geography the world was divided into seven continents such as Jambu, Plakṣa, Sālamli, Kuśa, Krauṇḍa, Śaka and Puṣkara. Each of these continents was further subdivided into nine regions, and Bhārata (India) is a region of the Jambu continent.

119 (123L.-124S.; G, 119) ¹ B. reads some couplet more after this.

120 (B. 121b-122a; G, 117) ¹ We read 120b as kitānukaraṇam loke nātyam etad bhāvisyati; but B. G. differently.

121 (B. 122b-123a; G, 118).

122-123 (B. 125b-127a; G, 120-121). ¹ homa—offering oblations to gods by throwing ghee into the consecrated fire.

² mantra—formula of prayer sacred to any deity.

³ Japa—repeating a mantra or muttering it many times.

⁴ ब्रह्मास्मातबपद्यि प्रज्ञाविदं कविण्यं, घर भक्तिपालिद्वैतं सीतास्वादित.
happy adoration of the world. A dramatic spectacle (preksā) should not be held without offering Pūjā to the stage.

125. He who will hold a dramatic spectacle without offering the Pūjā, will find his knowledge [of the art] useless, and he will be reborn as an animal of lower order (tirgaj-yoni).

126. Hence [producers of a play] should first of all offer by all means, Pūjā to the [presiding] deity of the stage, which is similar to the [Vedic] sacrifice.

127. The actor (nartaka) or his wealthy patron (artha pati) who does not offer this Pūjā or does not cause it to be offered, will sustain a loss.

128. He who will offer this Pūjā according to the rules and the observed practice, will attain auspicious wealth and will [in the end] go to heavens.”

129. Then Brahmān with other gods said to me, “Let it be so, offer Pūjā to the stage.”

Here ends Chapter I of Bharata’s Nātyaśāstra, which treats of the Origin of Drama.

---

124 (B.127b-128a ; G.122) 1 preksā Pali phakkha occurring in Sikkha paddas (c. 600 B. C.).

1 pūjā—worshipping a deity with flowers, sweet scent, incense, music and offering of cattles.

125 (B.128b-129a, G.123) 126 (B.129b-130a, G.124).

127 (B.130b-131a, G.125) 128 (B131b-132a, G.126).

129 (B.132b-133a, G.127).
CHAPTER TWO

DESCRIPTION OF THE PLAYHOUSE

Introduction

1-2 On hearing Bharata's words, the sages said, "O the holy one, we would like to hear about the ceremony relating to the stage." And how are the men of future to offer Puja in the playhouse or [to know about] the practices related to it, or its accurate description?

3. As the production of a drama begins with the playhouse, you should [first of all] give us its description.”

The three types of the playhouse

4. On hearing these words of the sages, Bharata said, "Listen, O sages, about the description of a playhouse" and of the Puja to be offered in this connexion.

5-6. Creations of gods [observed] in houses and gardens.

---

1 raiga here means 'the stage.' It may also mean the auditorium as well as the spectators sitting there. So Kālidāsa writes: चर्ची नाता स्त्रीविभागितालिनि । अष्टतो रूपः । Sāk. I. 4. 2.

3 (B.G. same)

4 (B.G. same). Except the cave (c. 290 B.C.) in the Ramgarh hill suspected by Th. Bloch (Report of the Archaeological Survey of India, 1903-4, pp.125 ff) to have been the remains of a theatre, there is no other evidence of the existence of a playhouse in ancient India. From the description of the playhouse in the present chapter we learn that it was constructed with brick walls and wooden posts probably with a thatched bungalow roof. The saṅgītāśāla (saṅgītāśāla) mentioned by Kālidāsa in his Mālavī, was possibly something like a playhouse (nāyāmanjāpa). Large open halls called niḥmaṇḍir often found in front of more recently built temples in Bengal and the neighbouring provinces may be connected with the extinct playhouses. This niḥ-maṇḍir or niḥ-śāla is often met with in the medieval Bengali literature.

5-6 (B.G. same). Between the two hemistichs of 5, B. reads one more hemistich.

2. This is the reason why no description of a playhouse suitable for the gods has been given in the NS.
are the outcome of their [mere] will but men's [creative] activity should be carefully guided by rules [laid down in the Śāstras]. Hence, listen about the method of building a playhouse and of the manner of offering Pūjā at the site [of its construction].

7-8. There are three types of playhouses devised by the wise Viśvakarman [the heavenly architecht] in the treatise on his art (śāstra). They are oblong (vikṛtā), square (caturāsra) and triangular (tryāsra).

The three sizes of the playhouse

8-11. Their sizes vary: they may be large (jyotsha), middle-sized (madhyā) and small (avara). The length (lit. measurement) of these [three types] fixed in terms of cubits as well as Daṇḍas, is one hundred and eight, sixtyfour or thirtytwo. They2 should [respectively] have [sides] one hundred and eight, sixtyfour and thirtytwo [cubits or Daṇḍas]3 long. The large playhouse is meant for gods4 and the middle-sized one for kings, while for the rest of people, has been prescribed the smallest [theatre].5

---

7-8 (B.G. same).

8-11 (B.G. same). 1 Some are for identifying the oblong, the square and the triangular types respectively with the large, the middle-sized and the small playhouses, but Ag. very rightly objects to this. He says. According एकाक्रिय दीर्घ अंकाराटी दीर्घ मीनाक्षि । दीर्घ श्रीरत्न घट्ट न पूजनिक निशुल्क रायवे दुधारे—

According to Ag's view there will be the following nine types of playhouses: (i) large oblong (ii) large square, (iii) large triangular, (iv) oblong (v) medium square, (vi) medium triangular, (vii) small oblong, (viii) small square and (ix) small triangular. For a free translation of the passages in this chapter (8, 17, 19, 24-28, 33-35, 43-53, 63, 68, 69-92) relating to the construction of the playhouse see D. R. Mankad, "Hindu Theatre" in IHQ. VIII. 1932. pp. 482 ff.

2 They । । the large, the middle-sized and the small.

3 As the measurements described are both in terms of cubits and daṇḍas (4 cubits), eighteen kinds of playhouse will be available.

4 Ag (I. p.51) thinks that by gods, kings and other peoples mentioned in this passage characters in a play have been meant. But this view does not seem to be plausible. So the other view, mentioned by him, which takes gods and kings etc. as spectators may be accepted.

5 After this, B. reads three couplets which go rightly between 20 and
The table of measurement

12-16. Listen now about the measurement of all these theatres, which has been fixed by Viśvakarman. Units of these measurements\(^1\) are: Aṇu, Raja, Bāla, Līkṣā, Yūkā, Yava, Aṅgula, cubit (hasta) and Dapḍa.

\[
\begin{align*}
8 & \text{ Aṇus} & = & 1 \text{ Raja} \\
8 & \text{ Rajas} & = & 1 \text{ Bāla} \\
8 & \text{ Bālas} & = & 1 \text{ Līkṣā} \\
8 & \text{ Līkṣās} & = & 1 \text{ Yūkā} \\
8 & \text{ Yūkas} & = & 1 \text{ Yava} \\
8 & \text{ Yavas} & = & 1 \text{ Aṅgula} \\
24 & \text{ Aṅgulas} & = & 1 \text{ cubit} \\
4 & \text{ cubits} & = & 1 \text{ Dapḍa}.
\end{align*}
\]

With the preceding table of measurement I shall describe them (i.e. the different classes of playhouses).

The playhouse for mortals

17. An [oblong] playhouse meant for mortals\(^1\) should be made sixtyfour cubits in length and thirtytwo cubits in breadth.

Disadvantage of a too big playhouse

18-19. No one should build a playhouse bigger than the above; for a play [produced] in it (i.e. a bigger house) will not be properly expressive. For anything recited or uttered in too big a playhouse will be losing euphony due to enunciated syllables\(^1\) being indistinct\(^1\) [to spectators not sitting sufficiently close to the stage].

20. [Besides this:] when the playhouse is very big, the expression in the face [of actors] on which rests the Representation

---

\(^1\) The table of measurement given here agrees substantially with the one given in the Arthaśāstra of Kauptila (see IHQ. VIII. p. 482 footnote).

\(^1\) An oblong playhouse is meant here. It is described in detail later on. See 33-38, 43-45, 63-65 below.

\(^1\) Anahityakta-varmatva. B. reads anisatarana-dharmatva. In spite of Ag’s acceptance of this reading it may not be considered genuine.
of States and Sentiments,¹ will not be distinctly visible [to all the spectators].

21. Hence it is desirable that playhouses should be of medium size, so that the Recitatives as well as the songs in it, may be more easily heard [by the spectators].¹

22-23. Creations of gods [observed] in houses and gardens are the outcome of their [mere] will, while men are to make careful efforts in their creations; hence men should not try to rival the creation of gods.¹ I shall now describe the characteristics of a [play] house suitable for human beings.

* Selection of a suitable site

24. The expert [builder] should first of all examine a plot of land and then proceed with a good resolve to measure the site of the building.

25. A builder should erect a playhouse on the soil which is plain, firm, hard¹, and black or² white.

26. It should first of all be cleared and then scratched with a plough, and then bones, pegs, potsherds in it as well as grass and shrubs growing in it, are to be removed.

Measurement of the site

27a. The ground being cleared one should measure out [the building site].¹

---

¹ rūgo bhūvasr̥̄ti-rasiārayah.
² After this B. G. read two more couplets.
³ That is, mortals (men) should not build a playhouse of the biggest type which has been prescribed for gods.
⁴ Ag. thinks kathinā means anuśarā (=fertile).
⁵ According to Ag, the second ca means 'or'.
⁶ B. G. 29.
⁷ B. G. 29a. This hemistic is followed in B and G by one couplet which in trans. is as follows: The asterisms, Uttaraphalguni (Beta-Leonis), Uttarahslahā (Tau-Sagittarii), Uttarabhadrapada (Andromeda), Mrgširas (Lambda-Orionis), Viśākhā (Iota-Libra), Revati (Pūrśaum), Hastā (Corvus), Tisyā (Delta-Cancri) and Anurādhā (Delta-Scorpii) are favourable in connexion with drama.
The Nātyaśāstra

27-28. Under the asterism Pusyā (Cancri) he should spread [for measurement] a piece of white string which may be made of cotton, wool, Muñjā grass or bark of some tree.

Taking up the string

28-31. Wise people should prepare for this purpose a string which is not liable to break. When the string is broken into two [pieces] the patron¹ [of the dramatic spectacle] will surely die. When it is broken into three a political disorder will occur in the land, and it being broken into four pieces the master of the dramatic art² will perish, while if the string slips out of the hand some other kind of loss will be the result. Hence it is desired that the string should always be taken and held with [great] care. Besides this the measurement of ground for the playhouse should be carefully made.

32-33. And at a favourable moment which occurs in a (happy) Tithi¹ during its good part (su-karaṇa)² he should get the auspicious day declared after the Brahmans have been satisfied [with gifts]. Then he should spread the string after sprinkling on it the propitiating water.³

The ground plan of the playhouse

33-35. Afterwards he should measure a plot of land sixty-four cubits [long]¹ and divide the same [lengthwise] into two [equal] parts. The part which will be behind him (i.e. at his back) will have to be divided again into two equal halves. Of these halves one [behind him] should be again divided equally into two parts, one of which will be made the stage (vaṁśa-sīrṣa) and the part at back the tiring room (umapāthya).

¹ svāminalī = prekṣāyateḥ. Ag.
² pravokturm = nātyācīryasya. (Ag.)
³ G. omits 33a.

27-28 (B. 33b-34a, G. 30b-31a).
28-31 (B. 34b-37, G. 31b-34).
32-33 (B. 35b-39a, G. 35).
33-35 (B. 39b-41a, G. 36-37).
The ceremony of laying the foundation

35-37. Having divided the plot of land according to rules laid down before, he should lay in it the foundation of the playhouse. And during this ceremony [of laying the foundation] all the musical instruments such as, conchshell, Dundubhi¹, Mrīdāṅga², and Panṭava³ should be sounded.

37-38. And from the places for the ceremony, undesirable persons such as heretics, including Śrāmanas¹, men in dark red (kāśāya)² robes as well as men with physical defects, should be turned out.

38-39. *At night, offerings should be made in all the ten directions [to various gods guarding them] and* these offerings should consist of sweet scent, flowers, fruits and etables of various other kinds.

39-41. The food-stuff offered in the four [cardinal] directions east, west, south and north, should respectively be of white, blue, yellow and red colour. Offerings preceded by [the muttering .

---

35-37 (B.41b-43a, G.38-49). ¹ dundubhi—a kind of drum.
² mṛdāṅga—a kind of earthen drum.
³ pāṇava—a small drum or tabor.

37-38 (B.43b-44a, G.40). ¹ pāsāṇḍa,—This word has a very curious history. Derived originally from pāśada (meaning 'assembly' or 'community') its Pkt from was pāssada or pāasaṇḍa or pāsāṇḍa. The form pāsāṇḍa with spontaneous nasalization of the second vowel gave rise to Asokan pāsāṇḍa (Seventh Pillar Edict, Delhi-Tepra), which is the basis of Skt. pāsāṇḍa in the sense of 'heretic'. It may be mentioned here that in Asokan Pkt. the word meant simply a 'community' and not a 'heretical community'. One of the very early indications of disfavour to heretics is to be found in the fourth book (ch. 18) of the Visṇu P. See Winternitz, Vol. I. p. 551.

² R. reads śramaṇa, but G. śramaṇa, the word means Jain monks. See NS. XVIII. 36 note 2.
³ kāśāyavasana—men in kāśāya or robe of dark red colour; such people being Buddhist monks who accepted the vow of celibacy, were considered an evil omen, for they symbolised unproductivity and want of worldly success etc. See also NS. XVIII, 36 note 2.
Mantras should be made in [all the ten] different directions to deities presiding over them.

41-42. At [the time of laying] the foundation ghee and Pāyasa should be offered to Brahmins, Madhuparka to the king, and rice with molasses ( günda) to masters [of dramatic art].

42-43. The foundation should be laid during the auspicious part of a happy Tithi under the asterism Mūla ( Lumbala·Scorpionis).

Raising pillars of the playhouse

43-45. After it has been laid, walls should be built and these having been completed, pillars within the playhouse should be raised in an [auspicious] Tithi and Karana which are under a good asterism. This [raising of pillars] ought to be made under the asterism Rohini ( Aldebarans) or Sravaṇa ( Aśvins) [which are considered auspicious for the purpose].

45-46. The master [of dramatic art], after he has fasted for three [days and] nights, is to raise the pillars in an auspicious moment at dawn.

41-42 (B.47b-48a, G.44). 1 ghee—clarified butter.
2 Pāyasa —rice cooked in milk with sugar. It is a kind of rice-porridge.

3 madhuparka—'a mixture of honey'; a respectful offering prescribed to be made to an honourable person in Vedic times, and this custom still lingers in ceremonies like marriage. Its ingredients are five: curd ( dadhī) ghee ( sarpis), water ( jala), honey ( kaṇḍra) and white sugar ( sīta).

42-43 (B.48b-49a, G.45).

43-45 (B.49b-51a, G.46-47). 1 Karana—half of the lunar day ( ṛtihi). They are eleven in number viz.-(1) rava, (2) vidava, (3) kaulava, (4) taitila, (5) garva, (6) vanija, (7) vishį, (8) śakuni, (9) catuspada, (10) niṣa and (11) kintuṅkha, and of these the first seven are counted from the second half of the first day of the śukla-pākṣa (bright half of the moon) to the first half of the fourteenth day of the kuṇa-pākṣa (dark half of the moon). They occur eight times in a month. The remaining karanas occur in the remaining duration of ṛtihi and appear only once in a month. See Sūryasiddhānta—II. 67-68.

45-46 (B.51b-52a, G.48).
DESCRIPTION OF THE PLAYHOUSE

46-50. 1 In the beginning, the ceremony in connexion with the Brahmīn pillar should be performed with completely white, 2 articles purified with ghee and mustard seed, and in this ceremony Pāyasa should be distributed [to Brahmīns]. In case of the Kṣatriya pillar, the ceremony should be performed with cloth, garland and unguent which should all be of red 3 colour, and during the ceremony rice mixed with molasses (guḍa) should be given to the twice-born caste. The Vaiśya pillar should be raised in the north-western direction of the playhouse and [at the ceremony of its raising] completely yellow 4 articles should be used and Brahmīns should be given rice with ghee. And in case of the Śūdra pillar, which is to be raised in the north-eastern direction, articles used in offering should all be of blue 5 colour, and the twice-born caste should be fed with Kṛṣṇa.

50-53. First of all, in case of the Brahmīn pillar, white garlands and unguent as well as gold from an ear-ornament should be thrown at its foot, while copper, silver and iron are respectively to be thrown at the feet of the Kṣatriya, Vaiśya and Śūdra pillars. Besides this, gold should be thrown at the feet of the rest [of pillars].

53-54. The placing of pillars should be preceded by the display of garlands of [green] leaves [of mango trees around them], and the utterance of ‘Let it be well’ (svasti) and ‘Let this be an auspicious day’ (puṇyaḥ). .

54-57. After pleasing the Brahmīns with considerable (anālpa) gift of jewels, cows and cloths, pillars should be raised

---

46-50 (B.52b-56a, G.50-53). 1 before 46, G. reads on the strength of a single ms. one couplet as follows:—रजयनां च मेघं ग्रहं ग्रास्तं ग्रास्तं मृदुस्यिः च। वाचसं वैशार्यं साशु गुडः साक्षेपं शुभं। This interpolation seems to record the tradition that the pillars should be considered as wooden.

2 white—symbol of purity and learning, associated with the Brahmīns.

3 red—symbol of energy and strength, associated with the Kṣatriyas.

4 yellow—symbol of wealth (gold) associated with the Vaiśyas.

5 blue—symbol of non-Aryan origin associated with the Śūdras.

50-53 (B.56b-58a, G.54-56).

53-54 (B.59b-60a, G.57). 4
[in such a manner that] they do neither move nor shake nor turn round. Evil consequences that may follow in connexion with the raising of pillars, are as follows: when a pillar [after it has been fixed] moves drought comes, when it turns round fear of death occurs, and when it shakes, fear from an enemy state appears. Hence one should raise a pillar free from these eventualities.

58-60. In case of the holy Brahmin pillar, a cow should be given as fee (daśānvā) and in case of the rest [of the pillars] builders should have a feast. And [in this feast food-stuff] purified with Mantra should be given by the wise master of the dramatic art (nāḍīrācārya). Then he should be fed with kīrṣā and salt.

60-63. After all these rules have been put into practice and all the musical instruments have been sounded, one should raise the pillars with the muttering over them of a suitable Mantra [which is as follows]: ‘Just as the mount of Meru is unmoved and the Himalaya is very strong, so be thou unmoveable and bring victory to the king.’ Thus the experts should build up pillars, doors, walls and the tiring room, according to rules.

The Mattavāraṇī

63-65. On [each] side of the stage (coṇghāḍha) should be built the Mattavāraṇī and this should be furnished with four pillars and should be equal in length to the stage (coṇghāḍha)

54-57 (B.56b-63, G.58-61a). 1 acaḷitam (B. acaḷitam)—Though Ag. is supposed to read acaḷitam he interprets it correctly as vālayā-nāyānāṃ parivarttanam yasya karaniyam na bhavati (I. p.60).

58-60 (B. 64-66a, G. 61b-63). 1 This kind of payment is probably a relic of the time when there was no metallic currency.

2 kīrṣā is made of milk, sesamum (tila) and rice. Compare this word with NIA. khicāṭi or khicāḍi (rice and peas boiled together with a few spices).

60-63 (B.66b-62a, G.64-66)

63-65 (B.69b-71a, G.67-68). 1 matta-vāraṇī—The word does not seem to occur in any Skt. dictionary. There is however a word mattavāraṇī meaning ‘a turret or small room on the top of a large building, a veranda, a pavilion’. In Kṣiravāmin’s commentary to the Amarakośa, mattavāraṇī has been explained as follows: mattavāraṇīḥ saṃapītāḥ syut pragrīva
and its plinth should be a cubit and a half high. And the plinth of the auditorium (raṅgamāṇḍal) should be equal in height to that of the two [Mattavāraṇīs].

65-67. At the time of building them (the two Mattavāraṇīs) garlands, incense, sweet scents, cloths of different colours as well as offerings agreeable to [Bhūtas] should be offered to [them].

And to ensure the good condition of the pillars, one should put a piece of iron below them, and Brahmans should be given food including Kṛṣaṇa. The Mattavāraṇīs should be built up after observing all these rules.

The stage

68. Then one should construct the stage (raṅgāpiṭha)

mattavāraṇī (see Oka’s ed. p. 50). This is however not clear. Mattavāraṇīyor varanyaka mentioned in Subandhu’s Vāsavadattā (ed. Jivananda, p. 33) is probably connected with this word. Śivarāma Tripiṭṭhi explains these words as follows: svarṇaśvarī svarṇaśvarī tāsīvāraṇīyakāṃ. Matvāraṇīyor varanyaka the absence of svarṇaśvarī. The āśanīyakāṃ as śatī svarṇaśvarī kaṇṭha varanyaka. This also does not give any clear idea about mattavāraṇī or mattavāraṇīyor varanyaka. But the word mattavāraṇī may be tentatively taken in the sense of ‘a side-room.’

Ag. seems to have no clear idea about it. On this he (I. pp. 64-65) says: svarṇaśvarī svarṇaśvarī svarṇaśvarī svarṇaśvarī svarṇaśvarī svarṇaśvarī varanyaka. Rājanābhaṭṭa (ḥārāḥāṭṭa) says: śatī varanyaka. A Dictionary of Hindu Architecture, by (P. K. Achariya Allahabad, 1927) does not give us any light on this term.

According to a view expressed in the Ag. (I. p. 62) the plinth of the mattavāraṇī is a cubit and a half higher than that of the stage—raṅgāpiṭha. But nothing has been said about the height of the plinth of the tiring room.

From the use of terms like raṅgawatāraṇī (descending into the stage) it would appear that the plinth of the tiring room too, was higher than the stage. Weber however considered that the stage was higher. Indische Studien XIV. p. 225 Keith, Skt. Drama, p. 360. cf. Lévi, Théâtre indien, i. 374, ii. 62.

B. reads raṅgamāṇḍalam instead of raṅgamāṇḍalam (G) which is the correct reading. 65-67 (B.71b-73, 69-71a)

68 (B.74, G.71b-72a). Some scholars following Ag. are in favour of taking and raṅgāpiṭha raṅgāśīra as two different parts of the playhouse (see D.B. Mankad, “Hindu Théâtre” in IHQ. VIII. 1932, pp. 480 ff.
after due performance of all the acts prescribed by rules, and the stage (raṅgaśīrṣa) should include six pieces of wood.

69-71. The tiring room (nepathya) should be furnished with two doors. In filling up [the ground marked for the stage] the black earth should be used with great care. This earth is to be made free from stone chips, gravel and grass by the use of a plough to which are to be yoked two white draught animals. Those who will do [the ploughing] work should be free from physical defects of all kinds. And the earth should be carried in new baskets by persons free from defective limbs.

72-74. Thus one should carefully construct the plinth of the stage (raṅgaśīrṣa). It must not be [convex] like the back of a tortoise or that of a fish. For a stage (raṅgprīthi) the ground which is as level as the surface of a mirror, is commendable. Jewels and precious stones should be laid underneath this (raṅgaśīrṣa) by expert builders. Diamond is to be put in the east, lapis lazuli in the south, quartz in the west and coral in the north, and in the centre gold.

Decorative work in the stage

75-80. The plinth of the stage having been constructed thus, one should start the wood-work which is based on a carefully thought out (nīkha-pratyaṅka-samjuktā) [plan], with many artistic


69-71 (B.75-77, G.72b-75a). 1 On this point the Hindu Theatre has a similarity with the Chinese theatre. (See A.K. Coomaraswamy—“Hindu Theatre” in IHQ. IX. 1933, p. 594).

72-74 (B. 78-80, G.75b-78a). 1 See note 1 on 68. If raṅgaśīrṣa and raṅgapītha are taken to mean two different parts of the playhouse the interpretation of the passage will lead us to unnecessary difficulty.

75-80 (B.80-86a, G.78b-83). 1 nīkha and pratyaṅka may also be taken as two architectural terms (see Ag. I. p. 63).
pieces such as decorative designs, carved figures of elephants, tigers and snakes. Many wooden statues also should be set up there, and this wood-work [should] include Nirñīhas\(^2\), variously placed mechanized latticed windows, rows (dhāranī) of good seats, numerous dove-cots and pillars raised in different parts of the floor\(^3\). And the wood-work having been finished, the builders should set out to finish the walls. No pillar, bracket\(^4\), window, corner or door should face a door\(^5\).

80-82. The playhouse should be made like a mountain cavern\(^1\) and it should have two floors\(^3\) [on two different levels] and small windows; And it should be free from wind and should have good acoustic quality. For [in such a playhouse] made free from the interference of wind, voice of actors and singers as

---

\(^2\) nirñīha is evidently an architectural term but it does not seem to have been explained clearly in any extant work. Ag's explanation does not give us any light.

\(^3\) In the absence of a more detailed description of the different parts of the wood-work, it is not possible to have a clear idea of them. Hence our knowledge of the passage remains incomplete till such a description is available in some authentic work.

\(^4\) nāgadāna means 'a bracket'. The word occurs in Vāsīyāyana's Kāmasūtra. nāgadānasākasātuṇā (I. 5.4)

\(^5\) On this passage Ag. (I. p. 64) says: दूर्भ्य भवत पर्यवर्तित विशालास्त्रोपकरण भूलपाले जड़ाल.

80-82 (B. 86b, 89a, G. 84-85). The pillars of the playhouse being of wood, the roof was in all probability thatched and in the form of a pyramid with four sides. Probably that was to give it the semblance of a mountain cavern.

\(^1\) The two floors mentioned here seem to refer to floors of different heights which the auditorium, mallaśṛṇaṣi and the stage had. See 63-65 above and note 2 on it. According to some old commentators dvīrbhūmi indicated a two-storied playhouse while others were against such a suggestion. Ag. (I. p. 64) says: वे सूरी वहौतविास्त्रोपकरणभूलपाले जड़ाल.
well as the sound of musical instruments\textsuperscript{3} will be distinctly heard\textsuperscript{4}.

82-85. The construction of walls being finished, they should be plastered and carefully white-washed. After they have been smeared [with plaster and lime], made perfectly clean and beautifully plain, painting should be executed on them. In this painting should be depicted creepers, men, women, and their amorous exploits\textsuperscript{1}. Thus the architect should construct a playhouse of the oblong (vrikshi) type.

Description of a square playhouse

86-92. Now I shall speak of the characteristics of that of the square (caturasra)\textsuperscript{3} type. A plot of land, thirtytwo cubits in length and breadth, is to be measured out in an auspicious moment, and on it the playhouse should be erected by experts in dramatic art. Rules, definitions and propitiatory ceremonies mentioned before [in case of a playhouse of the oblong type] will also apply in case of that of the square type. It should be made perfectly square and divided into requisite parts\textsuperscript{2} by holding the string [of measurement], and its outer walls should be made with strong bricks very thickly set together. And inside the stage and in proper directions [the architect] should raise ten

\textsuperscript{3} kulapta—This word is explained by Ag. differently in different parts of his comm. Once (I. p. 73) he says ज्वलयिति तुलतिलोभाध्यायं and next time too (I. p. 16-6) he says सलिलितवालायण्त्रक, but in another place (I. p. 85) he say तुलपक्षः तद्विस्थिताश्यायण्यतः and this latter view seems to have been repeated in I. p. 214. The first view seems to give the correct interpretation.

\textsuperscript{4} After B.87 B. repeats 19 (B22) unnecessarily.

82-85 (B.89b-92, G.86-93a). \textsuperscript{1} utmahogajam literally means 'due to self-indulgencce or enjoyment of the self'. Compare with this description the decorative paintings in the Ajanta caves.

86-92 (B.93-99a, G.89b-95). \textsuperscript{1} caturasra gives rise to NIA. cauras or corus.

\textsuperscript{2} The exact nature of this division is not clear from the passage. The view expressed by Ag. (I. p. 66) on this point does not seem to be convincing.
pills capable of supporting the roof. Outside the pillars, seats should be constructed in the form of a staircase by means of bricks and wood, for the accommodation of the spectators. Successive rows of seats should be made one cubit higher than those preceding them, and the lowest row of seats being one cubit higher than the floor. And all these seats should overlook the stage.

92-95. In the interior of the playhouse six more strong pillars capable of supporting the roof should be raised in suitable positions and with [proper] ceremonies (i.e. with those mentioned before). And in addition to these, eight more pillars should be raised by their side. Then after raising [for the stage or vañgajjha] a plinth eight cubit [square, more] pillars should be raised to support the roof of the playhouse. These [pillars] should be fixed to the roof by proper fasteners, and be decorated with figurines of ‘woman-with-a-tree’ (sālāstrī = sālabhaṃjikā).

95-100. After all these have been made, one should carefully construct the tiring room (napathya). It should have one door leading to the stage through which persons should enter with their face towards [the spectators]. There should also be a second door facing the auditorium (vañgat). The stage [of the square playhouse] should be eight cubits in length and in breadth. It should be furnished with an elevated plinth with plain surface, and its Mattavāraṇi should be made according to the measurement prescribed before (i.e. in case of the oblong type of

---

3 The position of these ten pillars and others mentioned afterwards is not clear from the text. Whatever is written on this point in Ag’s commentary is equally difficult to understand. Those who are interested in the alleged view of Ag. may be referred to articles of D. R. Mankad and V. Raghavan (loc. cit.).

92-95 (B.99b-102a, G.96-98). 1 sālāstrī = sālabhaṃjikā (see A. K. Coomaraswamy, The Women and tree or sālabha jikā in Indian literature in Acta Orientalia, vol. VII. also cf. this author’s Yakṣa, Part II. p. 11.)

95-100 (B.1026-107 G.99-104). 1 Both the sides are meant. There should be two mattavāraṇis as in the case of an oblong medium, (vikṣa-madhyā) playhouse described before (17, 32-35).
playhouse. The Mattavāraṇī should be made with four pillars by the side of the plinth [mentioned above]. The stage should be either more elevated than this plinth or equal to it in height. In case of a playhouse of the oblong (vīkyāta) type, it should be higher than the stage, whereas in a playhouse of the square type it should have a height equal to that of the stage. These are the rules according to which a square type playhouse is to be built.

Description of a triangular playhouse

101-104. Now I shall speak about the characteristics of the triangular (trypāsa) type of playhouse. By the builders, a playhouse with three corners should be built, and the stage (nāgāpiṭha) in it also should be made triangular. In one corner of the playhouse there should be a door, and a second door should be made at the back of the stage (nāgāpiṭha). Rules regarding walls and pillars which hold good in case of a playhouse of the square type, will be applicable in case of the triangular type. These are the rules according to which different types of playhouses are to be constructed by the learned. Next I shall describe to you the [propitiatory] Pūja in this connexion.

Here ends Chapter II of Bharata’s Nātyaśāstra which treats of the Characteristics of a Playhouse.

101-104 (B,108-111, G,1040-108). ¹ It is not clear how the triangular playhouse will have pillars like those of other types.

² No mālāvāraṇī has been prescribed in case of the triangular playhouse.
CHAPTER THREE

PUJĀ TO THE GODS OF THE STAGE

Consecration of the playhouse

1-8. In the auspicious playhouse constructed with all the characteristics [mentioned above] cows, and Brahmins muttering [proper Mantras] should be made to dwell for a week. Then the master of the dramatic art who has been initiated [for the purpose] and has put on new cloths, fasted for three days, lived away from his bed-room (lit. the dwelling house), has kept his senses under control and has [thus] become purified, will besprinkle his limbs with water over which purificatory Mantras have been muttered, and consecrate the playhouse. This [consecration] should take place after he has made obeisance to the great god Śiva the lord of all the regions, Brahman who sprung from the lotus, Brahaspati the preceptor of the gods, Viṣṇu, Kārtikeya, Sarasvatt, Lakṣmi, Siddhi, Medhā, Sūrīti, Mati, Candra (Moon), Sūrya (Sun), Winds, Guardians of all directions, Āśvins, Mitra, Agni, and other gods, such as Rudra, Varṇaś, Kaśiś, Kaliś, Yama, Niyaṭi, the Sceptre of Yamaś, Weapons of Viṣṇuś, the Lord of the Nāgas (Serpents), the Lord of the birds (Garuda), Thunderbolt, Lightning, Seas, Gandharvas, Apsarasas, Sages, Niya-vehicleś, Mahāgrāmapati (the great leader of Gaṇas)ś, Yaksas, Guhyakasś and the hosts of Bhūtas.

---

1 varṇas—No gods called varṇas are to be met with in any other work. They may be taken as deities ruling specially over the four varṇas of people.

2 Kaśiś—There are several legendary heroes (gods, sages and Asuras) of this name, see Vidyalankar, JK. sub voce.

3 Kaliś—There are many legendary heroes of this name, see JK. sub voce.

4 See note 5 below.


6 niya-vehicleś—Such goddesses are possibly mentioned nowhere else.

7 mahāgrāmapati—The great leader of Gaṇas. It is very difficult to accept Ag’s identification of mahāgrāmapati with Gaṇapati (mahāgrā- manir gaṇapatiḥ). For in 58 below, occurs the term mahāgaṇaśvara.
Having made obeisance to these, and other divine sages (devārgī), he should with folded palms invoke all the gods to their respective positions, and say, "Ye, holy ones, should take us under your protection during the night, and ye with your followers should offer us assistance in this dramatic performance".

Offering Pūja to the Jarjara

11-13. Having worshipped [thus] all the gods as well as all the musical instruments (kutapa)¹ he should offer Pūja to the Jarjara² for attaining good success at the performance [and pray to it as follows]. "Thou art Indra's weapon killing all the demons; thou hast been fashioned by all the gods, and thou art capable of destroying all the obstacles; bring victory to the king and defeat to his enemies, welfare to cows and Brahmins and progress to dramatic undertakings".

14-15. After proceeding thus according to rules and staying in the playhouse for the night, he (the master of the dramatic art)

(in the plural number) indicating the different leaders of Gaṇas who followed Śiva. One of such leaders has been mentioned there as Nandiśvara (Nandin). Besides this the term Gaṇeśa (the leader of Gaṇas) has also been applied to Śiva in 47 below. In describing pinḍīhā-dhās the pinḍī of Gaṇeśvara has been named as dakaṣayājñā-vimardini (NŚ. IV. 260). This too shows that gaṇeśvara, grāmāṇi or mahāgrāmāṇi meant simply the leader, one of the leaders or the great leader of Gaṇas. The fully developed Gaṇapati seems to be non-existent at the time when the NŚ. was composed. Our suspicion in the matter seems to be corroborated by the variant tatha grāmāṇī-devatā recorded in the ms thā of B. for mahāgrāmāṇyaṃ. Gaṇapati seems to be a late entrant into the Hindu pantheon. He is not mentioned in any one of the old Purāṇas. Only the Varāha, Vāmana and Brahma-vaiśvarta P. which are very late know the deity (Winternitz, Vol. 1. pp. 566-568, 573, Viryalankar, J.K. sub voce).

Kalidāsa makes no distinction between Yakṣas and Guhyakas, See Meghadūta 1 and 5.

¹ See above...


11-13 (B.12-14, G.12-14). ¹ See below 72-"3 note 3. The reading samprajuja in all editions and ms. seems to be wrong. It should be emended as samprajuja.

² See 73-81 below.

should begin Puja as soon as it is morning. This Puja connected with the stage should take place under the asterism Ardra (Alpha-Orionis) or Magha (Regulus) or Yamā (Musca) or Pūrvaphalgunt (Delta-Leonis) or Pūrvāśādha (Delta-Sagittarii) or Pūrvabhādra-pada (Alpha-Pegasi) or Āśleṣā (Hydrae) or Mūla (Lambda-Scorpionis).

16. The stage should be illuminated and the Puja of the gods in its connexion should be performed by the master of the dramatic art (ādīrṣyā) after he has purified his body, concentrated his mind [to these acts] and initiated himself [to the Puja].

- Installation of the gods

17. During the concluding moments of the day, which are considered to be hard and full of evils, and are presided over by Bhūtas, one should perform Ācamana1 and cause the gods to be installed.

18. [Along with these gods] should be [taken] red thread-bangle (pratīsārā)1, the best kind of red sandal, red flowers and red fruits. [With these and] articles such as barley, white mustard, sunned rice, Nāgapuspa2 powder and husked saffron (priyāngu)3, the gods should be installed.

The Maṇḍala for installing the gods

20. In this ceremony one should draw in proper place a Maṇḍala4 according to the manner prescribed.

21. This maṇḍala should be sixteen Tālas (hasta)2 square and it should have doors on all its four sides.

16 (B.17, G.17).
17 (B.18, G.18). 1 ācamana—ceremonial rinsing of the mouth by sipping water from the palm of the hand.
18-20 (B.19-21a, G.19-21a).
1 pratīsārā—ṣūtra-vinirmata granthi-mantah kaiśkaṇaviśeṣaḥ, Ag. (1. p. 74).
2 nāgapuspa—the campaka tree (Apte), but Ag. says nāgapuspaṃ nāgadantaḥ.
3 priyāngu=saffron, and not the fruit of the priyāngu creep.
20 (B.21b-G.21b). 1 See the diagram 1.
21 (B.22-G22). 1 hasta in this passage is to be interpreted as
22. In its middle should be drawn two lines vertically and horizontally (i.e., parallel to the sides), and in the apartments made by these lines, should be installed the different gods.

23-30. In the middle of this (manḍala), should be put Brahmān who has lotus as his seat. Then one should first of all put in the east Śiva with his host of Bhūtas, Nārāyaṇa (Viṣṇu), Indra, Skanda (Kārtikeya), Śūrya, Aśvin, Candra, Sarasvati, Lakṣmi, Śraddhā and Medhā, in the south-east Agni, Śvāhā, Viśvedevas, Gandharvas, Rudrās and Rṣis, in the south Yama, Mitra with his followers, Pītrī, Piśācas, Uragas and Guhyakas, in the south-west the Rākṣasas and all the Bhūtas, in the west the Seas and Varuṇa, in the north-west the Seven Winds and Garuḍa with other birds, in the north Kuvera, Mothers of the Nāṭya, Yaksas with their followers, in the north-east leaders of Gaṇas such as Nandī, Brahmarṣis and the host of Bhūtas in their proper places.

31. And [in the eastern] pillar should be placed Sanatkumāra, in the southern one Dakṣa, in the northern one Grāmāṇi (lit. leader of Gaṇas) and in the western one Skanda (Kārtikeya).

32. According to this rule all the gods in their [proper] form and colour should be placed in their respective positions.

\[hasta\text{-}tala\] or \[tāla\] i.e., the interval between the tips of the thumb and the middle-finger stretched in opposite directions. Otherwise it will be impossible to accommodate the manḍala on the stage which is eight cubits wide (See NŚ. II. 33-35). The ancient commentators like Śaṅkuka and others pointed out how absurd it would be take hasta in the passage in the sense of cubit. (see Ag. I. p. 75).

23 30 (B.24-31, G.24-31). According to Ag. a lotus is to be described in the centre of manḍala. For the seven winds see the Vāmanas P. (see Vidyālankar, JK. sub voce).

31 (B.32, G.32). Sanatkumāra—one of the great rṣis, and a son of Brahmān.

1 Dakṣa—one of the lords of the creation (praṇāpti), son of Prajāpati. There were other Dakṣas besides. See Vidyālankar, JK. sub voce.

2 See above 1-8 note 7.
Offering Pūjā to the gods

33. After they have been installed with regular ceremony in suitable places they should be worshipped in a fitting manner.

34. Gods [in general] should be given white\(^1\) garlands and unguents, while Gandharvas, Agni and Sūrya should be given garlands and unguents of red\(^2\) colour.

35. After being treated [thus] in due order and manner they should be worshipped according to rules with suitable offerings.

36-39. [Offerings suitable to different gods and goddesses are as follows]: Brahman Madhuparka\(^3\), Sarasvatti Pāyasa\(^4\), gods like Śiva, Viṣṇu, and Indra sweetmeats. Agni rice cooked with ghee, Candra and Sūrya rice cooked with molasses, Viśvedevas, Gandharvas and sages honey and Pāyasa, Yama and Mitra cakes and sweetmeats, Pitrś, Piśācas and Uragas ghee and milk, host of Bhūtas rice cooked with meat, wines of different kinds and grams covered with thick milk.

Consecration of the Mattavāraṇī

40-44 Similar shall be the rules regarding the Pūjā in connexion with the Mattavāraṇī. [Offerings to be made to different gods and demigods are as follows]: Rākṣasas half-cooked meat, Dānavas wine and meat, the remaining gods cake and Utkarikā\(^5\) and boiled rice, gods of seas and rivers fish and cakes, Varuṇa ghee and Pāyasa; Sages various roots and fruits, the wind god and birds different edible stuff (lit. bhaksya and bhojya), Mothers\(^6\) of the

---

33 (B.34, G.34).

34 (B.35, G.35). \(^1\) 'White' here seems to be the symbol of purity and good grace.

\(^2\) 'Red' here seems to be the symbol of energy.

35 (B. 35, G.36).


note 3.

\(^4\) Pāyasa—see above II. 41-42 note.

40-44 (B.41 45, G.41-45). \(^5\) See above.

\(^6\) Utkarikā—a kind of sweetmeat.

\(^7\) These goddesses seem to have been ignored by the Purāṇas.
Nāṭya, and Kuvera with his followers eatables including cakes, and Locikaś 4.

45. These different kinds of foodstuffs should be offered to them and the Mantras to be uttered at the time of making offering to different gods will be as follows:—

46. (The Mantra for Brahma). O the god of gods, the most lordly one, the lotus-born one, the grand-father (of the worlds) accept this my offering consecrated by the Mantra.

47. (For Śiva) O the god of gods, the great god, the lord of Gaṇas 3 and the killer of Tripura, accept this my etc.

48. (For Viṣṇu), O Nārāyaṇa, Padmanābhā, the best of the gods, with unrestrained movement, accept this my etc.

49. (For Indra), O Purandara, the lord of gods, the thunder bearer, the maker of the hundred exploits, accept this my etc.

50. (For Skanda), O Skanda the leader of the celestial army, the blessed one, the dear son of Śiva, O the six-mouthed one, accept this my etc.

51. (For Sarasvati), O the goddess of the gods, the very blessed one, the dear wife of Hari, accept this my etc.

52 (For goddesses Lakṣmi, Siddhi, Mati, Medhā) O Lakṣmi, Siddhi, Mati and Medhā, ye who are honoured by all the worlds, accept this my etc.

53. (For Māruta) O Māruta, you who know the might of all the creatures and are the life of all the world, accept this my etc.

54. (For Rākṣasas) O the great Rākṣasas, the great-souled

4 locika—This has been read in ms. as lociṣū, ṛopika, lepiṣū, lepiṣū. The word seems to be connected with the NIA. loci, loci, from olociṣū, olociṣū.

36 (B.47, G.47). 45 (B.46, G.46)
52 (B.55, G.55) 53 (B.56, G.53).
ones, the sons of Pulastya, born of different causes, accept this my etc.

55. (For Agni) O Agni, the mouth of the gods, the best of the gods, the smoke-banneered one, the eater of things offered in sacrifice, accept this my offering given with love.

56. (For Candra) O Soma, the lord of all the planets, the king of the twice-born ones, the favourite of the world, accept this my etc.

57. (For Sūrya) O the maker of day, the mass of heat, the best among the planets, accept this my etc.

58. (For lords of Gaṇas such as, Nandévara) O the great lord of Gaṇas, among whom Nandévara is the foremost, accept this my etc.

59. (For Pitṛs) I bow to all the Pitṛs, do ye accept my offering. (For Bhūtas) I always bow to all the Bhūtas who may have a liking for offerings.

60a. (For Kāmapāḷa) O Kāmapāḷa, I always bow to thee to whom this offering is made.

60-61. (For Gandharvas) O Gandharvas, amongst whom Nārada, Tumburu and Viśvāvasu are the foremost, accept this my best offering.

61-62. (For Yama and Mitra) O Yama and Mitra, the gods who are adored by all the worlds, accept this my etc.

62-63. (For Nāg̣as) I bow to all the Pannagas in the nether region, who are devourers of wind, give me success in dramatic production after I have worshipped you.

63-64. (For Varuṇa) O Varuṇa, you who are the lord of all waters and have the swan as your mount, be pleased along with the seas and rivers, after I have wor-shipped you all.

---

59 (B.61, G.60a). ¹ G. puts one hemistich after 60a without numbering it.
63-64 (B.65b-65a, G.64).
64-65. (For Garuḍa) O the son of Vinata, the high-souled one, the lord, the king of all the birds, accept this my etc.

64-66. (For Kuvera) O the superintendent of [all] wealth, the king of Yakṣas, the guardian of the world, the lord of riches, ye along with Guhyakas and Yakṣas accept this my etc.

66-67. (For mothers of the Nāṭya) O mothers of the Nāṭya such as Brāhmaṇi and others, ye be happy and pleased to accept my offering.

67-68. (For others) O weapons of Rudra, ye accept my offerings. O weapons of Viṣṇu, ye too accept [things given by me] out of devotion for Viṣṇu.

68-69. O Yama, the Fate, the dispenser of death to all creatures and the end of all actions, accept my offerings.

69-70. Ye other gods who are occupying the Mattavāraṇi, accept this my etc.

70-71. To all other gods and Gandharvas too who occupy the heavens, the earth, the middle region and the ten directions, these offerings are made (lit. let these be accepted by them).

71-72. Then a [earthen] jar1 full of water with a garland of leaves in its front, should be placed in the middle of the stage, and a piece of gold should be put into it.

72-73. All the musical instruments covered with cloth should be worshipped with [sweet] scent, flowers, garlands, incense and various eatables hard and soft.1

---

66-67 (B.68b-69a, G.67).
68-69 (B.70b-71a, G.69).
70-71 (B.72b-73a, G.71).
71-72 (B.73b-74a, G.72). 1 For the significance of this jar see below 87-88.
72-73 (B.74b-75a, G.76). 1 This passage with some minor variation has been repeated in B. and G. But this is out of place there. For the order in which musical instruments (kulapa) and the Jarjara should be worshipped see 11-13 above.
Consecration of the Jarjara

73-74. Having worshipped all the gods in due order, and offering Puja to the Jarjara [in the following manner] one should have the obstacles removed.

74-76. [One should fasten a piece of] white cloth at the top [of the Jarjara], blue cloth at the Raudra joint, yellow cloth at the Visnū joint, red cloth at the Skanda joint, and variegated cloth at the lowest joint¹. And garlands, incense and unguents are to be offered to it (the Jarjara) in a fitting manner.

76-77. Having observed all these rites with incense, garlands and unguents one should consecrate¹ the Jarjara with the following Mantra:

77-78. "For putting off obstacles thou hast been made very strong, and as hard as adamant, by gods such as Brahmā.

78-79. Let Brahmā with all other gods protect thy topmost part, Hara (Śiva) the second part, Janardana (Visnū) the third part, Kuṃāra (Kārtikeya) the fourth part, and the great Pannagas the fifth part.

80-81. Let all the gods protect thee, and be thou blessed. Thou, the killer of foes, hast been born under Abhijit (Vega), the best of the asterisms. Bring victory and prosperity to the king!"

Homa or pouring ghee into sacrificial fire

81-82. After the Jarjara has thus been worshipped and all offerings have been made to it, one should with appropriate Mantras perform Homa and pour (ghee) into the sacrificial fire.

82-83. After finishing the Homa he should with the fire lighted [in the place of sacrifice] do the cleaning work (?) which is to enhance the brilliance of the king as well as of the female dancers.

73-74 (B.75b-76a, G.73).
74-76 (B.76b-78a, G.74-75). ¹ For identifying the joints see 78-79 below. 76-77 (B.79b-80a, G.77). 77-78 (B.80b-81a, G.78).
78-80 (B.81b-82, G.79-80a). 80-81 (B.83b-84a, G.80b-81).
81-82 (B.84b-85a, G.82). 82-83 (B.85b-86a, G.83).
83-84. After having illumined the king and the dancers together with the musical instruments one should sprinkle them again with water sanctified by the Mantra, and say to them:

84-85. "You are born in noble families and adorned with multitudes of qualities, let whatever you have acquired by virtue of birth, be perpetually yours."

85-86. After saying these words for the happiness of the king, the wise man should utter the Benediction for the success of the dramatic production.

86-87. [The Benediction]: Let mothers such as Sarasvati, Dhrti, Medhā, Hri, Śrī, Lakṣmi, and Smṛti1 protect you and give you success.

Breaking the Jar

87-88. Then after performing Homa according to rules with ghee and the proper Mantra the master of dramatic art should carefully break the jar.

88-89. In case the jar remains unbroken the king (lit. the master) will have a cause of fear from enemies; but when it is broken his enemies will meet with their destruction.

Illumination of the stage

89-90. After the breaking of the jar, the master of the dramatic art should illuminate the auditorium (raṅga) with a lighted lamp.

90-91. Noisily, that is, with roaring, snapping of fingers, jumping and running about, he should cover the auditorium with that lighted lamp [in his hand].

91-92. Then a fight should be caused to be made [on the

---

83-84 (B.86b-87a, G.84).
85-86 (B.88b-89a, G.86).
87-88 (B.90b-91a, G.88).
88-89 (B.91b-92a, G.89).
89-90 (B.92b-93a, G.90).
90-91 (B.93b-94a, G.91).
91-92 (B.94b-96a, G.92-93).

1 These are the seven Nātya-māṭrīkās.

See 23-30 above.

---

1 dundubhi—a kind of drum.
stage] in accompaniment with the sound of all the musical instruments such as conch-shell, Dundubhi¹, Mrdanga² and Pana³.

93-93. If the bleeding wounds [resulting from the fight] will be bright and wide, that will be a [good] omen indicating success.

Good results of consecrating the stage

• 93-94. If the stage is properly consecrated it will bring good luck to the king (lit. the master) and to people young and old of the city as well as of the country.

94-95. But when the auditorium is not consecrated in proper manner it will be indifferently held by gods, and there will be an end of the dramatic spectacle, and it will likewise bring evil to the king.

95-96. He who willfully transgresses these rules [of consecration of the stage] and practises [the dramatic art], will soon sustain loss and will be reborn as an animal of lower order.

96-97. Offering worship to the gods of the stage is as meritorious as a [Vedic] sacrifice. No dramatic performance should be made without first worshipping the deities presiding over the stage. When worshipped, they (these gods) will bring you worship, and honoured they will bring you honour. Hence one should by all efforts offer Pūjā to the gods of the stage.

Evils following non-consecration of the stage

98-99. Never will fire fanned by violent wind burn things so quickly, as defective rites will burn quickly [the master of the dramatic art].

99-100. So the stage should be worshipped by the master of the dramatic art who is purified, disciplined and proficient in

¹ Mrdanga—a kind of earthen drum.
² Pana—a kind of drum.
the rules of the art and initiated into the practice of it and has quiet of mind.

100-101. He who with an agitated mind places his offering in a wrong place, is liable to expiation like one who pours ghee into the sacrificial fire without proper Mantras. This is the procedure prescribed for worshipping the gods of the stage. It should be followed by producers [of plays] in holding a theatrical show in a newly built playhouse.

Here ends Chapter III of Bharata’s Nātyāstātra, which treats of Pūjā to the gods of the stage.

100-101 (B.103b-104a, G.101-102).
CHAPTER FOUR

DESCRIPTION OF THE CLASS DANCE

Brahman writes the first play and gets this performed.

1. After having worshipped [the gods presiding over the stage] I said to Brahman, “Tell me quickly, O the mighty one, which play should be performed?”

2. [In reply] I was told by the Lord, “Perform the Amṛta- manthana (the Churning of the Ocean)¹ which is capable of stimulating efforts and of giving pleasure to gods.

3. I have composed this Samavakāra which is conducive to [the performance of] duties (dharma), to [the fulfillment of] desire (kama) as well as [to the earning] wealth (artha).”

4. When this Samavakāra was performed, gods and demons were delighted to witness actions and ideas [familiar to them].

5. Now, in course of time Brahman (lit. the lotus-born one) said to me, “We shall present today the play before the great-souled Śiva (lit. the three-eyed one)”.

6-7. Then on reaching along with other gods the abode of Śiva (lit. the bull-banne rated one) Brahman paid him respects and said, “O the best of the gods, please do me the favour of hearing and seeing the Samavakāra which has been composed by me.”

8. “I shall enjoy it,” said the lord of gods in reply. Then Brahman asked me to get ready [for the performance].

9-10. “O, the best of the Brahmans, after the Preliminaries connected with the performance had been completed this

---

1 (B.G. same)
3 (B.G. same).¹ See NŚ. XX. 69 ff.
4 (B.G. same). 5 (B.G. same). 6-7 (B.G. same).
8 (B.G. same). 9-10 (B.G. same).
(Samavakāra named the Amṛtamanthana) as well as a Dhima¹ named the Tripuradāha (the Burning of Tripura) was performed in the Himalayan region which consisted of many hills and in which there were many Bhūtas, Gaṇas² and beautiful caves and waterfalls³.

11. Then all the [Bhūtas] and Gaṇas were pleased to see actions and ideas familiar to them, and Śiva too was pleased and said to Brahman:

12. "O the high-souled one, this drama (nātya) which is conducive to fame, welfare, merit and intelect, has been well-conceived by you.

13-14. Now in the evening, while performing it, I remembered that dance made beautiful by Āngahāras¹ consisting of different Karaṇas². You may utilize these in the Preliminaries (pūrvarāga) of a play.

Two kinds of Preliminaries

14-16. In the application of the Vardhamānaka¹, the Āsārita², the Gīta³ and the Mahāgīta you will depict properly the ideas [by means of dance movements]; and the Preliminaries which you have [just] performed are called "pure" (suddha). [But] when

¹ dhima—one of the plays of the major type; for its characteristics see NŚ. XX. 84 ff.

² Tripuradāha—Śiva killed an Asura (demon) named Tripura by burning him with one of his fiery arrows. Hence he is called Tripuraṇtaka or Tripurārā. This legend occurs in the Varāha P. See J.K. sub voce.

³ B.G. read bahucutadrumākīrṇe instead of bahusāhagunākārṇe.

11 (B.G. same). 12 (B.G. same).

13-14 (B.G. same). ¹ angahāra—major dance figures which depend on minor dance figures (karaṇas). The word means 'movement of limbs'. Ag. (I. p. 91) explains it as अङ्गहार ईङ्गानां वसृजिति वास्यप्रभावरिकाय कर्म वाय वाय वाय स्वीकृति क्रियाप्रदान.

² See below 29-30 note 1. For details about the Āngahāras see below 16 ff, 72 ff.

14-16 (B.G. same). ¹ See NŚ. V. 12-15 note 3.

² See NŚ. V. 21 note 1.

³ See NŚ. V. 60-63 note 3.
these dances will be added to them (pure Preliminaries) they will be called “mixed” (citra).

The Aṅgahāras

16-17. To these words of Śiva Brahmaṇ said in reply, “O the best of the gods, tell us about the use of the Aṅgahāras.”

17-18. Then Śiva (lit. lord of the world) called Taṇḍu and said, “Speak to Bharata about the use of the Aṅgahāras.”

18-19. And by Taṇḍu I was told the use of the Aṅgahāras. I shall now speak of them as well as of the various Karapās and Keokās1.


Uses of the Aṅgahāras

28-29. I shall now speak about their performance dependent on the Karapās. [And besides this] “O the best of the Brahmans, I shall tell you about the movements of hands and feet that are proper to the Aṅgahāras.

The Karapās

29-30. All the Aṅgahāras consist of Karapās; hence I shall mention the names of the latter as well as their descriptions.

---

16-17 (B. same).
17-18 (B. same, G. 16).
18-19 (B. same, G. 17). 1 Se below 247 ff.
19-27 (B. same, G. 18-27a).
28-29 (B. same, G. 27b-28). 1 for details about karana see 30ff below.
29-30 (B. same G. 29). 1 Karana—minor dance figure. Ag. (I 93) plains the karana as युग्रसंहिति तत्त्वविवरणम् “yugrasyaḥ samhitaḥ tatstvavibhaganam” तत्त्वप्रचारकप्रवृत्ति। तत्त्वस्य विवरण 1.
30-34. The combined [movement of] hands and feet in dance is called the Karanā: Two Karanās will make one Matrka, and two, three, or four Matrkas will make up one Angahāra. Three Karanās will make a Kalipaka, four a Saṃdaka, and five a Saṃghātaka. Thus the Angahāras consist of six, seven, eight or nine Karanās. I shall now speak of the hand and feet movements making up these (Karanās).


56. Foot movements which have been prescribed for

---

30-34 (B. same, G. 30-33).
34-55 (B.34-55, G.34-54).
56 (B.59, G.167).
the exercise of Sthānas\(^1\) and Cāris\(^2\), will apply also to these Karaṇas\(^3\).

57. And application of the Nr̥tta-hastas\(^1\) which have been prescribed for dance is generally implied in the Karaṇas.

58. The Sthānas, the Cāris and the Nr̥tta-hastas mentioned [before] are known as the Mātrkās the variations of which are called the Karaṇas.

59. I shall treat the Cāris suitable for [representing] fight at the time of discussing the foot movements. The master [of dramatic art] should apply them on any occasion according to his histrionic talents.

60. In the Karaṇa the left hand should generally be held on the breast, and the right hand is to follow the [right] foot.

61. Listen [now] about the movement of hands and feet in dance in relation to that of hip, sides, thigh as well as to breast, back and belly\(^1\).

Definition of the Karaṇas.

62. Talapuṣpapuṭa—Puṣpapuṭa hand held on the left side, the foot is Agratahūṣṭiṣca, the side is Sannata (Nata)\(^3\).

---

\(^1\) See NŚ. XI. 49 ff.  \(^2\) See NŚ. XI. 2 ff.  
\(^3\) B.G. read one hemistich more before 56a. It does not occur in some mss. Ag. records this fact. Though these 108 karaṇas constitute general dance, which is sometimes interpolated in the acting to fill up its gaps, they (karaṇas) may be also used to embellish the movement of limbs in fights of any kind. Ag. (I. p. 96) says भविष्यते एव ज्ञातं बस्मादित्यादिभवाभावायात्मा स निदारोज्ज्वारी तत् च भवेन, भवाविश्वेः मानवद्र भवेन: श्रीवर्षकोपि तत् प्रकटते; besides this he says \textit{tanugatiṣṭhilasamjñiṣṭhe karaṇam} (I. p. 97)

57 (B.171, G.56a, 168).  1 For \textit{nr̥tahastas} see NŚ. IX. 177 ff.  

60 (B.57b-58a or 172, G.169).

61 (B. 58b-59a, G.57).  1 For B.60 (G.58) omitted see NŚ. XI. 90-91.

62 (B.61, G.59).  1 For the sake of convenience constituent parts of the karaṇas have been separately mentioned without putting them in a cumbrous sentence. This method has been followed by A.K. Coomaraswamy in MG. As the definitions of these parts can be easily traced through the index they have not been referred to in the notes.
63. Vartita—Vyavṛtta (= Vyavartita) and Parivartita hands bent at the wrist, then these hands placed on thighs.

64. Valitorn—Śukatūṇḍa hands to make Vyavartita and Parivartita K., and thighs are Valita.

65. Apaviddha—the (right) hand with Śukatūṇḍa gesture to fall on the (right) thigh, the left hand held on the breast.

66. Samanakha—the two Samanakha¹ feet touching each other, two hands hanging down, and the body in natural pose.

67. Līna—the two Patāka hands held together in Aṅjali pose on the breast, the neck held high, and the shoulder bent.

68. Svastikarecita—two hands with Recita and Āviddha gesture held together in the form of a Svastika, then separated and held on the hip.

69. Maṇḍalasvastika—two hands moved to unite in the Svastika gesture with their palms turned upwards in a similar manner, and the body in the Maṇḍala Sthāna (posture).

70. Nikuṭṭaka—each of the hands to be moved up and down¹ alternately between the head and another arm, and the legs also moved in a similar manner.

71. Ardhanikūṭṭaka—hands with Alapallava¹ gesture bent towards shoulders, and legs moved up and down:

72. Katicechinna—the hip serially in the Chinna pose, two Pallava hands held alternately and repeatedly on the head.

---

¹ For kūcīta BG. read aṅcīta. But Ag. (I. p. 204) read kūcīta and means by this word the alapallīṣṭva gesture.
73. Ardharecita—hand with Sūcmukha\(^2\) gesture to move freely, feet to move alternately up and down, side in Sannata (i.e. Nata) pose.

74. Vaksahsvastikā—two legs on each other in the form of a Svastika, the two Recita hands brought together in a similar manner on the breast which is bent (nikuṇḍa).

75. Unmatta—feet to be Aṅcita and hands to be Recita.

76. Svastika—hands and feet respectively held together in the Svastika form.

77. Prāśhasvastikā—two arms after being thrown up and down coming together as a Svastika, two feet also to come together as a Svastika with Apakrānta and Ardhasūcī Čārīs.

78. Diksvastikā—turning sideways and towards the front in course of a single (lit. connected) movement, and forming Svastika with hands and feet.

79. Alāta—after making Alāta Čārī\(^1\) taking down hand from [the level of] the shoulder\(^3\), then making Urdhvajānu Čārī\(^4\).

80. Kāṭisama—feet to be separated, after the Svastika Karaṇa, of the two hands one to be placed at the navel and the other at the hip, and the sides in the Udvāhita pose.

81. Āksiptarecita—the left hand on the heart, the right hand Recita and thrown up and sideways, and then the two hands to be Recita with Apariddha (Aviddhaka) gestures.

82. Viṣṇuptāksiptaka—hands and feet first thrown up, then again thrown down.

83. Ardhasvastikā—the two feet to make the Svastika, the
right hand making the Karihasta gesture, and the left one lying on the breast.

84. Añcita—in the Ardhasvastika the Karihasta to be alternately in Vyavartita (Vyavṛttā) and Parivartita movement, and then bent upon the tip of the nose.

85. Bhujatgatrāśita—the Kuñcita feet to be thrown up, the thighs to have an oblique Nivartana (Nivṛttā)² movement, the hip and the thigh also to have the same movement.

86. Urdhva-vājānu—a Kuñcita foot to be thrown up, and the knee to be held up (lit. stretched) on a level with the breast, and the two hands to be in harmony with the dance.

87. Nikuñcita—feet to be moved as in the Vṛśeika K., two hands to be bent at the sides, the right hand to be held at the tip of the nose.

88. Matalli—making a whirling movement while throwing back the two feet (left and right), and moving hands in the Udveśṭita and Apaviddha movement.

89. Ardhamatalli—feet to be drawn away from the position in the Skhalita K., left hand Recita, and afterwards to be put on the hip.

90. Recitanikūṭṭita—the right hand to be Recita, left foot Udghatiita (= Nikuṭṭita), and the left hand with Dolā gesture.

84 (B.84, G.81).

85 (B.84, G.82). ¹ For nivartayet, B. G. read viḥartayet, and for niḥṛṭam B. viḥṛṭam and G. viḥṛṭa. ⁸6 (B.86, G.83).

87 (B.87, G.84). ¹ For vṛśeika karaṇa, B.G. read vṛśeika carana. But NŚ, does not know any carana or āra of this name, while a K. of this name occurs, and one karaṇa is very often used to define another karaṇa; see texts for 84 above, 103 and 107 below. In all these cases some ms. read karaṇa instead of carana.

88 (B.88, G.85).

89 (B.89, G.86). ¹ skhalitāpasśṭam pudān feet drawn away from the position of the skhalita K.

90 (B.90, G.87). ¹ According to Ag. udghatiita—nikūṭṭita for which see above 70 note.
91. Pañcapiaviddhaka—the Kaṭakāmukha hands with their back against the navel, and feet to be in Śūci and [then] the Apakrānta Čāri.

92. Valita—hands to be Apaviddha, feet to be in Śūci Čāri Trika turned round [in the Bhramari Čāri].

93. Ghūrpita—the left hand in Valita and moved round, the right hand with Dolā gesture, and the two feet to be drawn away from each other from the Svastika position.

94. Lalita—the left hand with Karihasta gesture, the right one to be again turned aside (Apavartita), two feet to be moved up and down.

95. Daṇḍapaksā—observing Īrdhvaṇāju Čāri, Latā hands to be placed on the knee.

96. Bhujāṅgatratarcita—the feet to be in Bhujāṅgatrasa Čāri, the two hands to be Recita and moved to the left side.

97. Nūpura—the Trika to be gracefully turned round, [in the Bhramari Čāri] the two hands to show respectively Latā and Recita gestures, and the Nūpurapāda Čāri with the feet.

98. Vaiśākharacita—hands and feet to be Recita, so the hip and the neck, and the entire body in Vaiśākha Sthāna (posture).

99. Bhramāraka—Svastika feet in Āskipta Čāri, hands in Udevēṭita movement, and Trika\(^1\) turned round [in the Bhramari Čāri].

100. Catura—the left hand with Aṇcita, (i.e. Alapallava)\(^2\) gesture, the right hand is with Catura gesture, the right feet in Kuṭṭita (i.e. Udghaṭita) pose.

\(^1\) Trika used here and many times afterwards means the trikāsthī (sacrum) the lowest point in the vertibral column where the two other bones of the legs meet.

\(^2\) This is Ag's interpretation of Aṇcita.
101. Bhujaṅgāucita—the feet in Bhujaṅgatrasita Čārti, the right hand Recita, the left hand with Latā gesture.

102. Daṇḍakarecita—hands and feet to be freely thrown about on all sides like a staff (daṇḍa), and the same hands and feet to be Recita afterwards.

103. Vṛśčikakutṭīta—assuming the Vṛśčika K. and the hands with Nikuṭṭīta movement.¹

104. Katiḥrānta—the Śuc Čārti, the right hand with the Apaviddha (Āviddhā) gesture and the hip to be moved round.

105. Latāvṛśčika—a foot to be Aucita and turned backwards, and the left hand to be with Latā gesture its palm and fingers bent and turned upwards.

106. Chinna—the Alapadma hand to be held on the hip which in Chinna pose, the body in the Vaiśakha Sthāna (posture).

107. Vṛśčikarecita—assuming the Vṛśčika K., the two hands in the form of a Svastika gradually to be Recita and to show Viprakirṇa gesture.

108. Vṛśčika—the two hands bent and held over the shoulders, and a leg bent and turned towards the back.²

109. Vyamsita—assuming Ālīḍha Sthāna, the two hands to be Recita and held on the breast and afterwards moved up and down with Viprakirṇa gesture.

110. Pārśvanikūṭṭaka—Svastika hands to be held on one side, and the feet to be Nikuṭṭīta.³

111. Lalāṭatilaka—afore assuming the Vṛśčika, K. a mark (tilaka) in the forehead to be made with a great toe.

112. Krāntaka—bending a Kuṇcita leg behind the back, the Atikrānta Čāri, then the two hands to be thrown down.

¹ See above 70 note. ² Ag. interprets the passage differently. ³ See above 70 note.
113. Kuṇcita—a leg to be first Aṇcita and left hand to be held on the left side with its palm upwards.

114. Cakrānapāda—the inner Apaviddha (Aḍḍitā) Čārī with the body bent and held down between the two arms hanging straight.

115. Uromaṇḍala—two feet drawn away from the Svastika position and used in Apaviddha (Aḍḍitā) Čārī and hands in Uromaṇḍala gesture.

116. Āksipta—hands and feet to be thrown about swiftly in this Karapā.

117. Talavilasita—foot with the toe and the sole turned upwards and held high on the side, and the palm of hands bent.

118. Argala—feet stretched backwards and kept two Tałas and a half apart, and hands moved in conformity with these.

119. Viksipta—hands and feet to be thrown backwards or sideways in the same way.

120. Āvarta—the Kuṇcita feet put forward and the two hands moved swiftly to befit the dance.

121. Dolāpāda—the Kuṇcita feet thrown up, and two hands swinging from side to side in a manner befitting the dance.

122. Nivṛttta—hands and feet first thrown out, and the Trika to be turned round and the two hands to be Recita.

123. Vinivṛttta—observing the Sūci Čārī, the Trika to be turned round and hands to be Recita.

124. Pārśvakṛnta—observing the Pārśvakṛnta Čārī, throwing out hands towards the front, and moving them in a manner befitting the dance.

---

113 (B.113, G.110).
114 (B.114, G.111).  According to Ag. apaviddha = aḍḍitā cāri for which see Nś. XI. 22.
115 (B.115, G.112).
116 (B.116, G.113).
117 (B.117, G.114).
118 (B.118, G.115).
119 (B.119, G.116).
120 (B.120, G.117).
121 (B.121, G.118).
122 (B.122, G.119).  For nivṛttta, B. reads vinivṛttta.
123 (B.123, O.120).
124 (B.124, O.121).
125. Niśumbhita—a foot bent towards the back, the breast raised high, and the hand held at the centre of the forehead (ṭilaka).¹
126. Vidyuddhrānta¹—foot turned backwards and the two hands in the Maṇḍalāviddhā² gesture stretched very close to the head.

127. Atikrānta—observing the Atikrānta Cāri, the two hands stretched forward in a manner befitting the dance.

128. Vivartitaka—hands and feet to be thrown out, the Trika to be turned round and hands to be Recita

129. Gajakrīḍita—the left hand bent and brought near the [left] ear, and the right hand in Latā gesture and the feet Dolāpāda Cāri.

130. Talasamśphoṭita¹—a foot to be swiftly lifted up and put forward, the two hands showing Talasamśphoṭita² gesture.

131. Garuḍaṇḍutaka—the two feet to be stretched backwards and the two hands—right and left—to be respectively with Latā and Recita gestures, and the breast raised up.

132. Gaṅḍasūcī—the feet to be in Sūcī position, the side to be Unmata, one hand to be on the breast and the other to bend and touch the cheek.

133. Parivṛttta—the hands raised in Apaveśṭita gesture, the feet in Sūcī position, the Trika is turned round (in the Brhadāraṇī Cāri).

134. Pārśvajānu—one foot in Sama position and the opposite thigh raised, and one Muṣṭi hand on the breast.

135. Grīdhāvalinaka—one foot stretched backwards and one knee slightly bent and the two arms outstretched.

¹ Ag. interprets differently
¹² Nowhere defined in NŚ.
¹⁻² Ag. interprets differently.
¹³ Defined nowhere in NŚ.
136. Sannata—after jumping, the two feet are to be put forward in Svastika form and the two hands to show Sannata 1 (i.e. Dola) gesture.

137. Sucet—a Kunticita foot to be raised and put forward on the ground, and the two hands to be in harmony with the performance.

* 138. Ardhasucet—the Alapadma hand is held on the head, the right foot is in Sucet (karaṇa) position.

139. Suciaviddha—one foot of Suci Karaṇa being put on the heel of another foot, the two hands to be respectively put on the waist and the breast.

140. Apakrantata—after making the Valita thigh, Apakranta Cari is to be performed, the two hands to be moved in harmony with the performance.

141. Mayiralalita—after assuming the Vṛśeika K. two hands to be Recita, and the Trika to be turned round [in the Bhramari Cari].

142. Sarpita—the two feet to be moved from the Añciita position and the head with Parivāhi gesture, and the two hands are Recita.

143. Daṇḍapāda—after the Nūpura Cari, Daṇḍapāda Cari should be observed and the avidda (vaktra) hand should be shown quickly.

144. Harinapluta—after observing the Atikranta Cari one jumps and stops, and then one of the shanks are bent and thrown up.

145. Preākhohitaka—after observing the Dolapāda Cari one is to jump and let the Trika turn round (in the Bhramari Cari and come at rest.

---

136 (B.136, G.133). 1 According to Ag. Sannata=Dolāhasta.
140 (B.140, G.137). 141 (B.141, G.138).
142 (B.142, G.139). 143 (B.143, G.140). 144 (B.144, G.141).
145 (B.145, G.142). 1 Defined nowhere in NŚ.
146. Nitamba—arms to be first thrown up and hands to have their fingers pointing upwards and the Baddhā Čārī to be observed.

147. Skhalita—after observing Dolāpāda Čārī, hands with Recita gesture to be turned round in harmony with this.

148. Krihasta—the left hand is to be placed on the breast, the palm of the other hand to be made Prodveṣṭītala, the feet to be Añcīta.

149. Prasarpitaka—one hand to be Recita and the other with Latā gesture, and feet to be Saṃsarpitata ( = Talasaṅcara).

150. Siṃhavikrīḍita—after observing the Alāta Čārī one is to move swiftly and hands to follow the feet.

151. Siṃhākārsita—one foot to be stretched backwards and hands to be bent and turned round in the front and again to be bent.

152. Udvrīṭta—hands, feet and the entire body to be moved violently (lit. thrown up) and then Udvrīṭta Čārī to be observed.

153. Upasṛtaka—observing Akṣipta Čārī and hands in harmony with this Čārī.

154. Talasamghaṭītita—observe the Dolāpāda Čārī two palms will clash with each other and the left hand to be Recita.

155. Janita—one hand to be on the breast, the other hanging loosely and observing Talāgrasamsthita (Janita) Čārī.

156. Avahitthaka—after observing Janita K. raising hands with fingers spread out and then letting them fall slowly.

157. Nivesā—the two hands will be on the breast which should be Nirbhugna and the dancer should assume Maṇḍala Sthāna (posture).


According to Ag. Talāgrasamsthita pāda means Janita carī.
158. Elakākṛīḍita—jumping with Talaśaṅcara¹ feet and coming to the ground with the body bent and turned.

159. Urūdvṛttta—a hand made Āvṛtti (Vyavartita) and then bent and placed on the thigh, shanks made aṅcita and Uḍvṛttta.

160. Madaskhalitaka—two hands hanging down, the head assuming the Parivāhita gesture, the right and the left feet to be turned round in Āviddha Cāri.

• 161. Viṣṇukṛānta—a foot stretched forward and bent as if on the point of walking, and hands to be Recita.

162. Saṁbhārānta—a hand with Āavartita (Vyavartita) movement placed on the thigh which is made Āviddha.¹

163. Viṣṇakambha—a hand to be Apaviddha,¹ Śuci Cāri, foot to be made Nikuṭṭita and the left hand on the breast.

164. Udghaṭṭa—feet to in Udghaṭṭita¹ movements and hands in Talasaṅghaṭṭita movement² are to be placed on two sides.

165. Vṛṣabhakṛīḍita—after observing the Alāta Cāri two hands to be made Recita, and afterwards these should to be made Kuñcita and Aṅcita.

166. Lolita—hands on the two sides to be Recita and Aṅcita, and the head Lolita and Vartita.

167. Nagapasarpita—to draw back feet from Svastika position and the head to be Parivāhita and hand to be Recita.

¹ Same as agratalasaṅcara; see NŚ. X. 46.
² Defined nowhere in NŚ.
168. Śaktaśya—beginning with body at rest, advancing with a Talasaścara\(^1\) foot and making the breast Udvāhita.\(^2\)

169. Gaṅgāvataraṇa—foot with the toes and the sole turned upwards, hands showing Tripataka with the fingers pointing downwards and the head being Sannata.\(^3\)

The Aṅghāras

170. I have spoken of one hundred and eight Karaṇas. I shall now describe the different Aṅghāras.

171-173. Sthirahasta—stretching two arms and throwing them up, taking up Samapāda Sthāna, the left hand stretched upwards from the level of the shoulder, taking up afterwards the Pratyālātha Sthāna, then observing successively the Nikūṭṭita, Urūdvṛttā, Āksipta, Svastiṣṭa, Nitamba, Karihastra and Kaṭicechinna, Karaṇas.

174-176. Paryastakā—observing Talapuṣpapuṭa, Apariddha, and Varīta Karaṇas, then taking up Pratyālātha Sthāna, then assuming Nikūṭṭaka, Urūdvṛttā, Āksipta, Uromaṇḍala, Nitamba, Karihastra, Kaṭicechinna, Karaṇas.

176-178. Sūcīviddha—after showing Alapallavā (Alapadma) and Sūcī (mukha) gestures assuming one after another Vikṣipta, Āvarīta, Nikūṭṭaka, Urūdvṛttā, Āksipta, Uromaṇḍala, Karihastra, and Kaṭicechinna Karaṇas.

178-180. Apariddha—Apariddha and Śuśīviddha Karaṇas, then observing Udveṣṭita K. with hands and turning the Trika.

---

168 (B.168, G.165). 1 See above 168 note. 2 B. reads udghāṭita.
169 (B.169, G.166). 1 Defined nowhere in NŚ.
2 Defined nowhere in NŚ.
3 For B.170-174 and G.167-170 see 56-61 before.
170 (B.174, G.171). 1 Defined nowhere in NŚ.
171-173 (B.175-177, G.172-174). 1 Definition of the aṅghāras have been translated like the karaṇas; above sec. 62 note. Aṅghāras are mostly combinations of the karaṇas.
176-178 (B.180b-182a, G.177-179a).
178-180 (B.182b-184a, G.179b-180).
showing with hands Uromaṇḍalaka gestures and assumimg Kaṭicchinna Karaṇa.


182-184. Udghaṭṭīta¹—moving Udveṣṭita and Apaviddha (Avidddha) hands and the two feet to be Nikuṭṭīta, and again changing them to Uromaṇḍala gesture and then assuming successively Nitamba, Karihasta and Kaṭicchinna Karaṇas.

184-187. Viṅkambha—hands by turns made Udveṣṭita, feet are successively made Nikuṭṭīta and bent, then assuming Uruḍvṛtta K. hands to be made Caturasra¹ and feet Nikuṭṭakā, assuming then Bhujaṅgatrāsīta K. hands to be made Udveṣṭita, assuming Chinna and Bhramaraka Karaṇas while Trika is to be moved, then Karihasta and Kaṭicchinna Karaṇas to be assumed.

187-190. Aprājita—assuming Daṇḍapāda K., hands having Vikṣipta and Ākṣipta¹ movement, then assuming Vyamsita K. the left hand moving along with the left foot, then hands being Caturasra and feet having Nikuṭṭakā movement, assuming Bhujaṅgatrāsīta K. and hands having Udveṣṭita movement, then assuming successively the two Nikuṭṭakas (i.e. nikuṭṭa and ardhanikuṭṭaka), Ākṣipta, Uromaṇḍala, Karihasta, and Kaṭicchinna Karaṇas.

190-192. Viṅkambhāpasṛta—assuming Kuṭṭīta and Bhujaṅgā trāsīta Karaṇas, Recita hand to show the Patāka gesture, then to be assumed successively Ākṣiptaka, Uromaṇḍala, Lata, Kaṭiccheda Karaṇas.

192-195. Mattākriḍa—assuming Nūpara K. by turning Tirka, then assuming Bhujaṅgatrāsīta K. assuming next Recita K.

---

¹ In the definition of aṅgahāra this term has been equated with nyūṭta or dance.
with the right foot, and then assuming successively Āksiṃpta, Chinna, Bāhyabhramaka, Uromaṇḍala, Nitamba, Karihasta, Kāṭicechēda Kargas.

196-197. Svastikarecita⁴—hands and feet are Recita, then assume Vṛscika K. and again repeat this movement of the hand and feet, and then Nikuṭṭaka K. and the Lata gesture alternately with the right and the left hand, and then Kāṭicechinna K.

197-200. Pārśvasvastika—assuming (Dik-) Svastika from one side and then the Ardhanikūṭaka, all these to be repeated on the side, then the Avṛtta (vyavartita) hand to be placed on the thigh, then to assume successively Uruddṛṭta, Āksiṃpta, Nitamba, Karihasta and Kāṭicechinna Karāṇas.

200-202. Vṛscikāpasṛta—assuming Vṛscika K. holding the Lata band to be held on the nose, after moving the same hand in Udveśṭita movement, then assuming successively Nitamba, Karihasta and Kāṭicechinna Karāṇas.


204-206. Mattaskhalitaka—assuming Matalli K. and moving round the right hand and bending and placing it near the (right) cheek, then assuming (successively) Apaṇviddha. Talasamsphotita, Karihasta and Kāṭicechinna Karāṇas.

206-208. Madadivalaśita—moving with Dolā hands and Svastikāpasṛta feet, making hands Aṇcita as well as Valita and then assuming successively Talasamghattita, Nikuṭṭaka, rudvṛṭta, Karihasta and Kāṭicechinna Karāṇas.

---

⁴ In the translation of this K. Ag. has been followed.

¹ In the translation of this K. I have followed Ag.

200-202 (B.204b-206a, G.200-201).
202-204 (B.206b-208a, G.202-203).
204-206 (B.208b-210a, G.204-205).
504-208 (B.210b-212a, G.206-207).
208-210. Gatimāndala—after assuming Maṇḍala Sthānaka and making the hands Recita and the feet Udghaṭṭita assuming successively Matalli, Ākṣipta, Uromāṇḍala and Kaṭicecheda Karāṇas.

210-212. Paricechinna—after the Samapāḍa Sthān1 assuming Paricechinna (i.e. Chinna) K then with Aviddra foot assuming Bāhya Bhramaṃ ka1 and with the left foot assuming Suci K. and than observi’ (successively) Atikrānta, Bhujaṅgatrasita, Karihasta and Kaṭice. ana Karāṇas.

212-216. Parivṛttakarecita—holding on the head hands in loose Svastika form and then after bending the body the left hand to be made Recita, and raising the body, again the same hand to be made Recita, after this hands to show Latā gesture and assuming successively Vṛśecika, Recita, Karihasta Bhujaṅgatrasita, Ākṣiptaka Karāṇas then have Svastika foot; all this to be repeated after turning back completely, then assume (successively) Karihasta.

216-219. Vaiśākharecita—along with body the two hands to be made Recita and all this is to be repeated with the body bent then observe Nūpurpāḍa Cārī and Bhujaṅgatrasita, Recita, Maṇḍalasvastika, afterwards bending shoulder Urūdyṛta, Ākṣipta Uromāṇḍala Karihasta1 and Kaṭicechinna Karāṇas are to be assumed.

219-221. Parāvṛttta—assuming Janita K. and putting forward a foot, then assuming Alātaka K. and turning the Trika, [in the Bhramri Cārī] afterwards the left hand bend and to on the cheek, then assuming Kaṭicechinna Karāṇa.

---

208-210 (B.212b-214a, G.208-209).

210-212 (B.214b-216a, G.10-211). 1 According to Ag (I.p.152) bāhyā bhramaraka seems to mean a cārī of that name. But it seems that by this bhramaraka, the movement known as bhramari has been meant. See M. Ghosh AD. 289ff. also A. K. Coomaraswamy. MG. p.74 .

212-216 (B.216b-220a, G.212-215).


219-221 (B.223b-225a, G.219-220).
221-223. Alātaka—assuming Svastika, vyāṃsīta [in it hands being Recita], Alātaka, Urdhvajānu, Nikuṭīcita, Ardhasūc, Vikṣipta, Udvṛttta, Ākṣipta, Krihasta and Kaṭicchinna Karapaṇas one after another.

223-225. Pārvaccheda—holding Nikuṭīcita hands on the breast assuming Urdhvajānu, Ākṣipta, Svastika Karapaṇa, Trika to be turned round, then Uromaṇḍala, Nitamba, Karihasta and Kaṭicchinna, Karapaṇas to be assumed.

226-227. Vidyudbhṛnta—assuming Sūc K. using the left foot first, and Vidyubhṛnta K. using the right foot first, then Sūc K. with the right foot moved first, and Vidyudbhṛnta with the left foot moved first, afterwards assuming Chinna K., and turning round the Trika, then Latā and Kaṭicchinna Karapaṇas.

227-229. Udvṛttaka—assuming Nūpurapaḍā Cāri holding the right and the left hands by the side, and with them assuming Vikṣipta K., with these hands assuming [again] Sūc K., and turning round the Trika [in Bhramari Cāri] and then assuming Latā and Kaṭicchinna Karapaṇas.

229-231. Āltāha—assuming Vyāṃsīta K., striking the hands on the shoulder, and then Nūpura K., with the left foot [moving first], afterwards Alāta and Ākṣiptaka Karapaṇas with the right foot [moving first] and then making Uromaṇḍala gestures with hands and assuming Karihasta and Kaṭicchinna Karapaṇas.

231-233. Recita—showing Recita hand, bending it on one side and making the [same] Recita movement and then repeating this movement after bending the entire body, assuming successively Nūpurapaḍā, Bhujaṅgatraśīta, Recita, Uromaṇḍala and Kaṭicchinna Karapaṇas.
234-235. Āchurita—assuming Nūpura K. and turning the Trika round, assuming Vyāmśita K. and again turning round the Trika, then assuming successively Alātaka¹ K. from the left [side] and Süct, Karihasta and Kaṭicechinna Karanās.

236-238. Āksiptarecita—Svastika feet to be in Recita and so the Svastika hands, then with the same (i.e. Recita) movement they should be separated, and with the same Recita movement they are to be thrown up, then assuming successively Udṛttta, Āksipta, Uromaṇḍala, Nitamba, Karihasta and Kaṭicechinna Karanās.

239-241. Sambhūranta—assuming Vikśipta K. throwing out the left hand with Süct gesture, the right hand placed on the breast, Trika to be turned [in the Bhramari Cārī] then assuming successively Nūpura, Āksipta, Ardhasvastika, Nitamba, Karihasta, Uromaṇḍala and Kaṭicechinna Karanās.


244-245. Ardhanikuṭṭaka—observing swiftly Nūpurapādiḍa Cārī, hands to move in harmony with the feet and Trika to turn round [in the Bhramari Cārī], then hands and feet to make Nikuṭṭita movement, afterwards assuming Uromaṇḍala, Karihasta, Kaṭicechinna and Ardhanikuṭṭaka Karanās.

The Recakas

246. I have spoken of these thirtytwo Aṅgahāras; I shall now describe the four Recakas¹; please listen about them:

247. Among the Recakas the first is that of the foot (pāda),

¹ Read vōmam cūlatakam for pādam cūlatakam in B.

239-241 (B.243-245, G.238-240).
244-246 (B.248-249, G.243-244).
246 (B.250, G.245).
¹ For the relation between Recakas and the Aṅgahāras and the use of the Recakas see Ag.
the second is that of the waist (kaṭi), the third is that of the hand (hasaḷa) and the fourth is that of the neck (grīva).

248. The term Recita [relating to a limb] means moving it round separately (i.e. not in any Karaṇa or Cārī) or its drawing up or its movement of any kind separately.

249. Pāda-recaka—Going from side to side with wavering feet or with differently moving feet, is called their Recaka.

250. Kaṭi-recaka—Raising up the Trika and the turning of the waist as well as its drawing back, is called the Kaṭi-recaka.

251. Hasta-recaka—Raising up, throwing out, putting forward, turning round and drawing back of the hand is called its Recaka.

252. Grīva-recaka—Raising up, lowering and bending the neck sideways, and other movements of it are called its Recaka.

253-254. Seeing Śaṅkara (Śiva) dance with Recakas and Āṅgabāras, Parvati too performed a Gentle Dance (lit. danced with delicate forms)¹, and this dance was followed by the playing of musical instruments like Mrdanga,² Bheri, Paṭaha, Bhambha³, Diṣṭima, Gomukha, Paṇava and Dardura.

255. [Besides on this occasion] Mahēśvara (Śiva) danced in the evening after the break-up (lit. destruction) of Dakṣa’s sacrifice with different Āṅgabāras and in conformity with proper time beat (tālo) and tempo (ladya).

252 (B.256, G.251).

² mṛdaṅga, bheri, paṭaha, bhambha, diṣṭima, dardura and paṇava are drums of different sizes and shapes, and made of different materials such as clay, wood etc. Of these bheri, paṇava and gomukha (possibly a horn) have been mentioned in the Bhāgavad-gītā, ch. I.13.
³ B. read jaṅkhya (pa. bambha).

255 (B.259, G.254).¹ The story of the break-up of Dakṣa’s sacrifice occurs in two different forms in the Bhāgavata and the Varāha P. See JK, under Dakṣa.
256. Gaṇas like Nandin and Bhadramukha seeing then [in course of this performance of Śiva], Piṇḍibandha\(^1\) [of different dance forms] gave names to them [and imitated these] well.

257-263. Names of Piṇḍis specially attached to different gods and [goddesses are as follows]: Śiva—Vṛṣa, Nandin - Pāṭṭist, Caṇḍikā (Kāl)—Simhavāhini, Viṣṇu—Tārksya, Svayambhu—(Brahman)—Padma (lotus), Śakra (Indra)—Airāvati, Manmatha—Jhāṣā, Kūnāra (Kārtikeya)—Śikhī (peacock), Śrī (Lākṣmī)—Ulū (owl), Jāhṇavi (Gaṅgā)—Dhārā, Yama—Pāśa, Varuṇa—Nadi, Kuvera (Dhanada)—Yākṣi, Bala (rāma)—Hala (plough), Bhogins (serpents)—Sarpa, Ganeśvaras (the lords of Gaṇas)\(^1\)—Dakṣayajñāvīmardini, The [Piṇḍi] of Śiva, the killer of Andhaka\(^2\), will be Raudri in the form of his trident. The Piṇḍis of the remaining gods and goddesses will be similarly named after (lit. marked with) their own banners\(^3\).

263-264. After inventing the Recakas, Aṅgahāras and Piṇḍis, Śiva communicated them to the sage Taṇḍu\(^1\) who in his turn made out of them dance together with songs and

256 (B.260, G.255).\(^1\) Piṇḍibandha—Ag. (I. 170-171) explains the words as follows:—विद्योम साक्षितिविनिभिनमार्था रमायनमर्थानि विद्योमि इति...यथा तत्प्रकार द्वारा इति...यथा विद्योममर्था रमायनमर्थानि विद्योमि इति...यथा यथा एव विद्योममर्थानि नामाः नामानि विद्योमि रति...विद्योममर्थानि नामाः... From these quotations it is apparent that Ag. had no definite idea about the piṇḍibandha or piṇḍi. But the word occurs in the following couplet of a later work on dramaturgy (Bh P. p.264):

विद्यादधीशि न विद्याविध्विधि नाभिकि...विद्याविध्विधि विधि राजसतुष्ठानि।

From the above quotation the meaning of the word seems to be a term relating to group-dance. For more about piṇḍibandha see 257-262, 284-285, 291-294 below.

257-262 (B.261-266a. G.256 261).\(^1\) Gāpeśvari means relating to Gāpeśvaras or lords of hosts; see above NŚ. III. 31,53 and III. 1-8 note 7.

2 The story of Śiva's killing the Asura Andhaka occurs, in Rām, Hravamsa and several Purāṇas. See JK. sub voce.

3 B. omits 263b altogether.

263-264 (B.266b-268a. G.262-263).\(^1\) Taṇḍu's name does not seem to occur in any extant Purāṇa. It is just possible that the name of this muni has been derived from, taṇḍava a non-Aryan word which originally may have meant dance.
instrumental music; and hence this dance is known as Tāṇḍava (i.e. of Tāṇḍu’s creation).

The sages speak

265. Use of Gestures etc. (abhinaya) having been devised by the experts, for drawing out the sense [of songs and speeches in a play] what led to the making of dance (nṛtta), and what is its nature?

266. Why is dance made in connexion with the Āśārīta songs? It does neither relate to its meaning nor reflect its spirit.

267. [In answer to these questions] it is said that the dance is occasioned by no specific need; it has come into use simply because it creates beauty.

268. As dance is naturally loved by almost all people, it is eulogised as being auspicious.

269. It is eulogised also as being the source of amusement on occasions of marriage, child-birth, reception of a son-in-law, general festivity and attainment of prosperity.

270. Hence the host of Bhūtas have ever praised[1] the Pratikṣepas[2] which are used in songs and in regulating the division of dances.

271. Śiva (lit. god) too was pleased to say to Tāṇḍu, “Perform this dance in connexion with the singing of songs.

---

265 (B.268b-269a, G.264). 1 B. reads tasmān nṛttaṃ for kasman nṛttaṃ in 265b.

266 (B.269b-270a, G.265).

267 (B.270b-271a, G.266).

268 (B.271b-272a, G.267).

269 (B.272b-273a, G.268).

270 (B.273b-274a, G.269). 1 For prakṛiti, B.G. read pravṛti, 2 pratikṣepa—Ag. (I. p.182) defines this term as follows:—गुड़चुक्सूलोकं धर्मेः प्रतिसेवयायम् प्रतिक्षेपः प्रतिसेवः त्वः प्रथमेकं धर्मेः प्रतिसेवयायम् प्रतिक्षेपः प्रतिसेवः.

271 (B.274b-275a, G.270): 1 For taṇṭhuḥ santosāpūrvakam. This variant has been recorded by Ag. (I.181) and it seems to be the correct reading. B.G. read taṇṭhuṣṭāntasāpūrvakam.
272. The Class Dance (tāṇḍava) is mostly to accompany the adoration of gods but its gentler form (sukumāra-prayoga) relates to the Erotic Sentiment.

The Vardhamānaka

273. Now while coming to discuss the Vardhamānaka I shall describe the rules regarding the performance of the Class Dance (tāṇḍava) as it was performed by Taṇḍu.

274. As in its performance Kalā and tempo (laya) attain vrolāki (increment) due to the increment of Aksaras it is called the Vardhamānaka.

The Āśārita

275. After setting down the musical instruments (kuttapa) the producers [of plays] should get the Āśārita performed.

276. Then after the Upohana has been performed to the accompaniment of drums and stringed instruments, a female dancer should enter [the stage] with the playing of drums [only].

277. This playing of the [instrumental] music should be in pure Karaṇa and Jāti. And then a Cāri should be performed with steps in accompaniment of music.

278. On entering the stage with flowers in her hands the female dancer should be in the Vaisākha Sthāna (posture) and perform all the four Recakas (i.e. those of feet, hand, waist and neck).

---

272 (B.275b-276a, G.271). The tāṇḍava has been translated by some as 'wild dance' (Hass, Daśarūpa, p.5), but the adjective seems to be misleading. From the present chapter of the NŚ, it appears that the word meant 'class dance' which has been codified. It is to be distinguished from the folk dance mentioned in later works. Tāṇḍava was no exclusively male dance. For the illustrations of the karanas taken out of old bas reliefs and printed in the Baroda ed. of the NŚ, show that these were performed by women as well. These karanas were evidently elements of tāṇḍava; lūṣya performed by women was only a gentler form of the tāṇḍava.
279. Then she should go round the stage scattering flowers from her hands to gods, and after bowing to them, she should make use of different gestures (abhinaya).

280. Instrumental music should not be played when there is any song to be delineated by gestures, but at the performance of Aṅgahāra’s drums must be employed.

281. The playing of drums (lit. instrumental music) during the Class Dance should be Sama, Rakta, Vibhakta and distinctly heard (sphniţa) on account of clear strokes and should be properly following different aspects of the dance.

282. After following the song [with her dance] the dancer should make her exit and others [like her] will enter [the stage] in the same manner.

283. These other women will in due order form Piplīs¹ and till all these are formed they will perform the Paryastaka.

284. After forming [Piplīs] these women will make their exit, and during the formation of the Piplīs an instrumental music which has various Oghas and Karaṇas should be played, and it should be similar to the music at the time of the Paryastaka.

285-287. Then this Upohama should be again performed as before and the Āsārīta too; a song also should be sung and a female dancer should enter the stage in the manner described before, and she should delineate [the meaning of the song in the second Āsārīta by suitable gesture] and translate the subject-matter (rastu)¹ into a dance.

288. After finishing the Āsārīta the female dancer should make her exit, and then another female dancer should enter the stage and make a similar performance.

289. Thus at every step the rules of Āsārīta should be followed by singers as well as players of the instrumental music.

¹ See above 282 note 2.
290. [During all these performances] the first foot\(^1\) of the song should be sung once, the second twice, the third thrice, and the fourth four times.\(^2\)

291. The Pinda\(^s\) have four varieties Pinda\[^\text{proper}\] Srikhalika, Latabandha, and Bhedyaka.\(^1\)

292. The name Pinda or Pinda\(b\)andha is due to its being a Pinda (lump), a cluster (gulma)\(^1\) is called Srikhalika\(^2\), and that which is held together [as it were] by a net, is Latabandha\(^3\), and Bhedyaka\(^4\) is the (separate) dance of one individual.

293. The Pinda\(b\)andha is to be applied in the first (lit. shortest Asarita\(^1\)), Srikhalika at the transition of tempo, the Latabandha in the middle one and the Bhedyaka in the longest (i.e. Asarita).


2 These asaritas were distinguished by the kalas of time they required. According to Ag. (I.185) the shortest asarita takes up seventeen kalas, the medium asarita thirty-three kalas and the longest asarita sixty-five kalas.

290 (B.293b-294a, G.289). 1 It is implied that each one of these groups of songs should be followed by dance of different dancers.

291 (B.294b-295a, G.290). 1 See notes 256 above. In the BhP. (p. 246) occurs the following passage:—

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{चरणेऽनीतिः मुद्-गुल्मविलक्षणा सता:} & \quad \text{निर्मलविलक्षणा सता:} \\
\text{मुदा: स्वयं मुद्या मुद्या मुद्या} & \quad \text{परम्परास्रोतिः मुद्या सा सता सता} \\
\text{परम्परास्रोतिः यन्त्र यन्त्र यन्त्र} & \quad \text{निर्मलस्रोतविलक्षणा सता} \\
\end{align*}
\]

From this it is quite clear that the pin\(\text{\'}d\)ibandha relates to the grouping of dancers. Of these the gulma is a general collective dance, the Srikhalika is the dance in which partners hold one another's hands, the lotu is the dance of two putting their arms around each other, and the bhedyaka is the dance of each one separately away from the group. The section 292 below does not quite agree with this view.

292 (B.295b-296a, G.291). 1 See above 291 note.

2 BhP. does not identify the gulma and the Srikhalika.

3 See above 291 note 1. 4 See above 291 note 1.

5 See above 291 note 1. 6 san\(\text{\'}t\)a=ekan\(\text{\'}t\)a=ekasya n\(\text{\'}t\)a; of sak\(\text{\'}rt\) (= once),
294. Origin (of Piṇḍus) is twofold: Yantra and Bhadrāsana. These should be learnt and properly applied by the producers [of plays].

The Chandaka

295. In the Vardhamāna the producer should thus use [dances]. I shall speak again about the rules regarding the performance of songs and Chandakas.

296. I shall now speak of the dance and the instrumental music that should accompany songs consisting of the Vastu as well as of their ([Aṅgas). During the performance of this song and music a female dancer should enter the stage; at that time all the drums are to be sounded and all the stringed instruments are to be played with Kṣepa and Pratikṣepa.

298. First of all, the entire words (vastu) of the song should be represented by gestures, and next the same should be shown by a dance.

299. Directions given above regarding the dance, use of gestures and the instrumental music will apply equally to the subject matter of the songs in the Āsārīta.

300. This is the rule with regard to songs consisting of the Vastu. Now listen to description of songs made by Aṅgas.

301. Rules regarding the dance, use of gestures and the instrumental music which apply to words (of songs) are equally applicable in case of Chandakas which are composed of their Aṅgas.

302. During the Mukha and the Upohana the instrumental music should be played with heavy and light Aksamās by keeping them distinct (lit. separate).

---

293 (B.296b-297a, G.292). 1 The distinguishing features of the three āsārītas have been given in note to 289 above.
294 (B.297b-298a, G.293). 1 This passage is not clear. Aṅg's explanation (Lp.193) of the yantra and the bhadrāsana is not convincing.
295 (B.298b-299a, G.294).
2 For pratikṣepa see above 270 note 2.
298 (B.301b-302a, G.297).
299 (B.302b-303a, G.298).
300 (B.303b-304a, G.299).
308. When in course of a song some of its parts are repeated, the parts uttered first should be delineated by gestures and the rest are to be translated into dance.

304-305. When in course of a song some of its parts are repeated it should be followed by the instrumental music which observes the rule of three Paṇis and three kinds of tempo. On an occasion like this the instrumental music should follow the [proper] tempo.

305-308. The Tattva, the Anugata and the Ogha relate to the Karana. Among these, the Tattva is to be applied in slow tempo, the Anugata in medium tempo and the Ogha in quick tempo. This is the rule regarding the instrumental music. [Different] parts of the song in case of a Chandaka are to be repeated. This is always the rule in [combining] the dance, Gestures and the song. In case of songs composed in one stanza (nibaddha) commencement (graha of the playing of drums) should take place at their end, but in the repetition of the parts [of a large song] such commencement should take place from the beginning.

The Gentle Dance

309. This should be the procedure in performing the Āṣārita songs. Now consider [all] that relating to the adoration of gods as the Gentle Dance*(ṣuṣmāra).

310. The Gentle Dance with the Erotic Sentiment [relates to] a dialogue between a man and a woman when they are in love.

* Occasions suited to dance

311. Now listen, O Brahmins, about occasions in plays when dance should be introduced in course of songs.

312. Experts should apply dance when the principal words of a song [in a play] as well as its [ornamental adjunct known as]
Varṇa\(^1\) comes to a close or when any character attains good fortune [in a play].

313. And dance should take place on an occasion in a play when something connected with love occurs between a married couple, for it (the dance) will be a source of joy.

314. Dance should also take place in any scene of a play when the lover is near and a [suitable] season or the like is visible.

**Occasions when dances are prohibited**

315. But dance should not be applied to the part of a young woman who is enraged (khaṇḍitā),\(^1\) deceived (vipralabdha),\(^2\) or separated [from her lover] by a quarrel (kalahantātā)\(^3\).

316. Dance should not be applied also at a time when a dialogue is going on or when the beloved one is not near at hand, or has gone abroad.

317. And besides this when one realises the appearance of one of the seasons or the like from the words of a Messenger, and feels eagerness or anxiety on account of this, no dance should be applied.

318. But if during the performance of any part of the play the heroine is gradually pacified, dance is to be applied till its end.

319. If any part of a play relates to the adoration of any deity one should perform there a dance with energetic Aṅgabāras which Śiva created.

320. And any love-song mentioning relations between men and women should be followed by a dance with delicate Aṅgabāras which Pārvatī (lit. the goddess) created.

**Playing of drums**

321. I shall now speak of the rules about the playing of
drums which should follow four-footed Narkuṭaka,¹ Khaṇḍaka² and Parīgitaka.

322. Playing of drums should begin with the Sannipāta Graha at a time when a foot of the Dhṛuvā of the Khaṇḍa or the Narkuṭa class has been sung.

323. In course of a Dhṛuvā which consists of even number of feet with equal number of syllables the drum should be played with the Graha by the forefinger after its first foot has been sung.

324. [After performing the Dhṛuvā song with the playing of drums as directed above] this song should be repeated with proper gestures [to delineate it], and it should be again sung, and at the end of its last foot drum should be played.

When drums are not to be played

325. Drums should not be played at a time when the song or its Vṛtta-s have been finished or it is beginning afresh.

326. During the Antara-mārga which may be made by Trintri or Karaṇas, the Class Dance should be followed by drums as well as the Śuci Cārti.

327. One who will perform well this dance created by Maheśvara (Śiva) will go [at his death] free from all sins to the abode of this deity.

328. These are the rules regarding the Class Dance arising out of its application. Tell me what more I am to speak now about the rules of the Nāṭyaveda.

Here ends Chapter IV of Bharata’s Nāṭyaśāstra which treats of the Characteristics of the Class Dance.

---

² See Śū. (C.) XXXI. 51. 2. XXXII. 434. 322 (B.329, G.321).
³ See Śū. (C.) XXXI. 511. XXXII. 434. 324 (B.337, G.323).
¹ See Śū. (C.) XXXI. 511 : XXXII. 304 ff.
³ See Śū. (C.) XXXI. 511. XXXII. 434.
² See Śū. (C.) XXXI. 511.
CHAPTER FIVE

THE PRELIMINARIES OF A PLAY

The Sages question.

1-4. On hearing the words of Bharata who continued the topic of drama the sages were pleased in mind and said, “We have heard from you about the origin of drama and the Jarjara as well as [the means of] stopping obstacles, and the worship of gods. Having grasped the meaning we would like to know in detail (lit. exhaustively), O the very splendid one, about the Preliminaries with all their characteristics; it behoves you, O Brahmin, to explain [everything] for our understanding [the same properly].”

Bharata answers.

5-6. Hearing these words of the sages Bharata spoke thus about the rules of the Preliminaries: “O the blessed ones, listen to me. I am speaking about the Preliminaries as well as of the Pāḍabhāga, the Kalās and the Walking-round [which relate to them].

Preliminaries defined

7. As it is first performed at the beginning (pūrvam) in the stage (raṅga) it is called the (pūrvaruṅga) Preliminaries.

Parts of the Preliminaries

8-11. Its different parts which are to be performed in due...
order with the playing of drums and stringed instruments as well as with Recitatives (pāthya), are as follows: Pratyaḥāra₁, Avatarāpa₂, Ārambha₃, Ācāvāna₄, Vaktrapāṇi₅, Parīghaṭanā₆, Saṃghoṭanā₇, Mārgāśārita₈, and Āsārita₉ of the long, the medium and the short types. These songs outside [the performance of a play] are to be sung by persons behind the curtain¹⁰ to the accompaniment of drums and stringed instruments.

12-15. Then after removing the curtain¹, dances and recitals² are to be performed with the playing of all musical instruments, and some song of the Madraka³ class is to be sung, or one of the Vardhamānaka⁴ class along with the Class Dance [suitable to it] should be applied, Then should take place [one after another] during the Preliminaries the following:—Utthāpana⁵, Walking round⁶, Benediction⁷, Suśkāpukṛṣṭā⁸, Raṅgarāva⁹, Čārī¹⁰, Mahācāri¹¹, Three Men’s Talk¹² and Laudation¹³.

16. I shall now explain in due order the characteristics of all these which are to be included in the ceremony of the Preliminaries.

---

¹ See below 17.  
² See below 18.  
³ See below 18.  
⁵ See below 18.  
⁴ See below 19.  
⁶ See below 19.  
⁷ See below 20.  
⁸ See below 20.  
⁹ See below 20.  
¹⁰ See below 21.  
¹¹ From this statement it appears that the first nine items of the preliminaries were performed on the stage covered with a front curtain much like the modern drop curtain. There were besides this, two curtains on two doors of the tiring room. It seems that the front curtain came into regular use in later times and especially at the end of each act. Cf. javani-kāntar used as a synonym of 'act' in the KM.

12-15 (B.G. same). ¹ The front curtain; see 8-11 note 10 above.

² Recitals of the Benediction (māndī) and the Laudation (prarocānī) etc.  
³ madraka—a class of songs.

⁴ vardhamānaka—a class of songs with dance. See NS. (C.) XXXIX.  
⁵ See below 22-23.  
⁶ See below 23-24, 65-89.  
⁷ See below 24-25, 107-113  
⁸ See below 25-26, 113-116.  
⁹ See below 26-27.  
¹⁰ See below 27-28, 119-120.  
¹¹ See below 27-28, 127-130.  
¹² See below 28-29, 137-141.  
¹³ See below 29-30, 141-142.  
¹⁶ (B.G. same). ¹ It may appear that these items of the Prelimi-
The Pratyahāra

17. Arranging of the musical instruments (kudapa) is called the Pratyahāra.\textsuperscript{1}

The Avataraṇa

The seating of singers is called the Avataraṇa (lit. coming down).\textsuperscript{2}

The Ārabhaṇa

18. The commencement of vocal exercise for singing (parijita) is called the Ārabhaṇa (lit. beginning).\textsuperscript{3}

The Āsravāṇā

Adjusting the musical instruments for playing them in due manner is called the Āsravāṇā.

The Vaktrapāṇi

19. Rehearsing (lit. dividing) the different styles (vṛtti) of playing musical instruments is called the Vaktrapāṇi\textsuperscript{4}.

The Parighaṭṭaṇa

The strings of instruments are adjusted duly during the Parighaṭṭaṇa.\textsuperscript{5}

\textsuperscript{1} For the arrangement of the musical instruments see the diagram 2.
\textsuperscript{2} For the position of singers see diagram 2.
\textsuperscript{3} 18 (B.G. same). 1 āsravāṇā—For details about the performance of this see NŚ. (C.) XXIX. 120 ff.
\textsuperscript{4} 19 (B.G. same). 1 vaktrapāṇi—For details about the performance for this see NŚ. (C.) XXIX. 131 ff.
\textsuperscript{5} āparighaṭṭaṇa—For the performance of this see NŚ. (C.) XXIX. 42–145.
The Samghota

20. The Samghota is meant for rehearsing the use of different hand poses [for indicating the time-beat].

The Margasarita

The playing together [in harmony with one another] of drums and stringed instruments is called the Margasarita.

The Asarita

21. The Asarita is meant for practising the beat of time-fractions, (kalapata).

The Application of songs

And the Application of songs (gitavidhi) is for singing the glory of gods.

The Uttapana

22-23. I shall now speak about the Uttapana (lit. raising) ceremony which is so styled because from this, the reciters of the Benediction start (lit. raise) first of all in the stage the performance [of the play]. Hence the Uttapana is considered by some to be the beginning [of the performance].

The Walking-round

23-24. The Walking-round (parivartana) is so styled because in it, the guardian deities of different worlds are praised [by the Director] walking all over [the stage].

The Benediction

24-25. The Benediction (naml) is so called because it must always include [and invoke] the blessing of gods, Brahmins and kings.

20 (B.G. same). 1 sathothe—For the performance of this see Ns. (C.) XXIX. 137-141.

2 margasarita—For the performance of this see Ns. (C.) XXIX. 145-116.

21 (B.G. same). 1 asarita—For the performance of this see Ns. (C.) XXX. 59-75. 169-194.

2 See Ns. (C.) XXX. 267 ff.

22-23 (B.22-23a, G. 21e-22).


24-25 (B.24b-25a, G.24). 1 For its specimens see below 107 ff.
The Śuṣkāvākrśtā Dhruvā

25-26. When an Avakṣṭā Dhruvā is composed with meaningless sounds it is called Śuṣkāvākrśtā¹, It indicates verses for the Jarjara².

The Raṅgadvāra

26-27. The Raṅgadvāra is so called, because from this part commences the performance which includes Words and Gestures.

The Čāri and the Mahācārī

27-28. The Čāri is so called because it consists of movements depicting the Erotic Sentiment and in the Mahācārī occur movements delineating the Furious Sentiment.

The Three Men’s Talk

28-29. The conversation of the Director (sūtradhāra), an Assistant (pāripārśvaka) and the Jester¹ is called the Three Men's Talk (trigato).

The Laudation

29-30. The address which the Director (lit. the expert) makes suggesting the Denouement of the action (kārya) of the play in hand with [proper] reasoning and arguments is called the Laudation (pavrōcana).

The origin of the Bahirgita and its justification

30-31. I shall now describe in detail the Āsrāvanā which is included in the Bahirgita and shall speak of its origin as well as its justification.

---
¹ See below 113-115.
² The meaning is not clear. B.G. read between 25b and 26a two prose lines.
³ The Jester’s role is assumed by one of the Assistants. See below 70 where two Assistants enter along with the Director. For details of the Three Men’s Talk see below 137-141.
⁴ For details about the Laudation see below 141-142.
31-32. Now when songs in seven forms\(^1\) and in Citra\(^2\) and Dakṣiṇā\(^3\) Mārgas together with the Upohana\(^4\) and the Nirgita\(^5\) were started by musical experts like Nārada in praise of gods, all the gods and the Dānavas, in the assembly were made to hear the Nirgita\(^6\) performed with proper tempo and time beat\(^7\).

Dāityas and Rākṣasas provoked to jealousy

33-34. Now on hearing these happy songs praising the gods, the Dāityas and the Rākṣasas were all provoked to jealousy.

34-36. Under these circumstances they pondered [over the matter] and said to one another: "We are glad to hear (lit. accept) this Nirgita in accompaniment of the instrumental music, (and not the songs) in seven forms\(^1\) about the exploits of the gods, which they were pleased to hear; we shall hear the Nirgita only and shall always be pleased with it. Then these Dāityas [and Rākṣasas] pleased with the Nirgita urged for its repeated performance".

The gods approach Nārada to stop the Nirgita.

37-38. This enraged the gods who said to Nārada, "These Dānavas and Rākṣasas are pleased with the Nirgita only [and do not want anything else i.e. songs]. Hence we wish this performance (of the Nirgita) to come to an end. What do you think of this?"

---

\(^1\) Seven forms means the types of tālas. See NŚ. (C.) XXXI. 497 ff.

\(^2\) See (C.) XXXI. 414.

\(^3\) See (C.) XXXI. 412.

\(^4\) See (C.) XXXI. 234 ff.

\(^5\) Another name for bahūrgita. See below 33-42.

\(^6\) nirgita—instrumental music.

\(^7\) For different aspects of the tāla see NŚ. (C.) XXVIII. 15-16 and (C.) XXXI. 33-34 (B.34, G.33)

34-38 (B.35-37a, G.34-36a). ! The seven forms—On this Ag. (I. P. 324) says: भाजसंवैविविध्रितिणिविविध्रिविशिष्टीनन् निर्गिता: श्रवणं पवनविष्कारम सतीय यत्वसमिति निर्गिताः स्थापिताः निर्गिताः स्थापिताः निर्गिताः स्थापिताः निर्गिताः स्थापिताः

11
38-41. Hearing these words of the gods Nārada replied, "Let the Nīrgita dependent on the music of stringed instruments be not stopped, and this (nīrgita) combined with the Upohana and accompanied by the music of stringed instruments will have seven forms. Enraptured (lit. bound down) by this Nīrgita the Daityas and the Rākṣasas will not be provoked and they will not create any obstruction [of the performance]."

41-42. This is the called Nīrgita to satisfy the vanity of the Daityas while in honour of the gods it is called the Bahirgita.

42-44. This is to be played by experts in the Citravīṇī with metallic strings, and the performance should contain light and heavy syllables (aṅgāra) and have Vārṇas and Alamkāras. It is called the Nīrgita because in it there is sung a combination of sounds carrying no sense, and to satisfy the jealousy of the gods it is called the Bahirgita".

The gods are pleased with the Nīrgita (Bahirgita).

44-45. The reason behind the Nīrgita in its seven forms as well as the Uthāpama and the like, will now be given.

45-54. The Pratyabhāra pleases the Rākṣasas (Yātudhāna) and the Pannagas, while the Apsarasas are delighted with the Avataraṇa. The Gandharvas are pleased when the Ārambha is performed, and in the performance of the Āśravāpa the Daityas take delight. The Vaktrapāṇi pleases the Dānavas and in the Pariṇghāla the hosts of Rākṣasas are [again] pleased. By the Saṃghoṭāna Guhyakas are satisfied, while the Mārgāsārita the pleases Yakṣas. When
songs (gilaka) are sung the gods enjoy them, and Rudra with his followers is pleased by the performance of the Vardhamāna. Similarly in the performance of the Walking-round (parivar-tana) Lokapālas (the guardians of the worlds) are delighted, and the Moon-god is pleased with the Benediction. During the singing of the Avakṛṣṭa (Dhruvā) Nāgas are pleased, while Śuṣkāvakṛṣṭa (Dhruvā) pleases the host of Pitṛs (ancestors). In the Raṅgadhvāra Viṣṇu is pleased, while the Jarjara, ceremony pleases the leaders of Vighnas. On the Čārt being performed Umā takes pleasure while on the performance of Mahācāri the Bhūtas are delighted.

55. So much about worshipping the deities in different parts of the Preliminaries (pūrvaraṅga) beginning with the Pratyāhāra and ending in the [Mahā] čārt.

56. O the best of Brahmins, in course of describing the different parts of the Preliminaries I have named the gods pleased by them and mentioned [the individual] parts of it in which they take delight.

57-58. The performance of the Preliminaries which means worshipping the gods, is praised by them (i.e. gods) and is conducive to duty (dharma), fame and long life. And this performance whether with or without songs, is meant for pleasing the Dāityas and the Dānava as well as the gods (lit. denizens of the celestial region).

59. I shall now tell you [afterwards] while discussing the rules of Dhruvās the characteristics and function of performances with or without songs (sagīta and nirgīta) as well as of the Vardhamāna.

---

59 (B.61, G.59). ¹ See NS. (C.) XXXII.
¹ Before this couplet (59) B. reads one additional śloka (B. 60).
The songs in the pure Preliminaries

60-63. After performing the songs (gītaka)\(^1\) and the Vardhamāna\(^2\), one should sing the Uṭṭhāpani (Raising) Dhruvā\(^3\) which has in its feet of eleven syllables the first two, the fourth, the eighth and the eleventh as long. It should be [sung in] the Caturasra (Tāla)\(^4\) and [should consist of] four feet and four Sannipatās\(^5\) as well as three kinds of tempo (lāya)\(^6\) and three cēṣuṇa\(^7\) (yati). Besides this it should consist of four Walking-rounds (parivarta) and of three Pāṇis\(^8\), and it should be in the Viśloka\(^9\) metre and in the same kind of Tāla.

64. The Tāla in question should consist consecutively of Šanīya\(^1\) of two Kalās, Tāla of two Kalās, Šanīya of one Kalā and Sannipāta of three Kalās.

The First Walking-round

65. Thus a Sannipāta Tāla of eight Kalās should be observed by the experts. And it is said that a Walking-round is made up of four such Sannipātas.

66. The first Walking-round in the Preliminaries should be made in slow tempo (sthita-lāya) and on the termination of the third Sannipāta in it (i.e. the first parivarta) drums should be played.

The second Walking-round

67. On the termination of the first Walking-round the second one (i.e. Walking-round) having commenced in medium

---

\(^1\) See NŚ. (C.) XXXI. 267 ff.
\(^2\) See NŚ. (C.) XXXI. 225 ff.
\(^3\) The term uṭṭhāpani dhruvā does not occur in the Dhravādhyāya NŚ. (C.) XXXII.
\(^4\) See NŚ. (C.) XXXI. 9-11.
\(^6\) See NŚ. (C.) XXXI. 4.
\(^7\) See NŚ. (C.) XXXI. 532-537.
\(^8\) Ag. explains three pāṇis as samapāṇi, avara-pāṇi and upari+pāṇi.
\(^9\) See NŚ. (C.) XXXII. 149.

64 (B.66. G.64). \(^1\) Cf. NŚ. (C.) XXXI. 74.
tempo \((laya)\) the Director [and the two Assistants]\(^1\) should enter [the stage].

68-69. The three should simultaneously enter [the stage] with handfuls of flower-offering. But before that they should get themselves purified, initiated and furnished with charms for protection [against evil spirits]. They should be clad in white, and flowers carried by them should [also] be white, and they should be looking with the Adbhuta glance \(^1\) and be in the Vaiṣṇava Sthāna\(^2\) with Sauṣṭhava of the body.

70. The two\(^3\) Assistants \((pāripārāvika)\) should carry a golden pitcher \((hṛṇgāra)\) and the Jarjara, and with them by his side the Director should put forward five steps.

71. These five steps [will be] for the purpose of worshipping Brahman, and the manner of putting them forward will be described [below] in detail.

72. They should slowly place their two feet three Tālas\(^1\) apart and then raise [them one by one] on each side and again put them down at the same [distance].

73. After going five steps\(^1\) in the manner described above the Director and his two Assistants (lit. others) should perform the Śuci Čāri with left foot moved first and the right foot afterwards.

74. Then the Director should offer flowers in Brahman’s circle \((Brāhma-mañḍala)\) which is another name for the centre of to stage where the deity is supposed to be present.

---

\(^1\) Entrance of the two Assistants is implied in this passage. See below 68-69.


70 (B.72, G.70). \(^1\) One of the Assistants is to assume the role of the Jester in the Three Men’s Talk. See above 28-29, 137-141.

\(^{\ast}\) Jarjara—see NŚ. III, 73 ff.

71 (B.73\(n\), G.71). \(^1\) B. omits 71b.

72 (B.74, G.72). \(^1\) tāla—a unit of length. The distance from the tip of the middle finger to the wrist. See NŚ. III, 21 note.

73 (B.75, G.78). \(^1\) B. viṇṇupadi for pāṇcapadi. 74 (B.76, G.74).
75-77. And afterwards he (i.e. the Director) should respectfully bow to Brahman (lit. Pitāmaha) with Lalita gesture, and to measure the length of time during the salutation he should thrice touch the ground with his hand, and his steps should be [suitably] divided. The second Walking-round which begins with the entrance of the Director and ends with the salutation [to Brahman] and use of gestures [related to it], should be performed in medium tempo (laya).

The third Walking round

77-78. Next during the third Walking-round (parivarta) the Director should go round the Brahman's circle (i.e. the centre of the stage), perform Ācamana and take up the Jarjara. [The manner of taking it up is as follows:]

78-80. Rising up quickly from [Brahman's] circle (maṇḍala) he should perform the Sūct (lit. Vedha) Cārī with this foot (i.e. the right foot) put forward first and the left foot afterwards. And then he should again raise his right foot which was on the side and perform the Sūct (Vedha) Cārī putting forward the left foot first and the right foot afterwards.

80-83. Going round [the centre of the stage] the Director should call the person (i.e. one of the Assistants) who carries the golden pitcher (bhīṅgāra) and perform ablution (vāncca) [with water from this vessel]. He should then perform Ācamana and sprinkle himself with water in due order. Thus after performing properly the ablution the Director should carefully take up the Jarjara, the destroyer of obstacles, and this act should be performed along with the beginning of the last Śannipāta [of this second Walking-round].

83-84. The third Walking-round beginning with going
round the centre of the stage (i.e. *Brāhma-ṃaṇḍala*) and ending with the taking up of the Jarjara should be performed in a quick tempo.

The fourth Walking-round

84-87. After taking up the Jarjara to ward off evils he should mutter [some Mantras] in eight Kalās. Then he should perform the Sūct (Vedha) Čārī by putting forward the left foot first and the right foot afterwards, and then, move five steps towards the musical instruments. And then again he should observe the Sūct (Vedha) Čārī by putting forward the left foot first and the right foot afterwards. The fourth Walking-round which begins with the taking up of the Jarjara and ends with an approach to the musical instruments should be made in a quick tempo.

87-88. In this [pūrvarāṇya which is of the Caturasra type] movements of hand and feet in it will occupy sixteen Kalās while it being of the Tryasra type such movements will occupy Twelve Kalās only.

88-89. [The Director and the two Assistant]s should make three salutations by touching the ground, with the hand and before this they are to sprinkle themselves with water, but in case of the Tryasra [Preliminaries such sprinkling] has not been prescribed.

The Parivartani Dhruvā

89-90. In this manner they should perform the Utthāpana (lit. raising). Then comes the Parivartant (Walking-round) Dhruvā

---

1 See NŚ. III, 23-30 note.
84-87 (B.86-88, G.84-86). 1 B. reads *kuṭapā nigamāntakah*.
87-88 (B.89, G.87).
88-89 (B.90, G.88). 1 This and the preceding (87-88) passage should properly go after NŚ. 64 for they relate to the Utthāpana which should come before the Walking-round; see before 22-23.
89-90 (B.91, G.89). 1 For *caturasre*, B. G. *caturasram*. 
which should be performed in the Cāturasra (Tāla) and medium tempo and with eight Sannipātas.

90-91. The Dhruvā (song) which has only the last syllable long in its four feet of eleven syllables, is called the Parivartant (Walking-round) Dhruvā.

91-92. During the singing of this Dhruvā the Director should move leftwards in the Vartika Mārga with graceful step in accompaniment of instrumental music and should bow to [different] deities in directions belonging to them.

92-93. And during the foot movement [mentioned above] each step of the Director should consist two Kalās, and movement in each direction should consist of two Sannipātas.

93-94. Then he would observe the Succi (Vedha) Cāri putting forward the left foot first and the right foot afterwards and putting the latter at a distance of two Tālas.

94-95. In this manner he should go five steps with the Atikranta Cāri and bow to different deities in directions belonging to them.

95-97. First of all he should bow to the eastern direction presided over by (Śakra) Indra, secondly he should bow to the southern direction belonging to Yama. Thirdly he should bow to the western direction ruled by Varuṇa. Fourthly he should bow to the northern direction of which Dhanada (Kuvera) is the protector.

97-98. After bowing to these directions he should perform the Succi Cāri putting forward the left foot first and the right foot afterwards and begin the Walking-round:

98-99. Then with his face towards the east the Director
should bow to Śiva (Rudra), Brahman and Viṣṇu (Upendra) while going forward three steps by 'masculine', 'feminine' and 'neuter' feet [one after another].

99-100. The right foot is 'masculine' and the left foot is 'feminine' while the right foot not [much] raised is called 'neuter'.

100-101. Śiva (Īsā) should be bowed to with the masculine foot [put forward first] while in bowing to Brahman the neuter foot [should be so put forward].

The Fourth Man enters.

101-102. The Walking-round should be [finished] thus, and then the Fourth Man (caturtha-kāra) should duly enter [the stage] with flowers [in his hands].

102-103. And he should duly offer Pūjā to the Jarjara and to all the musical instruments (kutapa) as well as to the Director.

103-104. His foot-movements during the Pūjā should be made to accompany the playing of drums, and there should be no song sung then, but only meaningless syllables should be chanted (stobhakriyā).

Singing of the Avakṛṣṭā Dhruvā

104-105. After offering the Pūjā the Fourth Man should make his exit. And then should be sung an Avakṛṣṭā Dhruvā in Caturāsra (Tāla) and slow tempo (thita-laya).

105-106. This Dhruvā should abound in heavy syllables and depend on the Sthāyi-varṇa and be made up of eight Kalās, and its Tāla should be Avapānika.

99-100 (B.100, G.99).
100-101 (B.101a-102b, G.100). ¹ B. repeats here 90-91.
101-102 (B.103, G.101).
103-104 (B.105, G.103).
104-105 (B.106, G.104). ¹ One of the six kinds of Dhruvās. See Nś. (C.) XXXII, 154-159.
12
106-107. The Avakṛṣṭā Dhruvā is a song consisting of four feet of ten syllables of which the fourth, the fifth, the seventh and the eighth will be short.1

The Benediction

107-108. Then the Director will recite in a medium (madhyama) tone the Benediction which should consist of eight or twelve feet (pāda).1

108-109. (These are the specimens of Benediction):

\[ \text{namo'stu sarvadevebhyyo} \]
\[ \text{dvijātibhyāḥ śubhām tathā!} \]
\[ \text{jitāṁ somena vai rājā!} \]
\[ \text{ārogyaṁ bhoga eva ca} \]

Tr. Salutation to all the gods. Blessed be the twice born class. May Soma the king attain victory as well as healthy life and [earthly] enjoyment.1

109-110. brahmottaram tathāivaśtu
\[ \text{hatā brāhmadvīṣaṁ tathā!} \]
\[ \text{praśastvimāṁ mahārajaḥ} \]
\[ \text{prthivin ca sasāgaram} \]

Tr. Let there be an advancement of the cause of the Brahmins, and let their enemies be killed, and let the great king rule this earth together with all the seas.

110-111. raśtram pravardhatām caiva
\[ \text{ra ngaś cāyam samrdhyatām} \]
\[ \text{preksākartur mahān dharmo} \]
\[ \text{bhavatu brahmabāvitaḥ} \]

Tr. Let this state prosper, and this theatre flourish and let

106-107 (B.108). 1 G. omits this.
107-108 (B.109, G.106). 1 For different interpretations of pāda see Lévi, pp. 132-133, II. 25-26. RāgHAVIKAṬTAS quotes from Ag. in his bākuna-
talaśākhā (p. 6) the following: pataṅga trikāṃsauṃtyaṁ vinā sām suṣeṣāṁ or trikāṃsauṃtyaṁ
śaṁ or hāṣyaśaṁtyaṁ ca and pataṅga kathāsūryaṁ varam paratam. These passages do not
occur in the published Abhinavabāhārati.
the producer of the theatrical show attain virtues proceeding from
the Vedic knowledge.

111-112. kāvyakartur yasyaścāstu
dharmaś cāpi pravardhatām ।
ijyayā cânayā nityan
pryantām devata iti ॥

Tr. Let the playwright (lit. writer of the kārya) attain fame
and let his virtue increase, and by this kind of sacrifice (yajñā),
let the gods be always pleased with him.

112-113. After the recitation of each of such Benedictory
poems the two Assistants should loudly and distinctly say, "Let
this be so."

The Śuskāvakraśṭā Dhruvā

113-114. The Benedictionary should thus be performed duly
according to the rules [mentioned above]. Then should be sung
the Śuskāvakraśṭā Dhruvā and verses praising the Jarjara.

114-115. This Dhruvā should consist of nine long syllables
first and then six short syllables followed by three long syllables, e.g.

115-116. digle digle jhanḍe jhanḍe jam
bu ka va li ta ka te te jā.

The Raṅgadvāra

116-118. After properly performing the Śuskāvakraśṭā
Dhruvā, he (the Director) should recite in a loud tone one Śloka in
adoration of the deity in course of whose worship [the dramatic
performance is going to be held], and then [another Śloka] paying
homage either to the king or to the Brahmans should be sung.

118-119. After reciting the Jarjara, Śloka in what is called
the Raṅgadvāra (lit. entry into the performance) he should again
read another Śloka to honour the Jarjara.\!

---

111-112 (B.113, G.110).
112-113 (B.114, G.111a).
114-115 (B.116, G.113).
116-117 (B.117b-118a, G.115).
118-119 (B.119b-120a, G.117). ¹ Mss. reading is farjarasya vināśana
The Cārī

119-120. And after the Jarjara has been honoured,¹ he should perform a Cārī and the two Assistants should step backwards.

120-121. Then the Aḍḍitā Dhrūvā¹ should be performed with the medium tempo (laga), Caturasra Tāla and four Sannipātas.

121-122. The Dhrūvā (song) which has the first, the fifth and the last syllables long and the remaining syllables short in all its four feet of twelve syllables, is called the Aḍḍitā.

122-123. I shall relate its application according to the procedure adopted by Śiva (Maheśvara) and Umā when performing it in the past with [the display of] different States (bhāra) and movements.

123-125. After assuming the Avahittha Sīhūna (posture),¹ and placing the left hand [first] with its palm downwards on the navel and taking up the Jarjara, by his other hand,² the Director should go five steps, with his left hand showing the Pallava gesture; and while going he should cover one Tāla at each step and move his limbs gracefully³.

125-127. Afterwards he should perform the Śuc Cārī by putting forward his left foot first and the right foot afterwards. Then the Director (lit. the expert one) should recite a Śloka with love as its subject-matter. And after reciting this Cārī Śloka and

(vīṭamana). But this gives no relevant meaning. We emend it to jarjarsya vīṭamana.

¹ 119-123 (B.12b-121a, G.118). ¹ Read mānyaśī (B.G. mānyaśī),

120-121 (B.121b-122a, G.119). ¹ See below 121-122, also Note (C.) XXXII 10, 357.

121-122 (B.122b-123a, G.120).

122-125 (B.123b-125a, G.121).

123-125 (B.124, 125b, 126, G.123-123). ¹ Defined in Note XIII 164-165.

² Mss. read tāladhītam. But its meaning is not clear. It is just possible that the original reading has been changed. We therefore emend this to tāladhītam meaning 'held in palm' or 'held by hand.'

³ B. reads between 123b and 124a an additional homestich.
performing the Walking-round, he should with his face towards the front withdraw backwards with steps described before.

The Mahācāri

127-128. 'And after placing the Jarjara in the hands of one of the Assistants he should perform the Mahācāri in accordance with the rules laid down below.'

- 128-130. During this Cāri the Dhruvā song should be of the Caturasra type and in quick tempo, and it should have four Sannipātas and eight Kalās. This Dhruvā song should have feet of eleven syllables of which the first, fourth, seventh, tenth and the last are long and the remaining ones short.

130-131. (An example of the Caturasra Dhruvā):

pādatalāhati-patīta-sāilam
ksobhita-bhūta-samagra-samudram

tırńava-nṛttam idam pralayante
pātu harasya sañja sukhadāyī
g

Tr. Let the ever-pleasing Class Dance of Hara (Śiva) after the destruction of the world, which smashed the hills by the impact of his feet and agitated the ocean with all creatures living in it, always give you protection.

130-131. Then he should step towards the drums (bhāṅga) and afterwards perform the Sūci Cāri followed by a change of the Vikṣepa.

132-133. Afterwards he should move his feet gracefully with a quick tempo, and keeping them three Tālas apart, he should go five steps. There again he should perform the Sūci (Vedha) Cāri with his left foot put forward first and the right one afterwards.

134-135. And with the foot movement (described above) he should move backwards with his face towards the front, and again he should go three steps forward in a similar manner, and then he

127-128 (B.129, G.126).
130-131 (B.132, G.129).
should again perform the Sūci Cārī with his left foot: put forward first and the right foot afterwards.

136-137. Then he should recite a couplet calling up the Furious Sentiment while bringing his feet together, and then after going three steps he should call for the two Assistants, and on their coming up, a Narkūṭaka Dhruvā should be sung. At the time of singing this Dhruvā he should perform the Sūci (Vedha) Cārī by putting forward the left foot first and the right foot afterwards.

The Three Men’s Talk

137-138. Then in case of a play in the Verbal Style (bhā-
ratī nyāti) the Three Men’s Talk (trigōtu) should take place. During it (this Talk) the Jester should suddenly come in and deliver a discourse consisting mostly of irrelevant words to excite the smile of the Director,

138-139. In this discourse should be brought in some controversial topic with an abrupt remark or an enigmatical utterance [of some kind], and questions such as who is [there] and who has won, leading to the plot of the play (lit. the poem), but no unpleasant topic should be brought in.

140-141. In the Three Men’s Talk an Assistant talks with the Jester who finds fault with his words which are, [however,] supported by the Director.

The Laudation

141. Then the Director (lit. an expert) should put in the Laudation and the Invitation [to members of the audience], and for the success of the performance (lit. the stage) the subject of the play should again be mentioned.

142. After putting into practice all these rules, all the three persons (i.e. the Director and the two Assistants) should perform

130-137 (B.137-138a, G.134-135a).
138-139 (B.139b-140, G.136b-137).
140 (B.141, G.omits).
141 (B.142, G.138).
142 (B.143, G.139).
the Śucī (Vedha) Cārt, and they should go out together while performing any Cārt other than the Āvidhe one.

The Tryasra Preliminaries

143-144. Thus, O Brahmins, should be performed the Preliminaries of the Caturīsra type; now I shall speak of that of the Tryasra type. Its use is similar and its component parts are the same; the only feature that distinguishes it from the Caturīsra one is its abridged measure of Tāla.

145-146. [In it] the Śamyā should consist of two Kalās and the Tāla of one Kalā, and again the Śamyā is to consist of one Kalā and the Śannīgāta of two Kalās. With this kind of measurement of Kalā, Tāla and tempo, should be performed the Tryasra Preliminaries which include the Utthāpana and such other items.

147. The Dhruvā (song) which has the fourth, the eighth, the tenth and the last syllables long in all its four feet of twelve syllables, is called the Utthāpana Dhruvā of the Tryasra (type).

148. In the Tryasra Preliminaries an expert dancer should abridge the instrumental music, movements [of persons], Dhruvā songs and their Tāla.

149. The actions and movements [of a dancer] are to be made of two types—elaborate and abridged—according as the instrumental and vocal musics are such.

150-151. It is said that each movement of hands and feet should be of two Kalās' duration, and in any Walking-round in the Caturīsra (Preliminaries) the hands and feet should be moved sixteen times, while in the Tryasra Preliminaries they are to move only twelve times.

151-152. This is the measurement of both (i.e. of hand and foot movements) in the Preliminaries. But in the Walking-round, the foot movement should consist of three steps only, but in bowing
to [the different] directions in the Caturasra Preliminaries one should go five steps.

153. [But all these matters] should be performed in the Tryasra Preliminaries according to the measure of Tāla as the master of the art thinks fit. Hence to avoid repetition no [elaborate] direction about the same has been given [here].

154. O the best of the Brahmins, thus should be performed the pure Preliminaries of the Caturasra and the Tryasra types, which relate to a play depending on the Verbal Style.

The Mixed Preliminaries

155. So much about the pure Preliminaries which I was to describe. I shall now tell you how the producers may turn them to one of the mixed (citra) type.

156-157. After the Uthāpani (Raising) Dhruvā has been decorated with flowers given by the Fourth Man (caturthakāra) and resounded with the well measured loud songs of musical experts, Dundubhīs should be played again and again.

158. [And in the mixed Preliminaries thus begun] clusters of white flowers should be scattered all over [the stage], and the Aṅgahlāras should be performed by [dancers dressed as] goddesses.

159-160. The Class Dance which has been described above with its [Piṅḍis], Recakas, Aṅgahlāras, Nyāsas and Apanyāsas should intervene the separate feet of the Benedictory (nāndi) poems (pāda). This rule should be put into practice by those who would turn pure Preliminaries into mixed ones.

161. After the 'pure' Preliminaries have been duly made 'mixed' [all the dancers dressed as] goddesses should make their exit.

162. After the exit of all the female dancers the other parts of the Preliminaries should be performed.

161 (B.162a, 163a, G.158). 162 (B.163b-164a, G.159).
163. This is the manner in which the pure Preliminaries should be changed into mixed ones. But in the Preliminaries, be they of any type, there should not be too much dance and song.

164. If [in a performance] songs, music and dance continue for too long [a time] they tire out the artists as well as the spectators.

165. Tired [persons] can neither attain or help to attain a clear impression of the Sentiments and the States, and because of this the rest of the performance (i.e. of the play itself) cannot excite pleasure.¹

166. After performing the Preliminaries, be they Caturasra or Tryasra of the pure or mixed type, the Director along with his Assistants should make their exit from the stage.²

Introduction of the play

167. After the Preliminaries have been duly performed¹ in the manner described, the Introducer (sthāpaka)² should enter [the stage] and he should resemble the Director (sūtradhāra) in every respect (lit. in quality and form).

---

² Ṛg. says sūtradhāra eva sthāpakah, cf. note ¹ above.

¹ Ag. says sūtradhāra eva sthāpakah, cf. note ¹ above.
168. He should assume the Vaiśāvya Sthāna (posture)\textsuperscript{1} and the Sauṭhava\textsuperscript{2} of the body, and on entering the stage he should observe the foot movements which the Director had used.

169. At the entrance of the Introducer the Dhrupa should be made suitable to the occasion (lit. meaning) and it will be either Caturasra or Tryasra and be in medium tempo.

170. Then he should perform a Cārt in praise of gods and Brahmins in accompaniment with the recitation of Ślokas containing sweet words and evoking various Sentiments and States.

171. After thus pleasing the spectators (lit. the stage) he should announce the name of the play-wright (lit. the poet), and then he is to start the Prologue (prastāvanā) which relates to proclaiming the theme of the play (lit. the poem)\textsuperscript{3}.

172-173. Then by mentioning (lit. having recourse to) a god in a divine [play], a man in a human [play] and a god or a man in [a play] where gods and men [meet, he] should proclaim in different ways the subject of the play [lit. the poem] by variously alluding to its Opening (mukha) and Germ (bijā)\textsuperscript{4}.

174. After introducing the play the Introducer (lit. the Brahmin who makes the introduction of the play) should go out [of the stage]. Thus should be performed the Preliminaries according to the rules.

175. If any producer of a play will perform the Preliminaries according to the rules laid down, nothing inauspicious will happen to him and he will [after his death] reach the heavenly region.


\textsuperscript{1} See XI. 50-51. \textsuperscript{2} See XI. 89b, 91a. \textsuperscript{3} See XI. 165. \textsuperscript{4} B. reads one additional hemistich.
177. Fire fanned by a strong wind does not burn [anything] so quickly as does the wrongly made production.

178. In this manner the Preliminaries of two different extents (pramāṇa) should be performed by the people of Avanti, Paṇcāla, Dākṣiṇātya and Odra regions.

179. O Brahmins, these are the rules regarding the Preliminaries. Tell me what other rules relating to the Nātyaveda should be discussed now.

Here ends Chapter V of Bharata's Nātyaśāstra which treats of the Preliminaries to the production of a play.

177 (B.184, G.175). 178 (B.184, G.175).

179 (B.185, G.176). 1 The portion of this chapter after this śloka has not been translated. It is not from the hand of author of the NŚ.
CHAPTER SIX

THE SENTIMENTS

The sages question.

1-3. After hearing about the rules regarding the Preliminaries, the great sages continued their inquiries and said to Bharata, "Answer five of our questions. Explain how the Sentiments enumerated by experts in dramatic art attain their special qualities. And why are the bhāvas (States) so called, and what do they bhāvayanti (make us feel)? Besides these, what are the real meanings of terms such as, Digest (sangraha)\(^1\) Memorial Verse (kārikā) and Etymology (uṣṇikā)"?

Bharata answers.

4. At these words of the sages, Bharata continued speaking and mentioned in reply to their question the distinction between the Sentiments and the States.

5-7. And then he said, "O sages, I shall tell you in detail and in due order about the Digest (sangraha), the Memorial Verse (kārikā) and the Etymology (uṣṇikā). I am not able by any means to exhaust all the topics about drama (nātya); for science (jñāna),\(^1\) and arts and crafts (śilpa)\(^2\) connected with it are respectively manifold and endless in number. And as it is not possible to treat exhaustively (lit. to go to the end of) even one of these subjects which are [vast] like an ocean, there cannot be any question of mastering them all.

8. [Hence] I shall tell you about the Digest on Sentiments, States and such other matters, which has its contents embodied\(^1\)

---

1-3 (B.G. same). \(^1\) For a possible chronological implication of sangraha, kārikā, uṣṇikā, sūtra and bhāga mentioned in this chapter see Skt. Poetics, Vol. I. pp. 28 ff.

5-7 (B.G. same). \(^1\) jñāna—vyākaraṇādī śāstraṃ (Ag).

8 (B.G. same). \(^1\) Read sūtragūḍhārtha.
in a small number of Sūtras (short rules) but which promotes inference [about the understanding of the subject].

Digest, Memorial Verse and Etymology defined

9. When subjects taught in detail have been compressed and brought together in [a number of] Sūtras and their Bhāsyas (commentary), these latter constitute according to the learned a Digest (samgraha).

10. The Digest [of the Nātyaveda treats] the Sentiments, the States, the Histrionic Representation (abhinaya), the Practice (dharmī), the Styles (vṛtī), the Success (siddhi), the notes (śvara), the instrumental music (ātodya), songs and the stage.¹

11. When a rule (lit. meaning) is explained (lit. uttered) briefly in the manner of a Sūtra by means of a minimum (lit. small) number of words it is called the Memorial Verse (kārikā) which shows the meaning [of the rule clearly].¹

12. The Etymology (nirukta) is that which arises in connexion with various nouns, is helped by dictionaries and rules of grammatical interpretation, includes the meaning of the root involved as well as the reasons modifying it, and is helped by various findings [of Śāstras].

13. When the meaning [of a noun] is established from a consideration of its root [and pratyaya or affix], words expressing [such] meaning in brief are called the Etymology.

14. O the best of the Brahmins, [the subjects included into] the Digest (samgraha), which I mentioned earlier, will now be discussed in detail with the necessary Memorial Verses (kārikā) and Etymologies connected with them.

9 (B.G same).
10 (B.G same). ¹ B. adds one more couplet after 10.
11 (B.13, G. same). ¹ One additional characteristic of the kārikā is that it should be generally composed in metres like āryā or śloka, e.g the Śāṅkhyaśāntika.
The eight Sentiments

15. The eight Sentiments (*rasa*)\(^1\) recognised in drama are as follows: Erotic (*śṛṅgāra*), Comic (*hāsya*), Pathetic (*karunā*), Furious (*raudra*), Heroic (*vīra*), Terrible (*bhayānaka*) Odious (*bibhatsa*) and Marvellous (*adbhuta*).\(^2\)

16. These eight are the Sentiments named by Brahman; I shall now speak of the Dominant, the Transitory and the Temperamental States.\(^1\)

The Dominant States

17. The Dominant States (*sāyājībhāra*)\(^1\) are known to be the following: love, mirth, sorrow, anger, energy, terror, disgust and astonishment.

18-21. The thirty-three Transitory States (*vyabhicāri-bhāra*)\(^1\) are known to be the following: discouragement, weakness, apprehension, envy, intoxication, weariness, indolence, depression, anxiety, distraction, recollection, contentment, shame, inconstancy, joy, agitation, stupor, arrogance, despair, impatience, sleep, epilepsy, dreaming, awakening, indignation, dissimulation, cruelty, assurance, sickness, insanity, death, fright and deliberation. These are defined by their names.

The eight Temperamental States

22. Paralysis, Perspiration, Horripilation, Change of Voice,

---

15 (B.16, G.15). \(^1\) *rasa*—A. K. Coomaraswamy is for translating the word as 'flavour' (M.G. p. 17).

16 (B.17, G.16). \(^1\) *bhāva*—A. B. Keith translates this word as 'feeling' or 'emotion'. See Skt. Drama, p. 319. A. K. Coomaraswamy and others translate it as 'mood' (*loc. cit.*). We are with Haas who translates it as 'State.' See DR. p. 108.

17 (B.18, G.17). \(^1\) *sthūrybhāva*—Keith translates the term as 'dominant emotion' (Skt. Drama) and Haas as 'Permanent State' (DR.) and others as 'permanent mood' (*e.g.* S. K. De, Skt Poetics, Vol. II. p. 26).

18-21 (B.19-22, G.18-21). \(^1\) These are also known as *sama-bhāva*.

22 (B.23, G.22). \(^1\) *śālōva bhāva*—The word *śālōva* cannot be
The four kinds of Histrionic Representation

23. The four kinds of Histrionic Representation are Gestures (āṅgika), Words (vācika), Dresses and Make-up (ābāra), and the Representation of the Temperament (sāttvika).

The Two Practices

24. The Practice of Representation (dharma) in a dramatic performance is twofold: realistic (lokadharma, lit. popular) and conventional (nātyadharma, lit. theatrical).

The four Styles

And the Verbal (bhārata), the Grand (sāttvati), the Graceful (kaiśiki) and the Energetic (ārabhat) are the four Styles (vyttis).

---

properly translated into English. Keith does not make any such attempt (see Skt. Drama) Haas translates the sāttvika-bhāva as 'Involuntary States'. But this seems to be very misleading, for the NŚ. takes sāttva to be connected with manas. (see VI. 94), and most of the later writers follow this work in this respect. So the author of the ND. (III. 153) writes भावस्य स्यं सच्य नक्ष्यस्य ब्रह्मस्य शालिकारं मेववड़ति शाक्ति शाक्तिकारं।

The NŚ. has also a definition of sāttva which is as follows: दृश्याणं अभृत्य पदार्थ (XXIV. 7).

The author of the Bl.P. elaborately defines the term sāttva and discusses the psychological process connected with its use; see (pp. 13-14). Vīśvanātha in his SD. (164) defines sāttva as follows: सत्त्वादी नाम वातावरण-विधातार्थी कथामार्थी अणाति.

23 (B.24, G.23). 1 āṅgika—means Gestures of special kind defined in the śāstra; see NŚ. VIII-XII.

2 vācika—means Words suitable for representation of the different States (bhāva) composed by the playwright. See NŚ. XV-XXII.

3 See NŚ. XXIII. 4 See NŚ. XXIV.

24 (B.25-26a, G.24-25a). 1 dharma—This word has not been very correctly used. But the meaning is clear; for details about dharma see NŚ. XIII 69-81.

1 Haas translates vyttis as Styles of Procedure (DR, p. 67). The four Styles are translated by him as Eloquent (bhārata), Grandiose (sāttvati) Gay (kaiśiki) and Horrific (ārabha). We follow Keith's translation (Skt. Drama, p. 326). For details about vyttis see NŚ. XXII. 5ff.
The four Local Usages

25-26. Āvanti, Dāksinātyā, Oḍraṇāgadhi and Pañcāla-mahāyāna are the four Local Usages (pravritti)¹ in a dramatic performance.

The Success

The Success² in the dramatic performance is of two kinds: divine (tāvīrya) and human (mānasī).

The Notes

27-29. And [musical] notes such as, Saḍja, Rasbha etc. are seven¹ in number, and they fall into two groups: human (tāvīrya lit. from body) and instrumental (mānasī lit. from the Viṇa).¹

The four kinds of musical instruments

The musical instruments are of four kinds²: stringed (tala) covered (varanaddha), solid (ghanā), and hollow (sūśira). Among these, the stringed (tala) means an instrument with strings, the covered (varanaddha) means a drum, the solid (ghanā) a cymbal and the hollow (sūśira) a flute.

The five kinds of Dhruvās

29-30. Songs which relate to Dhruvās are of five kinds¹:

---
¹ pravritti—Hauss translates this word as ‘Local Characteristics’; (See DR, p 74). The five geographical names (Avanti, Dāksinātyā, Oḍraṇa, Magadha and Pañcāla) probably show that these were the parts of India where dramatic show was current at the time when tradition recorded in this NŚ, arose. Omission of the north-eastern part of India, including Bengal and Assam, probably shows that at that time these places were still in many respects outside the pale of Aryanized India. And the omission of the north-western India from this list may be explained on the assumption that it being on the way of the new immigrants who frequently poured into this country the formation of an established usage was difficult. For details about pravritti see NŚ, XIV, 36-56.
² tāvīrya (success)—For details about the Success see NŚ, XXVII, 1 ff.
²² See NŚ, (C) XXVIII, 19, 11.
²³ See NŚ, (C) XXVIII, 1-2.
² See NŚ, (C) XXXII, 384-382.
entering (praveśa), casual (ākṣepa), going out (niskrama), pleasing (prāśādika) and intermediate (āntara). And the playhouse is of the three types: oblong (vikṛṭa), square (caturāsra) and triangular (tryāstra)².

31. So much about the Digest on drama giving its contents (lit. meaning by a small number of Sūtras (concise rules). I shall now speak about the contents of the Sūtra-work¹.

The Sentiments explained

In that connexion I shall first of all explain the Sentiments (rasa). No meaning proceeds [from speech] without [any kind of] Sentiment. The Sentiment is produced (rasa-nispatṭih) from a combination (samyoga)² of Determinants (vibhāva), Consequents (anubhāva) and Transitory States (vyabhicāri-bhāva). Is there any instance (dṛṣṭānta) [parallel to it]. [Yes], it is said that, as taste (rasa) results from a combination of various spices, vegetables and other articles³, and as six tastes (rasa) are produced by articles such as, raw sugar or spices or vegetables, so the Dominant States (sthāyibhāva), when they come together with various other States (bhāra) attain the quality of the Sentiment (i.e. become Sentiment)⁴. Now one enquires, "What is the meaning of the word rasa"? It is said in reply to this [that rasa is so called] because it is capable of being tasted (āsvādayate). How is rasa tasted? [In reply] it is said that just as well-disposed persons while eating food cooked with many kinds of spices enjoy (āsvādayante) its tastes (rasa) and attain pleasure and satisfaction,

¹ B. adds one couplet after 30.

31 (B.33b-34a, G.31b, c). ¹ The original of the next passage till the beginning of 33 is in prose.

² The NŚ. nowhere explains the terms nispatṭi and samyoga of this definition and does not include the sthāyibhāva in it (the def.). Hence the theory of rasa has come to be interpreted differently in later times by Lollāta, Śāṅkula, (Bhaṭṭa) Nāyaka and Abhinavagupta. For a brief exposition of their views see Viśnuṇapada Bhaṭṭācārya—Sāhityamimāṃsā (Bengali), Calcutta, 1948, pp. 33 ff.

³ G. adds here one sentence more (tathā...... nispatṭih).

⁴ tatrāha (G. rṣaya ućih).

14
so the cultured people taste the Dominant States (*sthāyī-bhāva*) while they see them represented by an expression of the various States with Words, Gestures and the Temperament and derive pleasure and satisfaction. Thus is explained [the Memorial Verse ending with] *tasmin nātyaraśā iti*. For in this connexion there are two traditional couplets:

32-33. Just as connoisseur of cooked food (*bhakta*) while eating food which has been prepared from various spices and other articles, taste it, so the learned people taste in their mind the Dominant States (such as love, sorrow etc.) when they are represented by an expression of the States with Gestures. Hence these Dominant States in a drama are called the Sentiments.\(^1\)

The relation between the Sentiments and the States.

\(^2\)Now one enquires, “Do the States (*bhāva*) come out of the Sentiments (*rasa*) or the Sentiments come out of the States?” On this point, some are of opinion that they arise from their mutual contact. But this is not so. Why?

“It is apparent that the Sentiments arise from the States and not the States from the Sentiments. For [on this point] there are [traditional] couplets such as:

34-35. The States are so called by experts in drama, for they cause to originate (*bhāvayanti*) the Sentiments in connexion with various modes of dramatic representation. Just as by many articles of various kinds auxiliary cooked food (*vyāṇjana*) is

---

\(^1\) See below 33-34.


\(^2\) The original of this passage till the beginning of 34 is in prose, but its reading seems to be confused. In the light of the five *kārikās* that follow one may be justified in changing the order of some sentences and in emending it partially as follows: *ततদ्ध वेदाभिुगत भक्तिभवान् रसायनसमितिः स नू रसिकः राजसायनसमितिः तसं स्तवम्। हि देवते विधिपरावैद्यात्मकसमितिः।* But if it is really an instance of textual corruption it may be said to have been sanctified by time, for Bhoja who refuted Bharata’s view on *bhāvas* giving rise to *rasas* relied on this text. Cf. V. Raghavan, *Sr. Pr.* p. 26.

brought forth, so the States along with different kinds of Histrio-
nic Representation will cause the Sentiments to originate.

36. There can be no Sentiment prior to (lit. without) the
States and no States without the Sentiments [following it], and
during the Histrionic Representation they are produced from their
mutual relation.

37. Just as a combination of spices and vegetables imparts
good taste to the food cooked, so the States and the Sentiments
cause one another to originate (bhāvayanti).

38. Just as a tree grows from a seed, and flowers and fruits
[including the seed] from a tree, so the Sentiments are the source
(lit. root) of all the States, and likewise the States exist [as the
source of all the Sentiments].

The eight Sentiments from the four original ones

Now we shall describe the origins, the colours, the [presiding]
deities, and examples of these Sentiments. Sources of these [eight]
Sentiments are the four [original] Sentiments e.g. Erotic, Furious,
Heroic and Odious.

39. The Comic [Sentiment] arises from the Erotic, the
Pathetic from the Furious, the Marvellous from the Heroic, and
the Terrible from the Odious.

40-41. A mimicry of the Erotic [Sentiment] is called the
Comic, and the result of the Furious Sentiment is the Pathetic, and
the result of the Heroic Sentiment is called the Marvellous, and
that which is Odious to see results in the Terrible.

42-43. The Erotic Sentiment is light green (śyāma), the
Comic Sentiment white, the Pathetic (Sentiment) ash-coloured

---

38 (B.42, G.38). 1 B adds one prose sentence more after this passage.
* The original of this passage till the beginning of 39 is in prose.
3 Bhoja criticises this view of the author of the Nś. in his Śr. Pr.
See Ramasawamy Sastri Bh. P. Introduction p. 28; V. Raghavan, Śr. Pr. 27.
(kapota), the Furious Sentiment red, the Heroic (Sentiment) light orange (gaura), the Terrible (Sentiment) black, the Odious (Sentiment) blue and the Marvellous (Sentiment) yellow.

The presiding deities of the Sentiments

44-45, Viṣṇu is the god of the Erotic, Pramathas of the Comic, Rudra of the Furious, Yama of the Pathetic, Śiva (Mahākāla), of the Odious, Yama (Kāla) of the Terrible, Indra of the Heroic, and Brahma of the Marvellous Sentiments.

Thus have been described the origins, the colours and the deities of these (Sentiments). Now we shall explain the Determinants (vibhāra), the Consequent (auabhāra), the Transitory States (vyabhicārin), their combination, and their definitions and examples.

We shall now enumerate the Dominant States in different Sentiments.

The Erotic Sentiment

Of these, the Erotic (śṛṅgāra) Sentiment proceeds from the Dominant State of love (rati) and it has as its basis (lit. soul) a bright attire; for whatever in this world is white, pure, bright and beautiful is appreciated in terms of the Dominant State of love (śṛṅgāra). For example, one who is elegantly dressed is called a lovely person (śṛṅgārin). Just as persons are named, after the custom of their father or mother, or family, in accordance with the traditional authority, so the Sentiments, the States and other objects connected with drama are given names in pursuance of the custom and the traditional authority. Hence the Erotic Sentiment has been so named on account of its usually being associated with a bright and elegant attire. It owes its origin to men and women and relates to the fullness of youth. It has two bases: union (sambhoga) and separation (vipralambha). Of these two, the Erotic Sentiment in union arises from Determinants like the pleasures of the season, the enjoyment of garlands, unguents, ornaments [the

44-45 (B.49-50, G.44-45). 1 The original of this passage till the beginning of 46, is in prose.
company of) beloved persons, objects [of senses], splendid mansions, going to a garden, and enjoying [oneself] there, seeing the [beloved one], hearing [his or her words], playing and dallying [with him or her]. It should be represented on the stage by Consequences such as clever movement of eyes, eyebrows, glances, soft and delicate movement of limbs, and sweet words and similar other things. Transitory States in it do not include fear, indolence, cruelty and disgust. [The Erotic Sentiment] in separation should be represented on the stage by Consequences such as indifference, languour, fears, jealousy, fatigue, anxiety, yearning, drowsiness, sleep, dreaming awakening, illness, insanity, epilepsy, inactivity, [fainting], death and other conditions.

Now it has been asked, "If the Erotic Sentiment has its origin in love, why does it [sometimes] manifest itself through pathetic conditions?" [In reply to this] it is said, "It has been mentioned before that the Erotic Sentiment has its basis in union as well as in separation. Authorities on ārṣ amatorīa (vaśiśka-śāstra) have mentioned ten conditions [of the persons separated from their beloved ones, which are pathetic]. We shall discuss them in the chapter on the Common Histrionic Representation. The Pathetic Sentiment relates to a condition of despair owing to the affliction under a curse, separation from dear ones, loss of wealth, death or captivity, while the Erotic Sentiment based on separation relates to a condition of retaining optimism arising out of yearning and anxiety. Hence the Pathetic Sentiment, and the Erotic Sentiment in separation differ from each other. And this is the reason why the Erotic Sentiment includes conditions available in all other Sentiments.

46. And the Sentiment called Erotic is rich in pleasure, connected with desired objects, enjoyment of seasons, garlands and similar other things, and it relates to [the union of] man and woman.

There are besides two Āryās related to the preceding Sūtra:

47-48. The Erotic Sentiment arises in connexion with

---

2 See NŚ. (C.) XXIV.
favourable seasons, garlands, ornaments, enjoyment of the company of beloved ones, music and poetry, and going to the garden and roaming there. It should be represented on the stage by means of serenity of the eyes and the face, sweet and smiling words, satisfaction and delight, and graceful movements of the limbs.

The Comic Sentiment

Now the Comic (hāṣya) Sentiment has as its basis the Dominant emotion of laughter. This is created by Determinants such as showing unseemly dress or ornament, impudence, greediness, quarrel, defective limb, use of irrelevant words, mentioning of different faults, and similar other things. This (the Comic Sentiment) is to be represented on the stage by Consequences like the throbbing of the lips, the nose and the cheek, opening the eyes wide or contracting them, perspiration, colour of the face, and taking hold of the sides. Transitory States in it are indolence, dissimulation, drowsiness, sleep, dreaming, insomnia, envy and the like. This (Sentiment), is of two kinds: self-centered and centered in others. When a person himself laughs it relates to the self-centred (Comic Sentiment), but when he makes others laugh it (the Comic Sentiment therein) is centred in others.

There are two traditional Āryās here:

49. As this makes one laugh by an exhibition of oddly placed ornaments, uncouth behaviour, words and dress and strange movement of limbs, it is called the Comic Sentiment.

50. As this makes persons laugh by means of uncouth behaviour, words, movement of the limbs and strange dress, it is known as the Comic Sentiment.

51. This Sentiment is mostly to be seen in women and persons of the inferior type, and it has six varieties of which I shall speak presently.

52. They are: Slight Smile (ṣmita), Smile (hasita), Gentle Laughter (vibhasita), Laughter of Redicule (upahasita), Vulgar

¹ The original of this passage till the beginning of 49 is in prose.

49 (B.58, G.49). 50 (B.59, G.50).
51 (B.60, G.51). 52 (B.61, G.52).
Laughter (apahasita) and Excessive Laughter (utihasita). Two by two they belong respectively to the superior, the middling and the inferior types [of persons].

53. To persons of the superior type belong the Slight Smile (smita) and the Smile (hasita), to those of the middling type the Gentle Laughter (vihasita) and the Laughter of Ridicule (upahasita) to those of the inferior type the Vulgar Laughter (apahasita) and the Violent Laughter (utihasita).

There are Ślokas on this subjects:

54. The Slight Smile (smita) of the people of the superior type should be characterised by slightly blown cheeks and elegant glances, and in it the teeth should not be visible.

55. Their Smile (hasita) should be distinguished by blooming eyes, face and cheeks, and in it the teeth should be slightly visible.

Of persons of the middle type

56. The Gentle Laughter (vihasita) should have slight sound, and sweetness, and should be suitable to the occasion and in it the eyes and the cheeks should be contracted and the face joyful.

57. During the Laughter of Ridicule (upahasita) the nose should be expanded, the eyes should be squinting, and the shoulder and the head should be bent.

Of persons of the inferior type

58. The laughter on occasions not suitable to it, the laughter with tears in one's eyes, or with the shoulder and the head violently shaking, is called the Vulgar Laughter (apahasita).

59. The Excessive Laughter (utihasita) is that in which the eyes are expanded and tearful sound is loud and excessive, and the sides are covered by hands.

60. Comic situations which may arise in the course of a
play, for persons of the superior, middling or inferior type are thus to be given expression to.

61. This Comic Sentiment is of two kinds: self-centred and centred in others; and it relates to the three types of persons: superior, middling and inferior, and has thus [on the whole] six varieties.

The Pathetic Sentiment

1 Now the Pathetic (karunā) Sentiment arises from the Dominant State of sorrow. It grows from Determinants such as affliction under a curse, separation from dear ones, loss of wealth, death, captivity, flight [from one's own place], [dangerous] accidents or any other misfortune. This is to be represented on the stage by means of Consequents such as, shedding tears, lamentation, dryness of the mouth, change of colour, drooping limbs, being out of breath, loss of memory and the like. Transitory States connected with it are indifference, languor, anxiety, yearning, excitement, delusion, fainting, sadness, dejection, illness, inactivity, insanity, epilepsy, fear, indolence, death, paralysis, tremor, change of colour, weeping, loss of voice and the like.

On this point there are two Āryās:

62. The Pathetic Sentiment arises from seeing the death of a beloved person, or from hearing something very unpleasant and these are its Determinants.

63. This is to be represented on the stage by Consequents like weeping loudly, fainting, lamenting and bewailing, exerting the body or striking it.

The Furious Sentiment.

1 Now the Furious (raudra) Sentiment has as its basis the Dominant State of anger. It owes its origin to Rākṣasas, Dānavas and haughty men, and is caused by fights. This is created by

61 (B.74, G.61). 1 The original of this passage till the beginning of 62 is in prose.

62 (B.76, G.62).

63 (B.77, G.63). 1 The original of this passage till the beginning of 64 is in prose.
Determinants such as anger, rape, abuse, insult, untrue allegation, exorcizing, threatening, revengefulness, jealousy and the like. Its actions are beating, breaking, crushing, cutting, piercing, taking up arms, hurling of missiles, fighting, drawing of blood, and similar other deeds. This is to be represented on the stage by means of Consequents such as red eyes, knitting of eyebrows, defiance, biting of the lips, movement of the checks, pressing one hand with the other, and the like. Transitory States in it are presence of mind, determination, energy, indignation, restlessness, fury, perspiration, trembling, horripilation, choking voice and the like.

Now one enquires, “Is it to be assumed from the [above] statement about Rākṣasas that they only give rise to the Furious Sentiment, and that this Sentiment does not relate to others?” [Reply]. “No, in case of others too this Sentiment may arise. [But in case of Rākṣasas] it is to be understood as their special function. They are naturally furious, for they have many arms, many mouths, standing and unkempt hairs of brown colour, and prodigious physical frame of black complexion. Whatever they attempt, be it their speech, movement of limbs or any other effort, is by nature furious. Even in their love-making they are violent. It is to be easily inferred that persons who imitate them give rise to the Furious Sentiment from their fights and battles.

On these points there are two Āryās:

64. The Furious Sentiment is created by striking, cutting, mutilation and piercing in fights, and tumult of the battle and the like.

65. It should be represented on the stage by special acts such as the release of many missiles, cutting off the head, the trunk and the arms.

66. Such is the Furious Sentiment viewed [by experts]; it is full of conflict of arms, and in it words, movements and deeds are terrible and fearful.

---

9 G. considers this passage till the end of this sentence as an āryā (G.64). 2 Cf. Bhaṭṭikāvya, VIII. 98.

The Heroic Sentiment

Now the Heroic (vīra) Sentiment, relates to the superior type of persons and has energy as its basis. This is created by Determinants such as presence of mind, perseverance, diplomacy, discipline, military strength, aggressiveness, reputation of might, influence and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Conseqents such as firmness, patience, heroism, charity, diplomacy and the like. Transitory States in it are contentment, judgement, pride, agitation, energy (vega), ferocity, indignation, remembrance, horripilation and the like.

There are two Āryās [on these points]:

67. The Heroic Sentiment arises from energy, perseverance, optimism, absence of surprise, and presence of mind and [such other] special conditions [of the spirit].

68. This Heroic Sentiment is to be properly represented on the stage by firmness, patience, heroism, pride, energy, aggressiveness, influence and censoring words.

The Terrible Sentiment

Now the Terrible (bhayaṅaka) Sentiment has as its basis the Dominant State of fear. This is created by Determinants like hideous noise, sight of ghosts, panic and anxiety due to [untimely cry of] jackals and owls, staying in an empty house or forest, sight of death or capitivity of dear ones, or news of it, or discussion about it. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as trembling of the hands and the feet, horripilation, change of colour and loss of voice. Its Transitory States are paralysis, perspiration, choking voice, horripilation, trembling, loss of voice, change of colour, fear, stupefaction, dejection, agitation, restlessness, inactivity, fear, epilepsy and death and the like.

On these points there are two traditional Āryās:

69. The Terrible Sentiment is created by hideous noise,

\[1\] The original of this passage till the beginning of 67 is in prose.

67 (B.83, G.68).

\[68\] (B.84, G.69). \[1\] The original of this passage till the beginning of 69 is in prose.

69 (B.86, G.70).
sight of ghosts, battle, entering an empty house or forest, offending one's superiors or the king.

70. Terror is characterised by looseness of the limbs, the mouth and the eyes, paralysis of the thighs, looking around with uneasiness, dryness of the drooping mouth, palpitation of the heart and horripilation.

71. This is [the character of] natural fear; the artificially shown fear also should be represented by these conditions. But in case of the feigned fear all efforts for its representation should be milder.

72. This Terrible Sentiment should be always represented by tremor of the hands and the feet, paralysis, shaking of the body, palpitation of the heart, dryness of the lips, the mouth, the palate and the throat.

The Odious Sentiment

1Now the Odious (bīḥhatsa) Sentiment has as its basis the Dominant State of disgust. It is created by Determinants like hearing of unpleasant, offensive, impure and harmful things or seeing them or discussing them. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as stopping the movement of all the limbs, narrowing down of the mouth, vomiting, spitting, shaking the limbs [in disgust] and the like. Transitory States in it are epilepsy, delusion, agitation, fainting, sickness, death and the like.

On these points there are two traditional Aryās:

73. The Odious Sentiment arises in many ways from disgusting sight, tastes, smell, touch and sound which cause uneasiness.

74. This is to be represented on the stage by narrowing down the mouth and the eyes, covering the nose, bending down the head and walking imperceptibly.

---

72 (B.89, G.73). 1 The original of this passage till the beginning of 73, is in prose.
73 (B.92, G.74).  74 (B.93, G.75).
The Marvellous Sentiment

1 The Marvellous (adbhuta) Sentiment has as its basis the Dominant State of astonishment. It is created by Determinants such as sight of heavenly beings or events, attainment of desired objects, entrance into a superior mansion, temple, audience hall (sabhā), a seven-storied palace and [seeing] illusory and magical acts. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as wide opening of eyes, looking with fixed gaze, horripilation, tears [of joy] perspiration, joy, uttering words of approbation, making gifts, crying incessantly hā, hā, hā, waving the end of dhoti or sārī, and movement of fingers and the like. Transitory States in it are weeping, paralysis, perspiration, choking voice, horripilation, agitation, hurry, inactivity, death and the like.

On this point there are two traditional Āryās;

75. The Marvellous Sentiment is that which arises from words, character, deed and personal beauty.

76. This is to be represented on the stage by a gesture of feeling [sweet] smell, joyful shaking of limbs, and uttering of hā, hā, hā, sounds, speaking words of approbation, tremor, choking voice, perspiration and the like.

The three kinds of the Erotic, the Comic and the Terrible Sentiments

77. The Erotic Sentiment is of three kinds, viz., of words, dress, and action. And the Comic and the Terrible Sentiments are likewise of three kinds, viz., of limbs, dress and words.

The three kinds of the Pathetic Sentiment

78. The Pathetic Sentiment is of three kinds, viz. that rising from obstruction to lawful deeds, from loss of wealth and from bereavement.

The three kinds of the Heroic Sentiment

79. The Heroic Sentiment is likewise of three kinds, viz.
that arising from making gifts, from doing one’s duty (dharma) and from fighting [one’s enemy].

The three kinds of the Terrible Sentiment

80. The Terrible Sentiment is also of three kinds, viz, feigned fear, fear from a wrong action, and fear from an apprehension of danger.

The three kinds of the Odious Sentiment

81. The Odious Sentiment is of three kinds, viz, nauseating, simple, and exciting. Of these the Sentiment from a sight of stool and worms is nauseating, and the sight of blood and similar objects is exciting.

The three kinds of the Marvellous Sentiment

82. The Marvellous Sentiment is of two kinds, viz, celestial and joyous. Or these the celestial is due to seeing heavenly sights, and the joyous due to joyful happenings¹.

83. These are the eight Sentiments and their definitions, I shall hereafter speak of the characteristics of the States.

Here ends Chapter VI of Bharata’s Nātyaśāstra which treats of the Sentiments.

---

80 (B.100, G.81).  
81 (B.101, G.82).  
82 (B.102, G.83). ¹ B. adds here a spurious passage on śānta rasa.
CHAPTER SEVEN

THE EMOTIONAL AND OTHER STATES

_Bhāvas (States)_ explained

0. Now I shall speak of the _bhāvas_ (States). An enquiry in this connexion is, "Why are the _bhāvas_ (States) so called? Is it because they _bhāvayanti_ (pervade) and are hence called _bhāvas_ (States)?" It is said in reply that _bhāvas_ (States) are so called because through Words, Gestures and the Representation of the Temperament, they _bhāvayanti_ (infuse) the meaning of the play [into the spectators]. 1 _Bhāra_ is 'cause' or 'instrument', for words such as, _bhārītā_, _cāritā_ and _kṛtā_ are synonymous. An expression like, 'O, all these things are _bhārītā_ (pervaded) by one another's smell or moistened by one another's juice,' is established even amongst the common people. Hence the root _bhārīya_ means 'to pervade'. Ont his point there are the following Ślokas:

1. When the meanings presented by Determinants and Consequents are made to pervade (garvayte) [the heart of the spectators] they are called _bhāvas_ (States).

2. As in these the inner idea of the playwright (_kāri_) is made to pervade [the mind of the spectators] by means of Words, Gestures, colour of the face and the Representation of the Temperament they are called _bhāvas_ (States).

3. As they cause the Sentiments relating to various kinds of Histrionic Representation to pervade [the mind of the spectators], they are called _bhāvas_ (States) by those who produce a drama.

_Vibhāvas (Determinants)_ explained

"Now, why is the word vibhāva used?" [Answer]: "The word vibhāva is used for the sake of clear knowledge. It is

0 (B.G. same).
1 (B.1-2, G.1). 1 We read _bhāva iti kāraya(m) sūdhanam pūthā etc.
2 (B.3, G.2). 3 (B.4-5, G.3).
synonymous with kāraṇa, nimitta and hetu. As Words, Gestures and the Representation of the Temperament are vibhāvyate (determined) by this, it is called vibhāra (Determinant). Vibhāvita (also) means the same thing as vijñāta (clearly known).

On this point there is a Śloka:

4. As many things are vibhāvyate (determined) by this through Words, Gestures and the Representation of the Temperament it is named vibhāra (Determinate).

Anubhāvas (Consequents) explained

"Now, why is the word anubhāra used?" (Answer) "Because the Histrionic Representation by means of Words, Gestures and the Temperament are anubhāvyate (made to be felt) by this, it is called anubhāva (Consequent).

On this point there is a Śloka:

5. As in it the spectators are anubhāvyate [made to feel] things by means of Words and Gestures it is called anubhāra and it relates to words as well as to [gestures and movements of] major and minor limbs.

Now we have explained that the States (bhāra) are related to Determinants (vibhāra) and Consequents (anubhāva). Thus are the States (bhāra) created. Hence we shall discuss the definitions and examples of the States together with their Determinants and Consequents. Of these, the Determinants and the Consequents are well-known among people. They being connected with the human nature, their definitions are not discussed. This is for avoiding prolixity.

On this point there is the Śloka:

6. Determinants and Consequents are known by the wise to be things which are created by human nature and are in accordance with the ways of the world.

The three kinds of States: Dominant, Transitory and Temperamental

Now the Dominant States (sthāyi-bhāra) are eight in number. The Transitory States (ryabhavārīnāh) are thirtythree and

4 (B.6, G.4). 5 (B.7-8, G.5). 6 (B.9, G.6). 1 We read with B.
the Temperamental States are eight in number. These are the three varieties of the States. Hence we are to understand that there are forty-nine States capable of drawing out the Sentiment from the play. The Sentiments arise from them when they are imbued with the quality of universality (sāmānya, lit. commonness).

On this point there is a Śloka:

7. The State proceeding from the thing which is congenial to the heart is the source of the Sentiment and it pervades the body just as fire spreads over the dry wood.

Difference between the Dominant and the other States

It is said in this connexion: “If the fortynine States being represented by Determinants (vibhāva) and Consequents (anubhāva) coming into contact with one another become Sentiments when they are imbued with the quality of universality, how is it that Dominant States only are changed into Sentiments (and not Determinants and Consequents)?” [In reply to this] it is said: “Just as among persons having same characteristics and similar hands, feet and belly, some, due to their birth, [superior] manners, learning and skill in arts and crafts, attain kingship, while others endowed with an inferior intellect become their attendants, in an identical manner, the Dominant States become masters because on them Determinants (vibhāva), and Consequents (anubhāva) and Transitory States (vyabhicārin) depend. Similarly some of the other States (e.g. Determinants and Consequents) have the qualities of [king’s] local officers, and [hence] Transitory States (vyabhicārin) become attendants to these (Determinants and Consequents) because of their [superior] quality. Now it may be asked, “Is there any parallel instance?” [Answer.] “Just as only a king surrounded by numerous attendants receives this epithet [of king] and not any other man, be he ever so great, so the Dominant States (sthāyī-bhāva) only followed by Determinants, Consequents and Transitory States receive the name of Sentiment. [On this point] there is a traditional Śloka:

7 (B.10-11, G.7). 1 बिमारामालयन-वानिधिक: भावधारामाण्डलबनाधिक प्राचीय-सामान्यता: वांचीनि भाषा:; तथापि भाषीन्तर-वाचीनता कथि बांधामान वृषभाषायथम परिमाणात भाषात्मिकित्वा भाषिकारिकि भाषा:;.
8. Just as a king is superior to other men, and the preceptor (guru) is superior to his disciples, so the Dominant States (sthāyi-bhāva) are superior to the other States (Determinants, Consequents and Transitory States).

The Dominant States

Characteristics of these which are known as the Sentiments have been mentioned before. Now we shall discuss the marks of the States common to them. First of all we shall take up [the case of] the Dominant States (sthāyi-bhāva).

Love

Love (rati) which has pleasure as its basis is caused by Determinants like seasons, garlands, unguent, ornaments, dear ones, enjoyment of a superior residential house and absence of opposition [from any one]. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as a smiling face, sweet words, motion of eyebrows, and glances and the like.

There is a Śloka [on this point]

9. Love arises from the attainment of desired objects, because of its agreeableness. It is to be represented on the stage by sweet words accompanied by [suitable] gestures and movements of limbs.

Laughter

Now Laughter (hāsyata) is caused by Determinants such as mimicry of others’ actions, incoherent talk, obtrusiveness, foolishness and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by means of Smile and the like.

On this point there is a traditional Śloka:

10. Laughter arises from a mimicry of other people’s actions. It is to be represented on the stage by the learned with Smile, Laughter and Excessive Laughter.

---

8 (B.12-14, G.8).
10 (B.16-17, G.10),
16
Sorrow

Sorrow (soka) is caused by Determinants such as death of the beloved one, loss of wealth, experience of sorrow due to any one’s murder or captivity, and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as shedding tears, lamentation, bewailing, change of colour, loss of voice, looseness of limbs, falling on the ground, crying, deep breathing, paralysis, insanity, death and the like. Weeping in this case is of three kinds: [weeping of joy, [weeping] of affliction and [weeping] due to jealousy. On these points there are traditional Aryas:

11. 1 Weeping in which the cheeks are blooming in joy, the body is horripilating, there are words2 of remembrance and tears are not concealed is called weeping of joy.

12. Weeping in which there is a loud sound, copious shedding of tears, uneasiness of the body, want of steady movements and efforts, lamentation after falling on the ground and rolling on the earth is called weeping due to affliction.

13. Loud weeping of women in which the lips and the cheeks are throbbing and the head is shaking, the eyebrows and the glances are moving in anger, is called weeping due to jealousy.

14. Sorrow relates to women, persons of the inferior type, and it has its origin in affliction [of any kind]. With relation to it, persons of the superior and the middling types are distinguished by their patience and those of the inferior type by their weeping.

Anger

Anger (krodhat) is caused by Determinants such as insolence, abusive language, quarrel, altercation, opposing [persons or objects] and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as swollen nose, upturned eyes, bitten lips, throbbing cheeks and the like.

11 (B.10, G.11). 1 B. reads one additional couplet (B.18, before this.
2 Read svatsumaranum vishamibhyasram.
15. Anger is of five kinds, viz., anger caused by enemies, superior persons, lovers, servants, and feigned anger.

On this point there are traditional Āryās:

16. One should show anger against resistance by the enemy with knitting of eyebrows, fierce look, bitten lips, hands clasping each other, and touching one’s own head and breast.

17. One should show anger against control by superiors with slightly downcast eyes. wiping off slight perspiration and not expressing any violent movement.

18. One should show one’s anger to the beloved woman by a very slight movement [of the body], by shedding tears, and knitting eyebrows and with sidelong glances, and throbbing lips.

19. Anger to one’s servants should be represented on the stage by means of threat, rebuke, dilating the eyes and casting contemptuous looks of various kinds.

20. Anger which is artificially shown with a view to the realisation of an ulterior motive and which mostly betrays marks of effort is called feigned anger, and it relates to two Sentiments.

Energy

Energy (utsāha) relates to persons of the superior type. It is caused by Determinants such as absence of sadness, power, patience, heroism and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as steadiness, munificence, boldness of an undertaking, and the like.

On this point there is a śloka:

2 Omit dhairya after sthairya.
21 (B.32-33, G.20). 1 Omit śnāpada before śnīya.
2 Omit kāntāra before durdina.
21. Energy which has effort as its basis and which grows out of alertness and such other qualities, should be represented on the stage by acts of vigilance and the like

Fear

Fear (bhaya) relates to women and persons of the inferior type. It is caused by Determinants such as acts offending one’s superiors and the king\(^1\), roaming in a forest, seeing an elephant and a snake, staying in an empty house, rebuke [from one’s superiors], \(^2\) a dark rainy night, hearing the hooting of owls and the cry of animals that go out at night, and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as, trembling hands and feet, palpitation of the heart, paralysis, dryness of the mouth, licking the lips, perspiration, tremor, apprehension [of danger], seeking for safety, running away, loud crying and the like.

On this point there are Ślokas:

22. Fear arises from an embarrassment due to offending one’s superiors and the king, seeing terrible objects and hearing awful things.

23. This is to be represented with tremor of the limbs, panic, drying up of the mouth, hurried movement, widely opened eyes and such other gestures and actions.

24. Fear in men arising from terrifying objects should be represented on the stage by actors (lit. dancers) with slackened limbs and suspended movement of the eyes.

There is also an Āryā on this point:

25. This (fear) should be represented on the stage with tremor of hands and feet, and palpitation of the heart, paralysis, licking the lips, drying up of the mouth, loosened limbs and sinking (visaya) body.

---

\(^{1}\) B.34, G.21.

\(^{2}\) B.35, G.22.

B.36, G.23.

Disgust

Disgust (juga-prā) relates to women and persons of the inferior type. It is caused by Determinants such as hearing and seeing unpleasant things, and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as, contracting all the limbs, spitting, narrowing down of the mouth, heartache and the like.

On this point there is a Sloka.

26. Disgust is to be represented on the stage by covering the nose, contracting all the limbs, [general] uneasiness and heartache.

Astonishment

Astonishment (rismayati) is created by Determinants such as illusion, magic, extraordinary feats of men, great excellence in painting, art-works in parchment and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as wide opening of the eyes, looking without winking of the eyes, [much] movement of the eyebrows, horripilation, moving the head to and fro, the cry of “well, done;” “well done;” and the like.

On this point there is a Sloka:

27. Astonishment arising from joy due to extraordinary acts should be represented by means such as joy tears, fainting and the like.

The Transitory States

The Dominant States are to be known as described here.

We shall now explain the Transitory States (vyahicāri-bhāva). It is questioned, “Why are these called vyahicāriṇaḥ?” [In answer] it is said that vi and abhi are prefixes, and the root is cara meaning ‘to go’, ‘to move’. Hence the word vyahicāriṇaḥ means ‘those that move in relation to the Sentiments towards different kinds of objects. That is, they carry the Sentiments which are connected with Words, Gestures and the Temperament. It is questioned, “How do they carry [the Sentiments]?” In answer it is said, “It is a popular

---

1 Omit parikirtana after śrāvāṇa.
26 (B.40-41, G.26). 1 Omit viḍyā after ṭilpa.
27 (B.42-43, G.26). 1 Omit rasasamjñāṇaḥ (B) after sthāyino bhāvaḥ.
convention to say like this, just as people say, The sun carries this nakṣatra (star) or that day. It does not however mean that these are carried on arms or shoulders. The Transitory States should be considered like this. These Transitory States (nyabhī-cāribhāva) as mentioned in the Digest (saṃgroha) are thirtythree in number. We shall describe them now.

Discouragement

Discouragement (nirrōla) is caused by Determinants such as, being reduced to poverty\(^2\), getting insulted, abusive language, wrathful beating, loss of beloved persons and the knowledge of the ultimate (lit. essential) truth and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Determinants such as weeping, sighing, deep breathing, deliberation and the like, on the part of women and persons of the inferior type.

On this point there is a Śloka:

28. Discouragement grows out of being reduced to poverty, and loss of dear ones, and it is to be represented on the stage by deliberation and deep breathing.

On this point there two traditional Āryās:

29. Discouragement arises from loss of dear ones, poverty, disease, envy from seeing the prosperity of others.

30. A discouraged man has the eyes bathed in tears, face and eyes miserable due to heavy breathing and he is like a yogi absorbed in meditation.

Weakness

Weakness (glāni) proceeds from Determinants such as vomiting, purgation, sickness, penance, austerities, fasting, mental worry, too much drinking, sexual indulgence, too much exercise, travelling a long way, hunger, thirst, sleeplessness and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as weak voice, lustreless eyes, pale face, slow gait, want of energy, thinness of the body, change of colour and the like.

\(^2\) Omit nyādhyavamāna after dāsikāra.

On this point there are two Āryās:

31. Weakness grows out of vomiting, purgation and sickness, penance, and old age. It is to be represented on the stage by thinness of the body, slow gait and tremor [of the limbs].

32. Weakness is to be represented on the stage by a very weak voice, weakness of the eyesight, poor gait, constant slackness of the limbs.

Apprehension

Apprehension (saṅkā) has doubt as its basis and it relates to women and persons of the inferior type. It is caused by Determinants such as theft, giving offence to the king and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as constantly looking on, hesitating movement (avikunjhalav), dryness of the mouth, licking the lips, change of facial colour, tremor, dry lips, loss of voice and the like.

There is a Śloka on these points:

33. Apprehension in the Terrible Sentiment is due to robbery, and the like, and in case of the Erotic Sentiment it is due to [a possible] deception on the part of the lover.

Some authorities prescribe (lit. desire) in this case a concealment of appearance which is to be characterised by [adoption of] clever tricks and gestures.

There are two Āryās in this connexion:

34. Apprehension is of two kinds: viz. that arising from one's ownself and that arising from another person. That arising from one's own self is to be known from one's eyes and efforts.

35. A man with Apprehension has a dark face, a thick and protruding tongue, slightly trembling limbs, and he constantly looks sideways.

Envy

Envy (asaṅgā) is caused by Determinants such as various offences, hatred, other people's wealth, good luck, intelligence,
sports, learning and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as finding fault with others, decrying their virtues, not paying any heed to these, remaining with downcast face, knitting eyebrows in disparagement and abusing others in the assembly [of men].

On these points there are two Āryās:

36. Envy arises in a person who is displeased to see other people’s good fortune, wealth, intelligence, and exuberance of sportiveness.

37. It is to be represented by a distorted face, knitting eyebrows, face turned away in jealous anger, decrying other people’s virtues and showing hatred towards them.

Intoxication

Intoxication (maddha) is caused by drinking of liquor and similar other things. It is of three kinds and has five Determinants. There are the following Āryās on this point:

38. Intoxication is of three kinds, viz. light, medium and excessive. It has five causes which should be represented on the stage.

39. While intoxicated some sing, some laugh and some use hot words while other sleep.

40. Among these, persons of the superior type sleep, those of the middling type laugh and sing, and those of the inferior type cry or use hot words.

41. Light intoxication is characterised by smiling face, pleasant feeling, joyful body, slightly faltering words, delicately unsteady gait and relates to persons of the superior type.

42. Medium intoxication is characterised by drunken and rolling eyes, drooping arms or arms restlessly thrown about and irregularly unsteady gait, and relates to persons of the middling type.
43. Excessive intoxication is characterised by loss of memory, and incapacity to walk due to vomiting, hiccup and cough, and a thick protruding tongue and spitting, and relates to persons of the inferior type.

44. A character who [acts] drinking on entering the stage is to show that his intoxication is increasing, but the character who enters the stage as drunk should show that his intoxication is decreasing.

45. But the intoxication should be stopped by effort when there is panic, grief and increase of terror due to some cause.

46. On account of these special conditions, intoxication disappears quickly just as grief passes away on hearing the happy news of [sudden] prosperity.

Weariness

Weariness (śrama) is caused by Determinants such as travelling a long way, exercising of the limbs and the like. ¹ It is to be represented on the stage by [Consequents such as gentle rubbing of the body, [deep] breathing, contraction of the mouth, belching, massaging of the limbs, very slow gait, contraction of the eyes, making Śītkāra and the like.

There is an Āryā on this point:

47. Weariness in man is caused by travelling [a long way] and exercising [the limbs], and it is to be represented on the stage by [deep] breathing, tired gait and the like.

Indolence

Indolence (ālasya) is caused by Determinants such as nature, lassitude, sickness satiety, pregnancy and the like. And it relates to women, and men of the inferior type. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as aversion to any kind of work, lying down, sitting, drowsiness, sleep and the like. On this point there is an Āryā:

43 (B.65, G.42). ¹ We follow the reading of the ms qa in B.
46 (B.68-69, G.45). ¹ adhvagati for nyātvadā (B).
47 (B.70-71, G.46).
48. Indolence arising from lassitude as well as nature should be represented on the stage by discontinuance of all activity except taking food.

Dipression

Dipression (dainya) is caused by Determinants such as poverty, mental agony and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as want of self-command, dullness of the body, absent-mindedness, giving up of cleansing [the body] and the like.

There is an Āryā on this point:

49. Dipression of men proceeds from anxiety, eager expectation and misery. Different modes of representing it on the stage includes giving up of cleansing [the body] in any way.

Anxiety

Anxiety (cintā) is caused by Determinants such as loss of wealth, theft of a favourite object, poverty and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by [deep] breathing, sighing, agony, meditation, thinking with a downcast face, thinness of the body and the like.

There are two Āryās on this point:

50. Anxiety of men arises in various ways: from the loss of wealth, theft of a favourite object, and a heart full of expectation.

51. It is to be represented on the stage by sighing, deep breathing, agony, and absent-mindedness, giving up of cleansing [the body] and want of self-command.

Distraction

Distraction (moha) is caused by Determinants such as accidental injury, adversity, sickness, fear, agitation, remembering past enmity and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as want of movement, [excessive]

48 (B.92-73, G.47).
50 (B.76, G.42).
49 (B.74-75, G.48).
51 (B.77-78, G.50).
movement of [a particular] limb, falling down, reeling, not seeing properly and the like.

There is a Śloka on this point:

52. Due to seeing a robber in an unexpected place or from panic of different kinds distraction occurs to a man when he finds no help [near by].

There is also an Āryā on this point:

53. Distraction occurs due to adversity, accidental injury, memory of past enmity. It is to be represented on the stage by suspension of the activity of all senses.

Recollection

Recollection (smṛti) is remembering every condition of happiness and misery. It is caused by Determinants such as impairment of health, disturbed nightly sleep, seeing and speaking with a level head, thinking, constant practice and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as nodding of the head, looking down, raising up the eyebrows and the like.

On this point there is a Ślokā and an Āryā:

54. One is said to be recollecting something when one remembers past happiness and misery which were either conceived in mind or did actually occur and was forgotten.

55. Recollection arising from impaired health, or relating to the Vedas and Dāsānas is to be represented on the stage by raising or nodding of the head and raising the eyebrows.

Contentment

Contentment (dṛṣṭi) is caused by [Determinants such as] heroism, spiritual knowledge, learning, wealth, purity, good conduct, devotion to one's superiors, getting excessive amount of money, enjoying sports, and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as enjoyment of objects gained, and not

52 (B.79, G.51). 53 (B.80-81, G.52).
54 (B.82, G.53).
55 (B.83-84, G.54). 1 Omit manoratha (B.G.) after adhika.
grumbling over objects unattained, past, partially enjoyed, lost and the like.

On this point there are two Āryās:

56. Contentment arising from spiritual knowledge, purity, wealth and power, is always to be represented on the stage by an absence of fear, sorrow and sadness.

57. When one enjoys attained objects such as [sweet] sound, touch, taste, form and smell, and is not sorry over their non-attainment one is said to have Contentment.

Shame

Shame (vriḍā) has improper action as its basis. It is caused by Determinants such as humiliation and repentance on account of transgressing words of superiors or disregarding them, nonfulfilment of vows and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as covered face, thinking with downcast face, drawing lines on the ground, touching clothes and rings, and biting, the nails, and the like.

There are two Āryās on this point:

58. When a man, after he has done anything improper, is seen by those who are pure, he becomes repentant and is ashamed.

59. The ashamed man will cover his face, draw lines on the ground, bite the nails and touch clothes and rings.

Inconstancy

Inconstancy (capalatā) is caused by Determinants such as love, hatred, malice, impatience, jealousy, opposition and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as harsh words, rebuke, beating, killing, taking prisoner, goading and the like.

There are two Āryās on this point.

60. When a man does anything like killing or imprisoning any one without any forethought he is said to be inconstant because of his not being definite in his action.

Joy

Joy (ḥarṣa) is caused by Determinants such as attainment of the desired object, union with a desired, trusted and beloved person, mental satisfaction, favour of gods, preceptor, king, and husband (or master), receiving [good] food, clothing and money and enjoying them, and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by means of Consequents such as brightness of the face and the eyes, using sweet words, embracing, ¹ horrililation, tears, perspiration and the like.

There are two Āryās on this point:

61. Joy is caused to a man when he has attained any object or obtained anything which was unobtainable or has met his beloved one or has his heart’s desire fulfilled.

62. It is to be represented on the stage by brightness of the eyes and the face, loving words, embrace, delicate movement of the limbs, and perspiration and the like.

Agitation

Agitation (āvega) is caused by Determinants such as portents, wind or rains, [outbreak] of fire, running about of elephants, hearing very good or very bad news, stroke of adversity and the like. In this connexion portents include [a stroke of] lightning and [falling] of meteors or shooting stars, eclipse of the sun and the moon, and appearance of comets. It is to be represented on the stage by looseness of all the limbs, sadness, distraction of the mind, loss of facial colour, surprise and the like. [Agitation] due to violent winds is to be represented by veiling [the face], rubbing the eyes, collecting [the ends] of clothes [worn], hurried going and the like. [Agitation] due to [heavy] rains is to be represented by lumping

ⁱ Omit pulakita after karṣakita (B.G).

60 (B.91-92, G.59).
61 (B.93, G.60).
together of all the limbs, running, looking for some covered
shelter, and the like. [That] due to [an outbreak of] fire is to be
represented by eyes troubled with smoke, narrowing down all the
limbs, or shaking them, running with wide steps, flight and the
like. That due to running about of elephants is to be represented
by hurried retreat, unsteady gait, fear, paralysis, tremor, looking
back and the like. [That] from hearing something favourable is
to be represented by getting up, embracing, giving away clothes
and ornaments, weeping, horripilation and the like. That due to
hearing anything unpleasant is to be represented by falling down
on the ground, lamentation, rolling about [even] on a rough
surface, running away, bewailing, weeping and the like. And that
due to popular rising (prakrti-vatasana) is to be represented by
sudden retreat, taking up weapons and armour, mounting elephants
and horses and chariots, striking and the like.

63. Agitation of these eight kinds has hurry as its basis,
This is characterised by patience on the part of persons of the
superior and the middling types; but agitation of persons of the
inferior type is marked by flight.

On this point there are two Aryas:

64. Agitation occurs over an unpleasant report, disregard
of instruction, throwing a missile and panic.

65. Agitation due to an unpleasant report has as its Conse-
quents assuming a sad look, and that due to a sudden appearance
of enemy is to be represented by clash of weapons.

Stupor

Stupor (jadaata) is caused by Determinants such as cessation
of all activity, hearing of a much desired thing or a [very] harm-
ful thing, sickness and the like. It is to be represented on the
stage by Consequents such as not uttering any word, speaking
indistinctly, remaining absolutely silent, looking with steadfast
gaze, dependence on others and the like.

\[\text{samprakaraṇa (pradhrāna B. G.)}\]

There is an Ṛṣya on this point:

66. A man is called stupid when due to senselessness he cannot distinguish between good and bad as well as happiness and misery, and remains silent and dependent on others.

Arrogance

Arrogance (yavva) is caused by Determinants such as kingship, noble birth, personal beauty, youth, learning, power, attainment of wealth and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as contempt¹ [for others], harassing [people], not giving reply [to one’s question], not greeting [others], looking to shoulders, roaming [at large], contemptuous laughter, harsh words, transgressing [commands of] the superiors, insulting [others] and the like.

There is an Ṛṣya on this point:

67. Arrogance of persons of the inferior type due to learning, youth, beauty, royalty and attainment of wealth is to be represented by movement of the eyes and the limbs.

Despair

Despair (rīṣāḍa) is caused by Determinants such as inability to finish the work undertaken, accidental calamity and the like. It is to be represented on the part of persons of the superior and the middling types by Consequents such as looking for allies, thinking about means, loss of energy, absent-mindedness, deep breathing and the like. And on the part of persons of the inferior type it is to be represented by running away, looking down, drying up of the mouth, licking the corner of the mouth, sleep, deep breathing, meditation and the like.

There are two Ṛṣyas on this point:

68. Despair arises from nonfulfilment the work begun, being taken at the time of committing theft, and giving offence to the king and the like.

69. In case of persons of the superior and the middling types this is to be represented by thinking about various means, and in case of persons of the inferior type sleep, deep breathing, and meditation are to represent it.

Impatience

Impatience (natsukya) is created by Determinants such as separation from beloved persons, remembering them, sight of a garden and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as sighs, thinking with downcast face, sleep, drowsiness, desire for lying down and the like.

There is an Aryā on this point:

70. Impatience arises from the loss of beloved persons or from remembering them. This is to be represented on the stage by thinking, want of sleep, drowsiness, dullness of the body and desire to lie down and the like.

Sleeping

Sleeping (widra) is caused by Determinants such as weakness, fatigue, intoxication, indolence, [too much] thinking, too much eating, [soporific] nature and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as heaviness of the face, rolling of the body, rolling of the eyes, yawning, massaging of the body, deep breathing, relaxed body, closing the eyes and the like.

There are two Aryās on this point:

71. Sleep comes to a man through weakness, fatigue, exertion, [too much] thinking, natural tendency [to sleep] and keeping awake throughout the night.

72. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as heaviness of the face, closing the eyes, or their rolling, stupor, yawning, massaging of the body and the like.

69 (B.106-107, G.68).
70 (B.108-109, G.69).
71 (B.110, G.70).
72 (B.111-112, G.71).
Epilepsy

Epilepsy (apasmāra) is caused by Determinants such as being possessed by a god, a Nāga, a Yakṣa, a Rākṣasa, a Piśāca and the like, and a memory of such beings, eating food left after somebody’s partaking of it, staying in a deserted house, non-observation of proper time [in taking food, in sleeping etc.], derangement of humours (ātānu)\(^1\) and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as throbbing, trembling, running, falling down, perspiration, foaming in the mouth, hiccup, licking [the lips] with the tongue, and the like.

On this point there are two Āryās:

73. Epilepsy occurs in a person when he is possessed by Bhūtas and Piśācas, when he remembers these beings, [eats] Ucchistā\(^4\), stays in a deserted house, disregards for proper time [for taking food etc.], and is impure [in body].

74. Falling down suddenly on the ground, trembling, foaming in the mouth, and rising up while senseless, are conditions during Epilepsy.

Dreaming

Dreaming (snāpta) is caused by Determinants such as interruption of sleep, enjoying objects of senses, infatuation [of any kind], spreading the bed on the ground, dragging the bed over the ground and the like. The dreaming which occurs in sleep is to be represented by Consequents such as deep breathing, dullness of the body, closing the eyes, stupefaction of all the senses, dreams and the like.

There are two Āryās on this point:

75. Dreaming occurs due to interruption of sleep, enjoying objects of senses and infatuation [of any kind]. It is to be

---

\(^{1}\) They are three in number please viz. wind (vīyāna), bile (pitta) and phlegm (kapha).

73 (B.113, G.72).\(^{1}\) That which is left over in one’s plate after he has finished his meal.

represented on the stage by closing the eyes, deep breathing, dreaming dreams and talking while asleep.

76. Dreaming is to be represented on the stage by deep breathing, imperfectly closing eyes, stupefaction of all senses and absence of all activity.

Awakening

Awakening (vibodha) is the break of sleep, and it is caused by Determinants such as digestion of food, bad dreams, loud sound, sensitive touch and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as yawning, rubbing the eyes leaving, the bed, and the like.

There is an Arya on this point:

77. Awakening is caused by digestion of food, [loud] sound, [sensitive] touch and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by yawning, rubbing the face and the eyes, and the like.

Indignation

Indignation (anartha) is caused to persons abused or insulted by those having superior learning, wealth or power. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as shaking the head, perspiration, thinking and reflecting with a downcast face, determination, looking for ways and means and allies, and the like.

There are two Slokas on this point:

78. Indignation grows in energetic men who have been abused or insulted in an assembly by those having superior learning and wealth.

79. It is to be represented on the stage by energy, determination, reflection with a downcast face, shaking the head, perspiration and the like.

Dissimulation

Dissimulation (avahittha) is the concealment of appearance. It is caused by Determinants such as shame, fear, defeat, respect,
deceit and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as speaking like another person, looking downwards, break in the speech, feigned patience and the like.

There is a Śloka on this point:

80. Dissimulation is due to boldness, deceit, fear and the like. It is to be represented by carelessness about an action, and not speaking much in reply or in addressing [others].

Cruelty

Cruelty (ugrata) is caused by Determinants such as arrest of robbers, offence to kings, offending words and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents like killing, imprisoning, beating, rebuking and the like.

There is an Āryā on this point:

81. Cruelty occurs when a robber is arrested or the king is given affence. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as killing, imprisoning, beating, rebuking and the like.

Assurance

Assurance (mati) is caused by Determinants such as thinking about the meaning of many Śāstras and considering the pros and cons of things. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as instructing pupils, ascertainment of [any] meaning, removal of doubt and the like.

There is a Śloka on this point:

82. Assurance comes to men when they are well-versed in the meaning of many Śāstras. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as instructing pupils and explaining the meaning [of Śāstras].

Sickness

Sickness (vyādhi) owes its origin to [an attack of] three humours such as wind (rāta), bile (pitta) and phlegm (kapha).
Fever and similar other illneses are special varieties of it. Fever is of two kinds, viz. that with a feeling of cold (śīta) and that with a feeling of heat (dāho). Fever with a feeling of cold should be represented by Consequents such as shivering, tremor of the entire body, bending [the body], shaking of the jaws, narrowing down the nasal passage, dryness of the mouth, horripilation, lamentation and the like. And that with a feeling of heat, is to be represented by throwing out clothes, the hands and the feet, desire [to roll on] the ground, [use of] unguent, desire for coolness, lamentation, crying and the like. The other types of sicknesses are to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as narrowing down the mouth dullness of the body, [deep] breathing, making [peculiar] sounds, crying, tremor and the like.

There is a Śloka on this point:

83. Sickness in general should be represented on the stage by looseness of the limbs, throwing out the limbs and narrowing down the mouth due to illness.

Insanity

Insanity (unmāda) is caused by Determinants such as death of beloved persons, loss of wealth, accidental hurt, derangement of [the three humours]: wind (vāta), biles (pitta), phlegm (kleṣmau), and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by laughing, weeping, crying, talking, lying down, sitting, running, dancing, singing, and reciting [something] without any reason, smearing [the body] with ashes and dust, taking grass, Nirmālya¹, soiled cloth, rags, potsherds, earthen tray as decoration [of the body], many other senseless acts, and imitation of others.

There are two Āryās on this point:

84. Insanity occurs owing to death of beloved persons, loss of wealth, accidental hurt, wind (vāta), biles (pitta), phlegm (kapha) derangement of the mind in various ways.

¹ Remains of a flower-offering to a deity, which is supposed to purify a person who takes it with reverence.

83 (B.130-131, G.81).

84 (B.132, G.92).
85. Insanity is to be represented by laughing, weeping, sitting, running and crying without any reason and [other] senseless acts.

Death

Death (maraṇa) comes through sickness as well as accidental injury. Of these two kinds of death, that from sickness is caused by Determinants such as a malady of the intestine and the liver, colic pain, disturbance of humours, tumours, boils, fever, cholera, and the like. And that due to accidental injury is caused by weapons, snake-bite, taking poison, [attack of] ferocious animals, injury due to falling down from elephant, horse, charriot and other vehicles. I shall now speak of the different methods of their representation on the stage. Death from sickness is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as looseness of the body, motionlessness of the limbs, closed eyes, hiccough, deep breathing, looking for family members, speaking indistinct words and the like.

There is a Śloka on this point:

86. Death due to sickness is to be represented on the stage by one mark viz. loose body and inactive sense organs.

But death due to accidental injury is to be represented on the stage in different ways: e.g. [death due to] wound by weapons is to be represented by Consequents such as suddenly falling down on the ground and the like. In case of snake-bite or taking poison [there is gradual] development of its symptoms which are eight in number, viz. thinness (of the body), tremor, burning sensation, hiccough, foam from the mouth breaking of the neck, paralysis and death.

85 (B.133-134, G.83). 1 Earlier writers on the Hindu drama wrongly believed that NS excluded scenes of death from the stage. (See Keith, Skt. Drama, pp. 223; also M. Ghosh, “A so-called convention of the Hindu Drama”, IHQ., IX. 1933, pp. 981 ff.). Windisch thought that Sudraka in his (Act. VIII) violated a rule in showing the murder of Vasantsena by Sakara (Der griechische Einfluss in indische Drama, Berlin, 1882. p. 43).

86 (B.135-136, G.84).
There are two traditional Ślokas on this point:

87-88. The first symptom of the development [of the effect of poison] is thinness of the body, the second tremor, the third a burning sensation, the fourth hiccup, the fifth foaming in the mouth, the sixth breaking of the neck, the seventh paralysis and and the eighth death.

There are besides two Āryās on this point:

89. Death due to [an attack of] ferocious animals, elephant, horse, or falling from chariots and mounts, wound by weapons should be represented by absence of any further movement of the body.

90. Thus death occurs under various conditions. It should be represented by proper words and gestures.

**Fright**

Fright (śrāva) is caused by Determinants such as flash of lightning a meteor, thunder, earthquake, clouds, crying or howling of big animals and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as, shaking of narrow limbs, tremor [of the body], paralysis, horripilation, speaking with a choked voice, talking irrelevantly, and the like.

There is a Śloka on this point:

91. Fright is caused by a very terrible sound and the like. It should be represented on the stage by looseness of limbs and half-shut eyes.

**Deliberation**

Deliberation (citarika) is caused by Determinants such as doubt, cogitation, perplexity and the like. It is to be represented on the stage by Consequents such as various discussions, settling the definition, concealment of the counsel and the like.

There is a Śloka on this point:

92. Deliberation which arises from discussions and which has doubt as its basis is to be represented on the stage by movement of the head, the eyebrows and the eyelashes.
These are the thirtythree Transitory States; they are to be produced in a play by men and women of the superior, middling and the inferior types in conformity with [proper] place, time and occasion.

93. These thirtythree are known as the Transitory States. I shall now explain in detail the Temperamental States,

The Temperamental States

Now it may be questioned,

"Are these States (bāra) called Temperamental because other States (Determinants, Consequents and Transitory States) are said to be without the Temperament?" [In answer] it is said that the Temperament in this connexion is something originating in mind. It is caused by the concentrated mind. The Temperament is accomplished by concentration of the mind. Its nature [which includes] paralysis, perspiration, horripilation, tears, loss of colour and the like, cannot be mimicked by an absent-minded man. Hence the Temperament is desired in a play for the purpose of imitating human nature. If the question is, 'Is there any reason in support of this view?' then it may be said that in theatrical practice, situations of happiness as well as misery should so purely accord with the Temperament behind them that they may appear to be realistic (yathā-sāraṃ). How can sorrow which has weeping as its basis be represented on the stage by any one who is not sorry? And how can happiness which has joy as its basis be represented on the stage by any one who is not happy? Hence the Temperament (satta) being desired (in acting) in connexion with certain States the latter are called Temperamental. The explanation of the Temperament is this, that tears and horripilation should respectively be shown by persons who are not [actually] sorry or happy.

94. The eight Temperamental States are as follows: Paralysis, Perspiration, Horripilation, Change of Voice, Trembling, Change of Colour, Weeping and Fainting.

93 (B.146-147, G.90).
94 (B.148, G.92). \(^1\) above VI 22 note 1.
Among these,

Perspiration

95. Perspiration (svedha) occurs as the result of anger, fear, joy, shame, sorrow, toil, sickness, heat, exercise, fatigue, summer and massage.

Paralysis and Trembling

96. Paralysis (stambha) occurs as being due to joy, fear, sickness, surprise, sadness, intoxication and anger, and Trembling (karmap=çopathana) due to cold, fear, joy, anger, touch [of the beloved] and old age.

Weeping

97. Weeping (asra) occurs as being due to joy, indignation, smoke, collyrium, yawning, fear, sorrow, looking with a steadfast gaze, cold and sickness.

Change of Colour and Horripilation

98. Change of Colour (caiwar nga) occurs as being due to cold, anger, fear, toil, sickness, fatigue and heat, and Horripilation (romana) due to touch, fear, cold joy, anger and sickness.

Change of Voice and Fainting

99. Change of Voice (sravasva) occurs as being due to fear, joy, anger, fever, sickness and intoxication, and Fainting (pralaya) due to too much toil, swoon, intoxication, sleep, injury, astonishment and the like.

Representation of the Temperamental States

100. These are to be known by the wise as the eight Temperamental States. I shall speak afterwards about actions which will represent these States.
101. Paralysis should be represented on the stage by being inactive, motionless, smileless, like an inert object, senseless, and stiff-bodied.

102. Perspiration should be represented on the stage by taking up a fan, wiping off sweat as well as looking for breeze.

103. Horripilation should be represented on the stage by repeated thrills, hairs standing on the end, and touching the body.

104. Change of Voice should be represented by broken and choking voice, and Trembling by quivering, throbbing and shivering.

105. Change of Colour should be represented by alteration of colour of the face by putting pressure on the artery, and this is dependant on the limbs.

106. Weeping should be represented on the stage by rubbing the eyes and shedding tears, and Loss of Consciousness by falling on the ground.

Application of the States to the different Sentiments

107. These are the fortynine States (bhāva) of the three kinds mentioned by me. Now you ought to hear of the different Sentiments to which they are applicable.

108. All the (fortynine) States except indolence, cruelty and disgust are applicable to the Erotic Sentiment (lit. raise the Erotic Sentiment by their own name).

109. Weakness, apprehension, envy, weariness, inconstancy, dreaming, sleeping dissimulation are the States applicable to the Comic Sentiment.

110. Discouragement, anxiety, depression, weakness, weeping, stupor and death are the States applicable to the Pathetic Sentiment.
111. Arrogance, envy, energy, agitation, intoxication, anger, inconstancy and cruelty are the States applicable to the Furious Sentiment.

112-113. Presence of mind, energy, agitation, joy, assurance, cruelty, indignation, intoxication, horripilation, change of voice, anger, envy, contentment, arrogance and deliberation are the States applicable to the Heroic Sentiment.

114. Perspiration, trembling, horripilation, choking voice, fear, death, change of colour are the States applicable to the Terrible Sentiment.

115. Epilepsy, insanity, despair, intoxication, death, sickness and fear are the States applicable to the Odoious Sentiment.

116. Paralysis, perspiration, loss of consciousness, horripilation, astonishment, agitation, stupefication, joy and fainting are the States applicable to the Marvellous Sentiment.

117. These \(^1\) Temperamental States which depends on the various kinds of Histrionic Representation are included into all the Sentiments by experts in the production of plays.

118-119. No play in its production can have one Sentiment only. If in an assemblage of the many \(^1\) States, Sentiments, Styles (\(r\ddot{\text{r}}\ddot{\text{ti}}\)) and Local Usages (\(p\ddot{\text{r}}\ddot{\text{av}\ddot{\text{r}}\ddot{\text{t}}\ddot{\text{i}}\ddot{\text{t}}\)) [in the production of a play], any one item has varied representation it should be considered the Dominant Sentiment and the rest the Transitory ones \(^2\).

120. That which stands on the principal theme [of the play] and is combined with Determinants, Consequents and Transitory States is the Dominant Sentiment.

117 (B.179, G.116). \(^1\) ye tvete (c\(\ddot{\text{a}}\)nye, B).
\(^2\) n\(\ddot{\text{a}}\)n\(\ddot{\text{a}}\)bhina\(\ddot{\text{a}}\)yasam\(\ddot{\text{a}}\)r\(\ddot{\text{t}}\)\(\ddot{\text{a}}\)h B.
118-119 (B.180-181, G.117-118). \(^1\) bah\(\ddot{\text{\=u}}\)n\(\ddot{\text{\=u}}\)m (sara\(\ddot{\text{\=v}}\)\(\ddot{\text{\=\i}}}\)m G.). sama\(\ddot{\text{\=v}}\)tel\(\ddot{\text{\=\i}}}\)m.
\(^2\) After this B. reads one additional couplet.
120 (B.183, G.119).
121. This Dominant Sentiment should be represented with an exuberance of the Temperament, but the Transitory States by mere gestures and postures (lit. form), for they are to support the Dominant Sentiment [and as such should not excel it].

122. [An equally full representation of] a variety [of Sentiments] does not please [the spectators], and such a variety is rare in practical life (lit. amongst people). But a mixture of different Sentiments will however, bring pleasure [to the spectators] when such is carefully represented.

123. In [the production of] a play the Dominant, the Temperamental and the Transitory States which are supporters of the Sentiments and which are accomplished through many objects and ideas, should be assigned to male characters.

124. The Sentiments and the States in plays are thus to be created. One who knows this well will attain the best Success [in the production of a play].

Here ends Chapter VII of Bharata’s Nāṭyāśāstra which treats of the Representation of the States.

121 (B.184, G.120). 1 A disregard of this principle is liable to cause undue prominence to a minor character in a play and thereby to frustrate the principal object of the playwright.

2 After this B. reads some additional couplets (B.185-189a) which include a variants of 122 a (B.189a) and 122b (B.186b) and a repetition of 118a (B.186a) and 1186 (B.187a).

122 (B.184 foot-note, 9, G.121).

123 (B.189b-190a, G.122). 1 prasāñcakārynāḥ (prasāñcakārynāḥ B.G.).

2 An analysis of the plays of the best kind, known to us seems to explain this rule. For in almost all of them superior roles are assigned to men who can better be made the vehicle of different and complex psychological states.

124 (B.190bc, G.123).
CHAPTER EIGHT
THE GESTURES OF MINOR LIMBS

The sages question.

1-2. Through your kindness we have heard in due order everything relating to the origin of the States (bhāva)\(^1\) and Sentiments (rasa)\(^2\). We shall now like to know also what the experts say about the different kinds of Histrionic Representation, their meanings and different subdivisions.

3. O the blessed one, you are also to tell us accurately what kinds of Histrionic Representation are to be applied to which [places or occasions] by persons aiming at the Success.

Bharata answers.

4. On these words of the sages, Bharata spoke thus relating to the four kinds of Histrionic Representation.

5. "O sages, I shall now speak to you in detail so that the Histrionic Representation becomes properly explained to you.

\(^1\)We shall speak of [the fact that] the abhinaya (Histrionic Representation) is of four kinds. The question is, "Why is it called the abhinaya?" It is said in reply to this that the abhinaya is derived from the prefix abhi, and the verbal root nī meaning 'to cause to get' (to attain), and the suffix ac attached to these two. Hence a [full] answer to this should be made after a consideration of the root and its meaning.

There is a Śloka on this point:

6. As the root nī preceded by abbi means 'carrying the performances (prayoga) of a play [to the point of direct] ascertainty

---

1-2 (B.G. same). \(^1\) See NS. VIII.  \(^2\) See NS. VI.
3 (B.G. same).  4 (B.G. same).
5 (B.5-6, G.5). \(^1\) This portion till the beginning of 6 is originally in prose.  6 (B.7, G.8).
of its meaning,' so [the word made out of them] becomes abhinaya (carrying towards).

The meaning of abhinaya

7. Abhinaya is so called because in the performance [of a play] it together with the Śākha\(^1\), the Aṅga\(^2\) and the Uṇāṅga\(^3\) explains the meaning of different [things].

The four kinds of abhinaya

8. O Brahmins, the Histrionic Representation of a play takes place in four ways, and on this (Representation) the plays of different types rest.

9. O Brahmins, this Histrionic Representation is known to be fourfold: Gestures\(^4\) (āṅgika), Words (vārika) Dresses and Make-up (abhārya) and the Temperament (sātrīka).

The Gesture: its three varieties

10. Of these, the Temperament has been described before, along with the States; now listen first of all about the Gestures (āṅgika).

11. The Gesture is of three kinds, viz. that of the limbs (śārīra), that of the face (mukhāja) and that related to [different], movements of the entire body (vestākīta) including the Śākhā, the Aṅga and the Uṇāṅga.

12. Dramatic performance in its entirety relates to the six limbs including the major and the minor ones such as head, hands, lips, breast, sides and feet.

13. The six major limbs (āṅga) are head, hands, breast, sides, waist and feet, and the (six) minor limbs (upāṅga) are eyes, eyebrows, nose, lower lip and chin.

---

7 (B.8, G.7). \(^1\) See 15 below. \(^2\) See 13 below. \(^3\) See 13 below.
8 (B.9, G.8).
9 (B.10, G.9). \(^1\) More properly 'gestures and postures.'
10 (B.11, G.10). \(^1\) See 15 below.
11 (B.12, G.11).
12 (B.13, G.12).
18 (B.14, G.18).
14. Producers of plays should reckon the Śākhā, dance (uṛttā) and the Aṅkura as the three aspects of the Histrionic Representation (abhāivaya).

15. The gestures (āṅgika) are called the Śākhā;¹ pantomiming through them is the Aṅkura² and that which is based on the Karapās³ and consists of the Aṅgahāras¹ is called dance (uṛttā).

16. O Brahmins, listen first of all about the different gestures of the head, which are included in the facial gestures and which support many Sentiments (rasa) and States (bhāva).

Gestures of the head and their uses ⁶

17-18. The gesture of the head is of thirteen¹ kinds, viz. Ākampita, Kampita, Dhuta, Vidhuta, Parivāhita, Udvāhita, Avadhuta, Aṃcitā, Nihaṃcitā, Parāvṛtta, Utkṣipta, Adhogata, and Lolita.

19. Ākampita: Moving the head slowly up and down is called the Ākampita.

Kampita: When the movements in the Ākampita head are quick and copious the same is called Kampita¹.

20. (Uses): The Ākampita head is to be applied in giving a hint, teaching, questioning, addressing in an ordinary way (lit. naturally), and giving an order¹.

---

¹ See NŚ. IV. 299 ff.
² See NŚ. IV. 170 ff.
³ See NŚ. IV. 170 ff.
⁴ See NŚ. IV. 299 ff.
THE GESTURES OF MINOR LIMBS

21. The Kampita head is applicable (lit. desired) in anger, argument, understanding, asserting, threatening, sickness and intolerance.

22. Dhuta and Vidhuta: A slow movement of the head is called the Dhuta, and when this movement is quick, it is called the Vidhuta.

23. (Uses): The Dhuta head is applicable in unwillingness, sadness, astonishment, confidence, looking sideways, emptiness and forbidding.

24. The Vidhuta head is to be applied in an attack of cold, terror, panic, fever and the first stage of drinking.

25. Parivāhita and Udvāhita: When the head is alternately turned to the two sides it is called Parivāhita, and when it is once turned upwards it is known as Udvāhita:

26. (Uses): The Parivāhita head is applicable in demonstration, surprise, joy, remembering, intolerance, cogitation, concealment and [amorous] sporting.

27. The Udvāhita head is to be applied in pride, showing height, looking high up, self-esteem and the like.

28. Avadhuta: When the head is once turned down it is called Avadhuta. (Uses): It is to be applied in [communicating] a message, invoking [a deity], conversation and beckoning [one to come near].

29. Añcita: When the neck is slightly bent on one side the Añcita head is the result. (Uses): It is applicable in sickness, swoon, intoxication, anxiety and sorrow.

30-31. Nihañcita: When two shoulders are raised up with

---

25 (B.27, G.26).  ¹ G. reads one additional hemistich between 25a and 25b, and names the head movement as ādhūta.
26 (B.28, G.26).
27 (B.29, G.27).  ¹ B. reads the name as ādhūta.
30-31 (B.32-33, G.30-31).
the neck bent on one side the Nilañcita head is produced. (Uses) : It is to be used by women in pride, Amorousness (vīlāsa)¹, Light-heartedness (lalita)², Affected Indifference, (bibboka)³, Hysterical Mood, (kilakikīcita)⁴, Silent Expression of Affection (mottāyita)⁵, Pretended anger, (kūṭhakīlita)⁶, Paralysis and Jealous anger (mānā).

32. Parāṛṛta : When the face is turned round, the Parāṛṛta head is the result. (Uses) : It is to be used in turning away the face and looking back and the like.

33. Utksipta : When the face is [slightly] raised the Utksipta head is the result. (Uses) : It is used in lofty objects and application of divine weapons.

34. Adhogata : The head with the face looking downwards is called Adhogata. (Uses) : It is used in shame, bowing [in salutation] and sorrow.

35. Parilolita : When the head is moving on all sides, it is called Parilolita. (Uses) : It is used in fainting, sickness, power of intoxication being possessed by an evil spirit, drowsiness and the like⁴.

36. Besides these there are many other gestures of the head, which are based on popular acting. These are to be used according to the popular practice (lit. nature).

37. I have spoken about the thirteen gestures of the head. Now I shall discuss the characteristics of the Glances.

The thirteens Glances

38. The Glances expressing the Sentiments¹ are Kānta, Bhayānakā, Häṣyā, Karupā, Adbhutā, Raudrā, Vṛā, and Bibhatsā.

¹ See NŚ. XXIV. 15.
² See ibid 22. ³ See ibid 21.
⁴ See ibid 18. ⁵ See ibid 19. ⁶ See ibid 20.
35 (B.37, G.35). ¹ B. reads after this an additional couplet.
38 (B.41, G.39). The AD. too has only eight glances, see ed. M. Ghosh, 66-78, and A. K. Coomaraswamy, MG, p. 40. But curiously enough the names of the eight glances in the AD. even if referred by
39. The Glances to be used in the Dominant States are Śnigdhā, Ḥṛṣṭā, Dinā, Kruddhā, Drptā, Bhayānvitā, Jugupsitā and Vismitā.

40-42. The Glances to be used in the Transitory States such as Śūnya, Malinā, Śrāntā, Lajjānvitā, Glānā, Śaṅkitā, Viśañṇā, Muktā, Kuñcitā, Abhitaptā, Jihmā, Lalitā Vitarkitā, Ardhamukulā, Vibhrāntā, Viplutā, Ākekara, Vikoṣā, Trastā and Madirā, make up their number thirtysix.\(^1\)

The Glances to express the Sentiments

43. I shall now explain the characteristics of these Glances in connexion with the various Sentiments and the States, and shall describe their functions.

44. Kāntā : When with a feeling of love a person contracts his eyebrows and casts a sidelong look, he is said to have a Kāntā (pleasing) Glance which has its origin in joy and pleasure. It is used in the Erotic Sentiment.

45. Bhayānakā : The Glance in which the eyelids are drawn up and fixed, and the eyeballs are gleaming and turning up is called Bhayānakā (terrible). It indicates a great fear and is used in the Terrible Sentiment.

46. Hāsyā : In the Hāsyā (smiling) Glance the two eyelids are by turns contracted, and they open with the eyeballs moving and slightly visible; it should be used in representing jugglary.

47. Karuṇā : The Glance in which the upper eyelid has descended, the eyeball is at rest due to mental agony, and the gaze is fixed at the tip of the nose, and there is tear, is called Karuṇā (pathetic).

---

Coomaraswamy's text to the Bharataśāstra, does not occur in the न्स which has no less than thirtysix glances. Besides the eight glances Coomaraswamy's text records (loc. cit) fortyfour glances which include those mentioned in the न्स. 39 (B.42, G.39).

40-42 (B.43-45, G.43-42). \(^1\) See note 1 to 38 above.
43 (B.46, G.43).
44 (B.47 G.44).
45-46 (B.48-49a, G.45-46a).
47 (B.49, G.46b).
48. Adbhutā : The Glance in which eyelashes are slightly curved at the end, eyeballs are raised in wonder, and the eyes are charmingly windened till the end, is called the Adbhutā (of wonder).

49. Raudrī : The pitiless Glance in which the eyeballs are rough, red, raised, and the eyelids are still and the eyebrows knitted, is called Raudrī (cruel), and it is used in the Furious Sentiment.

50. Virā : The Glance which is bright, fully open, agitated, serious, and in which eyeballs are at the centre of the eye (lit. level) is called Virā (heroic), and it is used in the Heroic Sentiment.

51. Bibhatsā : The Glance in which the corners of the eyes are nearly covered by eyelids, the eyeballs are disturbed in disgust and the eyelashes are still and close to each other, is called Bibhatsā (odious).

The Glances to express the Dominant States

52. The Glances defined here are known to occur in relation to the Sentiments. I shall now explain the Glances relating to the Dominant States.

53. Snigdhā : The Glance which is not much widened (lit. medium widened), is sweet, and in which eyeballs are still, and there are tears of joy, is called Snigdhā (loving); it is used in love (lit. grows out of love).

54. Hṛṣṭā : The Glance which is moving, slightly bent and in which eyeballs are not wholly visible (lit. entering), and there is winking, is called Hṛṣṭā (joyful); it is used in laughter.

55. Dtnā : The Glance in which the lower eyelid is slightly fallen, eyeballs are slightly swollen, and which is moving very slowly, is called Dtnā (pitiable); it is used in sorrow.

48 (B.51, G.48).
50 (B.53, G.50).
51 (B.54, G.51).
52 (B.56, G.53).
53 (B.57, G.54).
54 (p.9, B.55, G.55).
55 (p.9, B.56, G.56).
56. Kruddhā: The rough Glance in which eyelids are motionless and drawn up, eyeballs are immobile and turned up, and the eyebrows are knitted, is called Kruddhā (angry); it is used in anger.

57. Druptā: The steady and widely opened Glance in which eyeballs are motionless, and which shows forth (lit. emits) prowess is called Druptā (haughty); it is used in energy (lit. grows out of energy).

58. Bhayānvitā: The Glance in which the eyes are widely opened, the eyeballs are mobile in fear and are away from the centre [of the eye], is called Bhayānvitā (awe-stricken); it is used in fear.

59. Jugupsitā: The Glance in which eyelids are contracted but not joined together, and the eyeballs are covered and are turning away from the object coming in view (lit. the place in view) is called Jugupsitā (disgusting); it is used in disgust.

60. Vismitā: The level Glance which is fully blown and in which eyeballs are thoroughly turned up and the two eyelids are motionless, is called Vismitā (astonished); it is used in astonishment.

The Glances to express the Transitory States

61. These are the Glances relating to the Dominant States, that I have just defined. I shall now explain the characteristics of the Glances in the Transitory States.

62. Šunyā: The Glance which is weak and motionless and in which the eyeballs and the eyelids are in ordinary position (lit. level), and which turns to the space and is not attentive to external objects is called Šunyā (vacant).

63. Malinā: The Glance in which ends of the eyelashes are not shaking and ends of the eyes are pale, and which is characterised very much by half-shut eyelids, is called Malinā (pale).
64. Śrāntā: The resting Glance in which eyelids have been let down due to fatigue, corners of the eyes are narrowed, and the eyeballs are fallen, is called Śrāntā (tired).

65. Lajjānvitā: The Glance in which ends of the eyelashes are slightly bent, the upper eyelid is descending in shyness, the eyeballs are lowered due to shame, is called Lajjānvitā (bashful).

66. Glānā: The languid Glance in which the eyebrows and the eyelashes are slowly moving and eyeballs are covered [under the eyelids] due to fatigue, is called Glānā (lazy).

67. Śaṅkitā: The concealed Glance which is once moved, and once at rest, slightly raised, obliquely open and in which the eyeballs are timid, is Śaṅkitā (apprehensive).

68. Visāppā: The bewildered Glance in which eyelids are drawn wide apart in dejection, and there is no winking and the eyeballs are slightly motionless, is called Visāppā (dejected).

69. Mukulā: The Glance in which eyelashes are slightly trembling, the upper eyelids are of the Mukula type and the eyeballs are opened in happiness, is called Mukulā.

70. Kuścitā: The Glance in which ends of eyelashes are bent due to the eyelids being contracted and the eyeballs are also contracted, is called Kuścitā (contracted).

71. Abhitaptā: The Glance in which the eyeballs are slowly moving due to the movement of the eyelids, and which indicates much distress and pain, is called Abhitaptā (distressed).

72. Jihmā: The Glance in which the eyelids are hanging down and slightly contracted and the eyeballs are concealed, and which casts itself obliquely and slyly is called Jihmā (crooked).

73. Lalitā: The Glance which is sweet, and contracted at the end [of the eye] and which is smiling and has movement of the eyebrows, and shows signs of love is called Lalitā (amorous).
74. Vitarkita: The Glance in which the eyelids are turned up for guessing, the eyeballs are full blown and moving downwards is called the Vitarkita (conjecturing).

75. Ardhamukulā: The Glance in which owing to joy the eyelids are of the Ardhamukula* type, the eyeballs are half-blown and slightly mobile is called Ardhamukulā.

76. Vibhrāntā: The Glance in which the eyeballs are moving, and so are the eyelids, and the middle [of the eye] is wide open and full-blown, is called Vibhrāntā (confused).

77. Viputā: The Glance in which the eyelids [first] tremble and then become motionless and the eyeballs are [again] disturbed, is called Viputā (disturbed).

78. Ākekarā: The Glance in which the eyelids and the corner of the eyes are slightly contracted and joined together and is half-winking, and the eyeballs are repeatedly turning up, is called Ākekarā (half-shut).

79. Vikōśā: The joyful Glance in which the two eyelids are wide open and there is no winking and the eyeballs are not immobile, is called Vikōśā (full-blown).

80. Trastā: The Glance in which the eyelids are drawn up in fear, the eyeballs are trembling and the middle of the eye is full-blown due to panic, is called Trastā (frightened).

81. Madirā: The Glance in which the middle of the eye is rolling, the ends of the eyes are thin, the eyes are bent, and the corners of the eyes are fully widened, is called Madirā (intoxicated). It is to be used in representing light intoxication.

82. In medium intoxication this Glance should have its eyelids slightly contracted, the eyeballs and the eyelashes slightly mobile.

83. In excessive (lit. the worst) intoxication the Glance

---

74 (B.75, G.75). 75 (B.76, G.76)
76 (B.77, G.77). 1 B.G. read 76b. differently.
83 (B.84, G.84).
should have [either too] much winking or no winking at all, and the eyeballs in it should be slightly visible, and it (the look) should be turned downwards.

84. These are the thirty-six Glances due to the Sentiments and the Dominant States described by me. Now listen about their uses.

Uses of the Glances expressing the Transitory States

85. The Glances due to the Sentiments are to be used in representing them, while Glances due to the Dominant (States) should be used in expressing these. Now listen about the uses of the Glances due to the Transitory States in representing these (States),

86-93. Śunyā (vacant)—in anxiety and paralysis (motionlessness).

Malinā (pale)—in discouragement, change of colour.
Śrāntā (tired)—in weariness and depression.
Lajjānvita—(bashful) 1—in shame.
Glānā (lazy)—in epilepsy, sickness and weakness.
Śāṅkitā (apprehensive)—in apprehension.
Visāṅga (dejected)—in despair.
Mukulā—in sleeping, dreaming and happiness.
Kuśccita (contracted)—in envy, undesirable object, objects visible with difficulty and pain in the eye.
Abhitaptā (distressed)—in discouragement, accidental hurt and distress.
Jīhmā (crooked)—in envy, stupor and indolence. Lalitā (amorous)—in contentment and joy.
Vitarkitā (conjecturing)—in recollection and deliberation.
Ardhamukulā—in joy due to an experience of [sweet] smell or touch.

84 (B.85, G.84). 1 We adopt G's reading.
85 (B.86, G.85).
Vibhrānta (confused)—in agitation, hurry and confusion.
Vipluta (disturbed)—inconstancy, insanity, affliction of misery and death.
Ākekarā (half-shut)—in looking to a distant [object], separation and consecration by sprinkling (prakṣīta)\(^1\).
Vikosā (full-blown)—in awakening, arrogance, indignation cruelty and assurance.
Trastā (frightened)—in fright.
Madirā (intoxicated)—in intoxication.

94-95. Here I have finished the proper discription of the thirtysix Glances; now listen about the [additional] Glances, and gestures of the eyeballs, the eyelids and the eyebrows due to the Sentiments and the States.

The eyeballs

95-96. Eyeballs have gestures of nine kinds: Bhramaṇa (moving round), Valana (turning), Paṭa = Paṭana (relaxing), Calana, (trembling), Saṃpraveṣana, (drawing inside), Vivartana, (turning sideways), Samudvṛṭta (raising up), Niṣkrama (going out) and Prākṛta (natural).

96-98. Bhramaṇa (moving round)—turning round the eyeballs at random.
Valana (turning)—moving (the eyeballs) obliquely.
Paṭa = Paṭana (relaxing)—the relaxation (of the eyeballs.)
Calana (trembling)—the tremor (of the eyeballs.)
Saṃpraveṣana = Praveṣa (drawing inside)—drawing (the eyeballs) in.
Vivartana (turning)—turning the eyeballs sideways in a sidelong glance (koṭākṣa).

---

\(^1\) B. G. read prakṣītha.
94-95 (B.95, G.95).
95-96 (B.96b-97a, G.96). \(^1\) B.G. read one additional couplet after this.
96-98 (B.98b-100a, G.98-100a).
Samudvṛttā (raising up)—the raising up of the eyeballs.

Niṣkrāmaṇa (going out)—going out [as it were of the eyeballs.]

Prākṛta (natural)—eyeballs in the natural (glance.)

Uses of the eyeballs


Bhramaṇa (moving round), Valana (turning) and Samudvṛttā (raising of eyeballs)—in the Heroic and the Furious Sentiments.

Niṣkrāmaṇa (going out), and Valana (turning of the eyeballs)—in the Terrible Sentiment.

Sampravesāna (drawing of the eyeball)—in the Comic and the Odious Sentiments.

Pātana (relaxed eyeballs) in the Pathetic Sentiment.

Niṣkrāmaṇa (going out of the eyeballs)—in the Marvellous Sentiment.

Prākṛta (natural) eyeballs—in the remaining Sentiments (lit. States).

Vivartana (turning sideways of the eyeballs)—in the Erotic Sentiment.

102. These are the natural gestures of eyeballs based on the popular practice. They are to be applied [suitably] to all the different States.

The additional Glances

103-107. I shall speak about the varieties of Glances in special relation of these (lit. there). These are of eight kinds, viz. Sama (level), Śāci (sidelong), Anuvṛttā (inspecting), Ālokita (casual), Vilokita (looking round), Pralokita (carefully looking), Ullokitā (looking up), and Avalokita (looking down).

99-101 (B.101b-104a, G.100b-102a).

102 (B.104b-106a, G.102b-104a).

103-107 (B.105b-110a, G.104-109a).
Sama (level)—the eyeballs are in a level position and at rest.
Sāct (side-long)—the eyeballs are covered by eyelashes.
Anuvṛtta (inspecting)—Glance which carefully observes any form.
Alokita (casual)—(the eyeballs) in suddenly seeing any object).
Vilokita (looking round)—(eyeballs) in looking back.
Prañlokita (carefully looking)—turning (eyeballs) from side to side.
Ullokita (looking up)—(turning the eyeballs) upwards.
Avalokita (looking down)—(turning the eyeballs) towards the ground.

These are the gestures of the eyeballs in relation to all the Sentiments and the States.

The eyelids

108-111. Now listen about the gestures of the eyelids follow which the movements of eyeballs They are: Unmeṣa (opening), Nimeṣa (closing), Prasṛta (expanding), Kuñcita (contracted), Sama (level), Vivartita (raising up), Sphurita (throbbbing), Pihita (resting), and Vitādītta (driven).

Unmeṣa (opening)—separating the eyelids
Nimeṣa (closing)—bringing together the eyelids.
Prasṛta (expanding)—separating the eyelids widely.
Kuñcita (contracted)—contracting the eyelids.
Sama (level)—eyelids in a natural position.
Vivartita (raising up)—raising up the eyelids.
Sphurita (throbbbing)—when the eyelids are throbbbing.
Pihita (resting)—when the eyelids are at rest (lit. closed).
Vitādītta (driven)—when struck the eyelids are struck incidentally.
Uses of the eyelids

112-115. Now listen about their uses in different Sentiments and States:

Vivartita (raising up)—in anger.
Nimeṣa (closing)—in anger.
Unmeṣa (opening)—in anger.
Prasṛta (expanding)—in objects causing wonder, joy, and heroism.
Kuṛcita (contracted)—in seeing undesired objects. (sweet) scent, flavour and touch.
Sama (level)—in love.
Sphurita (throbhing)—in jealousy.
Pihita (resting)—in dreaming, fainting, affliction due to storm, hot smoke, rains and collyrium and eye-disease.
Vitāḍita (driven)—in accidental injury.

These are the uses of the eyeballs and the eyelids in expressing the Sentiments and the States.

The eyebrows

116-120. Now, listen about the gestures of eyebrows, which accord with those of the eyeballs and the eyelids. (They) are seven in number and are as follows: Utkṣepa (raising), Pātana (lowering), Bhrukūṭi (knitting), Catura (clever), Kuṛcita (contracted), Recita (moving) and Sahaja (natural).

Utkṣepa (raising)—raising of eyebrows simultaneously or one by one.

Pātana (lowering)—lowering of eyebrows simultaneously or one by one.

Bhrukūṭi (knitting) - raising the root of the eyebrows.

Catura (clever)—slightly moving and extending the eyebrows in a pleasing manner.
Kuṇcita (contracted)—slightly bending of eyebrows one by one or the both at once.

Recita (moving)—raising of one of the eyebrows in an amorous way.

Sahaja (natural)—the position which the eyebrows maintain by nature.

Uses of the eyebrows

121-125. Now I shall speak about their uses in (expressing) the Sentiments and the States.

Utkṣepa  (raising)—in anger, deliberation, passion, sportiveness, in seeing and hearing only one eyebrow is raised, and in surprise, joy and violent anger both the eyebrows are raised up.

Pātana (lowering)—in envy, disgust, smile, and smelling.

Bhrukuṭi (knitting)—in objects of anger, dazzling light.

Catura (clever)—in love, sportiveness, pleasing (object), (pleasing) touch1 and awakening.

Kuṇcita (contracted)—in manifestation of affection, pretended and hysterical mood.

Recita (moving)—in dance.

Sahaja (natural)—in simple (anāvīdha) conditions.

The nose

126-123. Gestures of the eyebrows have been described; now listen about those of the nose. They are of six kinds: Natā, Mandā, Vikṛṣṭā, Socchvāsā, Vikūpita and Svābhāvikā.

Natā—lobes are constantly clinging (āḍāpatā)

Mandā—lobes are at rest.

Vikṛṣṭā—lobes are blown.

Socchvāsā—when air is drawn in.

Vikūpita—the contracted nose.

121-125 (B.128b-126, 128-128a, G.122b-127a). 1 B. reads 124 a differently and one additional hemistich after this.

126-128 (B.129b-132a, G.127b-130a).
Svābhāvikā—the natural nose.

Uses of the nose

129-132. This is the description of the gestures of the nose. Now listen about their uses:

Natā—in slight weeping at intervals.
Mandā—in discouragement, impatience and anxiety.
Vikṛṣṭā—in strange smell, breathing, anger and fear.
Socchvāsā—in sweet smell and deep breathing.
Vikūṇṭā—in laughter, disgust and envy.
Svābhāvikā—in the remaining conditions.

The cheeks

132-134. Cheeks are of six kinds: Kṣāma (depressed), Phulla (blown), Pūrṇa (full), Kampita (trembling) and Kuṇcita (contracted) and Sama (natural).

Kṣāma (depressed)—(cheeks are) fallen.
Phulla (blown)—(cheeks are) raised
Pūrṇa (full)—(cheeks are) expanded.
Kampita (trembling)—(cheeks are) throbbing.
Kuṇcita (contracted)—(cheeks are) narrowed down.
Sama (natural) — as (cheeks are) by nature.

Uses of the cheeks

135-137. Cheeks have been described. Now listen about their uses.

Kṣāma (depressed)—in sorrow.
Phulla (blown)—in joy.
Pūrṇa (full)—in energy and arrogance.

129-133 (B.132b, 134-136a, G.130b-133). ¹ Instead of 139b, B. reads one couplet slightly different in content.

135-137 (B.139-141a, G.136b-138).
Kampita (trembling)—in anger and joy.
Kuñcita (contracted)—in horripilation (sensitive) touch, cold, fear and fever.
Sama (natural)—in the remaining conditions.

The lower lips

137-139. Gestures of the lips are six in number. (They are): Vivartana (narrowing), Kampana (trembling), Visarga (spreading out), Vinigūhana (concealing), Sandaṣṭaka (biting), Samudgaka (contracting).

Vivartana (narrowing)—lips narrowed down.
Kampana (trembling)—throbbing (of lips).
Visarga (spreading out)—to spread out (lips).
Vinigūhana (concealing)—drawing in (of lips).
Sandaṣṭaka (biting)—(lips) bitten by teeth.
Samudgaka (contracting)—the contraction of lips and keeping them at rest.

Uses of the lower lips

140-142. These are the gestures of the lips; now listen about their uses.

Vivartana (narrowing)—in envy, pain, contempt, laughter and the like.
Kampana (trembling)—in pain, cold, fear, anger, swiftness and the like.
Visarga (spreading out)—in women’s amors, affected indifference and painting of lips.
Vinigūhana (concealing)—in making efforts.
Sandaṣṭaka (biting)—in manifestation of anger.
Samudgaka (contracting)—in pity, kissing and greeting.

137-139 (B.141b-148, G.139-141a).
140-142 (B.144-146, G.141b-144a).
The chin

143-146. So much about the gestures of the lips; now listen about those of the chin; (they are): Kuṭṭana, Khaṇḍana, Chinna, Cukṣita, Lehita, Sama and Daṣṭa.

Kuṭṭana—when the upper teeth are in conflict with the lower ones.

Khaṇḍana—when (the two lips) repeatedly come together with each other.

Chinna—when (the two lips) very closely meet each other.

Cukṣita—when (the two lips) are held widely apart.

Lehita—in licking the (lips) with the tongue.

Sama—when (the two lips) slightly parted from each other.

Daṣṭa—when the lower lip is bitten by the teeth.

Uses of the chin

146-149. Kuṭṭana—in fear, cold, attack of old age, and sickness.

Khaṇḍana—in mutterings prayers (japa), studying, speaking and eating.

Chinna—in sickness, fear, cold, (taking) exercise, and angry look.

Cukṣita—in yawning.

Lehita=Lehana—in greediness.

Sama—in a natural position.

Daṣṭa—in angry efforts.

So much about the gestures of the chin in relation to the teeth, the lips and the tongue.

The mouth

149-156. Gestures of the mouth are: Vidhuta, Vinivṛṭta, Nirbhugna, Bhugna, Vivrta and Udvahi.

148-149 (B.147-150a, G.144b-147).
146-149 (B.150b-153a, G.147-150a).
149-156 (B.158b-160a, G.150b-157).
Vidhuta—the obliquely open (mouth).

Vinivṛtta—spread out (the mouth).

Nirbhugna—(the mouth) lowered.

Bhugna = Vyābhugna—(the mouth) slightly spread out.

Vivṛta—the mouth with the lips kept apart.

Udvāhi—(the mouth) turned up.

Uses of the mouth

Vinivṛtta—in women's envy, jealousy, anger, contempt and bashfulness and the like.

Vidhuta—in restraining, saying 'not so' and the like.

Nirbhugna—in looking into depth and the like.

Bhugna—in being ashamed, discouragement, impatience, anxiety, discipline and consultation. It is natural for the ascetics.

Vivṛta—in laughter, sorrow and fear.

Udvāhi—in sportiveness and pride of women, in saying 'go away', and disregard, in saying 'so indeed' and angry words.

156-157. The experts should also use the mouth in conformity with the varieties of Glances such as Sama and Sātī and the like mentioned by others.

The colour of the face

157-158. The colour of the face according to the circumstances (lit, meaning) is of four kinds: natural (svabhārika) bright (prasannā), reddened (rakta) and dark (śyāma).

Uses of the colour of the face.

159-160. Natural face—in a natural and indifferent (mood).

Bright face—in wonder, laughter and love.

Reddened face—in intoxication and in the Heroic the Terrible and the Pathetic Sentiments.
Dark face—in the Terrible and the Odious Sentiments.

161-162. The colour of the face should be thus used to represent the States and the Sentiments. The acting done with the Gestures of the Śākhā, the Aṅga and the Upāṅga is good, but without proper colour of the face it will not be charming (lit.) beautiful.

162-163. Even a few Gestures when combined with the proper colour of the face will double their charm (lit. beauty) just as the moon [rising] at night will.

163-164. Glances too when combined with the proper colour of the face will clearly express the different States and the Sentiments, and on this (i.e. the colour of the face) the Histrionic Representation rests.

164-165. The colour of the face suitable to the representation of the States and the Sentiments, should follow every gestures of the eye (Glance), the eyebrow and the mouth. So much about the colour of the face which is the basis of the States and the Sentiments.

The neck

166-167. I shall now tell you, O Brahmins, about the gestures of the neck. They are of nine kinds: Samā, Natā, Unnatā, Tryasrā, Recitā, Kuñcitā, Añcitā, Valitā, and Vīrttā.

Description and uses of the neck gestures


Natā—(neck with) face bent down. (Uses) in wearing (lit. binding) ornaments, putting ones arms round (lit. taking) somebody’s neck.

161-162 (B.165b-166a, G.162b-163). ¹ See 11 and 15 above.
162-163 (B.166-167a, G.164).
163-164 (B.167b-168a, G.165).
164-165 (B.168b-169, G.166-167a).
166-167 (B.170, G.167b-168a).
168-171 (B.171-175, G.168b-173a).
Unnata—neck with the face upturned. (Use): in looking up.

Tryasra—neck with the face turned sideways. (Use): in carrying weight on the neck, and sorrow.

Recita—the neck shaken or moved. (Uses): in feeling (bhāva), churning and dance.

Kuṇeita—the neck with the head bent down. (Uses): in pressure of weight and in protecting the neck.

Aṅcita—the neck with the head turned back. (Uses): in hanging (to death), arranging hair and looking very high up.

Vāhita—the neck with the face turned sideways. (Uses): in looking with the neck turned round.

Vivṛtta—neck with the face towards the front. (Use): in (indicating) going towards one’s own place.

172-173—These are the many varieties of the neck gestures according to their [expressing different] customary states of men. Gestures of the neck are all to follow the gestures of the head and the head gestures also are reflected in those of the neck. So much about the description of the gestures of the head and the connected minor limbs (uḍāṇya) and their uses. Now listen about the gestures of the remaining limbs (aṅgula), which I am going to describe.

Here ends Chapter VIII of Bharata’s Nātyaśāstra, which treats of the Gestures of Minor Limbs.

172-173 (B.176-177, G.173b-175).
CHAPTER NINE

THE GESTURES OF HANDS

Bharata speaks

1-3. So much about the minor limbs such as head, eyes, eyebrows, nose, lips and cheeks, and their description that I was to tell you. I shall now define you for the gestures of hands, breast, sides, belly, waist, thighs and feet and [explain] their proper use. In this connexion I shall [first of all] explain the gestures of hands and the like, that are used in the production of a play. You are to listen how they are to be applied [in acting].

Sixtyseven gestures of the hand

4-7. Gestures of single hands (asamyyuta-hasta)\(^1\) are twentyfour in number: Patâka, Tripatâka, Kartarímkha, Ardhaacandra, Arâla, Sukatuâga, Muśti, Śikhara, Kapittha, Kaṭakāmukha\(^2\), Śucyāsya (Śucimukha), Padmakośa, Sarpaśirâ, Mitas̄ṛṣa, Kāṅgula, Alapadma (Alapallava), Caturâ, Bhramara, Ḥamsāsya, Ḥamsapakṣa, Sandamsa, Mukula, Urpanâhha and Tāmravuda.

---

1-3 (B.1, 3, 2, G.1-3). \(^1\) This use relates to the two-fold Practice (realistic and conventional) on the stage (See NŚ. XIV. 62ff). The realistic Practice (lokadharma) in this connexion is of two kinds, viz. (1) that reflecting one’s emotion, as in arrogant reference to one’s ownself, this (patâka) hand is to be raised on a level with the forehead (IX. 19), (2) that representing the external form of an object, as the use of the Padmakośa hand to represent lotus and similar flowers. The conventional Practice (nātyadharma) is likewise of two kinds, viz. (1) that creating an ornamental effect, as the use of the four karnas of the hand (See NŚ. IX. 205-211 below), (2) that partially suggesting a popular behaviour, as the use of the tripatâka hand to represent words spoken aside (janântika). See Ag.

4-7 (B.G. same). \(^1\) These hands gestures are ordinarily used singly; but at times two hands showing one of these gestures are used simultaneously. But still these are called single (asamyyuta) hands. For combined (sambhuta) hands are so called because they are always to be shown by both the hands; see Ag.

\(^2\) Some mss. read this name as khaṭakāmukha. Our reading is
8-10. Gestures of combined hands (samýuta-hasta)\textsuperscript{1} are thirteen in number: Añjali, Kapota, Karkatu, Svastika, Kāṭakā-
vardhamānaka\textsuperscript{2}, Utsaṅga, Niṣadha, Dola, Puṣpaduta, Makara, 
Gaṇadanta, Avahittha and Vardhamāna.

10-17. Dance-hands (nṛtta-hasta)\textsuperscript{3} are Caturasra\textsuperscript{2}, Udvṛtta 
Talunukha, Svastika, Viprakirṇa, Arāla-kāṭakāmukha, Āvidhav-
avktra, Śucyāsya, Recita, Ardharecita, Uttānavaṅceita, Pallava, 
Nītamba, Keśabandha, Latī, Karihasta, Pakṣavaṅceita, Pakṣa-
pradyotaka, Garudapakṣa, Dānapakṣa, Urḍhvanāṃdhali, Pārśva-
naṃdhali, Uromāṇḍali Urḍh-pārśvvardhamānḍali, Muṣṭikasvastika, 
Nalinipadmakoṣa, Alapallava, Ulbana, Lalita and Valita.

These are the sixtyfour\textsuperscript{3} gestures of hands.

Gestures of single hands

17-26. Now listen about their definition and uses.

Paṭāka (flag)—the fingers extended and close against one
another, and the thumb bent.

supported by the AD. (See ed. M. Ghosh, verse 124. A. K. Coomaraswamy 
MG. p. 50).

8-10 (B.G. same).\textsuperscript{1} See note 1 to 4-7 above.

\textsuperscript{1} Some ms. read this name as khaṭakī\textsuperscript{2}; kāṭakavardhana, is the 
name of a samýuta-hasta in the AD. (ed. M. Ghosh, 187 and A. K. 
Coomaraswamy, MG. p. 60).

10-17 (B.G. 10b-17a).\textsuperscript{1} These gestures (dance hands, nṛtta-hasta) 
as their name implies, are ordinarily to be used in dance; but in course 
of acting too they are often to be used along with other gestures (single 
and combined) to create an ornamental effect (See note 1 to I-3 above). See Ag.

\textsuperscript{2} In the Skt. text these names are given in dual number e.g. 
our caturasra stands as caturasrau. The reason for this is to be sought 
in the fact that unlike the single and combined hands which must represent 
one single idea or object, the hands in the dance-hand gestures are 
to be individually moved, not for representing any idea or object but 
for creating an ornamental effect in acting as well as in dance. See Ag.

\textsuperscript{3} In actual enumeration hand gestures are sixtyseven in number 
(single 24, combined 13 and Dance-hands 30). Caturhsaṣṭhi in the text 
should be emended to saptasaṣṭhi.\textsuperscript{1} 17-26 (B.18-25, 26a, G.18-25. 26a).
(Uses): To represent an administration of blows, scorching heat, urging, attainment of happiness and arrogant reference of one’s ownself\(^1\) this hand is to be raised on a level with the forehead. To represent the glare of heat, torrential rain and shower of flowers two Patāka hands with the fingers separated and moving, are to be joined together. A shallow pool of water, present of flowers, grass and any design [lit. object] made on the ground are to be represented by two such hands separated from the Svastika position. The same Patāka hands with their fingers pointing downwards are to be used to represent anything closed, made open, protected, covered, dense or private (concealable). This very hand with its fingers pointing downwards and moving up and down, is to express the speedy movement of wind and [ocean] waves, [ocean waves] breaking against the shore, and flood. The Recaka of this hand should be used to represent encouragement, many [in number], a great crowd of men, height, beating of drums, and flight of birds upwards. And anything washed, pressed, cleansed, pounded, or holding up a hill or uprooting it, should be represented by the palms of two such hands rubbing each other. This is also the manner of representing man and woman\(^2\).

26-32. Tripatāka (flag with three fingers)—the third finger of the Patākahand to be bent.

(Uses): It is to be used in representing invocation, descent, bidding goodbye, prohibition, entrance, raising up [anything]\(^1\), bowing (in salutation), comparing\(^2\), suggesting alternatives, touching [the head with] auspicious objects or putting them on the head, putting on a turban or crown and covering the mouth or the ears. This very hand with its fingers pointing downwards and moving up and down is to be used in representing flight of small birds, stream, snake, bees and the like. And with the third finger of the

\(^1\) In saying ‘I too,’ ‘of me too,’ ‘by me too,’ in me too’ and the like (Ag).

\(^2\) Ag. gives detailed rules about the use of the patīka hand in all the cases mentioned above.

26-32 (B.G. 26b-32) \(^1\) Ag. thinks that this relates to objects like one’s chin.

\(^2\) nādārānam upānōnopameyabhāvam (Ag.).
THE GESTURES OF HANDS

Tripatāka should be represented wiping off tears, drawing a Tilaka or Patralekhā and touching of hairs.

33-38. Two Tripatāka hands held like a Svastika represents adoration of the feet of venerable persons (guru). Two such hands are to meet each other’s end for representing marriage. Separated and moved from this position they indicate a king. When obliquely forming a Svastika they represent planets. To indicate an ascetic they are to be raised with palm turned backwards. To represent a door they are to face each other. Submarine fire, battle and sea monsters are to be indicated by two Tripatāka hands, first raised near one’s face and then moved with the fingers pointing downwards. With these very hands should be indicated jumping of monkeys, waves, wind and women. To show the crescent moon this hand should put forward its thumb, and to indicate a king’s march [against his enemy] this hand should turn itself towards the back.

39-41. Kartarunukha (sissors’ blades)—the forefinger of the Tripatāka hand to bend backwards.

(Uses): This [hand with its fingers] pointing downwards will represent showing the way, decorating the feet or dying them, and the crawling [of babies]. With fingers pointing upwards it will represent biting, born and letters. And when the fingers in it are turned differently (i.e. the middle finger is bent backwards) it will represent falling down, death, transgression, reversion, cogitation and putting [anything] in trust.

3 rocanulabhanakam-touching (the body) with go-rocanu or drawing ornamental designs (patralekhā) on the body with this substance. Gorocana is a bright yellow pigment prepared from the urine or bile of a cow.

33-38 (B.G. 33-38). This portion does not occur in all mss., and may well have been a later addition.

1 Parents, grand-parents and the spiritual guide etc. are meant by this term.

39-41 (B.G. 39-41). rasanam kasturikā dināpatrabhaṅgūdikriyā (Ag.). raṣṭanaṃ alaktakas (Ag.).

Read riṅgana for raṅgana in B.

vyatikramāh—aparādhaḥ (Ag.). nyasta-niṣṭeṇa.
42. And with the two such (samyuta) hands or one such (asamyuta) hand should be represented antelope, yak, buffalo, celestial elephant (u̱ravala), bull, gate (gopura) and hill-top.

43-45. Ardhacaktra (crescent moon)—the fingers and the thumb so bent as to make a curve like a bow.

(Uses) : With this should be represented young trees, crescent moon, conch-shell, jar (talaśa), bracelet, forcible opening, exertion¹, thinness and drinking². With this [very] Ardhacaktra hand women should represent girdle, hip, waist, face, Talapatra³ and earring.

• 46-52. Arāla (bent)—the forefinger curved like a bow, the thumb also curved and the remaining fingers separated and turned upwards.

(Uses) : With this should be represented courage, pride, prowess, beauty, contentment, heavenly [objects], poise, act of blessing and other favourable states. And this, again, will represent woman’s gathering of hairs or scattering them and looking carefully over their entire body. The preliminaries to the marriage by bride’s going round the bridegroom¹ and [marital] union² are to be represented by two Arāla hands moving around each other and their fingers meeting in the form of a Svastika. And with similar hands should be represented circumambulation, round objects, great crowd of men, objects arranged on the ground³. In calling any one, asking any one not to come in, uprooting anything,

¹ iṣyastam khadam (Ag.).
² panam for panam (B.G.).
³ Ms. read talapatra (tūlapatra) meaning a kind of ear-ornament (tulaśika or tulaśika). It is different kunḍala from which is also an ear-ornament.

46 (B.G. 42).

43-55 (B.G. 43-45). ¹ iṣyastam khadam (Ag.).
² panam for panam (B.G.).
³ Ms. read talapatra (tūlapatra) meaning a kind of ear-ornament (tulaśika or tulaśika). It is different kunḍala from which is also an ear-ornament.

46-52 (B.G. 46-52, I. 46-51, 53). ¹ kautukam—vivihāt pūrvabhāvi vaddhimavanor uvarah antarvivihāh (Ag.).
² vivihāh—agnau saktini pārṣigrahayam (Ag.).
³ Objects such as Alpānā and flowers arranged on the ground. For Alpāna see L'alpāna by André at Suzanne Karpeles, Paris, 1930 (?)

G. reads after this a couplet defining the Arāla hand.
saying too many things, wiping off sweat and enjoying sweet smell, abuse, censure the Tripatāka hands have been prescribed before by me, but women are to use the Arāla hand to represent these.

53-54. Śukatunāḍa (parrot’s beak) — the ring-finger (third finger) of the Arāla hand is bent.

(Uses): with this should be represented words such as ‘(It is) not I, ‘(It is) not you, (It is) not to be done; invocation, farewell, and saying ‘Fie (upon you)’ in contempt.

55-56. Muṣṭi (fist): — fingers have their ends [bent] into the palm and the thumb [is set] upon them.

(Uses): It is used to represent beating, exercise, exit, pressing, shampooing, grasping sword and holding clubs and spears.

57-58. Śikhara (peak) — in this very hand (muṣṭi) the thumb raised.

(Uses): It is used to represent reins, whip, goad, bow, throwing a javelin (tomara) or a spike (śakti), painting the two lips and feet and raising up hairs.

59-60. Kapittha (elephant-apple) — the forefinger of the Śikhara hand to be bent and pressed by the thumb.

(Uses): It is to represent weapons such as sword, bow, discus, javelin (tomara), spear (kūla), mace, spike (śakti), thunderbolt and arrows, true and wholesome deeds.

61-64. Kaṭakāmkuκha — the ring-finger and the little finger of this Kapittha hand to be raised and bent.

(Uses): It is used to represent sacrifice, oblation, umbrella, drawing up reins, fan, holding a mirror, drawing

53-64 (B.53-54, G.54-55).

55-56 (B.55-56, G.56-7). 1 Vyāyama according to Ag. means yuddha (fight or duel).

2 ‘Pressing’ of the teats of cows and buffaloes while milking them; stanapidane — mahiṣyādikāhāne (Ag).

3 Sannāhana according to Ag. means mitṭidhana.


61-64 (p.41, B.60-63, G.53-65). 1 hotram — srugūdi-uttānapa, Ag.

2 havyam — aṣṭyādīmukhena (Ag).
[patterns], powdering, taking up big sticks, arranging a pearl necklace, taking up garlands, gathering the ends of clothes, churning, drawing out arrows, plucking flowers, wielding a goad, drawing out a goad, string and looking at a woman.

65-71. Süctmukha—the fore finger of the Kaṭākāmukha hand to be stretched.

(Uses): I shall tell you briefly of its various uses as the forefinger [in it] is raised and bent, moving sideways, shaking, moving up and down, and moving up without any rest. By moving the forefinger upwards [in this hand] are to be represented discus, lightning, banners, blossoms, earring, zigzag movement, a cry of approbation, young serpent, young sprout, incense, lamp, creepers, Śīkharā, falling down, curve and roundness and with the forefinger raised this [hand] again should be used [representing] stars, nose, [the number] one, club and stick. And [this hand with the forefinger] bent should meet the mouth to represent a being with teeth, and by the circular movement of this hand one should represent the taking away [of a man’s] every thing. And the forefinger in this hand should be alternately raised and lowered to represent long study and long day. And the same should be curved, moved up and down near the face to represent a sentence. And to indicate ‘no’ or ‘speak’ the forefinger should be stretched, shaken and moved up.

72-75. This hand should be shaken to represent anger, perspiration, hair, ear-ring, armlet and decoration of the cheeks.

3 khanjanam—drawing decorative patterns or designs on anything. Ag’s explanation of this seems to be wrong. Cf. alakūtilakū pātriwālu khanjan (draws the alakū-tilakū and pātriwālu) in the Kirtilāti of Vidyāpati. See ed. Haraprasād Śāstri, Calcutta, B.S. 1331 (1:24) pp. 13-14, and the root khyū (to draw) in E. Bengal dialect of Tippera.

65-71 (B.64-71a, G.66-72). 1 karṇaśālikā—karṇaśāra (Ag.).

2 Saying ‘weildone’, ‘how beautiful’ etc. 4 pailava but B. baliyara.

4 The text uses two words vallī and lāti meaning ‘creeper’. Ag. distinguishes between the two as follows: alavī-prabhṛtlaya vallīyāh and drāksūprabhṛtlaya lātīyāh.

3 śīkhaṇḍa—kumārakānun kūkṣpaksāh (Ag.).

72-75 (B.71b-75a, G.73-76).
And to represent pride, 'I am,' enemy, 'Who is this,' and scratching of the ear it should be held near the forehead. [And two Sūcīmukha hands] should be united to represent the union [of men], and be separated to indicate separation, and to represent a quarrel the two hands should be crossed, and to show bondage they are to press each other. The two Sūcīmukha [hands] facing each other and held separately on the left side will represent the close of the day, and held on the right side they will indicate the close of the night.

76. This hand moved in the front will indicate [any] form, stone, whirlpool, mechanical contrivance and a hill, and to represent the serving up of meals the same movement of the hand pointing downwards is required.

77. To represent Śiva this hand pointing downwards is to be held close to the forehead and to indicate Indra this hand is to be raised [to the forehead] and held across it.

78. By two such hands the orb of the full moon is to be represented, and to indicate the rising of Indra (i.e. raising his banner) it should be held close to the forehead.

79. [This hand] moved all around will represent the orb of the moon, and to indicate Śiva's [third] eye, it should be held on the forehead and [in case of] Indra's [eyes it should be] raised obliquely.

80. Padmakośa (lotus-bud)—the fingers including the thumb to be separated and their ends to bend, but not to meet one another.

81. (Uses): To represent Bilva and Kapittha (elephant-apple) fruits and the breasts of women [this hand is to be used]. But to represent accepting [these fruits] or flesh, this hand should be slightly bent at its end.

82. [This hand] should be held [to represent] offering

---

76 (B.77b-78a, G.77). 77 (B.78b-79a, G.78). 78 (B.75b-76a, G.79).
79 (B.76b-77a, G.80). 80 (B.76b-80a, G.81).
81 (B.80b-81a, G.82). 1 B. adds one hemistich after this.
82 (B.82, G.83).
Pūja to a deity, carrying tribute, casket, offering the first funeral cake\(^1\), and a number of flowers, are also to be indicated by the Padmakośa hand.

83. The two such hands with moving fingers meeting at the wrist and turning backwards will represent the full-blown lotus and water-lily.

84. Sarpaśiraḥ (snake-head)—the fingers including the thumb to be close to one another and the palm to be hollowed.

85. (Uses): It is used to represent the offering of water, movement of serpents, pouring water [on anything], challenging [for a duel], motion of the elephant’s frontal globes (kumbha) and the like.

86. Mrgaśirṣa (deer-head)—the Sarpaśiraḥ hand with all its fingers pointing downwards, but the thumb and the little finger raised up.

87. (Uses): It is moved to represent here, now, “It is”, to-day, possible, splendour (allasana), throw of dice, wiping off perspiration and pretended anger.

88. Kāṅgula—The middle and the fore-fingers and the thumb to be separated and the ring finger to be bent but the little finger raised.

89. (Uses): By this are to be represented immature fruits of various kinds and angry words of women.

90. Alapallava (Alapadmaṇa)—all fingers turned towards the palm, standing on its side and separated from one another.

91. (Uses): It is to be used for indicating prevention, words like “Who are you,” “It is not”, “nonsense” and a woman’s allusion to herself.

\(^1\) agrapinda-dāna—nāndimukhaśrūddha (Ag.).
88 (B.88, G.89). \(^1\) tretāgniṣamsthitāḥ=viralāḥ (Ag.).
89 (B.89, G.90). \(^1\) B. reads one additional couplet (B.90) after this.
92. Catura—the four fingers stretched and the thumb bent near the middle finger.

93. (Uses): It is to be applied in representing policy, discipline, penance, cleverness, a young girl, a sick person, spirit, deceit, proper words, welfare, truth and tranquility.

94. By one or two such hands moved round should be represented openness, deliberation, moving, conjecture and shame.

95. By the combined Catura hands are to be represented lotus-petals compared with eyes, and ears of deer.

96-98. Besides these, the Catura hand is to indicate sports, love, brilliance, memory, intelligence, judgement, forgiveness, nutrition, consciousness, hope, affection, reasoning, union, purity, cleverness, favourableness, softness, happiness, character, question, livelihood, propriety, dress, soft grass, a small quantity, wealth, defeat, sexual intercourse, merit and demerit, youth, home, wife and various colours.

99. [To represent] white it (the Catura hand) should be held up; red and yellow are indicated by moving it round, and blue by pressing [one such hand with another].

100. Bhramara (bee)—the middle finger and the thumb crossing each other, the forefinger bent, the remaining two fingers separated and raised.

101. (Uses): It is used to indicate the plucking of flowers with long stems such as lotus and water-lily, and ear-ring.

102. It should fall down with a sound to represent rebuke, pride of power, quickness, beating time and producing confidence.

103. Hamsāśya (swan-mouth)—the forefinger, middle finger and the thumb close to one another and the remaining fingers stretched.
104. (Uses): It with the slightly throbbing end is used to indicate specially, fine, small, loose, lightness, exit, and softness.

105. Haṃsapakṣa (swan-wings)—the three fingers stretched, the little finger raised and the thumb bent.

106-108. (Uses): It is used to indicate pouring libation of water, and it should be held near the cheek to represent acceptance of a gift, Ācamana and taking meals by Brahmans, embrace, excessive stupor, horripilation, touch, unguent and gentle massage. It may again be used to indicate according to the [prevailing] Sentiment, amorous action of women relating to the region between their breasts, their sorrow and touching of their chin.

109. Sandaṃśa (pincers)—the forefinger and the thumb of the Āraṇa hand crossed and the palm a little hollowed.

110. The Sandaṃśa (hand) according to the Sentiments and States, is of three kinds, viz. that [held] in front, that near the mouth and that on one side.

111-115. (Uses): In representing the plucking of flowers, making garlands of them, taking up grass, leaves, hairs or thread and holding or pulling out an arrow or thorn the Sandaṃśa should be held in one’s front. And to represent taking off a flower from its stem, the wick [of a lamp], [collyrium] stick, filling up [any vessel with any thing], in saying ‘tie [upon you]’, and anger, this should be held near the mouth. To represent the sacred thread, piercing a hole [in pearls and similar subjects], bow-string, fineness, arrow, and objects aimed at, yoga, meditation and small quantity [two] such hands should be combined. This shown by the left hand held on one side and slightly turning its tip is used to represent softness, abuse and envy. It is used also to indicate painting, colouring one’s eyes, deliberation, stem, drawing Patralekhā and squeezing of lac-dye by women.

116. Mukula (bud)—the fingers bent and close to one another and their tips meeting together in the Haṃsāṣya hand.
117-118. (Uses): It is used to represent the making of offerings in worshipping a deity, bud of a lotus or a water-lily, throwing a kiss (vītā-cumbanā), contempt, miscellaneous things, taking meals, counting of gold coins, narrowing of the mouth, giving away [anything], quickness and buds of flowers.

119-120. Urşanābha (spider)—the fingers of the Padmakoṣa hand [further] bent.

(Uses): It is used to represent the combing of hair, receiving stolen goods, scratching one's head, skin disease, lions, tigers and such other animals, and taking up [touch]—stone.

121-122. Tāmaracuḍa (lit. copper-crest i.e. cock)—the middle finger and the thumb crossed, the fore-finger bent, the remaining [two fingers] at the palm.

(Uses): It should fall down with a sound to represent rebuke, beating time, inspiring confidence, quickness, and making signs.

123. This hand is to be used to indicate small fractions of time such as Kalā, Kāstha, Nimeṣa and Kṣaṇa as well as talking to a young girl and inviting her.

124. When the fingers in a hand are close to one another, bent and the thumb is set on them, the same is [also] called the Tāmaracuḍa hand.

125. By this hand are to be indicated hundred, thousand and lac of gold coins, and when the fingers in it are suddenly made to move freely it will represent sparks or drops.

126. O the best of Brahmins, these are the single hands described by me. Now hear about the combined hands which I am going to describe.

---

117-118 (B.118-112, G.118-119). 1 vitacumbanam svāhīprīyam ovārakartum svahastam eva mukulitām vitā cumbantī vitacumbanam (Ag.).

119-120 (B.120-121, G.120-121). 1 Cf. Ag's explanation of cauryagraḥa.

121-123 (B.122-124, G.122-123).


126 (B.127, G.127).
127. Añjali—Putting together of the two Patāka hands is called Añjali.

(Uses): It is used to greet gods, venerable persons (guru) and friend.

128. In greeting gods it is to be held on the head, in case of venerable persons it is to be held near one’s face, and for greeting the friends it is to be placed on the breast, and in case of the remaining persons there is no fixed rule.

129. Kapota (pigeon)—The two (Añjali) hands meeting on one of their sides will make the Kapota hand. Listen about its uses.

130. (Uses): It is to be used to indicate an approach with inimical attitude, bowing and talking to a venerable person. To indicate cold and fear, women are to hold this hand on their breasts.

131. ‘The hands [showing the Kapota gesture] released after the meeting of fingers will indicate anxious words, or ‘This much can be done’ or ‘Nothing more can be done.’

132. Karkaṭa (crab)—When the fingers of the hands are interlocked the Karkaṭa hand is produced.

133. (Uses): It is used to indicate the bees-wax, massaging of the limbs, yawning just after awakening from sleep, a big body, supporting the chin and holding a conch-shell [for blowing it].

134. Svastika—The two Aṛāla hands upturned and held together at the wrists will form the Svastika. It is to be used by women.

135. (Uses): When the hands are separated from the Svastika position, it will indicate directions, clouds, the sky, forests, seas, seasons, the earth and similar [other] extensive things.

127 (B.128, G.128).
128 (B.129b-30a, G.129). ¹ B. adds one additional hemistich after this.
129 (B.130b-131a, G.130).
130 (B.131b-132a, G.131).
131 (B.132b-132a, G.132).
132 (B.133b-134a, G.133).
133 (B.134b-135a, G.134).
134 (B.135b-136a, G.135).
135 (B.136b-137a, G.136).
136. Kaṭākāvardhamānaka.—When one Kaṭākā (mukha) hand is placed on [the wrist of] another Kaṭākā [mukha] hand the Kaṭākāvardhamānaka hand will be produced.

(Uses) : It is to be used in movements connected with love-making and in bowing [to a person].

137. Utsaṅga.—When the Arāla hands are contrarily placed and are held upturned and bent, the Utsaṅga hand will be the result.

(Uses) : It is used to indicate the feeling of touch.

138. It is also used to indicate anything to be done with great effort, acts, of anger and indignation, squeezing [anything] and women's acts of jealousy.

139-140. Niṣadha.—The left hand holding the [right] arm above the elbow and the right hand similarly touching the left arm with a clenched fist will make a Niṣadha hand.¹

141. (Uses) : It is to indicate patience, intoxication, pride, elegance, eagerness, valour, arrogance self-conceit, haughtiness motionlessness, steadiness and the like.

142. Dola.—When the two shoulders are at ease in a Karaṇa and the two Patāka hands are hanging down the Dola hand is produced.

143. (Uses) : It is to be used in indicating hurry, sadness, fainting, fit of intoxication, excitement, state of illness and wound by a weapon.

144. Puṣpapuṭa.—The two Sarpaśiraḥ hands with their fingers close to one another meeting on one side very closely will give rise to the Puṣpapuṭa hand.

¹ G. omits this passage and 141, and read them differently, but in the footnote to lines 11-16 the definition occurs, and the uses too. B. also gives an additional definition and uses of the Niṣadha in B.141.143.
145. (Uses): It is to be used to indicate the receiving or carrying of rice, fruits, flowers and foods of various kinds and the carrying and removing of water.

146. Makara—When the two Patāka hands with their thumbs raised are turned down and placed on each other the Makara hand is produced.

147. (Uses): It is used to indicate lion, tiger, elephant, crocodile, shark (makara) and fish and other carnivorous animals.

148. Gajadanta—The two Sarpasirāḥ hands, touching the opposite arms between the shoulder and the elbow will give rise to the Gajadanta hand.

149. (Uses): It is to be used to indicate the carrying of the bridegroom and the bride, excessive weight, clasping a pillar and uprooting a hill or a block of stone.

150. Avahittha—When the two Śukatāṁś hands meet each other on the breast and are bent and then slowly lowered, the Avahittha hands will be the result.

151. (Uses): It is to be used in indicating weakness, sigh, showing one's body, thinness [of the body] and longing [for a beloved person].

152. Vardhamāna—When the Mukula hand is clasped by the Kapitthā the result will be the Vardhamāna hand.

153. (Uses): By pressing one hand with the other it is used to indicate grasping, receiving, preserving, convention (or doctrine) truthfulness and abridgement.

154. Or the two Hamsāpakaṣa hands turned down will be the known as the Vardhamāna. (Uses): It is to be used to represent the opening of objects like latticed windows.

155. The two kinds of hands (single and combined)
described briefly may be used elsewhere also in conformity with
the rules laid down here.

General rules regarding the use of hand gestures

156. In acting, hand [gestures] should be selected for their
form, movement, significance, and class according to the personal
judgement [of the actor].

157. There is no gesture (lit. hand)-that cannot be used in
indicating [some] idea. I have profusely described whatever forms
(lit. gestures) are usually seen [to be associated with different
ideas].

158. There are besides other popular gestures (lit. hand)
connected with other ideas, and they also are to be freely used along
with the movements inspired by the Sentiments and the States.

159. These gestures should be used by males as well as
females with proper regard to place, occasion, the play undertaken
and a suitability of their meaning.

Different movements of hand gestures

160. I shall now describe the varied movements which
these gestures (lit. hands) [should] have in connexion with the
[different] Sentiments and States.

161-163. [These movements are]: drawing upwards, drag-
ing, drawing out, accepting, killing, beckoning, urging, bringing
together, separating, protecting, releasing, throwing, shaking,
giving away, threatening, cutting, piercing, squeezing and beating.

164. Hand gestures according to the theory of Histrionic
Representation are to have three kinds of general movements, viz.
upwards, sideways and downwards.

165. These movements of hands should at the time of their
use, be embellished by means of [suitable] expressions in the
eyes, the eyebrows and the face.
Spheres of hand gestures

166. The experts are to use the hand gestures according to the popular practice and, [in this matter] they should have an eye to their movement, object, sphere, quantity, appropriateness and mode.

167. Hand gestures of persons of the superior type should move near their forehead, that of the middling type of persons at about their breasts while the inferior persons [should move their hand gestures in regions] below this.

The quantity of gestures

168. In the superior acting, hand gestures should have scanty movement, in the middling acting medium sort of movement, while the ordinary acting should have profuse movements of hand gestures.

169. To indicate different objects and ideas the hand gestures of persons of the superior and the middling types [in such cases] should conform the definitions given [in the Śāstra] while gestures of the persons of inferior type should follow the popular practice and their [own] natural habit.

170. But when [specially] different occasions or times present themselves, wise people should make different uses of the hand gestures.

171-174. While a person is to represent himself as sad, fainting, terrified, overcome with disgust or sorrow, weak, asleep, handless, inactive, drowsy, inert, sick, attacked with fever, seized with panic, attacked with cold, intoxicated, bewildered, mad, thoughtful, practising austerities, residing in a cold region, prisoner under arrest, running very swiftly, speaking in dream, suddenly moving away and cutting nails he is not to use hand gestures, but he should resort to the Representation of the Temperament as well as to the change of voice suitable to the different States and Sentiments.
175. At the time of verbal acting (i.e. when the actor will enunciate his part) the eyes and the look are to be directed to points at which the hand gestures are moving, and there should be proper stops so that the meaning may be [clearly] expressed (lit. seen).  

176. The movements of hands in dancing and acting will be of five kinds, viz. palms kept upwards, downwards or oblique, fingers pointing upwards or downwards.

177. These are the hand gestures connected with the various kinds of Histrionic Representations. I shall now speak of Dance-hands (i.e. gestures to be used in dance).

The Dance-hands

178. Caturasra—two Kaṭakāmukha hands held forward eight Āṅguls apart [from each other] on one's breast, the two shoulders and elbows on the same level.

179. Udvr̥ta—the two Haṁsapakṣa hands waved like a palm-leaf (fan). Its alternative name is the Tālavṛ̥nta (palm-leaf).

180. Talamukha—the two hands from the Caturasra position to be held obliquely facing each other.

181. Svastika—the Talamukha hands crossed at the wrists; but released after this they are called Viprakṛ̥ṇa.

182. Arālakaṭakamukha—the two Alapallava (Alapad-maka) hands with palms upwards changed into Padmakoṣa hands. Its another name is Arālakāṭaka.

183. Āviddhavaktraka—The two hands are to have a graceful (kuṭila) movement after touching [successively] the opposite shoulder, elbow and hands, and the palms [of the hands] moved are to turn towards the back.

---

175 (B.180, G.172). 1 B. repeats here 164 (B.169)
176 (B.182, G.175).
177 (B.183, G.176).
178 (B.184, G.177).
179 (B.185, G.178).
180 (B.186, G.179).
181 (B.187, G.180).
182 (B.188, G.181). 1 B.G. read after this a variant of this definition.
183 (B.190, G.188).
184. Śūcinukha—The two Sarpaśīrah hands with their thumbs touching middle fingers are to stretch their tips obliquely.

185. Recita—the two Hamsapakṣa hands swiftly moving with the palms facing upward. This is like the ordinary Recita [of the hands].

186. Ardharecita—The left hand should be as in the Caturasra and the right hand as in the Recita.

187. Uttānavañcita—The two Tripatāka hands are slightly bent obliquely and the shoulders and the elbows are moved.

188. Pallava—the two Patāka hand joined at the wrist.

Nitamba—the two Patāka hands taken out from the shoulder [to the hip].

189. Kesabandha—the two hands moved out from the hair-knot (kräśvāndha) and held on the sides.

190. Latā—the two hands to be obliquely stretched sideways.

191. Karihasta—the Latā hand held up and swung from side to side and the Tripatāka hand held on the ear.

192. Pakṣavañcitaka—one Tripatāka hand placed on the waist and another on the head.

193. Pakṣapradyotaka—the Pakṣavañcitaka hands changing places (i.e. the hands placed on the waist to be put on the head and vice versa).

194. Dapḍapakṣa—the two Hamsapakṣa hands moved alternately and then held out like a staff.

195. Urdbhvaṁpaḍālt—the two hands to have circling movement near the upper region (i.e. the upper part of the body).

---

184 (B.191, G.184). 1 B.G. read after this a variant of this definition.
185 (B.193, G.186).
187 (B.195, G.188).
189 (B.197, G.190).
191 (B.199, G.192).
193 (B.201, G.194).
194 (B.202; G.195).
195 (B.203, G.196).
**Parśvamanḍalī—the same movement made on one side.**

196. Uromanḍalī—after circling movements one hand to be raised up and the other to hang down, and movements to take place near the breast.

197. Uraḥparśvārdhamaṇḍalī—the Alapallava (Alapadma) and Arāla hands moved by turns above the breast and on the sides.

198. Muṣṭikasvastika—the two Kaṭakāmukha hands bent at the wrists and moved round.

199. Nalintpadmakosā the hands to be moved by turns with Vyavarita and Parivartita Karāṇa.

200. Allapallava—the two hand to have the Udveṣṭita Karāṇa in their movements.

Ulbanī—the two hands to be stretched up and waved.

201. Lalita—two [Ala]-pallava (Alapadma) hands to be moved above the head.

Valita—the two Latā hands crossed at their elbows.

202. The Dance-hands are to be used in forming Karāṇas and hands such as the Patāka should be used in representing the meaning [of words].

203. [But] sometimes, out of necessity their uses are interchanged, and the names given are due to their predominant use in drama and dance.

204. The Dance-hands are of two kinds: single and combined. I shall now speak of hands in relation to the Karāṇas.¹

The four Karāṇas of the hand

205-206. Instructors of hand gestures are to note carefully the four classes into which all such gestures are grouped. The four classes are: Āveṣṭīta, Udveṣṭīta, Vyavarita and Parivartita.

---

¹ G. omits this. ¹ G. omits this.
207. Āveṣṭita: When the fingers beginning with the first one (the forefinger) are gradually pointing inwards at the time [the hand] moves round, the Karaṇa [thus produced] is called Āveṣṭita.

208. Udveṣṭita: When the fingers beginning with the first one [forefingers] are gradually pointing outwards at the time [the hand] moves round, the Karaṇa thus produced is called Udveṣṭita.

209. Vyavartita: When fingers beginning with the last one (the little finger) are gradually pointing inwards at the time [the hand] moves round the Karaṇa thus produced is called Vyavartita.

210 Parivartita: When the fingers beginning with the last one (the little finger) are gradually pointing outwards at the time [the hand] moves round, the Karaṇa thus produced, is called Parivartita.

211. Hand gestures in their [various] movements when applied in drama and dance should be followed by Karaṇas having [appropriate expression of] the face, the eyebrows and the eyes.

The movements of arms


214. O Brahmins, I have now finished the brief description of rules regarding the Karaṇas and shall speak afterwards about the movements of the breast, the belly and the sides.

Here ends Chapter IX of Bharata's Nāṭyaśāstra which treats of the Gestures of Hands.
CHAPTER TEN

THE GESTURES OF OTHER LIMBS

The breast

1. The breast is known to be of five kinds: Abhugna (slightly bent), Nirbhugna (unbent), Prakampita (shaking), Udvahita (raised) and Sama (natural).

2. Abhugna (slightly bent)—(the breast) lowered, back high, shoulders slightly bent and at times loose (not stiff).

3. (Uses): in hurry, despair, fainting, sorrow, fear, sickness; broken heart, touching of cold objects, rains and being ashamed of some act.

4. Nirbhugna (unbent)—(the breast) stiff, back depressed, shoulders not bent and raised.

5. (Uses): in paralysis, having resentment, look of surprise, assertion of truth, mentioning oneself haughtily, and excess of pride.

6. Prakampita (shaken)—the breast incessantly heaved up [and down].

7. (Uses): in laughter, weeping, weariness, panic, [fit of] asthma, hiccough, and misery.

8. Udvahita (raised)—the breast raised up.

(Uses): in (representing) deep breathing, viewing some lofty [object], and yawning.

9. Sama (natural)—All the limbs being in the Caturasra and with Sauṣṭhūva the breast will be called Sama (natural).

1 (B.IX.223, G.1).  2 (B.IX.224, G.2).
5 (B.IX.227, G.5).  6 (B.IX.229, G.7).
1 B.G. read after this an additional couplet.
7 (B.IX.230, G.8).
8 (B.IX.231, G.9).  9 (B.IX.232, G.10).
The sides

10. I have properly described the variety of the breast movements. And I shall now define here the two sides.

11. The sides are of five kinds, viz., Nata (bent), Samunnata (raised), Prasārita (extended), Virvartita (turned round) and Apasāta (drawn away).

12-15. Nata (bent)—the waist slightly bent, one side slightly bent, one shoulder drawn away slightly.

Unnata (raised)—The other side [on the assumption of the Nata position] will be Unnata (raised), [because in relation of it] the waist, the side, the arm and the shoulder will be raised.

Prasārita (stretched)—the stretching of the sides in their (respective) directions.

Virvartita (turned round)—the Trika (sacrum) is to be turned round.

Apasāta (drawn away)—the side restored to its original position from the Virvartita movement [described above].

These are the definition of the various kinds of sides.

Uses of the sides

16-17. Nata (bent)—in approaching any body.

Unnata (raised)—in going backwards.

Prasārita (stretched)—in joy and the like.

Virvartita (turned round)—in turning about.

Apasāta (drawn away)—in returning.

These are the uses of sides. Now listen about those of the belly

The belly

18. The belly is of three kinds: Kṣāma (thin), Khalva (depressed), and Pūrṇa (full). Of these, the thin (belly) is Kṣāma, the bent is Khalva and the full belly is Pūrṇa.
THE GESTURES OF OTHER LIMBS

Uses of the belly


Khalva (depressed): in sickness, penance (tapas), weariness and hunger.

Pūrṇa (full): in emitting breath, fatness, disease, too much eating and the like.

These are the uses of the belly. Now listen about that of the waist.

The waist

21-24. The waist in dance and drama is of five kinds, viz. Chinnā (turned aside), Nivṛttā, (turned round), Recitā (moved about), Prakamptā=Kampitā (shaken) and Udvāhitā (raised).

Chinnā (turned aside)—in turning the middle of the waist.
Nivṛttā (turned round)—in turning to the front from the reverse position.
Recitā (moved about)—in moving in all directions.
Prakamptā (shaken)—in obliquely moving up and down.
Udvāhitā (raised)—in raising the two sides of the waist slowly.

These are the movements of the waist. Now listen about their uses.

Uses of the waist


Nivṛttā (turned round): in turning round.
Recitā (moved about): in movements [of the general type].
Prakamptā (shaken): in the walking of hunch-backs and persons of the inferior type.

19-20 (B.IX.242-243a, 244a, G.20-21). 1 B.G. read an additional homestich between 20a and 20b.
21-24 (B.IX.244b-248a, G.22-25). 1 B.G. read differently.
Udvāhitā (raised) : in the [movement of] corpulent [persons] and the amorous movements of women.

The thigh

27-30. The thighs have five conditions, viz. Kampana (shaking) Valana (turning), Stambhana (motionlessness), Udvartana (springing up) and Vivartana (turning round).

31. Kampana (shaking)—raising and lowering of heels repeatedly.

Valana (turning)—drawing the knees inwards [while going].
Stambhana (motionlessness)—suspension of movement.
Udvartana (springing up)—drawing the knee inwards (valita) and moving it.
Vivartana (turning round)—drawing the heels inwards.

Uses of the thigh

32. Kampana (shaking) : in the frightened movement of persons of the inferior type.

Valana (turning) : in the movement of women at ease.
Stambhana (motionlessness) : in perturbation and despair.
Udvartana (springing up) : in exercising [the limbs] and the Class Dance.

Vivartana (turning round) : in going round due to causes like hurry.

33. Similar other [conditions of the thigh] as they are found in popular practice, may be assumed. So much about the description of the thigh. Now listen about the shank.

The shank

34-37. The shank is of five kinds, viz Āvartita (turned) Nata (bent), Kṣipta (thrown out), Udvāhitā (raised) and Parivṛttā (turned back).

30-32 (B.IX.254-256a, G.31b-33).
33 (B.IX.256b-257a, G.34). 34-37 (B.IX.257b-258a, G.35).
Āvarūtā (turned)—the left foot turning to the right and the right [one] to the left. ¹

Nata (bent)—the knee bent.

Kṣipta (thrown out)—shank thrown out. ¹

Udvāhita (raised)—raising [a shank] up.

Parivṛttā (turned back)—the turning back [of a shank].

Uses of the shank

38-40. Āvarūtā (turned) : in the Jester’s walking.

Nata (bent) : in assuming Sthāna (standing) and Asana (sitting) postures,

Kṣipta (thrown out) : in the exercise [of limbs] and the Class Dance.

Udvāhita (raised) : in movements like quick (āvīḍīthā) walking.

Parivṛttā (turned back) : in Class Dance and the like.

These are the movements of the shank. Now listen about the movement of the feet.

The feet and their uses

41-50. The feet are of five kinds, viz. Udghaṭṭita, Sama, Agratalasaṇecara, Aṅcita and Kuṅcita.

Udghaṭṭita—standing on the fore part of the feet and then touching the ground with the heels.

(Use) : In practice this is to follow the Udghaṭṭita Karanā and this should be applied once or more in the high or medium speed.

Sama (natural) —[feet] naturally placed on an even ground. It relates to representing a natural posture.

(Use) : It should be kept still in representing the natural

---

¹ B. adds three additional couplets after 45, and G. adds one additional couplet after 44.
² B. reads sthīta for kṣata meaning ‘wound’.
position of the body in connexion with the various Karāṇas, but in the Recaka movement of the feet it should be moved.

Agratalasañcicara—the heels thrown up, the big toe put forward and the other toes bent.

(Uses): This [is to be used] in urging, breaking, standing posture (sthānaka), kicking, striking the ground, walking, throwing away [something], various Recaka movements and walking on the forepart [of the foot] due to an wound at the heel.

Añcita—the heels on the ground, the forepart of the feet raised and all the toes spread.

(Uses): It is to be applied in representing a movement with wound at the forepart of the foot, turning round in every way, foot being struck [by something] and in various Bhrāmrtha movements.

Kuñcita—the heels thrown up, toes all bent down and the middle of the feet too bent.

51. (Uses): It is to be used in aristocratic (udāṭta) going, turning round to the right and vice versa and the Atikrānta Cāri.

The Čāris

52. Persons practising [the Čāris] should take up simultaneously the movements of the feet, the shanks and the thighs. [For] in the movement of feet are included all the movements of the shanks and the thighs.

53. The thighs follow the way in which the feet are moved, and these two [limbs] constitute together the Čāri of the feet.

54. These are the descriptions and uses of the [various] limbs. I shall now describe the System of the [different] Čāris.

Here ends Chapter X. of Bharata's Natyaśāstra, which treats of the Gestures of other Limbs

51 (B.IX.278-279a, G.53). B. reads after this three additional hemistichs which define the Śūci foot as follows: The [right foot with its] heel raised resting on the big toe and the left foot in the natural position constitute the Śūci feet. It is used in dance and playing the Nūpura.


54 (B.IX.283, G.58).
CHAPTER ELEVEN
THE CĀRĪ MOVEMENTS

Definitions

1. As the Cāris prescribed by rules and connected with [different] limbs relate to (vyāyacchante from vyā-yam, stretch out to) one another they constitute (lit. are called) a vyayāma (System). ¹

2. Cāri: The movement [mainly] with a single foot, is called the Cārī:
Karaṇa²: The two feet moving [together] is called the Karaṇa.
Maṇḍala: Three or four Khaṇḍas combine to make up the Maṇḍala.

Uses of the Cāri

4. From the Cāris proceed dance as well as movements [in general] and release of missiles; and [the stage] fighting [in general] should be made with the Cāris.

5. Whatever has been described as Histrionic Representation (nāṭya) is included in the Cāris, and no part of it can take place without the same.

6. Hence I shall described the rules of the Cāris which are to be used in dance, ordinary movements and fights [on the stage].

The thirtytwo Cāris

7-9. The following sixteen are the earthly (bhauṁ) Cāris: Śamapāḍā, Sthitāvartā, Śakaṭāsya, Adhyardhika, Cāṣagati, Vicyava,
Edakākrīḍā, Buddhā, Urūdvṛttā, Aḍḍitā, Utsyanditā, Janitā, Syanditā, Apasyanditā, Samotsarita-matallī and Matalli.

10-12. The aerial (ākāśī) Cārīs are sixteen in number. They are as follows: Atikrāntā, Apakrāntā, Pārśvakrāntā, Urulvajānu, Śuci, Nūpurakāṇḍikā, Dolapādā, Āksiptā, Āviddhā, Udvyttā, Vidvyudhrāntā, Alātā, Bhujāgatrasita, Hariṇapulatā, Daṇḍā and Bhramari.

The earthly Cārīs

13. Samapāḍā - the two feet close together, the nails [of the toes] meeting, and standing on the spot¹.

14. Šhītvārtā—one Agratalasāñcāra foot drawn up to cross the remaining foot and this movement repeated with another foot after separating the two.

15. Śkaṭāṣyā—the body held upright, one Agratalasāñcāra foot put forward and the breast being Udvahita.

16. Adhyarādhikā—the left foot on the back (i.e. heel) of the right one, the latter to be drawn away [a Tāla and half a part].¹

17. Čāṣagati—the right foot put forward and then drawn back and at the same time left foot drawn back and put forward afterwards.

18. Vicyavā—separating the feet from the Samapāḍā position and striking the ground with their fore part.

19. Edakākrīḍā—jumping up and down with the Tala-śañcāra feet.

¹ G. reads these names as Utspadita, Apaspadita and Spandita and B. as Utspadita, Syandita, and Apasyandita. I have been taken the root syand as the basis of all these names. Miss. erratically give syand and spand. ² see note 1 above.

10-12 (B.X.11-13, G.11-13).

13 (B.X.14, G.14). ¹ On the appropriateness of this name Ag. writes: न तत्र समाशद लोके च चारोनास्ति - स्मृति यथा समाशद यम स्माशानाम मन्त्रित तत् वर्णवाची अवतन्त स्मर्ततानि तथा अवहेयादिति भवेऽ.

14 (B.X.15, G.15). ¹ The exact measure (1½ tāla) is given by Ag.

15 (B.X.16, G.16).

16 (B.X.17, G.17).

17 (B.X.18, G.18).

18 (B.X.19, G.19).

19 (B.X.20, G.20).
20. Baddhā—The sideways movement of the thighs when the two shanks are crossed.

21. Urudvrīttā—the heel of a Talaśāṇecara foot placed outwards, one of the shanks to be slightly bent and the thigh turned up.

22. Aḍḍitā—one Agratalasāṇecara foot rubbing against the fore part or the back of another foot.

23. Utsyaṇḍitā—the two feet to move gradually sideways (lit. in and out) in the manner of the Recaka.

24. Janitā—a Muśṭi hand held on the breast and another hand moved round, and the feet to be Talaśāṇecara.

25. Syāṇḍitā—one foot put forward five Talaś away from the other.

Apasyaṇḍitā—the reverse of the Syāṇḍitā Cāri (i.e. another foot being put forward five Talaś away from the other).

26. Samosarita-matalli—going back with a circular movement and the feet being of the Talaśāṇecara kind.

27. Mattali—going back with a circular movement and hands being Udveṣṭita and motionless.

28. These are the Cāris used in personal combat as well as in the Karaṇas. I shall now describe the aerial Cāris.

The aerial Cāris

29. Āturakṛntā—a Kuṇcita foot thrown up, put forward and caused to fall on the ground.

30. Apakṛntā—the Valana posture of the two thighs, a Kuṇcita foot raised and thrown down sideways.

31. Pāśavakraṇtā—one foot Kuṇcita and another thrown up and brought near the side.

---

32. Urdhva-jānū—throwing up a Kuścita foot and its knee brought up to the level of the breast, and the remaining knee without movement and then this second foot thrown up in the manner of the first, and the first foot kept motionless.

33. Śūci—a Kuścita foot thrown up and brought above the knee of the remaining foot and then to let it fall on its fore part.

34. Nīpurapādikā—one Aṅcita foot raised up and taken behind another foot and then quickly caused to fall on the ground.

35. Dolapādā—one Kuścita foot thrown up and moved from side to side and then caused to fall on the ground as an Aṅcita foot.

36. Āksiptā—one Kuścita foot thrown off and then placing it quickly on an Aṅcita foot by crossing the shank of the remaining leg.

37. Āviddhā—one Kuścita foot from the Svastika position stretching and falling on the ground quickly as an Aṅcita foot.

38. Udvyṛttā—the (Kuścita) foot of the Āviddhā Cāri taken round [the thigh of the remaining leg] and thrown up and then caused to fall [on the ground].

39. Vidyutdbhrāntā—one foot turned to the back and after touching its top part to be stretched and the head moved in a circle.

40. Alatā—one foot stretched backwards and then put in and afterwards caused to fall in its heel.

41. Bhujāngatrasitā—one Kuścita foot thrown up and the waist and the knee being turned round and the thigh [of the remaining foot] to be turned round too.

42. Hariṇapālita—the foot in the Atikrānta Cāri to be caused to fall on the ground after a jump and the shank of an Aṅcita foot to be put in the K śiptā posture.
43. Daṇḍapāda: the foot in the Nūpura—[pādikā] Ārī to be stretched and quickly to turn.

44. Bhramari: the foot in the Atikrāntā Ārī to be thrown up and the entire body turned round (lit. the Trika turned round) and then the second foot to be moved on its sole.

45. These are the aerial Ārīs, consisting of graceful movements of the limbs. These are to be applied in the release of weapons like an arrow and the thunderbolt (vaijra).

46. O Brahmins, in all these cases the two hands should, according to the circumstances, either precede, go simultaneously with or follow the feet.

47. Where the foot [moves], there the hand [should follow] and where the hand [moves], there the entire body. [Hence] after taking a step, all the minor limbs should be made use of.

48. When in course of a Ārī a foot comes to rest on the ground the [corresponding] hand should be moved round and brought on the waist.

49. I have finished describing the Ārīs consisting of graceful movements of the limbs. I shall now speak of the Sthānas (standing posture) to be used in the release of missiles of all kinds.

The Sthānas

50. The six Sthānas (standing posture) for men are Vaiśṇava, Sampāda, Vaiśākha, Maṇḍala, Ārādhana, and Pratyārādhana.

51-52. Vaiśṇava—the feet two Tālas and a half apart, one foot in the natural posture and another obliquely placed with toes pointing sideways and the shank bent (aṅcitā) and limbs with the Sauṣṭhava. Viṣṇu is the presiding deity of this Sthāna.

53. (Uses): From this Sthāna persons of the superior and the middling types should carry on their ordinary (lit. natural) conversation in connexion with the various duties.

---

49 (B.X.50, G.50). 50 (B.X.51, G.51).
54. It should also be assumed in throwing a disc, holding a bow, in patient and stately movement of the limbs and in anger.

55-57. On being reversed it is to be used in anger of love. And similarly in the administration of rebuke, and in love, distress, apprehension, envy, cruelty, assurance, and recollection, it is to be assumed when the Erotic, the Marvellous, the Odious and the Heroic Sentiments are prominently introduced.

57-58. Šamapāda—the feet in the natural posture and kept one Tāla apart and the body with the natural Saṃsthāva. Brahman is its presiding deity.

58-60. (Uses): It should be assumed in accepting blessings from the Brahmins, and in mimicking birds. The bridegroom at the marriage ceremony, persons in the sky, chariot and aerial car (vīmāna), persons of marked sects (liṅgasthā) and persons practising vows are also to assume this.

60-62. Vaiśākha—the two feet three Tālas and a half apart and the thighs without motion; [besides this] the two feet to be obliquely placed pointing sideways. Kārtikeya (Skanda) is its presiding deity.

62-64. (Uses): This Saṃsthāna should be assumed in riding horses, and in exercise, exit [from any place], mimicking large birds, practice of bending the bow and in the Rečakas [of the feet].

64-65. Maṇḍala: It relates to Indra (i.e. its presiding deity is Indra). In it the feet are four Tālas apart and they are obliquely placed and turned sideways, the waist and the knee are in the natural position.

---

58-60 (B.X.59-61, G.59-60). 1 vīpramaṅgala—vīpraiḥ yan maṅga-lāśirvacanādi (Ag.).
2 liṅgasthān—śainūdyāḥ vratasthā ārdhvakāyādi praṅaṅgāḥ (?) (Ag.).
64-65 (B.X.65-66, G.65).
65-66. (Uses): The Maṇḍala Sthāna should be assumed in the use of weapons like the bow and the thunderbolt, riding of elephants, and mimicking large birds.

66-67. Ālāṭha: The right foot in the Maṇḍala Sthāna drawn five Tālas apart [from the other foot] will make the Ālāṭha Sthāna. Rudra is its presiding deity.

67-69. (Uses): This Sthāna should be assumed in all acts relating to the Heroic and the Furious Sentiments, duel of wrestlers and in the representation of enemies, an attack [on them], and release of missiles.

69-70. Pratyālīḍha: When the right foot is bent and the left foot is put forward in the Ālāṭha Sthāna the Pratyālīḍha Sthāna will be produced.

70-71. (Uses): The missiles made ready for throwing from the Ālāṭha Sthāna are to be [actually] thrown from the Pratyālīḍha Sthāna. The actor should use various weapons from this Sthāna.

The four Nyāyas in using weapons

71-72. There are four Nyāyas (ways) of using weapons (lit. releasing missiles), viz. Bhārata, Śāttvata, Vārṣagaṇya, and Kāśika.

72-73. In the Bhārata [Nyāya the weapon] should strike (lit. cut) at the waist, in the Śāttvata at the foot, in the Vārṣagaṇya at the breast and in the Kāśika at the head.

73-74. In these Nyāyas arising out of the various Cāris, the actors should walk about [on the stage] at [the time of] using weapons.

74-75. The Nyāyas (way) are so called1 because fights [on the stage] are nīgante (carried on) with the Aṅgahāras relating to the Nyāyas and arising out of them.

---

75-79. Bhārata: Putting forward the shield with the left hand and taking the sword (lit. weapon) the actor should walk about on the stage. Stretching the hand forward fully and then drawing it back he should move the shield at his back from side to side and flourish the sword (lit. weapon) around his head, and it should also be turned round [about the wrist] near the cheek. And again the hands holding the sword and the shield should be flourished gracefully around the head.

80-81. Sātvata: I shall now speak of walking about in the Sātvata Nyāya. In it the same flourishing (i.e. as in Bhārata) of the sword and the shield holds good, but this (the flourishing of the weapon) should take place at one’s back.

81-82. Vārsaṅgaṇya. The walking about in the Vārsaṅgaṇya Nyāya will be similar to that in the Sātvata, and the sword (lit. weapon) and the shield also should be flourished similarly, but these should go round the head.

83-84. Kāśika: The flourishing of the sword (lit. weapon) near the breast or the shoulder which is to take place in the Bhārata [Nyaya] will hold good in case of the Kāśika. But [in the latter] the sword (lit. weapon) should be made to strike only after being flourished over the head.

84-85. With these graceful movements of the limbs weapons like the bow, the thunderbolt and the sword are to be flourished at the time of their use.

85-87. In the stage-fight there should be no [actual] piercing, cutting or flow of blood and the actual striking. The use of weapons (lit. release of missiles) should be done with its mimicry, or the cutting off [of any one’s limb] should be represented, according rules, by the use of gestures and postures only.

78-88. The exercise should be performed in the Aṅgahāras

---

1 B.G. read one additional couplet after this.
embellished with the Sauṣṭhava and accompanied by music with [proper] tempo and Tāla.

The Sauṣṭhava

88-91. Those performing the exercises [in Aṅgahāras] should take care of the Sauṣṭhava, for the limbs without it (Sauṣṭhava) create no beauty (lit. do not shine) in drama or dance. The Sauṣṭhava of limbs is to be presented by being still, unbent, at ease, not very upright and not much bent. When the waist and the ears as well as the elbow, the shoulder and the head are in their natural position (sāma) and the breast is raised it will be the Sauṣṭhava [of the body].

The Caturasra

91-92. Caturasara: The Vaiṣṇava Sthāna with the two hands moving about at the waist and the navel together with the breast raised, is called the Caturasra of the limbs.

The four acts relating to the bow

92-93. There are four acts relating to the bow, viz. preparing (parimārjana), taking an arrow (aḍāṇa), taking an aim (sāndhāna) and shooting (moksana).

93-94. The preparing (parimārjana) is the bending [of the bow], taking (grahana) is the pulling out of [the arrow], taking an aim (sāndhāna) is to put the arrow to the bow, and shooting (moksana) is the release [of the arrow].

The method of exercise

94-95. One should perform exercise [in the Aṅgahāras and Cāris] on the floor as well as [high up] in the air and should have beforehand get one's body massaged with the [sesamum] oil or barely gruel.

---

88-91 (B.X.89b, 91-93, G.89b 90-92). ¹ B.G. read one additional couplet after this.
91-92 (B.X.94-95, G.94).
94-95 (B.X.97-98, G.97).
95-96. The floor is the proper place (lit. mother) for exercise. Hence one should resort to the floor, and stretching oneself over it one should take exercise.

Health and nourishment of persons taking exercise

96-99. For the strength of body one should take [proper] snuff and get oneself purged [lit. resort to the rule regarding the abdomen], take agreeable food, [meat-] juice and drink. For vitality is dependent on one's nourishment and the exercise is dependent on vitality. Hence one should be careful about one's nourishment. When the body is not cleansed and one is very tired, hungry, thirsty, has drunk too much [water], eaten too much, one should not take exercise. The wise [teacher] should give training in exercise to his pupil who has a graceful body and square breast and is not covered with [much] garment.

100. These are the rules regarding the Čāris in connexion with the exercise of [the limbs]. I shall hereafter speak of the different Maṅḍalas.

Here ends Chapter XI of Bharata's Nātyasāstra which treats of the Rule of Čāris.

CHAPTER TWELVE

THE MANḌALA MOVEMENTS

The Maṅḍalas

1. I have now properly described the Cāris in connexion with the use of weapons (lit. release of missiles). [Now] learn about the Maṅḍalas arising out of a combination of the Cāris.

2-3. The aerial Maṅḍalas are: Atikrānta, Vicitra, Lalitasaṅcara, Śucīvididdha, Daṇḍapāda, Vihṛta, Alāta, Vāmavididdha, Lalita and Kraṅta.¹

3-5. The earthly Maṅḍalas are Bhramara, Āskandita¹, Āvarta, Samotsarita, Eḍakākrida, Aḍṭīta, Śaktaśya, and Cāsagata. [Now] listen about their description.²

The aerial Maṅḍalas

6-9. Atikrānta—the right foot [to be moved successively] in the Janitā Cāri and [the Śakaṭāśya Cāri in which the breast is] Udvāhita, the left foot in the Alātā Cāri and the right foot in the Pārśvakraṇtā Cāri. (next) the left foot in the Śucī Cāri and the right foot in the Aparikrāntā Cāri, [again] the left foot [successively] in the Śucī Cāri and [the Bhramari Cāri by] turning the Trika, (then) the right foot in the Udvṛttā Cāri and the left foot in the Alātā Cāri which should be changed (lit. divided) to the Bhramari Cāri, again this left foot in the Alātā Cāri and the right foot in the Daṇḍapāda Cāri.

10-13. Vicitra—the right foot [successively to be moved] in the Janitā Cāri and in the Talasaṅcara¹ (Nikuṭṭana), manner

¹ (B.XI.1, G.1).
²-3 (B.XI.2-3, G.2-3). ¹ B. adds one additional hemistich after this.
3-5 (B.XI.4-6, G.3-5). ¹ Mss. sometimes gives this name as āśpan-dita which seems to be a corruption for āskandita. See the Cāri of this name XI. 7-9.
² B. reads 5b. differently.
6-9 (B.XI.7, 8b-11, G.6-2). ¹ See Ag.
10-13 (B.XI.11b-12a, 13a, 13-15, G.10-13). ¹ See Ag.
(then) the left foot in the Śyanditā Čārī, the right foot in the Pārśvakrāntā Čārī, (again) the left foot in the Bhujaṅgatrasitā Čārī and the right foot [successively] in the Atikrāntā and Uddyttā Čāris, (next) the left foot in the Śūcī Čārī, the right foot in the Vikṣiptā (Ākṣiptā) Čārī and the left foot in the Apakrāntā Čārī.

14-17. Lalitasaucca— the right foot with the knee raised [to move] in the Śūcī Čārī, (next) the left foot in the Apakrānta Čārī and the right one in the Pārśvakrāntā Čārī (again) the left foot [successively] in the Śūcī and the Bhramari Čāris [this latter by turning round the Trika] and the right foot in the Pārśvakrāntā Čārī and the left foot in the Atikrāntā Čārī which to be changed (lit. divided) into the Bhramari Čārī.

18-19. Śūcividdha— the left foot [to be moved] in the Śūcī and the Bhramari Čāris [the latter by turning the Trika round], the right foot in the Pārśvakrāntā Čārī the left foot in the Atikrāntā Čārī, next the right foot in the Śūcī, the left foot in the Apakrānta Čārī and the right foot again in the Pārśvakrāntā Čārī.

20-22. Daṇḍapāda— the right foot to be moved in the Janitā and the Daṇḍapāda Čāris, the left foot in the Śūcī and the Bhramari Čāris [the latter by turning the Trika], (next) the right foot in the Uṛūdvytta Čārī and the left foot in the Alātā Čārī, (again) the right foot in the Pārśvakrāntā Čārī and the left foot [successively] in the Bhujaṅgatrasitā and the Atikrāntā Čāris to meet the right foot in the Daṇḍapāda Čārī and the left foot [successively] in the Śūcī and the Bhramari Čāris [the latter by turning the Trika].

23-26. Viḥṛta— the right foot [to be moved] in the Janitā Čārī (then) its Nikūṭṭana, (next) the left foot in the Śyanditā Čārī and the right foot in the Uṛūdvytta Čārī, (then) the left foot in the Alātā Čārī and the right foot in the Śūcī Čārī, again the left
foot in the Pārvākṛānta Cāri and the right foot in the Ākṣiptā
and the Bhramari [this by turning the Trika] and the Dāṇḍapāda
Cāris, (then) the left foot in the Śuci and the Bhramari Cāris [the
latter by turning the Trika] again the right foot in the Bluṣaṅga-
trāsitā Cāri and the left foot in the Atikrāntā Cāri.

27-29. Alāta—the right foot [to be moved] in the Śuci Cāri
and the left foot in the Apakrānta Cāri, then the right foot in the
Pārāvākṛānta Cāri and the left foot in the Alāta Cāri, after moving
by turn in the these [two] Cāris six or seven times with graceful
steps, again the right foot in the Aprkrānta Cāri and the left foot
[successively] in the Atikrānta and the Bhramari Cāris.

30-33. Vānāviddha—the right foot [to be moved] in the
Śuci Cāri, the left foot in the Apakrānta Cāri, (then) the right foot
in the Dāṇḍapāda Cāri and the left foot in the Śuci Cāri and right
foot in the Bhramari [this by turning the Trika] and the Pārāvā-
krānta, Cāris, (next) the left foot in the Ākṣiptā Cāri and the right
foot in the Dāṇḍapāda and the Urūḍyṛtta Cāris, (then) the left foot
[successively] in the Śuci, the Bhramari [this by turning the Trika]
and the Alāta Cāris, (next) the right foot in the Prāśvākṛānta
Cāri and the left foot in the Atikrānta Cāri.

34-37. Lalita—the right foot [to be moved] in the Śuci
Cāri and the left foot in the Apakrānta Cāri, (then) the right foot
in the Pārāvākṛānta and the Bluṣaṅgastrasita Cāris, (then) the left
foot in the Atikrānta Cāri and the Urūḍyṛtta Cāris the left foot and
the Alāta Cāri, and the right foot in the Pārāvākṛānta Cāri, next the
left foot in the Atikrānta Cāri with graceful steps.

38-40. Krānta—the right foot [to be moved] in the Śuci
Cāri and the left foot in the Apakrānta Cāri, then the right foot in
the Pārāvākṛānta Cāri and the left foot too in the same Cāri (Pārā-
vakrama), moving round alternately in these Cāris in all directions,
again the left foot in the Śuci Cāri and the right foot in the

\[27-29 (B.XI.29-30, 31b-32a, G.28-30).\]
\[30-33 (B.XI.32b-36a, G.31-34).\]
\[34-37 (B.XI.36b-37a, 38-40a, G.35-37).\]
\[1 G. omits 35a and 36b.\]
\[38-40 (B.XI.40b-43a, G.38-40).\]
Apakrāntā Čārī. This Maṇḍala is prescribed for the natural gait. Hence it is called Krānta i.e. going.

41. These are the aerial Maṇḍalas. Now I shall describe those on the earth.

The earthly Maṇḍalas

42-44. Bhramara—the right foot [to be moved] in the Janitā Čārī and the left foot in the Skanditā (Āskanditā) Čārī, then the right foot in the Śakatāsyā Čārī and the left foot to be stretched, (next) the right foot in the Bhramari Čārī [by turning the Trika]{, again the left foot in the Skanditā (Āskanditā) Čārī and the right foot in the Śakațasyā Čārī, then the left foot in the Apakrāntā (Apasarpit) Čārī and the Bhramari Čārī by turning about the back.

45-47. Āskanditā—the right foot [to be moved] in the Bhramari Čārī and the left foot in the Aḍḍitā and the Bhramari Čāris [the latter by turning the Trika], then the right foot in the Urūḍvṛttā Čārī and the left foot in the Apakrāntā (Apasarpit) and the Bhramari Čāris [the latter by turning the Trika then] the right foot in the Skanditā Čārī, (next) the left foot in the Śakațasyā and the same foot to violently strike the ground.

48-50. Āvarta—the right foot [to be moved] in the Janitā Čārī and the left foot in the Talasaṇecara (Nikuṇṭaka) Čārī, then the right foot in the Śakațasyā and the Urūḍvṛttā Čārī, (next) the right foot the Atikrāntā (Apasarpit) Čārī turning back wards and the Cāṣagati Čārī, then the right foot in the Skanditā (Āskanditā) Čārī and the left foot in the Śakațasyā Čārī, again the right foot in the Bhramari Čārī with the Trika turned round, and the left foot in the Apakrāntā (Apasarpit) Čārī.

51-53. Samotsaritā—assuming first of all the Samapāda Śtāna, then stretching the two hands with their palms turned upwards, (next) their intermittent Āveṣṭāna and Udeṣṭāna movements, [then putting the left hand] on the waist, the right hand moved in the Āvartita manner [next the right hand to be put on

41 (B.XI.43b-44a, G.41).
on the waist] and the left hand moved in the Āvarita manner, moving round alternately with this Čāri will rise to the Samotsa-
rita Maṇḍala.

54-55. Edakākridita—the two feet on the ground [to be moved successively] in the Sūci and the Edakākridita Čāri, (next) the swift moving Bhramari Čāri by turning the Trika, (then) mov-
ing [the feet] round alternately in the Sūci and the Āvidhha Čāris. This will give rise to the Khanda-maṇḍala named Edakākridita.

56-58. Adhīta—the right foot [to be moved] in the Udghaṭita manner and then [simply] moved round, next [to be moved] in the Syandita (Āsyandita) Čāri and the left foot in the Sakaṭasyā Čāri, next the right foot to be moved backwards in the Apakrānta (Apasarpt) and the Cāsagati Čāris, (then) the left foot in the Adhīta Čāri and the right foot in the Apakrānta (Apasarptā) Čāri. (next, the left foot in the Bhramari Čāri and the right foot in the Syandita (Āsyandita) Čāri and to violently strike the ground.1

59-60. Sakaṭasya.—The right foot [to be moved] in the Janitā Čāri and next it to move in the Talasaṅcara (Nikūṭaka) manner, the same foot in the Sakaṭasya Čāri and the left foot in the Syandita (Āsyandita) Čāri, moving round in this manner alternately with the Sakaṭasyā Čāri. This Čāri Maṇḍala named the Sakaṭasya is to be used in fight.

61-62. Adhyardha—the right foot [to be moved successively] in the Janitā and Syandita Čāris, then the left foot in the Apakrānta (Apasarptā) Čāri and the right foot in the Sakaṭasya Čāri. Moving around alternately in these Čāris, will be the Čāri Maṇḍala named the Adhyardha to be used in personal combat.

63-64. Piṣṭakaṭṭa.—The right foot [to be moved] in the Sūci Čāri and the left foot in the Apakrānta [then] the right foot in

54-55 (B.XI.56b-58a, G.54-55). 1 This khanda-maṇḍala seems to be another name for edakākriḍa-ta.
56-58 (B.XI.58b-61a, G.56-58). 1 āsphoṭana—padatalena bhumi-
tūṣana (Ag.).
63-64 (B.XI.65b-67a, G.63-64).
the Bhujāṅgatrasitā Cārī and the left foot too in the same Cārī. Thus going round in the Bhujāṅgatrásitā Cārī is known as the Cārī Maṇḍala named the Piṣṭakuṭṭa known to be used in personal combat.

65. Cāṣagata—Going round with feet in the Cāṣagata Cārī is called the Cārī Maṇḍala named Cāṣagata. It to be used in personal combat.

66. Here I have described in brief the Maṇḍalas arising out of the various Cāris. Now I shall describe the Sama Cāris.

67. The use of the Sama Cāris are known as Sama Maṇḍalas. [An actor] using them is to follow the instruction of the master actor (ācāryabuddhi).

68. These Maṇḍalas to be used in fight and personal combat, are to be performed with sportiveness and graceful movements of limbs, and should be accompanied by [suitable] instrumental music.

Here ends Chapter XII of Bharata’s Nātyaśāstra, which treats of the Rules about the Maṇḍalas.

67 (B.XI.69b-70a, G.67). 68 (B.XI.79b-71a, G.68).
CHAPTER THIRTEEN

THE DIFFERENT GAITS

1. So much about the formation of the Maṇḍalas by a combination of the Systems of Cāri (cārī-nyāyāma). I shall hereafter describe the Gaits suitable for (lit. existing in) different characters [in a play].

Entrance of dramatis personae

2-3. After the Upavahana in accompaniment of drums and other musical instruments has been performed by observing Kalās suitable to the Mārga [adopted in it], and the Dhruvās [to be sung] at the entrance of dramatis personae, have commenced and the curtain has been drawn away, the actors who are to develop the Sentiments in the various items [of a play] should enter (lit. be made to enter) the stage.

Posture for superior and middling characters at the entrance

4-7. In case of characters of the superior and the middling types [the actor] should assume the Vaiṣṇava Sthāna, his breast being raised, Sama and Caturasra, shoulders at rest and not raised very much, the neck as graceful as that of a peacock, the shoulders eight Angulas apart from the ears, the chin four Aṅgulas apart from the breast, and the two hands (the right and the left) respectively at the navel and at the left waist.

The interval of their feet

8-9. [In the posture described above] the interval between the two feet [of the actor] should be two Tālas and a half. Steps

1 (B.XII.1, G.1). 1 On the Gait Ag. says: "The Gait is to be prescribed with a view to the person, Sentiment, situation, place and occasion".

2-3 (B.XII.2-3, G.2-3). 1 It seems that upavahana gave rise to upohana(Pkt.) which afterwards was adopted in its place; for upohana see Nś. (Ch) XXXI. 235ff. It is defined by Ag. as follows: upohyante samāsa-nyāsataḥ padakalātālasamabhihitāh svara yasminn aige tat tathoktam (I.p.186).

4-7 (B.XII.4-7, G.4-7). 8-9 (B.XII.8-9, G.8-9).
that he will take should according to his own measure [of the hand] be four or two Tālas or one Tāla wide.

9-10. In case of [characters such as] gods and kings the steps should be four Tālas wide, of the middling [type of characters] two Tālas, and of women and persons of the inferior type one Tāla wide.

The time for their steps

10-11. [And the time required for the steps should be] four or two Kalās or one Kalā only. [Steps] of the superior [characters] should take four Kalās, those of the middling type two Kalās and those of the inferior type one Kalā only.

The tempo of their Gait

12. An expert in the theatrical art should apply three kinds of tempos—slow, medium and quick—to the Gait [of different characters] according to their nature.

13. The Gait of the superior [characters should be] slow, that of the middling [characters should have] the medium [tempo, while the Gait of] the inferior [characters should be] quick and copious. [Thus] should be applied the three tempos according to the spirit [of the different characters].

14. So much about the rules regarding the timing and tempo [of the steps]. O the sinless ones, listen now about the manner of taking steps [suitable to different characters].

The natural Gait

15. In his natural [Gait] a superior [character] is to raise his knee up to the height of the waist and in case of Cāris to be used in fighting the same (i.e. the knee) is to be raised up to the height of the breast.

16-19. With the graceful steps of the Pārśvākrānta Cāri and
in accompaniment of instrumental music he should go five uniform steps, towards the corner of the stage and then he should move in the Süci Cāri by putting forward his left foot first and the right foot afterwards. Then turning round he should go [five similar steps] towards the second corner of [of stage] and then move in the Süci Cāri by putting forward his left foot first and the right foot afterwards. Next time he should [again turn round and] go [five similar steps] towards the musical instruments and then again move in the Süci Cāri by putting forward his left foot first and the right foot afterwards. Thus his movement will consist of twentyone steps.

20. In an oblong stage the actor (bhavata) should make elaborate foot movements (lit. coming and going by foot-steps), but in square and triangular stages such movements should respectively be of the Caturasra and the Tryasra types.

21. When [a character] is walking along with his equals, the tempo [of his Gait] will be [according to his own rank in terms] of four or two Kalās or of one Kalā.

22. But when any one is walking accompanied by persons of the middling and the inferior types [the tempo of the Gait of the group] will be in terms of four and two Kalās and one Kalā.

23. The wise actors should make the steps four Talas wide in case of gods, Dānavas Pannagas (Nāga), Yakṣas, kings, and Rākṣasas.

24. All [other] dwellers of the heaven\(^1\) will have steps of medium [width]. But those among them who are haughty\(^2\) should have Gait similar to that of the gods.

---

\(^{1}\) See V. 70-71.  
\(^{2}\) vedah—pāraśikṣetre sūcinādaniśataḥ (Ag.).

20 (B.XII.20, G.20).  
21 (B.XII.21, G.21).

22 (B.XII.22, G.22).

23 (B.XII.23, G.23).  
1 B.G. reads here dāitya instead of deva (god).

24 (B.XII.24, G.24).  
1 By suchi dwellers devadutas are meant (Ag.).  
2 mātali-prabhātayāḥ (Ag.).
The sages' question:

25-28. "If the kings are human beings why should they have a Gait similar to that of the gods?" It is said [in reply], "Why should not the kings have a Gait suitable for these (i.e. gods)? In drama the characters [are of three kinds, viz.] divine, semi-divine (lit. divine-human) and human. Of these, the nature of gods is divine, that of the kings is semi-divine and that of the others is known to the people as human. For the kings have been described in the Vedas and the Vedânta (Upanishad) as being made up (lit. born) of the parts of [different] gods. Hence there cannot be any fault in kings imitating the gods."

29. This is the rule of the Gait in ordinary walking, but for Gaits in cases of hurry, insanity and anger the rule about its measure will not apply.

Gait under special conditions

30. [In those cases] the producers of plays are to apply to all the different characters, superior, middling and inferior, Gaits as modified by their peculiar condition.

31. Their Gaits should be of the duration of half of four Kalâs or half of that (i.e. two Kalâs) on attaining conditions other than the normal ones.

32. [The relative position of the different characters as regards the timing of their Gaits is as follows]: While a superior [character] will have a Gait of four Kalâs, a middling [character] is to have that of two Kalâs and an inferior [character] of one Kalâ.

33. When a middling character will have a Gait of a Kalâ, an inferior character is to have that of half a Kalâ. Thus one should make [in different Gaits under special conditions] a reduction of Kalâs.

33 (B.XII.33, G.33). 1 G. read 33 a differently.
34. The Gait of superior persons is not to be applied to that of the middling type, and the Gait of the middling characters is not to be applied to that of the inferior type.\(^1\)

Tempo of Gaits under special conditions

35-37. In case of an attack of fever, hunger, fatigue, due to austerities, [excessive] terror,\(^4\) dissimulation, uneasiness, love [in separation], sorrow and in the sick persons’ walking the Gait should be of slow tempo lasting more than four Kalāśas. But in case of anxiety the Gait should be of four Kalāśas’ [duration].\(^2\)

37-40. In case of concealed (lit. uneasy) love, panic, fright, agitation, joy, hurried action, hearing of unwelcome news, haughtiness or insult, sight of pomptuous objects, urgent work, distress, search for enemies, pursuit of an offender and pursuit by a ferocious animal, the wise [actor] should have Gaits with steps of two Kalāśas’ [duration].

Gait in the Erotic Sentiment

41-44. The Gait in ordinary love-making should be graceful. [The lover] is to enter the stage with the female Messenger (dāli) showing the way. He is to act his part (lit. meaning connected with the play) by means of the Śūcā.\(^1\) He should be adorned with lovely garments, perfumes, ornaments\(^2\) and garlands of various sweet-scenting flowers. He should walk with graceful steps in the Atikrāntā Cāri, and his limbs should have the Sāuṣṭhava, and he should move with proper tempo and Tāla. His hands should always follow the feet. The former should be raised along with the falling of the latter and with the raising of the latter the former should fall (lit. vice versa)\(^8\).

45-48. Now listen about the Gait in case of concealed love. After dismissing his servants (lit. men) the lover is to walk

---

\(^1\) vismaye G. vikṣate.\(^2\) G. omits 37a.

34 (BXII.39b-40a, G.34).
37 (B.XII.34-35a, G.35-36).  
41-44 (B.XII.40b-44, G.40b-44a).  
\(^1\) See NS. XXIV.43.
\(^2\) Read vṛddyair gandhair tathā vatrāir alambūraś ca.
\(^3\) G. omits 44b.
45-48 (P.XII.45-48a, G.44b-47).
[at night] along with the female Messenger as his guide. He is to put out the lamp. He is to be dressed in [simple] clothes suited to the time day and is to not make his toilet elaborately. In making love secretly a person is to walk with slow and silent steps, and from [any] sounds [heard at the time] he is constantly to look around and tremble in his body and to have a faltering Gait.

Gait in the Terrible Sentiment

48-54. [In treating the Gait] in the Terrible Sentiment I shall speak only with regard to Daityas, Rākṣasas and Nagas. O Brahmins, the Terrible Sentiment only is dominant in their case. And this Terrible Sentiment is of three kinds, viz. Terrible in make-up, Terrible in limbs and Terrible by nature. [An example of] the Terrible in make-up is [a Rākṣasa] with his body dripping in blood, mouth moistened with it and having pieces of flesh in the hands. An example of the Terrible in limb is a very tall [Rākṣasa] with a prodigious physical frame, many heads, and many hands holding weapons of various kinds. And an example of the Terrible by nature, is a person with red eyes, tawny hair, black complexion and rough voice and a person who is always scolding [others] and who stands with feet four Tālas apart and take steps four Tālas wide. This is the Gait which [characters] resembling them are to have.

Gait in the Odious Sentiment

54-56. The Gait [of a person walking] on the ground which is either a place of cremation or a place gruesome on account of a battle [having taken place there] should be used in acting in connexion with the Odious Sentiment. The feet in the Eḍakārikātī Cāri falling in quick succession sometimes close to and sometimes wide apart from each other, with the hands following them, will constitute the Gait in the Odious Sentiment.

Gait in the Heroic Sentiment

57. The Gait in the Heroic Sentiment should consist of swift footsteps in the various Cāris.

54-56 (B.XII.55-57a, G.54-55).
58. In case of mental excitement the Gait should consist of footsteps of proper Kalâ and Tāla (kāla) in the Pārśvakrāntā, Āviddhā and Sūc Ācāris.

Gait in the Marvellous and the Comic Sentiments

59-60. These are the Gaits prescribed for the superior characters. I shall now describe the Gait for the middling and the inferior characters. In their astonishment and joy they are to take swift and short steps in all directions, and in their laughter too they are to take to this and similar foot movements.

Gait in the Pathetic Sentiment

61-63. The Gait in the Pathetic Sentiment should be in slow tempo [and it should be connected with] eyes full of tears, drooping limbs, arms thrown up and down, and loud weeping. And this Gait is also to contain one and a half times more Kalās and is to have repeated foot-movements [of the same kind]. This [Gait] is also to be used in case of women and persons of the inferior type.

63-66. [In connexion with the Pathetic Sentiment] the superior characters should be patient, tearful, heaving deep sighs and looking upwards and [their Gait in conformity with these conditions] is to be of no [regular] measure and [they are] not to have the Sauṣṭhava [of the body]. In case of death of their beloved persons and relatives they are to bend down on their breast in dejection and to become senseless due to grief, and to walk with the feet not raised very high. When too much beaten the shoulder and the arms are to be made drooping and the [entire] body is to be made unsteady (lit. moved round) and walking [should be] by measured steps.

67-69. A [special] Gait is to be assigned to women and persons of the inferior type when they are attacked with cold or are overtaken by a torrential shower. [In such a case] they are to

61-63 (B.XII 60b-62, G.60-62a).
63-66 (B.XII.63-66, G.62b-65). 1 B. reads one additional hemistich after 64.
draw all their limbs together, to shiver greatly, to put their two hands on the breast, to bend their body, and their teeth are to clatter and lips are to throb and the chin is to quiver, and in representing an attack of cold the Gait should be slow.

Gait in the Terrible Sentiment

70-75. In the Terrible [Sentiment] the experts should make the Gait of women, and men of the inferior type who are lacking in spirits, suitable to their nature (lit. in that manner).

[In the Terrible Sentiment] they are to have wide open and moving eyes, the Vidhuta head and the look awe-stricken and turned alternately to sides, and holding the Kapota hand they are to walk with quick steps, trembling body and faltering Gait. This [kind of movement] should be resorted to when a person is pursued [by an enemy], threatened or frightened [by any one]. [And the same rule will apply] when they see anything dreadful or hear any dreadful sound. In the terrified state the Gait suitable for women, and men who are cowards (lit. have renounced prowess) will consist of movement of the feet in the Eka₃k₃rdita Cārī falling in quick succession sometimes close to and sometimes at a distance from each other, and the hands are to follow them.

Gait of merchants and ministers

76-78. The Gait of merchants and ministers is to be made natural. They should walk in the śAtiKṛntave Cārī with steps two Talas wide. Their [left hand] showing the upturned Katākānukha should be on the navel, and the right [lit. the first hand] showing the upturned Arūla should be on one side away [from the left one]. They should not make their limbs drooping, motionless or excessively moving.

Gait of ascetics and sectarian

79-86. Yatis, Śramanas, those practising austerities and those observing the vow of Brahmaçarya are to have a [special]

---

70-75 (B.XII.70-75, G.69-74).
76-78 (B.XII.76-78, G.75-77). ¹ B. reads stana₃ntare for tadan₃ntare (G. tatha₃ntare).
Gait. [In acting their part] a wise [actor] should have immobile eyes looking only four cubits [in the front], a ready memory, the entire body in steadiness and he is to keep the mind at rest, to assume the marks belonging to his sect and to have modest clothes generally dyed in dark red, and to stand with the Samaṇḍa feet and to assume the Śṭāṇa of the same name. Then he should make two Catura hands one of which is to be stretched. And assuming a serene appearance in conformity with the performance he should perform the Āṭikrānta (Aṭikrama) Cāri with natural (lit. not drooping) limbs. The best ascetics of the great vow are to be connected with these qualities or others contrary to them. As for the rest of the ascetics they according to the vow [enjoined by their own sects] are to have a Gait confused or stately or sober or mild. And in case of the ascetics of the Paśupata sect they should walk in the Śakaṭāṣṭya and Āṭikrānta Cāris with haughty steps.

Gait of a person in darkness or of a blind man

87. The Gait [of a person] in darkness or the Gait of a blind [man] should consist of the feet drawn over the ground and the hands groping for the way.

Gait of one riding a chariot

88-92. The Gait of a person riding a chariot should consist of simple (cārṇa) steps. From the Samaṇḍa Śṭāṇa (posture) he is to make a mimicry of the being carried in a chariot (lit. go the movement of a chariot), and with the one [hand he is to take up] the bow and with the other the pole [of the chariot]. And his charioteer is to remain busy with the whip and the reins, and the draught animals according to the class [of the vehicle] should be represented differently. And with quick and simple steps he is to enter the stage. The Gait of one in a celestial car (vimāna) should be made like that of one riding a chariot. One who is about to

---

1. līṅgam i.e. jāpabhasmakaupināḍi (Ag.).
2. Gacched—atikramād (B. gacched vyatikramad, G. gacched yatikramād).
3. andha-yūne (B.G. read aṭha yūne).
mount [these vehicles] is to hold his body up and with opposite of this [motion] one is to make one's descant [from them].

Gait while moving in the sky

92-95. The Gait of a character moving through the sky is to include the aerial Cāris and looking downwards, and [besides this] one is to move [first] from the Śamapāda 8thāna (posture) with simple steps. The Gait of one who descends from the sky is also to be of this kind. This Gait is to consist of steps straight and wide or high and low, or irregular and round about.

The Gait of a person falling from the sky is to include the Apaviddha arms, scattered ends of clothes and eyes set on the ground [below].

Gait in ascending any lofty palace

96-98. [In a play sometimes] there is necessity of ascending [stairs of] a palace, tree or hill or any other high object and descending from them or getting down into a river or some lower region and getting up from it. In ascending [the stairs of] a palace a person should move the feet in the Atikrāntā Cāri, and with the body held up he should put forward his steps [the flight of] stairs. In descending from the same, the body should be slightly bent and one foot should be in the Atikrānta Cāri and the other in the Añcita movement.

98-100. This Gait suited to ascending [the stairs of] a palace should be applied in climbing hills. But in the case of hills the limbs are to be thrown up. The climbing of trees [should be represented] by steps in the Atikrānta, Śuci, Apakrāntā and Pārsvakrānta Cāris.

Gait in getting down into lower places

101-104. This should also be the Gait in coming down [from the trees] and the same should apply in case of getting down into a river.

92-95 (B.XII.92-95, G.91b-94).
96-98 (B.XII.96-98a, G.95-97). 1 gātram ānanya (B. gātram asyaṇa).
99-100 (B.XII.103-104, G.103 104).
The Gait in [case of coming down from the top of] a palace will apply only in crossing [a river].

The Gait of a person moving in the river will be according to the depth (lit. measure) of the water. In shallow water, with the tucking up of one's clothes, and in the deep [water] with the throwing out of hands one is to move with the fore part of one's body slightly bent. And in case of a person's being carried away by the current (lit. water) he is to stretch out his arms one by one to push forward water repeatedly and during this movement all his limbs are to be busily engaged and the mouth filled up [with water].

Gait in travelling by boat

105. The Gait of a person travelling by a boat should be made up of quick steps. According to these rules (lit. this rule) one should observe the various Gaits and movements.

106-107. All these [conveyances] are to be represented (lit. made) by [suggestive] tokens (samyāṇa) only. [If you ask] "why", [the reply will be the question], "Will the actors (lit. producers) have to die when the character [to be represented] is said to be dead?" The elephant will be represented by taking up a goad, the horse by a bit and the other conveyances by a whip.

Gait in riding a horse

108. The Gait of a person riding a horse will consist of the Vaiśākha Sthāna and simple foot steps of the various kinds.

Gait of serpents

109. The Gait of serpents will be by the Svastika feet. [To represent it the actor] is to move in the Pārvavatā Cārī and then make a Recaka of the Svastika feet.

105 (B.XII.102a, 105b, G.102b, 105a).
106-107 (B.XII.106-107, G.105-106). 1 G. reads 106b as tasmān nīlī iti prakete kim karaṇyam prayoktybhīḥ. This passage shows that use of painted scenery was not indispensable in the ancient Indian stage. On this point Ag. says: नेत्र विषयार्थविद्यमिति रथसनात्तायितम् न(?)युक्तम्। चक्रवर्त्तूनिष्ठं वस्त्राकर्षणम्।

Gait of a Parasite

110. The Gait of a Parasite (vīta) should be made graceful. [An actor] is to represent (lit. go) the Gait of a Parasite by putting forward Ākujaśīta (Kujaśīta) feet within one Tāla and holding the Kaṭakāvardhamāna hands with the proper Sauṣṭhava and letting [these] hands follow the feet

Gait of the Kāncūkīya

112-113. [The Gait] of the Kāncūkīya (armour-bearer)¹ should be made [suitable] to his particular age and condition. When he is not old² his Gait should be as follows: With the feet raised half a Tāla high and simple steps he should walk carrying his limbs like one who is treading (lit. touching) upon mud.

114. But in case of his being [thoroughly] old he should walk with the trembling body and raise the feet slowly and with [every] step he is to take his breadth.

¹ The word kaṇcūkīya (kaṇcūkīna) should be translated as 'armour-bearer' and not as 'chamberlain' which term should be used for sanātindrī; see Kuṭīlya's Arthasastra (2. 4. 23). BhP. (p. 292) defines the Kaṇcūkīya as follows:

खण्डकोषम् जयस्री विविधे शस्य \\
सर्वायुक्तम् च \\
कण्डकीयं निष्ठिते \\
कण्डकुक्विं क्रियाप्रभृति

(Passionless Brahmins who have knowledge and wisdom being in charge of (the king's) armour and crown, and holding the cane-stick (as symbol of their authority), are called Kaṇcūkīyas by the wise).

² a-vyādhasya. This adjective of the kaṇcūkīya contradicts the following (probably very late) definition: खण्डकोषम् जयस्री विविधे शस्य \\
कण्डकोषम्। शस्य मित्रावति शस्य मित्रावति ब्रह्मा \\
कण्डकीयं निष्ठिते \\
कण्डकुक्विं क्रियाप्रभृति

This passage has been wrongly ascribed to Bharata in Rucipati's commentary to the Anaraghrāghava (ed. in Kāṇyamālā, p. 109). The kaṇcūkīya in the plays ascribed to Bhūsa (i.e. Svpuna, Pratimā, Abhi, Paśca, Dūta and Bāla.) does not show any trace of old age. The kaṇcūkīna in the Śak, deplores that the cane-stick which he had taken up as the symbol of his office, has become in old age the support of his body which he could move with difficulty (V.3.). From this it may be assumed that he was appointed before old age came upon him.

144 (B.XII. 144, G 113). ¹ For an old kaṇcūkīna see Śak. loc. cit Mudrā, II, etc, 9. and III. 1.
Gait of emaciated, sick and fatigued persons

115-117. The Gait of an emaciated person should consist of slow steps. And in case of an attack of fever or other illness, or of fatigue due to austerities, or hunger, a person is to walk with lean and depressed belly, feeble voice, depressed cheek, lusterless eyes, slow movement of the hands and the feet, tremor and affliction of the limbs and with [every] step he is to emit breath.

Gait of a person walking a long distance

118. The Gait of a person walking a long distance is to consist of slow steps, narrowing of limbs and the rubbing of the knees.

Gait of a corpulent person

119. A corpulent person is to walk with the feet raised slowly and he is to drag on his body with great effort.

120. A person going with [hurried] steps should be copiously breathing, and be covered with perspiration due to fatigue and his steps should be simple.

Gait of intoxicated persons

121. The Gait of persons with light (lit. young) and medium intoxication will be reeling, with the two feet [sometimes going] backwards.

122. The Gait of persons heavily (lit. worst) intoxicated will consist of unsteady feet, reeling body and staggering steps.

Gait of a lunatic

123-130. The Gait of a lunatic will consist of irregular steps, many Čarīs in imitation of [various types of] men. He has unpolished and dishevelled hair and body covered with dust; he talks without any reason and talks too much in an unnatural
manner; sometimes he sings and sometimes laughs and is not ready to accompany any one; and he sometimes dances in joy and sometimes makes drumming with any object he may find before him. Once he runs swiftly and at other times stands still; again sometimes he is seated and sometimes lying down. He is to wear rags of different kinds and to make the public read his irregular dwelling place. A lunatic will be of the above description (lit. this man). His gait will be as follows:

After moving in the Baddha Cari he is to cross his feet. The going round in all the four directions with this Cari he is to perform the Bhramara Mandala outwards and reach one corner of the stage. Then turning the Trika gracefully and holding the Latā hand with irregular movements he is to move with his feet.

Gait of lame men, cripples and dwarfs

131-136. The Gait of lame persons, cripples and dwarfs in connexion with the display of physical defects for the sake of the Comic Sentiment, will be of three kinds. In one kind of Gait of lame persons the feet are to remain stiff. In the second one, feet are to be made Agratalasaṅcara and the body is to held up (lit. raised) by the stiff foot. [And in the third] the body is to move on one foot, and to rest on another foot and setting feet in this order [the lame men] are to go. This will be one’s Gait when one has run a thorn in the sole of one’s foot. The Gait of cripples will consist of the Agratalasaṅcara and the Aścita feet, the steady body and the Nata shanks. During the Gait of dwarfs all their limbs are to be narrowed down and they should neither move [quickly] nor take [wide] steps.

Gait of the Jester

137-140. The Jester will have the same Gait consisting of simple laughable steps with feet raised high [and put forward]. And his Gait will relate to three kinds of laughter: laughter due to


limbs, due to words and due to the costume and make-up. Of these the ugly and big teeth, baldness, hunch on the back, lameness and, distorted face will be objects of laughter due to limbs. When one walks like a crane looking up and looking down and with wide strides, this too becomes an object of laughter due to limbs.

140-141. Talking incoherently, meaninglessly, unnaturally and uttering obscene words are to be known as [objects of] laughter due to words.

141-142. A person covered with tattered clothes or skin, or smeared with ink (or lamp-black), ashes or yellow ochre is [an object of] laughter due to the costume and make-up. Hence the [Jester] after considering the characters [he will be confronting] should carefully (lit. essentially) assume [one or more of] these states.

143-146. The Gait of the Jester should be distinguished according to his different conditions. [For example] in his natural Gait he is to carry the Katiñjaka (katiñja) in his left hand and to show the Catura (gesture) with the right hand. Besides this he is lower by turns one of his sides, head, hands and feet observing proper tempo and Tala. The Gait other than this which is natural, will be abnormal. His Gait on having some food which was difficult to get, will be arrested.

Gait of the menials

146-148. The Gait to represent the walking of servants of lower order or other persons of the inferior type should be as follows : in the walking of servants, one of their sides or head or a hand or a foot is to be lowered and their eyes are to move to [different] objects.

9 For vakavat G. reads khagavat.
10 For vakyahāsyam B.G. reads kānyahāsyam.
11 B. reads 146a as alābhahābhad bhuktasya etc.
146-148 (B.XII.146b-147, G.145-146).
Gait of the Śakāra

148-149. The Gait of the Śakāra will consist of proud but ordinary steps, and while walking he will touch his clothes and ornaments and often look at them, and from the unnatural motion of his body his garlands, and suspended parts of the clothes are to move to and fro.

Gait of lowly persons

150. Persons of inferior birth are to walk with eyes looking around, protecting their limbs from the contact of other people.

Gait of the Mleccha tribes

151. The Gait and movements of the men of different Mleccha tribes such as the Pulindas and the Śabaras should be made according to the lands they inhabit.

Gait of birds

152. The Gait of birds, beasts of prey and other animals is to be made according to the character natural to them.

Gait of lions, bears and monkeys

153. The Gait of lions, bears and monkeys is to be made [like that] which was assumed by the lord Viṣṇu incarnated as the Man-lion. [It is as described below.]

154-155. [In this Gait] after assuming the Ālikha Sthāna (posture) with limbs conforming to it, that is, one hand on the knee and the other on the breast, one is to look all around and put one’s chin on one’s shoulder and to walk with feet placed five Tālas apart.

156. The Gait should be applied to [represent] lions and such other animals at the time of personal combat as well as in entering the stage.

---

148-149 (B.XII.149-150a, G.147)  1 G. omits 141a.
150 (B.XII.150b-151a, G.148).  151 (B.XII. 151b-152a, G.149).
154-155 (B.XII.154b-156a, G.152-153).
156 (B.XII.156b-157a, G.154).  1 Lions etc. here indicate actors with the mask of these animals.
157. As for the rest of animals the Gait and the Sthāna (posture) for them when entering the stage or carrying any one or anything on the back should be made suitable to the occasion.

158. These [different] Gaits are thus to be used by wise [actors]. The Gaits that have not been described by me, are to be adopted from [the practice of] people.

Walking postures of women

159-160. I shall now speak of the Gaits and movements of women. The Sthāna (posture) of women in walking and speaking [to others] will be Āyata, Āvahittha and Āsvakrānta.

160-161. Āyata: In the Āyata Sthāna (posture) the right foot will be Sama, the left (lit. the other at-the side) foot Tryaśra (obliquely placed) and the left waist raised.

161-164 (Uses): This Sthāna is to be used in invocation, dismissal, observing carefully, thinking and dissimulation. And first appearance on the stage, scattering handfuls of flowers on the stage, anger due to jealous love, twisting the forefinger, prohibition, pride, profundity, silence, fit of resentment (māna) and looking to the horizon are also to be represented from this Sthāna.

164-165. Āvahittha: The left foot will be Sama and the right (lit. the other at the side) foot Tryaśra (obliquely placed) and the left waist raised up.

165-167. (Uses): This Sthāna is known (lit. remembered) as natural for women during conversation [with anyone], in determination, satisfaction and conjecture. In representing

---

157 (B.XII.157b-158a, G.155).
158 (B.XII.158b-159a, G.156).
159-160 (B.XII.159b-160, G.156c-157). 1 B. reads five additional hemistichs after this.
160-161 (B.XII.163b-164a, G.158).
161-164 (B.XII.164b-167a, G.159-161).
164-165 (B.XII.167b-168a, G.162). 1 B.G. read two additional couplets after this.
165-167 (B.XII.171b-172a, 170b 171a, G.165-166).
anxiety, amorousness, sportiveness, grace, the Erotic and the like [Sentiments] and looking towards the way of someone [coming or going] this Sthāna is to be used.

167-168. Āsvakṛānta : The Sthāna in which one foot is raised and the other is resting on its fore-part and [ready for] the Sūcī or the Āviddha Cārī is called Āsvakṛānta¹.

168-169. (Uses) : This Sthāna is to be assumed in taking hold of the branch of a tree, plucking a cluster [of flowers] or in the taking of rest by goddesses or women for any purposes.

169-171. The Sthāna will be [maintained by a dancer] till any movement begins. For during a dance the Sthāna is at an end when the Cārī has begun (lit. is present). This is the rule of the Sthāna for women and for men as well. I shall now describe women’s Gait in relation to their nature.

Gait of young women

171-176. [Such a Gait will serially include the following Sthāna and movements] : The Avaliththa Sthāna, the left hand pointing downwards, the right hand with the Kaṭakāmukha gesture placed on the navel, the right foot raised gracefully up one Tāla and thrown on the left one and simultaneously with that the left hand with the Latā gesture placed on the navel and the right side bent, placing the right hand on the hip and the Udveśṭta movement of the left hand, then the left foot put forward, the right hand with the Latā gesture, [After assuming this Sthāna and movements] they are to walk five steps with the body slightly bent and the head gracefully held in the Udvahita posture.

176-177. The rules for going about on the stage which have been prescribed for men will apply also for women.

¹ B. reads two additional couplets after this.
Gait of young women

177-179. The steps of women should not be made of six or eight Kalās duration. Such a step will be irksome for them. This will be the Gait of women in their youth. I shall speak [now] about the Gait of women who are aged (sthavīyasi). 1

Gait of aged women

179-181. After assuming the Avalittha Stāna and putting the left hand on the waist and the right hand with the Arāla gesture upturned, placed between the navel and the breasts, they are to walk gradually with their body neither relaxed nor stiff nor [much] moved about.

Gait of handmaids

181-183. The Gait of hand-maids should be made bewildered (milhārentā). They are to walk with slightly raised body and flourishing arms, after assuming the Avalittha Stāna with the left hand pointing downwards and the right hand showing the Kāṭakānukha hand held on the navel.

Gait of half-women

183-184. The Gait of the half-women, an admixture of that of men and of woman will consist of stately but graceful movement of limbs and playful steps (lit. feet).

184-186. The time required for the Gait which has been prescribed for persons of the superior type will be halved in case of women and the inferior types of men. And the Gait [prescribed for persons] of the superior, the middling and the inferior types will apply in case of women [of those types] except for the footsteps which will be graceful [for the latter].

177-179 (B.XII.184b-186a, G.177-178). 1 R.G. read sthāniyā yā striyas tāsām for sthāviyasmān elāsām. The word sthāviyas may well be a comparative degree form of sthāvira. Cf. daviyas for āvira.

179-181 (B.XII.186b-188a, G.179-180).

181-183 (B.XII.188b-190a, G.181-182).

183-184 (B.XII.190b-191a, G.183).

184-186 (B.XII.191b-193a, G.184-185).
Gait of children

186-187. The Gait of children will be according to their will and no Sauntha and [fixed] measurement will be required.

Gait of hermaphrodites

187-188. The third type of persons will be hermaphrodites in whose case women's Gait to the exclusion of their [partial] male character, should be applied.

Gait in the change of role

188-189. A change [of their role] by men, women and hermaphrodites should be represented by assumption on their part of Gaits suitable to those [new roles] to the exclusion of their own [original] character.

Gait of persons in disguise

189-191. For disguise, sports or deception [of others] a woman assumes the role of a man, and a man that of a woman. [In such cases] the woman should play the role of a man with patient and liberal spirit and intelligence, and with acts as well as dress, words and movement suitable to that [character].

191-192. To play the role of a woman a man is to wear her clothes, speak like her and look at things and abstain from looking at these as she does, and is to assume a delicate and slow Gait.

Gait of the tribal women

192-193. Women of inferior birth and of the Pulinda and the Šabara tribes are to have Gaits natural to their community.

Gait of women ascetics

193-194. In case of observing a vow or practising austerities or bearing the mark [of religious sects.] or staying in the sky the Samapada Cāt is to be used [as their Gait].

186-187 (B.XII.193b-194a, G.186).
187-188 (B.XII.194b-195a, G 187).
188-189 (B.XII.195b-196a, G.188).
189-192 (B.XII.196b-199a, G.189-191).
192-193 (B.XII.199b-200a, G.192).
193-194 (B.XII.200b-201a, G.193).
194-195. An expert in dramatic art should not assign the energetic Angahāras, Čāris and Maṇḍalas to women.

Sitting postures for men and women

195-199. Sitting posture (sthāna) for men and women should be made conforming to (lit. combined with) the different States which they are in, and similar should be their postures while in bed.

Sitting at ease

196-197. In sitting at ease the two feet are at rest (vīkāma-bhītā) and kept doubled up (uṇcīta), the Trika is slightly raised, and the two hands are put on the thighs on the two sides.

Sitting in a thinking mood

197-198. When a person is to assume [deep] thinking, [from the easy sitting posture] he is to stretch slightly one of his feet, and the other foot is to rest on the seat and the head is to bend on one side.

Sitting in sorrow

198-199. When a person is in [deep] sorrow, [from the easy sitting posture] he is to put up his hands for supporting the chin, or his head is to rest on the shoulder, and he is [to look like] one whose mind and the sense-organs are not working (lit. lost).

Sitting in fainting and intoxication

199-200. When a person is fainting or is intoxicated, tired, weakened or sad, [from the easy sitting posture] he is to stretch his arms loosely and to sit depending on [some] support.
Sitting in shame and sleep etc.

200-201. When a person is ill, ashamed, asleep or in meditation he is to lump together his limbs between legs and knees.

Sitting on ceremonial occasions

201-202. In offering a libation of water to the spirits of diseased parents, muttering of Mantras, saying the Sandhyā prayers and making Ācamana, one is to assume the sitting posture with the hump raised, in which the hip and the heels come together.

Sitting in pacifying a beloved woman

202-203. In appeasing [the anger of] a beloved woman and pouring ghee into the sacrificial fire and doing similar other acts, a person is to put one of his stretched knees on the ground [from the sitting posture mentioned above].

Sitting in worshipping a deity

203-206. Downcast face and the sitting posture with the two knees on the ground (i.e. kneeling down) is to be assumed in adoring a deity, pacifying the angry [superiors], bitterly crying for sorrow, seeing a dead body, the fear of persons of low spirits, the begging of something by lowly persons and servants, and, attendance during the Homa and the sacrificial work. Aseetics (muni) while practising austerities are [also] to assume this sitting posture (lit. rule about sitting).

Seats for different characters

206-207. Now the seats (lit. rules regarding the seats) for males and females in a drama are twofold: public (vāhyā) and private (ābhyantrī). [These two terms] public and private relate to the royalty (lit. the king).

200-201 (B.XII.207b-208a, G.200).
201-202 (B.XII.208b-209a, G.201).
202-203 (B.XII.209b-210a, G.202).
203-205 (B.XII.210b-213a, G.203-205).
206-207 (B.XII.213b-214a, G.206).
Seats for male characters

208-210. O Brahmins, gods and kings are to be given the Lion-seat (i.e. throne), the priests and the ministers the cane-seat, the commander of the army and the crown-prince the Mundā-seat, the Brahmins the wooden seat and the other princes the carpet-seat. This rule of seats should be observed in the royal court.

Seats for female characters

210-214. I shall now speak of the rule of seats for women. The chief queen should be given the Lion-seat, the female relatives and wives of the king other than the chief queen the Mundā-seat, the wives of priests and ministers the cane-seat, the concubines [of the king] the seat consisting of cloth, skin or carpet, the wives of Brahmans and female ascetics the seat made of wood (patā), the wives of Vaiśyas the seat of pillow (cushion), and for the remaining women the ground will be the seat. So much about the rule of seats in the inner appartments as well as in public places. While residing in one's own house one can take any seat according to one's liking.

Seats for ascetics and sectarians

215. The seats for the ascetics should be according to the rules [of the order] they are observing. For the members of different sects with special marks the seats will be according to their vows.

216. While pouring ghee into the sacrificial fire or doing the sacrificial duty in general or offering a libation of water to the departed parents one is to sit on a Vṛṣṭī, Mundā-seat or cane-seat.

2 mundāsana is probably nothing other than Bengali modā.
210-214 (B.XII.217b-221, G.210b-214).
215 (B.XII.222, G.215). 1 For. example, some have tiger-skin as their seat, some deer-skin or a piece of woolen blanket.
216 (B.XII.223, G.216). 1 A seat made of kuśa grass (Apto).
General rules about seats

217. Other local people (sthānīya) who are of [high] birth and possess [great] learning should be honoured by the king by [an offer of suitable] seats.

218. To his equals he (i.e. the king) the is to offer seats equal in height to that of his own, to persons of medium importance, the seats of middling height, and to persons who are superior to him, should be given a more elevated seat, while the lowly persons are to be seated on the ground.

219. Before the preceptor, the king or the spiritual guide (guru) wise persons are to sit on the ground or on an wooden seat.

220. Sitting together with the spiritual guide, the preceptor or the king in a boat, on an elephant or in a chariot, is allowed (lit. not to be objected to).

Lying-down postures

221. Postures in the bed are known (lit. proclaimed) as Ākuṅcita, Sama, Prasārita, Vivartita, Udvāhita and Natu.

222. Ākuṅcita: Lying down with limbs narrowed down and the two knees sticking to the bed is called the Ākuncita posture. It is to be used in representing persons attacked with cold.

223. Sama: Lying down with the face upwards and the hands free and turning downwards is called the Sama posture. It is the posture in deep sleep.

224. Prasārita: Lying down with one arm as the pillow and the knees stretched, is called the Prasārita posture. It is to be used to represent one enjoying a sleep of happiness.

225. Vivartita: Lying down with the face downwards is called the Vivartita posture. It is to be assumed in [representing,
wound from any weapon, death, vomiting, intoxication and lunacy.

226. Udvāhīta: Lying down with the head resting on the hand and making a movement of the knee, is called the Udvāhīta posture. It is to be used in sports and on entrance of the master.

227. Nāta: Lying down with the legs (lit. shanks) slightly stretched and the two hands loosely resting is called the Nāta posture. It is to be used in laziness, fatigue and distress.

228. This is the [rule of] Gait and movements I was to tell you. Whatever remains unsaid should be devised according to the demand of circumstances. I shall hereafter speak about the division of the stage into Zones in connexion with going about on it.

Here ends Chapter XIII of Bharata's Nātyaśāstra which treats of the Gaits and other Movements.

CHAPTER FOURTEEN
THE ZONES AND THE LOCAL USAGES ETC.

1. One should fix the Zones [of the stage] after knowing the division of the three [kinds of] playhouse, that have been mentioned before by me.

The arrangement of drums

2. The producer [of a play] should arrange the drums between the two doors of the tiring room, which I have described before.

The Zonal division

3. The Zonal division\(^1\) is to be indicated by going about on the stage. \([\text{When one is in a particular}]\ Zone \ [\text{of the stage, it}]\ will change \[\text{lit. be another}\] with his walking out of it.

Utility of the Zonal division

1-6. \([\text{It is}]\ from the \[\text{convention of}]\ the Zonal division that one is to know \[\text{whether the place in which the scene has been laid} the house, a city, a garden, a pleasure resort, a river, a hermitage, a forest, the earth, the sea, \[\text{any part of} the Three worlds, any one of the Seven great divisions of the earth or its continents, any of the different mountains, the sky (lit. light), the \[\text{surface of the} earth or the nether world (\text{vasāḍalu}), the places of rest, cities or palaces of the Dāityas.\(^3\)

7. The Zones should be fixed with reference to places such as a city, a forest, a continent or a mountain in which the scenes have been laid (lit. the event occurs).

---

---

1 (B.XIII.1, G.1). \(^1\) See NŚ, II. 63ff.
2 (B.XIII.2, G.2).
3 (B.XIII.3, G.3). \(^3\) As modern devise of the change of scenes was absent in the ancient Hindu theatre, the convention of the Zonal division indicated the locality in which different characters met.
4-6 (B.XIII.4-6, G.4-6), \(^1\) B. reads \textit{dāityanāgālayas} for \textit{dāityūnām ālayas}.
7 (B.XIII.7, G.7).
Indicating relative location

8. [The Zonal] division should relate to location inside, outside or in the middle and to a place far or near.

9. According to the convention of the Zonal division those who have entered [the stage] earlier, should be taken as being inside [a house], while those entering it later are to be known as remaining outside it.

10. He who enters the stage with the intention of seeing them (i.e. those entering earlier) should report himself turning to the right.

The east on the stage

11. The direction which the drums and the two doors of the tiring room face, should always be considered as the east in course of the dramatic performance.

The rule of exit

12. If any person will go out from the place (lit. there i.e. inside the house) on any business he is to make his exit by the very door he used when entering.

13. If after going out he is to re-enter that house he will make his exit [if necessary] by the door through which the men [who enter later] came.

14-15. If out of necessity he goes along with latter, [re-] enters the house with the latter, or by himself alone, another Zone should be prescribed for the two. This other Zone will be indicated by their [order in] walking.

Indication of rank in group walking

16. With the equals, one is to walk side by side and with one's inferiors one is to walk surrounded [by the latter], and handmaids are to be known by their walking before [the master].

11 (B.XIII.11, G.11).
12 (B.XIII.12, G.12). 1 B. reads the couplet differently.
Indicating distance great, small and medium

17. The same place if much walked over will be taken as a distant land. And near by lands or lands of medium distance are to be indicated likewise (in the same principle).¹

Movement of gods and demigods

18-20. According to the various needs of the plot (lit. play) gods and demigods are to move to cities, forests, seas or mountains through the sky, by an aerial car, by their occult power or by different other acts. But while in disguise in a play they (i.e. gods and demigods) are to move on the ground, so that they may be visible like human beings (lit. through human causes).²

Movement of men in Bhāratavarga

21. The gods and demigods can at their will move to any of [the nine] divisions [of the Jambudvīpa], but it is prescribed that men are to move in Bhārata [varṣa] (India) alone.

Departure for a distance place

22. If a person departs on business to a distant place this is to be indicated by closing the Act [with his departing] and mentioning again this fact in an Introductory Scene (pravāsa).

Time allowed for the events of an Act

23. To indicate the attainment of an object one is to traverse a measure of distance. But in case of failure in this matter (lit. in non-attainment of the object) the Act should be brought to an end.

24. [Incidents in a play occurring for] a Kṣaṇa, a Mūhurta, a Yāma and a day are to be accommodated in an Act in pursuance of the Germ (vijd) [of the play].

25. But a month or a year is [to be considered] finished with the end of an Act; and events occurring more than one year after, should not be put in an Act.

¹ (B.XIII.16, G.16).
² (B.XIII.17, G.17).
³ For an example of this see Uttarā I.
⁴ (B.XIII.18-20, G.18-20). R.G. add one couplet after this.
⁵ (B.XIII.21, G.22).
⁶ (B.XIII.22, G.23).
⁷ (B.XIII.23, G.24).
⁸ (B.XIII.24, G.24).
⁹ (B.XIII.25, G.25).
⁰ (B.XIII.26, G.26).
26. The Zones of the stage [and allied conventions] concerning the movements of men are thus to be observed in a play in connexion with Bhāratavarṣa (India). Now listen about that of gods and demigods.

27-32. Yakṣas, Guhyakas, the followers of Kuvera, (lit. the giver of wealth), Rākṣasas, Bhūtas and Piśacás who live on the best mountain Kailāśa included in the Himalayas, are known as dwellers of the latter mountain. Gandharvas, Apsarasas and Gaṇas are known to live on the Hemakūṭa. On the Niṣadha live all the Nāgas (serpents) such as Śeṣa, Vāsuki and Takṣaka. The thirty-three groups of gods dwell on the great Meru, and Siddhas and Brahmārsīs on the Blue [Mountain] full of lapis lazuli. The White Mountain is the abode of Dāityas and Dānavas, while Pītrs resort to the Śrīgavat [mountain]. These are the best mountains where gods and demigods dwell. With reference to the Zonal division they should be [placed] in Jambudvīpa [where these mountains exist].

Movements of gods

32-35. Their exploits should be represented (lit. made) according to their habits and powers, but their costumes and make-up should be like that of human beings. All the conditions of gods are to be made human. Hence they should not be represented (lit. made) as winkless [which they traditionally are]. For the States and the Sentiments [in a play] depend on Glances. And the States are [first] indicated by Glances and then represented by gestures and postures (lit. by limbs). This is all about the Zonal division.

The four Local usages

36. I shall now resume the description of the Local Usages (pratīti) which according to the experts in drama are four: Āvantī Dāksinātī, Pāncalī and Oḍhra-Māgadhī.

---

36 (B.XIII.36b-38, G.37b-38). 1 The passage following this till the beginning of 37 is in prose.
[Now comes the question]: Why is [it called] pravṛtti (report) [of the Local Usages]? [In answer to this] it is said that pravṛtti is so called because it informs [one] about the Local Usages regarding costumes, languages, manners and professions in different countries of the world. Vytti and pravṛtti mean "information"). There are many countries in this world. Hence it is asked, "How a fourfold division of these (i.e. the four pravṛttis) [can be] proper? And an observance of all these pravṛttis possess [some] common characteristics." [In reply] it has been said, "It is true that their observance has [some] common characteristics; but as people have different native countries, costumes, languages and manners, I have prescribed a fourfold classification of the dramatic performance which is attached to four different Styles according to the preference of [different] people. [Hence] countries are connected with the performance which relate to the Styles such as the Verbal (bhārati) the Grand (sattvati), the Graceful (kaiśiki) and the Violent (arabhati). And from these [countries] arise the four pravṛttis (Local Usages) and also the [entire] performance including them.

The Dākṣinātyā Local Usage

Now [it is said] in that connexion (lit. there) that the Southern [countries] favour various kinds of dances, songs and instrumental music, an abundance of the Graceful (kaiśīkī) Style and clever and graceful gestures. They are as follows:

37 Countries adjacent to mountains named the Mahendra, the Malaya, the Sahya, the Mekala and the Kālapaṇjara¹, are known as the Dākṣināpatha (Deccan).

38-39 [But] Kosala, Tosala, Kaliṅga², Yavana, Khasa, and countries like Drāmilā, Anilhra, Mahārastra³, Vaiṅga and Vana-

---

¹ Kālapaṇjara seems to be same as modern Kālījara (= Kālapī jara); pāṇjara is a variant of pāṇjara; see Paṇ-saddamahānava, sub voce.
² See note 1 to 43-45.
³ Andhra-Mahārastra may also be taken as the name of the great Andhra empire (mahā-rastra).
vāsika which lie between the Southern Ocean and the Vindhya [mountain] are always to take to the Dākṣiṇātya Local Usages.

The Āvanti Local Usage

40-41. Āvanti, Vidiśā, Saurāṣṭra, Mālava, Sindhu, Sauvira, Arvudeya1 Daśāra, Tripura, and Mrīttikāvat always take to the Āvanti Local Usage2.

42. The performance [of a play] by [people of] these [countries] should depend on the Grand (sāttvati) and the Graceful [kaśikī] Styles and [such a procedure] should be adopted by the producers.

The Odhra-Māgadhī Local Usage

43-45. Eastern [countries such as] Āṅga, Vaṅga, Kaliṅga2, Vatsa, Odhra (Odra), Maγadhā, Puṇḍra, Nepāla, Aṃtargīra, Bahīrgīra, Plavamgana, Malada3, Mallavartaka,4 Bhārmottara,5 Bhārgava,6 Mārgava,7 Prāgjyotiṣa, Pulinda, Videha and Tāmrālīpta, adopt the Local Usage known as the Odhra-Māgadhī.

46. In relation to other countries too known in the Purāṇas as belonging to the East the Odhra-Māgadhī Local Usage is applied.

---

3 Geographical names mentioned in this passage and the passages that follow, are mostly to be met with in the Purāṇas (sometimes with variant readings). For a discussion on the same see Dines Chandra Sircar, 'Text of the Puranic Lists of Peoples' (IHQ. Vol. XXI. 1945 pp. 297-314).

40-41 (B.XIII.42-43, G.42-43). 1 Arvuda or modern Ābu in Rajputana is probably meant by this name.

42 (B.XIII.44, G.44).

2 The twofold mention of Kaliṅga requires an explanation. It is possible that the two different Usages were current in this region.
3 Malada be may modern Maldah District of Bengal.
4 Mallavartaka may be modern Mallabhum (Bankura in Bengal).
5 For Brahmmottara see Viṣvabhairati Patrika, Vol. IV. pp. 250ff.
6 Bhārgava remains unidentified,
7 Mārgava remains unidentified.
46 (B.XIII.48, G.48).
The Pāṇcāla-Madhyaṃa Local Usage

47-48. Countries such as Pāṇcāla, Śūrasena, Kāśmīra, Hastināpura, Vālhiṣka, Śākala, Madra and Uśīnara which are contiguous either to the Himalayas or to the Northern bank of the Ganges, take to the Pāṇcāla-madhyaṃa Local Usage./

49. In this Usage the Grand (sālvatī) and the Violent (ārūbhati) Styles are known [to predominate]. The application of these [means] paucity of song and excessive movement and extraordinary Gaits and steps.

The twofold entrance in observing Local Usages

50. Going about on the stage in [observing] Local Usages, will be in two ways, viz. by entering from the right and by entering from the left.

51. In the Āvantī and the Dākṣinātyā Local Usage the going about [on the stage] will be from the right, and in the Pāṇcāli and the Oḍhra-Māgadhī it will be from the left.

52. In case of the Āvantī and the Dākṣinātyā Local Usages the door to be used in entering should be the Northern one, while in case of the Pāṇcāli and Oḍhra-Māgadhī Local Usages the Southern door should be used.

53. But in view of the special assembly, place, occasion and expression of meaning these rules may be combined (lit. be made into one).

54. Experts should apply to plays the Local Usages which have been prescribed before for different countries.

55. In musical plays (gāṇakādi) these rules should be simplified. One should produce them (lit. practice those acts) in disregard of the multiplicity of Local Usages.

47-48 (B.XIII.49-50, G.50-51). ¹ The reading Šalyaka of some mss. may be a variant of Šālvaka. As in the Purāṇas an expression like śālvah śākalavūśinaḥ is met with. Śālvas or Šālvakas might have been the name of a tribe residing in the ancient Śākala region.

49 (B.XIII.51, G.49). 50 (B.XIII.52, G.52).
The two general types of plays

56. The production of a play in conformity with the rules of dramatic practice is of two types: delicate (sukumāra) and violent (āvīḍhyā).

The violent types

57-58. The play which requires violent (āvīḍhyā) gestures and movements (añjhayāra) to represent, cutting, piercing and challenging, and contains the use of magic and occult powers as well as artificial objects and make-up, and has more men and less women [among its dramatis personae] and applies [in its production] mostly the Grand and the Violent Styles, is of the violent type.

59. According to the [expert] producers, [plays of] the Dīma, the Samavakāra, the Vyāyoga and the Īhaṅga [classes] are known to be of the violent type.

60. Production of plays of this type should be made by [an impersonation of] gods, Dānavas and Rakṣasas who are majestic and haughty, and have herorism, energy and strength.

The delicate type

61. The Nāṭaka, the Prakaraṇa, Vīthī and the Aṅka are plays of the delicate type, and they depend [for their production] [on an impersonation of] human beings only.

The two Practices

62. I shall now define (lit. relate the characteristics of) the two Practices (dharma) which have been mentioned before.

The realistic Practice

63-64. If a play depends on natural behaviour [in its characters] and is simple and not artificial, and has in its [plot]

56 (B.XIII.59; G.59) 57 (B.XIII.60-61, G.60-61).
61 (B.XIII.64, G.64). B. adds five additional couplets after this.
63-64 (B.XIII.71-72, G.66-67). See note 1 to IX. 1-3.
professions and activities of the people and has [simple acting and] no playful flourish of limbs and depends on men and women of different types, it is called realistic (lokadharmā)\(^1\).

The conventional Practice

65-66 If a play contains speech, activity, beings and states of the extraordinary kind, and requires acting with playful flourish of limbs and possesses characteristics of dance, and requires conventional enunciation, and is dependent on emotionally carried persons (lit.) characters it is to be known as conventional (nātyadharmā)\(^2\).

67. If anything used by (lit. among) people, appears (lit. set foot)\(^3\) in a play (lit here) as endowed with a corporal from and speech\(^2\) the practice is [also] called conventional (nātyadharmā)\(^3\).

68. [The practice in a play according to which persons are supposed] not to hear words uttered in proximity, or to hear what has not been uttered at all, is [also] called conventional.

69. If objects like a hill, conveyance, aerial car, shield, armour, weapon or banner-stuff are made to appear on the stage (lit. are used) in [human] form, it is known as an [instance of] the conventional Practice.

70. If after appearing in a role, one assumes a different role [in the same play], on account of his being an expert in both the cases or being the sole actor available for both the roles, it is known to be an instance of the conventional Practice.

71. If after a person has been employed (lit. being) in the role of a woman for whom marital connexion with a particular character is forbidden by the Śāstras, is made to appear in the

---

65-67 (B.XIII.75, G.70). \(^1\) padam; G. reads bhadram.

\(^2\) mūrtimat sābhīṣhāsam (B. mūrtimat sābhīṣhāsam).

\(^3\) An instance of this is the personification of the Bhūramaśāpa in Māyāpāpaka (Ag.).

68 (B.XIII.76, G.71). \(^1\) For āśamoktam, G. reads atroktam caiva.

69 (B.XIII.77, G.72). \(^1\) G. omits two couplets (70 and 71) after this.

70 (B.XIII.78) 71 (B.XIII.79).
role of another woman with whom such connexion is permitted, it
becomes an instance of conventional practice. The same will
be the result if the situation in the above case is reversed.

72. That, [in a play instead of simple walking] one dances
or goes with graceful movement of the limbs as well as with
similarly made steps is known as conventional Practice.

73. If the [ordinary] human nature which has acts of
joys and sorrows as its essence (lit. soul) is represented by (lit.
combined with) [special] gestures it becomes [an instance of]
the conventional Practice.

74. The Zonal division which includes (lit. depends on)
many rules, is also [an instance of] the conventional Practice

75. A play should always be produced with the conven-
tional movement [of limbs], for without the [use of] Gestures [by
the actors] no pleasure occurs [to the spectators].

76. All the States are natural to all [persons] and all the
gestures [in connexion with them are used] from necessity
(arthatah); [hence] a decorative movements of limbs [in producing
a play] has been considered as [an instance of] the conventional
Practice.

77. So much about the Zonal Division, [the two] Practices
and the [four] Local Usages. Experts in dramatic production
should know these and put them properly into practice.

78. I have described here the Histrionic Representation by
means of the Śākhā and the Aṅgahāra. I shall afterwards speak
about such Representation depending on Words which consist of
vowel and consonantal sounds.

Here ends Chapter XIV of Bharata's Nāṭyaśāstra
which treats of the Local Usages and the Practices.

72 (B.XIII.80, G.73).
73 (B.XIII.81, G.74). 1 B reads one additional couplet after this.
74 (B.XIII.82, G.75). 1 B. reads one additional couplet after this.
75 (B.XIII.84, G.76). 76 (B.XIII.85, G.77).
77 (B.XIII.86, G.78). 78 (B.XIII.87, G.79),
CHAPTER FIFTEEN
RULES OF PROSODY

The actor's speech

1. Of the best of Brahmans, I shall now speak about the nature (lit characteristics of) the Verbal Representation which has been mentioned before\(^1\) and which relates to (lit. arises from) vowels and consonants.

Importance of speech in drama

2. One should take care of words\(^1\). For these are known as the body of the dramatic art (nâma). And Gestures, Costumes and Make-up and the Temporal (sâtrikā) acting [merely] clarify the meaning of words.

3. In this world (lit. here) the Śastras are made up of words and rest on words; hence there is nothing beyond words, and words are at the source of everything\(^1\).

4. The Verbal representation is related to [a knowledge of] nouns (nâma), verbs (âkhyata), particle (upâkhyata), preposition (upaparsa), nominal suffix (tâvâkhila) compound words (sãmašra), euphonic combination (sarañjhi) and case-endings (vibhakti).

The two kinds of recitation

5. The Recitation (pâthya) [in a play] is known to be of two kinds: Sanskritic and Prakritic. I shall speak of their difference in due order.

---

1 (C.I; B.XIV.1). \(^1\) For the four kinds of Histrionic Representation which includes the Verbal one see NŚ. VI. 23.

2 (C.I; B.XIV.2). \(^1\) This rule applies to the actors as well as to the play-wright. On this Ag. says: 'शब्द मधुः काव्य मधुः शब्दत वीषम्य निषाधिकान् न दृष्टि स्थीतिकाले.'

3 (C.3; B.XIV.3). \(^1\) This view is also held by Bhatṭharī (circa 600 A.D.) in his Vākyapadīya (Āgama-kānda). See B. p. 224, foot note.

4. (C.4; B.XIV.4). \(^5\) (C.5; B.XIV.5).
Different aspects of Recitation

6-7. [They consist of] vowels, consonants, euphonic combination, case-endings, nouns, verbs, prepositions, particles and nominal suffixes. The Sanskrit Recitation is characterised by [a due regard to] these aspects and compound words, and includes various verbal roots. Now listen about its application.

The speech-sounds

8 The fourteen sounds beginning with a and ending in au, are known as vowels, and the group of sounds beginning with ka ending in ha are known as consonants.

Vowels are fourteen in number. A, a, i, ï, u, û, r, Ź, Ž, ẽ, ai, o and au are to be known as the vowels.

The group of letters beginning with ka, are consonants. Ka, kha, ga, gha, ŋa, ca, cha, ja, jha, ŋa, ta, thā, da, dha, na, ta tha da, dha, na, pa, pha, ba, bha, ma, ya, ra, la, va, ʒa, ʒa sa and ha [constitute] the group of consonants.

Consonants: their articulation

9. The first two sounds of each group [of the stop consonants] are known as unvoiced (aghosa) and the rest [of the group] are called voiced (ghosa).

6-7 (C:6-7; B:XIV.6-7). ¹ Read mūṇādhūta-samārayam, C.

8 (C:8; B:XIV.8). ¹ Different Śikṣās and Prātiṣṭhākhyas enumerate vowels differently. According to the Ps. they are 22 in number, while the Atharvā, Taîttrīya, and Vājasyeyi, Prātiṣṭhākhyas and the Rktaṇtra Vyākaraṇa (Śamaveda Pr.) give their number respectively as 13, 13, 16, 23 and 23. See Ps. (ed. Manomohan Ghosh) p.51.

² Ps. counts anusvāra, visarga, jhivasūliya and upadhmāniya among consonants. See ed. Ghosh, p. 50.

³ B. reads after this a couplet (B.10) from Ps. see ibid, p. 59. Not occurring in most of the mss. this may be taken as spurious. This is followed in B. by a prose passage which also seems to be spurious. The same is our view about the couplet B.11 which follow this prose passage. The substance of this couplet (B.11) occurs in 9 below.

9 (C:9; B:XIV.12). ¹ In C. this couplet occurs after 8 and before the prose passage that follows it.
10. These³ [consonants] are to be classified into (lit. known as) voiced and unvoiced, velar, labial, dental, lingual (jihvya)², nasal, sibilant, palatal and Visarjantya.

11. In these groups [of consonants] ga, gha, ña, ja, jha, ñ, ā, ṣa, ṣa, da, dha na, ba bha, ma, ya, ra, la and va are voiced, while ka, kha, ca, cha, ta, tha, ta, tha, pa, pha, sa, sa, sa and ha are unvoiced.

12-14. Ka, kha, ga, gha, and ña, are velar (kandhastha)⁴ ca, cha, ja, jha, ña, i, i, ya and sa palatal, ta, tha, da, dha, pa, ra, and sa cacuminal (mūrdhanya), ta, tha, da, dha, na, la, and sa dental, pa, pha, ba, bha, and ma labial; a and ha are from the throat (kandhastha), o and au are throat-labial (kandhyogasthāna)², e and ai, throat-palatal (kṣaṭa-tāḷasya).

14-15. The Visarjaniya is from the throat, and ka and [kha] are from the root of the tongue¹. The place of articulation for pa and pha are lips, and the same will be for the closed (arivṛta) vowels u and u².

15-16. [The group of sounds] beginning with ka and ending in ma are called stops (spārśa), sa, sa sa, and ha are open

10 (C.10; B.XIV.13). ¹ Read the first hemistich as द्वं चिंगाचसः;
कस्तीतात्स्यानिविदत्तां जिह्वाः;

² The jihvya does not seem to occur in any well-known grammatical work. This is perhaps synonymous with mūrdhanya; for in the production of mūrdhanya sounds jihvā (tongue) plays the most important part. The Taittiriya Pr. describes the manner of their production as follows: jihvāgṛṣṇa pratīveṣṭyā mūrdhāṇiṣa-vargasya (II.37). Curiously enough this term has never again been used in the N Ś.

11 (C.11; B.XIV.14).

12-14 (C.12-14a; B.XIV.15, 15 of p.230 and 16). ¹ For different traditional views about the places of articulation of consonants see PŚ. p. 82.
Read 11b as follows:—कस्तितात्रत्स्यानिविदत्तां जिह्वाः;

² Read 12a as follows:—कस्तितात्स्यानिविदत्तां जिह्वाः;

³ Read 13b as follows:—सच्चवा द्वारयथाः: शुच्छा द्वारयथाः सुच्छी द्वारयथाः द्वारयथाः;

⁴ Read 14a as follows: च च च कस्तितात्रत्स्यानिविदत्तां जिह्वाः:

14-15 (C.14b-15a, B.XIV.16b-17a). ¹ See note ¹ to 12-14 above.
Read 14b-15a, as follows: कस्तितात्रत्स्यानिविदत्तां जिह्वाः: । पञ्चारीर्यां च सरस्यार्थकार्याविदत्तां;

15-16 (C.15b-16a, B.XIV.17b-18a). ¹ C. sampūtāh for sampūtañ āh.
(vīrta) while semivowels (anuṭṭha) are closed (samvṛta), ṇa, ṇa, na and ma are nasal [sounds].

16-17. Śa, ṇa, and sa and ha are sibilants (nṣman, lit. hot); ya, ra, la and va are semivowels (anuṭṭha, lit. intermediate), ḷa from the root of the tongue (jiḥrāṃulya) and ḷa from the Upadhma (upadhmaṇīya).

17-18. Ka, ca, ṇa, ta and ṇa are [simply] uttered (svarīta), and kha, cha, ṇha, tha and pha are uttered [markedly] from the throat, and ga, gha, ja, jha, ṇa, ṇha, da, dha, and ba, bha from the throat as well as the breast (kunṭhorasya).¹

18-19. The Visarjaniya should be known as a sound from [the root of] the tongue². These are the consonants which have been briefly defined by me. I shall now discuss the vowels with reference to their use in words.

Vowels: their quantity

20. ¹Of the above mentioned fourteen² vowels ten constitute homogenous pairs (somāma), of which the first ones are short and the second ones long.

The four kinds of word

21. ¹Constituted with vowels and consonants [described above] the words include verbs (ākhyāta), nouns (nāma), roots (dlātu), prepositions (upasarga) and particles (nipāla), nominal affixes (tadhihina), euphonic combinations (sandhi) and case-terminations (nibhakti).

16-17 (C.16b-17a; B.XIV.18b-19a). ¹ Read this couplet as follows: वषयताः सः वस्तवताः सुष्थता काहता।

17-18 (C.17b-18a, B.XIV.19b-20a). ¹ See note 1 to 12-14 above. ¹ B. reads one additional hemistich (B 22a), before this.

18-19 (C.18b-19; B.XIV.20b-21). ¹ See note 1 to 12-14 above. ² About the number of vowels sec 8 note 1 above.

20 (C.20; B.XIV.22b-23a). ¹ B. reads one additional hemistich (B 22a), before this.

21 (C.21; B. foot note 4 in p. 231).
22. The characteristics of vocables have been mentioned in detail by the ancient masters. I shall again discuss those characteristics briefly when an occasion will arise.  

The noun

23. The noun has its functions determined by the case-endings such as 'su' and the like, and by special meanings derived therefrom; and it is of five kinds and has a basic meaning (pratipadikārtha) and gender.

24. It (the noun) is known to be of seven classes and has six cases, and [sometimes] it is well-established (pratīhita) and
[sometimes] is to be constituted (sādhya)² [and when combined with different case-endings] it may imply a indication (nirdeśa)³, giving to (sampradāna), taking away (apādāna) and the like.

25. The verbs relate to actions occurring in the present and the past time and the like; they are sometimes well-established (prathītā)² and sometimes to be constituted (sādhya)², are distinguished and divided according to number and person.

The verb

26. A collection of] five hundred roots divided into twenty-five classes are to be known as verbs (akhyāta) in connexion with the Recitation, and they add to the meaning of the nouns.

27. Those that upasājānti (modify) the meaning of the verbal roots in connexion with the meaning of basic words¹ are for that [very] reason called upasārja (preposition) in the science of grammar (sāmā-skāra-śāstra).

³ Nirdeśa seems to relate nominatives; for it is one of the meanings of the case-endings. Enumerating these some grammarian says: निदेश, वरणं कर्म प्रदानमसंविभन्त। सामायवधीविकरण विरक्ताधि: प्रकीर्तित।: (Haldar, Itihasa, p. 170).

25 (C.24; B.XIV.26b and cf. 29b).¹ Read the couplet as follows:—

B. 27a seems to be corrupt and redundant.

² In case of verbs prathīta seems to relate to irregular forms like paśya in place of dṛṣṭi and sādhya to regularly constructed ones. See also note 1 to 24 above.

26 (C.26a; B.XIV.27b, 29a).¹ C. omits 26a and gives only 26b as C. 26a. There are different number of roots in lists (Dhātupātha) attached to different grammatical works. It is not known which give their number as five hundred. Dhanapāla (970 A.C.), in his commentary to Jaina Śaṅkāyana's Dhātupātha says on the subject as follows: तत्त्वादिः साध्यः वरणितः वरणोऽस्मात् च। वाक्यम्: श्रावकौतिन्य सभाज्य: च।: (Ref. Haldar, Itihasa, p. 44). Verbal roots are divided according to Pañjini into ten classes (gāna). Their division into twenty-five classes does not seem to occur in any well-known work.

27 (C.26, B.XIV.30).¹ This definition of the upasārja follows Śaṅkāyana's view on the subject as expressed in the Nirukt (I. 1.3-4). According to this authority upasārjas have no independant meaning and
The particle

28. 1 As they nīpātanti (come together) with declined words (pada) to strengthen their basic meaning, root, metre or etymology, they are called nīpātas (particles).

The affixes

29. 1 As it distinguishes ideas (pratyaya) and develops the meaning [of a root] by intensifying it or combining [it with another] or [pointing out] its essential quality (sultra), it is called pratyaya (affix).

The nominal affix

30. 1 As it develops the meanings [of a word] by an elision [of some of its parts], a separation of its root and affix, or their combination and by pointing out the abstract notion [indicated by it], it is called taddhita (nominal affix).

they are merely auxiliary words modifying the meaning of the verbal roots. On the different ways in which such modification takes place one grammarian says: कवितिन्ति थालिक मन्त्रसंस्कृतें। विषयि नित्यांसमस्तंलिहिः। Haldar, Itihāsa, p. 346.

28 (C.27; B.XIV.31). 1 According to Pāṇini indeclinables (avyaya) of the ca-group are particles (nīpāta). See I. 5.57. According to Patañjali nīpātas do the function of case-endings and intonation (svara = pitch accent). He says: [वनलकणस्वच्छिन्यं मन्त्रसंस्कृतं नियोगितं; ...] (on P.III.4.2). The author of the Kāśikā too accepts this view in his comments on P.I. 4.57.

2 Ca, vai, tu, and hi are instances of such nīpātas.

3 It is not clear now nīpātas, strengthen the etymology given here. Probably the reading here is corrupt.

29 (C.28; B.XIV.32). 1 Such an elaborate definition of the pratyaya does not appear to occur in any exact grammatical work. Agh. seems to trace it to the Aindra school of grammarians. The meaning of the definition is not quite clear. According to the common interpretation the pratyaya means that which helps to develop a meaning from root (वेषाङ्क: कवितं थ प्रस्त: ).

30 (C.29; B.XIV.33). 1 This definition of the taddhita does not seem to occur in any well-known grammatical work. It describes the process through which the taddhita suffix will transform a word.
31. As they vibhajanti (distinguish between) the meanings of an inflected word or words with reference to their roots or gender, they are called vibhakti (case-endings).

The euphonic combination

32. Where separated vowels or consonants sandhiyate (combine) by coming together (yogtah) in a word or words it is called [an instance of] sandhi (euphonic combination).

33. As due to the meeting of two sounds (lit. letters) or of two words, their sequence (krama) sandhiyate (result in a combination), it is called sandhi (euphonic combination).

The compound words

34. The Samāsa (compound word) which combine many words to express a single meaning and suppresses affixes, has been described by the experts to be of six kinds such as Tatpuruṣa and the like.

31 (C.30; B.XIV.34). 1 This definition follows the etymological sense of the term (vibhakti). Durgasimha of the Kalāpa school says the case-endings are so called because of their giving distinctive meaning to a word (षव्या विश्वांसा विश्वाः). See Haldar, Itihāsa, p. 169).

32 (B.XIV.35) C. omits this. Read víśīṣṭa for víśīṣṭa. 1 The sandhi is strictly speaking, not merely a combination of two sounds (vowels or consonants), in a great number of cases their mutual phonetic influence constitutes a sandhi. This is of five kinds, and relate to savara-s, vyañjana-s, prakṛti-s, anusvāra-s, and visarga-s.

3 This 'coming together' depends on the shortness of duration which separate the utterance of the two sounds. According to the ancient authorities sandhi will take place when this duration will not be more than half a mātrā. It is for this reason that the hemistichs in a couplet are never combined.

33 (C.31; B.XIV.36). 1 C. reads 33a, as वर्षक्रम संधयः, as in the previous verse.

34 (C.32; B.XIV.37). 1 Reads samharat samūṣopo'pi (B.) for samhara- ranti samkeśpat (C.).
35. Observing such rules of grammar (\textit{svāda-viḍhāna}) one should compose series of inflected words (\textit{pada}) combined in verse or in prose, which have the quality of suggesting extensive meaning (lit. extensiveness)\textsuperscript{1}.

Two kinds of word

36 Padas are inflected words\textsuperscript{1} and are of two kinds, viz. those used in verse, and those in prose, Now listen\textsuperscript{2} [first] about the characteristics of words used in prose.

Words in prose

37. Words used in prose are not schematically combined, have not the number of their syllables regulated, and they contain as many syllables as are required to express the meaning [in view]\textsuperscript{1}.

Words in verse

38 Words used in verse consist of schematically combined, syllables which have caesura and stops\textsuperscript{1} and which have their number regulated\textsuperscript{2}.

Syllabic metres

39. Thus arises a Rhythm-type (\textit{chānta}) called \textit{Vṛtta} (syllabic metre) made up of four feet\textsuperscript{1} which expresses different ideas and consists of [short and long] syllables.

Rhythm types

40. Rhythm-types in feet are twenty-six in number. Syllabic metres with these Rhythm-types are of three kinds, viz. even (\textit{sama}), semi-even (\textit{antha-sama}) and uneven (\textit{visama}).

\textsuperscript{1} \textit{C.33; B.XIV.38.}
\textsuperscript{2} \textit{C.34; B.XIV.39.}
\textsuperscript{3} \textit{C. bahir-bodhata for samvibodhata.}
\textsuperscript{4} \textit{B. anibadhpadam .chandas for anibad}
\textsuperscript{5} \textit{B. anibadhpadavinda ; C. arthapēkasārayutam and B. āṣayutam for arthapēkṣayāsarayutam.}
\textsuperscript{6} \textit{C. padacheia for yatśecheda.}
\textsuperscript{7} \textit{B. puroṣa-niyatātmaṃkam for puroṣa
\textsuperscript{8} \textit{B. pūṣa. for pūṣa. pūṣa.}
\textsuperscript{9} \textit{C.38 ; B.XIV.43.}
41-42. This Rhythm-type which assumes the form of different syllabic metres, is the body of words. There is no word, without rhythm and no rhythm without word. Combined with each other they are known to illuminate the drama.

Twenty-six Rhythm-types

43-49. [The Rhythm-type] with one syllable [in a foot] is called Úkta, with two syllables is Átyukta, with three syllables Madhya, with four syllables Pratiśṭhā, with five syllables Supra-śīṣṭā, with six syllables Gāyatri, with seven syllables Uṣṇik, with eight syllables Anuṣṭup, with nine syllables Bṛhati, with ten syllables Paṅkti, with eleven syllables Trīśūp, with twelve syllables Jagati, with thirteen syllables Atijagati, with fourteen syllables Ākṣakari, with fifteen syllables Atiśākari, with sixteen syllables Áṣṭi, with seventeen syllables Átyasṭi, with eighteen syllables Dhrī, with nineteen syllables Atūdhrī, with twenty syllables Krī, with twenty-one syllables Prakṛti, with twenty-two syllables Ákrī, with twenty-three syllables Vīkṛti, with twenty-four syllables Sāmkṛti, with twenty-five syllables AtiKṛti, and with twenty-six syllables Utkṛti.

Possible metrical patterns

49-51. Those containing more syllables than these are known as Mālā-vṛttas. And the Rhythm-types being of many different varieties, metrical patterns according to the experts are innumerable. The extent of these such as Gāyatri and the like, is being given [below] But all of them are not in use.

51-76. [Possible] metrical patterns of the Gāyatri [type] are sixty-four, of the Uṣṇik one hundred and twenty-eight, of the Anuṣṭup two hundred and fifty-six, of the Bṛhati five hundred and twelve, of the Paṅkti one thousand and twenty-four, of the Trīśūp two thousand and forty-eight, of the Jagati four thousand

---

41-42 (C.39b-40; B.XIV.44b-45).
43-49 (C.41-47a; B.XIV.46-52a). ¹ also called abhikṛti.
49-51 (C.47b, 58b-59a, B.XIV.52b-54a). ¹ These experts are mathematicians like Bhaṭakacārya. See Litāvati, section 84, (ed Jivānanda, p. 50).
51-76 (C.59b-80a; B.XIV.54b-79).
and ninety-two, of the Śakkāri sixteen thousand three hundred and eighty-four, of the Atiśakkāri thirty-two thousand seven hundred and sixty-eight, of the Aṣṭi sixty-five thousand five hundred and thirty-six, of the Atyaṣṭī one lac thirty-one thousand and seventy-two, of the Dhṛtī two lacs sixty-two thousand one hundred and forty-four, of the Atidhṛtī five lacs twenty-four thousand two hundred and eighty-eight, of the Kṛtī ten lacs forty-eight thousand five hundred and seventy-six, of of the Prakṛtī twenty lacs ninety-seven thousand one hundred and fifty-two, of the Ākṛtī forty-one lacs ninety-four thousand three hundred and four, of the Vikrīty eighty-three lacs eighty thousand six hundred and eight, of the Samkṛtī one crore sixty-seven lacs seventy-seven thousand two hundred and sixteen, of the Abhikṛti (Atikṛtī) three crores thirty-five lacs fifty-four thousand four hundred and thirty-two, of the Utkṛtī six crores seventy-one lacs eight thousand eight hundred and sixty-four.

77-79. Adding together all these numbers of different metrical patterns we find their total as thirteen crores forty-two lacs seventeen thousand seven hundred and twenty-six.¹

Another method of defining metres

79-81. I have told you about the even metres by counting [their numbers]. You should also know how the triads which make up the syllabic metres. Whether these are one, twenty, thousand or a crore, this is the rule for the formation of all the syllabic metres or metres in general.

81-82. Triads are eight in number and have their own definitions. Three syllables heavy or light, or heavy and light make up a triad which is considered a part of each metrical pattern.

¹ Ślokas giving the numbers of metres of the ākṛti, vikṛti, sankṛti, abhikṛti (atikṛti) and utkṛti classes seems to be corrupt in C.

77-79 (C.80b-82a; B.XIV.80-82a). ¹ Readings of B. and C. do not literally agree.

79-81 (C.82-84a; B. foot note 4 in p. 241). ¹ C. omits 79b.

81-82 (C.84b-86a; B.XIV.83b-84).
83-84. [Of these eight triads] bha contains two light syllables preceded by a heavy one ( Caleb ), ma three heavy syllables ( — — ), ja two light syllables separated by a heavy syllable ( — ), sa two light syllables followed by a heavy syllable ( — ) ra two heavy syllables separated by a light one ( — — ), ta two heavy syllables followed by a light one ( — — ), ya two heavy syllables preceded by a light one and ( — ), na three light syllables ( — ).

85-86. These are the eight triads having their origin in Brahman. For the sake of brevity or for the sake of metre they are used in works on prosody, with or without [inherent] vowels (i. e. a ).

86-87 A single heavy syllable should be known as ga and such a light syllable as la.

Separation of two words [in speaking a verse] required by rules [of metre] is called caesura ( yati ).

87-88. A heavy syllable is that which ends in a long or prolated ( phata ) vowel, Anuvāra, Visarga or comes after a conjunct consonant or sometimes occurs at the end [of a hemistich].

88-89. Rules regarding the metre, relate to a regular couplet ( sampat ), stop, foot, deities, location, syllables, colour, pitch and hyper-metric pattern.

The regular couplet

89-90. A couplet in which the number of syllables is neither in excess nor wanting is called a regular one ( sampat ).

The stop

90-91. The stop ( virama ) occurs when the meaning has been finally expressed.

83-84 (C.86-87; B.XIV.85-86).
85-86 (C.88-89a; B.XIV.87, 88b). ¹ B. reads one additional hemistich between 85b and 86a.
86-87 (C.89b-90a; B.XIV.89).
87-88 (C.90b-91a; B.XIV.90).
88-89 (C.48; B.XIV.102).
90-91 (C.50; B.XIV.104). 89-90 (C.49, B.XIV.103).
The Foot

The foot (pada) arises from the root pād, and it means one quarter [of a couplet].

The presiding deities of metres

91-92. Agni and the like presiding over different metres are their deities.

Location

Location is of two kinds, viz, that relating to the body and that to a [particular] region.

Quantity of syllables

93. Syllables are of the three kinds, viz. short, long and prolated (pilota).

Colours of metres

Metres have colours like white and the like.

Pitch of vowels

94-95. The pitch of vowels is of three kinds, viz. high, low and medium. I shall speak about their character in connexion with the rules of Dhruvāś Rules [about their use] relate to the occasion and the meaning [of thing sung or recited].

Three kinds of syllabic meters

95-97. Syllabic metres are of three kinds, viz. even (sama), semi-even (ardha-sama) and uneven visama).

If the number of syllables in a foot of any metre is deficient or in excess by one, it is respectively called Nivṛt or Bhurik. If the deficiency or excess is of two syllables, then such a metre is respectively called either Śvaraṭ or Virāṭ.

91-92 (C.51; B.XIV.105).
93 C.58b-54a, B.XIV. (107b-108a). This couplet is preceded by in B. three hemistichs which do not occur in some versions, and which seem to be irrelevant. 94-95 (C.56b-54a, B.XIV.108b-109).
95-97 (C.56b-58a, B.XIV.110-112a).
98. All the syllabic metres fall into three classes such as
divine, human and semi-divine.

99. Gāyatrī, Uṣṇik, Anuṣṭup, Brhaṭi, Triṣṭup and Jagatī
belong to the first or the divine (divya) class.

100. Atijagatī, Śakkarī, Atiśakkarī, Aṣṭi, Atyaṣṭi, Dhṛti and
Atidhṛti belong to the next (i.e. human) class.

101. Kṛti, Prakṛti, Vyākṛti (Ākṛti), Vιkṛti, Saṁkṛti,
Abhikṛti (Atikṛti) and Utkṛti belong to the semi-divine class

102. O the best of Brahmins, now listen about the metrical
patterns which are to be used in plays and which are included in
the Rhythm-types described by me.

Here ends Chapter XV of Bharata's Natyaśāstra
which treats of the Rules of Prosody.

98 (C.91b-92a, B.XIV.112b-113a).
99 (C.92b-93a, B.XIV.113b-114a).
100 (93b-94a, B.XIV.114b-115a).
101 (C.94b-95a, B.XIV.115b-116a). 1 The seventeen couplets after
this (C.101a-118a B.XIV, 116b-132a) seem to be spurious. For a dis-
cussion on this point see the Introduction.

102 (C.118-119, B.XIV,13 :-134.). 1 Some versions of the Nś. read
this couplet as the beginning of the next chapter.
CHAPTER SIXTEEN

METRICAL PATTERNS

Tanu-madhyā

1. "Tanu-madhyā is a variety [of metres] of the Gāyatri class. [In each of its feet] the first two and the last two syllables are heavy."

Example:

2. santyakta-vibhūṣā bhrāṣṭāṇjana-netrā
   hastārṣṭapāṃ ṛṣiḥ tvām tanu-madhyā

O fair lady (lit. slim-waistved one), why have you cast off your ornaments, why are your eyes without collyrium and why are you resting the cheek on the palm of your hand?

Makaraka-sīrṣā

3. [Of the same class is] Makaraka-sīrṣā which has [in each of its feet] the first four syllables light and the last two heavy.

Example:

4. svayam upayāntaṁ bhajasi na kāntam
   bhayakari kim tvam makaraka-sīrṣā

You are not greeting the beloved one who has come to you of his own accord. O terrible one, why are you so dull-headed?

---

1 (C.3; B.XV.2). 1 This is preceded in B. and C. by a couplet which rightly belongs to the Chapter XV. (XIV. in B.)

2 Scheme (− − o, o − − ). The definition of this metre is also its example though an independent example also follows. Such is the case with many other metres defined in the Nī. 2


3 (C.4, B.XV.4). 1 Scheme (o o o, o − − ). This is called Śāśivadana by Pr. P. Vṛ. R. and Sṛv.

4 (C.5, B.XV.5). 1 See above 2 note 1.

2 Makarakāsīrṣa—having a head (i.e. brain) like that of a makara.
Mālati

5. [The metre with] the feet of six syllables of which the second and the fifth are light and the rest heavy, is called Mālati.¹

Example:

6. śobhate baddhayā satpadāviddhayā 
   mālatimālayā māninī līlayā ॥

The offended woman wearing the Mālatī garland in which the bees are clinging looks charming.

Mālinī

7. [The metre with] the feet of six syllables of which the second one is light [and the rest heavy] is called Mālinī.²

Example:

8. snāna-gandha-sragbhir vastra-bhūṣāyogaih 
   vyaktam evaibā tvam mālinī prakhyātā ॥

By your perfumed bath, [wearing of] garlands, [good] dress and ornaments you are clearly recognised as the wife of a garland-maker.

Uddhatā

9. [The metre with] the feet of seven syllables of which the second, the fourth and the fifth are light [and the rest heavy] is called Uddhatā.¹

The allusion is perhaps to the foolish makara in the Vānara-makara-kathā in the Pāñcatantra, IV. which really believed that the monkey had left its heart behind in the tree on the river-bank. Hence I translate the word as “dull-headed one.”

5-6. (B.XV.9-10). ¹ Scheme (− o −, − o −) C. omits this metre.

7 (C.6, B.XV.6-7). ¹ Scheme (− o − − − −). This is quite different from the metre Mālinī defined by Piṅgala and his followers. The NŚ. calls this second Mālinī (with 15 syllables in each pāda) Nāndimukhi. See below 73-74.

8 (C.7, B.XV.8).

9 (C.8, B.XV.11-12). ¹ Scheme (− o −, o o −, −).

10 (C.9, B.XV.13).
10. danta-kunta-krīḍākāṃ vyākulaśaka-sobham ।
   saṁsātiva tatāṣyaṃ nirdayayām rata-yuddham ॥

Your face which bears the marks of spear-like teeth [of the beloved] and is strewn over with your dishevelled hair, indicates indeed an unrelenting fight of love.

Bhramara-mālikā

11. [The metre with] the feet of seven syllables of which the first two and the last two are heavy [and the rest light] is called Bhramara-mālikā¹.

Example :

12. nānā-kuṣuma-citre prapte surabhi-māse ।
    esā bhrumati māttā kānte bhrumara-mālā ॥

O beloved one, this being the month of Caitra which is variegated with different flowers, cluster of bees are flying about intoxicated [with their smell].

Simha-lekha

13. [The metre with] the feet of eight syllables of which the first, the third, the fifth, the seventh and the last [the eighth] are heavy [and the rest light] is called Simha-lekha¹.

Example :

14. yat tvayā hy aneka-bhāvaś ceṣṭām rahāḥ sugātri ।
    tan mano mama praviṣṭam vṛttam atra simha-lekham ॥

That you have planned the love’s embrace in various ways, O fair-limbed one, has been inscribed in my mind with the scratch of a lion’s claws¹.

Matta-ceṣṭita

15. [The metre with] the feet of eight syllables of which the

---

¹ Scheme (– ʊ, ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ –).
2 Scheme (– ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ – ʊ – ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ). C. gives the name as Simhālīla.
³ The translation follows Ag.
4 Scheme (ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ ʊ – ʊ –). This metre is named as Pramāṇīkā in Pr. P.
second, the fourth, the sixth and the eighth are heavy [and the rest light] is called Matta-ceṣṭita.¹

Example:

16. caravaghurpitkeśanam vilambitākulālakan ♀
      asamsthitaiḥ padaiḥ priyaḥ karoti matta-ceṣṭitam ♀

The beloved one with her eyes restless and rolling, hairs hanging down dishevelled, and footsteps unsteady, is behaving like a person who is intoxicated.

Vidyul-lekhā

17. [The metre with] the feet of eight syllables of which all are heavy, is called Vidyul-lekhā.¹

Example:

18. sambho-bhārair ānardadbhiḥ śyāmāmbhodair vyāpte vyomni ♀
      ādityāṃśa-spardhiny eṣā dikuṣ bhṛantā vidyul-lekhā ♀

The sky being overcast with dark clouds which are roaring and are laden with masses of water, a flash of lightning which rivals the sun-beam is running in [different] directions.

Citta-vilasita

19. [The metre with] the feet of eight syllables of which the fifth, the seventh and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Citta-vilasita.¹

Example:

20. smita-vaśa-viprakāśeṣair āsana-padair amibhiḥ ♀
      varatanu pūrṇa-candram tava mukham āvṛpoṭi ♀

O fair lady (lit. fair limbed one)⁴, your face with the teeth

¹ (C.15, B.XV.22).
² (C.16, B.XV.23, 24). ¹ Scheme (-----, ----, --). B. gives the name as Vidyum-māla. This is the name in Piṅgala and Śr. B.
³ (C.17, B.XV.25).
⁴ (B.XV.26). ¹ Scheme (○ ○ ○, ○-○, - -). C. omits this metre.
⁵ (B.XV.27). ¹ This mode of addressing a beloved woman is as old as the time of Patañjali who quotes the fragment of a poem as follows: varatanu sampravadanti kākālā (Ref. Apte’s Guide to Skt. § 319).
revealed on account of your smile, outshines (lit. covers) the full moon.

Madhukari

21. [The metre which has] the feet of nine syllables of which the last three are heavy [and the rest light] is called Madhukari.1

Example:

22. kusumitam abhipaśyanti
    vividha-tarugapāsiḥ channam 1
    vanam atisaya-gandhādhyām
    bhramati madhukari hṛṣṭī 2

Seeing the woodland covered with various trees full of flowers and rich in exuberence of [pleasant] odour, the female bee is flying about in delight.

Kuvalaya-mālā

23. [The metre which has] the feet of ten syllables of which the first and the last three are heavy [and the rest light] is called Kuvalaya-mālā.2

Example:

24. asmiṁs te śirasi tadā kānte
    vaidūraya-sphaṭika-suvarṇādhīye 1
    śobhāṁ svāṁ na vahati tāṁ
    baddhā susliśṭā kuvalaya-mālēyam 2

O dear one, this well-made garland of Kuvalaya flowers fastened at that time on your head which has been richly decorated with laṭāś kaminī, quartz and gold, does not bear [any more] its natural beauty.

Mayūrasārīgi

25. [The metre which has] the feet of ten syllables of

---

21 (C.18, B.XV.28, 29). 1 Scheme O O O, O O O, - - -). This metre is called Bhujagāśīśabhṛtā (vyūtā, vyṛtā) by Pīṅgala and his followers.
22 (C.19, B.XV.30).
23 (C.20, B.XV.31, 32). 1 Scheme - - -), O O O, O - - -). This is called Panava by Pīṅgala and his followers.
24 (C.21, B.XV.33). 1 Kuvalaya is a blue aquatic flower of the of the lotus class.
25 (C.22, B.XV.34, 35).
which the second, the fourth, the sixth and the eighth are light [and the rest heavy] is called Mayūrasāriṇī\textsuperscript{1}.

Example:

26. naivāte'sti saṃgamo mānusair
   nāsti kāmabhoga-cīhānam anyat \textsuperscript{1}
   garbhipiva dṛṣyase hy anārye
   kim mayūra-sāriṇī tvam evam \textsuperscript{1}

O ignoble one, you have no union with men, neither have you any sign of love's enjoyment. Still you look like one who is enceinte. You indeed behave like a pea-hen.\textsuperscript{1}

Dodhaka

27. [The metre with] the feet of eleven syllables of which the first, the fourth, the seventh the tenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Dodhaka.\textsuperscript{1}

Example:

28. praskhalitāgrapada-pravicāraṁ
   matta-vighūrṇita-gātra-vilāsam \textsuperscript{1}
   paśya vilāsini kuñjaram etam
   dodhaka-vṛttam ayaṁ prakaroti \textsuperscript{1}

O merry lady, look at this elephant which with its faltering steps of the front legs, and with the body playfully moved about [as if in] intoxication, is imitating the manner of a calf (?)\textsuperscript{1}

Moṭaka

29. [The metre with] the feet of eleven syllables of which the first two, fifth, the eighth, and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Moṭaka.

\textsuperscript{1} Scheme (− ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ). \textsuperscript{1} Piṅgala gives the name as Mayūrasā and so does Vṛ. R.
26 (C.23, B.XV.36). \textsuperscript{1} This relates the belief that the pea-fowls' sexual union take place in complete seclusion.
27 (C.24, B.XV.37, 38). \textsuperscript{1} Scheme (− ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ).
28 (C.25, B.XV.39). \textsuperscript{1} We are not sure of the meaning of the word dodhaka. Ag. writes doḍhakena gīyamānaṁ vṛttam doḍhaka-vṛttam.
29 (C.26, B.XV.40). \textsuperscript{1} Scheme. (− ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ∤ − ). This is named as Moṭanaka by Gaṅgādāsa in Ch. M.
Example:

30. eso’mbuda-nisvana-tulya-ravah
   ksibah skhalaman-an-vilamba-gatiha
   srutvA rhana-garjitan adri-tate
   vikshAn prAti moAtyayati dvirAdA

This elephant hearing the clouds roaring in the mountains
valley, is trumpeting in excitement as loudly as the [rain] clouds
and is rushing with faltering steps to the trees.

Indra-vajra

31. [The metre with] the feet of eleven syllables of which
the third, the sixth, the seventh and the ninth are light, [and
the rest heavy] is called Indra-vajra.

Example:

32. tvAm durpiriksA duratiprasAdA
   duAAkhaika-sAdhyA kAthinaika-bhAva
   sarvasv avasthAsu ca kAmAtAntre
   yogyAsi kiip va bahunendravajra

You are hard to be looked at, difficult to be pleased and
won over; and you have an unmixed (lit, one) hard feeling, in the
practice of love, you are unfit (ayoga) at every stage; and in short
you are [like] the thunder-bolt of Indra.

Upendravajra

33. [The metre with] the feet of eleven syllables of which
the first, the third, the sixth, the seventh, the ninth are light [and
the rest heavy] is called Upendravajra.

Example:

34. priye sriyA varA-visoApanena
   smitena kAntyA sukumA-rbhAvat
   ami guA rUpa-gunAnurUpA
   bhavanti te kiip tvam upendravajra

30 (C.27, B.XV.41).
31 (C.28, B.XV.42).
32 (C.29, B.XV.43).
33 (C.30, B.XV.44).
34 (C.31, B.XV.45).
O beloved one, due to your beauty, the special colours [of your dress], smile, grace and delicate bearing, these qualities of yours have matched the qualities of the [beautiful] form. Are you the bow of Indra? ¹

Rathōddhatā

35. [The metre with] the feet of eleven syllables of which the first, the third, the seventh, the ninth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Rathōddhatā¹.

Example:

36. kīṁ tvayā-subhaṭā dīra-varjitaṁ
   nātmanā na suhṛdāṁ priyāṁ kṛtam ¹
   yat palayana-parāyapasya tc
   yāti dhūlir adhunā rathōddhatā ²

O good soldier, why have you left the battle-field completely. You have done neither any good to yourself nor to your friends, for while running away [from the battle field] the dust [in your road] rises now [as if] scattered by chariot. ²

Svāgata

37. [The metre with] the feet of eleven syllables of which the first, the third, the seventh and the tenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Svāgata¹.

Example:

38. adya me saphalam āyata-netre
   jivitaṁ madana-sampṛaya-bhāvam ¹
   āgataṁ bhavanam mama yasmāt
   svāgataṁ tava varōru niśīda ²

Today the two large eyes of mine have attained their object and so has my life and love, because you have come to my house; O fair lady, you are welcome, please be seated.

¹ Uṇendra-vajropu ṣaṁdhanāḥ upamitam etc. (Ag.).
² (C.32, B.XV.46). ¹ Scheme (- ㅇ - , ㅇ ㅇ ㅇ ㅇ - ㅇ - ㅇ -).
38 (C.33, B.XV.47). ¹ B. gives an additional example of this metre (B.XV.49).
37 (C.34, B.XV.49). ¹ Scheme (- ㅇ - , ㅇ ㅇ ㅇ ㅇ - ㅇ ㅇ , - -).
śālinī

39. [The metre with] the feet of eleven syllables of which the sixth and ninth are light [and the rest heavy] is called śālinī.¹

Example:

40. duḥśālam vā nirguṇam pāpakām vā
loke dhairyād apiyam na braviṣi 1
āryaṁ śilam sādhivī he te'nuvṛttam
mādhuryāḍhyā sarvathā śālinī tvam ॥

On account of your patience with the people you do not, utter a harsh word to any one who has bad manners or is without any merit or is wicked. O good lady, you have followed a noble manner, you are a housewife full of sweetness in every respect.

Toṭaka

41. [The metre with] the feet of twelve syllables of which the third, the sixth, the ninth and the last, are heavy [and the rest light] is called Toṭaka.¹

42. kim idaṁ kapaṭāsraya-durviṣaham
bahu-sāthyam athōlana-rūkṣa-katham 1
svajana-priya-sajjana-bhedakaram
nanu toṭaka-vṛttam idaṁ kuruṣe ॥

Why is this crooked and insufferable conduct full of villainy, and unambiguous (lit. direct) and harsh words hurting the relations, dear ones and [other] good people? You are indeed behaving like a cutter.

Kumudanibhā

43. [The metre with] the feet of twelve syllables of which

---

38 (C.35, B.XV.50).
39 (C.36, B.XV.51). ¹ Scheme (- - - , - - O , - - O , - - - ).
40 (C.37, B.XV.52).
41 (C.38, B.XV.53, 54). ¹ Scheme (O O - , O O - , O O - , O O - ).
42 (C.39, B.XV.55).
43 (C.40, B.XV.59).
the first four, the eighth and the tenth are light [and the rest heavy] is called Kumudanibhā¹.

Example:

44. kumudanibhā tvan kāma-bāṇa-viddhā
    kim asi-natabhrūḥ śīta-vāta-dagdhā
    mṛdu-nalini-vāpīṇḍu-vaktra-śobhā
    katham api jātā agrataḥ sakhināṁ
g

O fair-eyed damsel, being like a Kumuda flower why have you been struck with cupid’s arrow and why do you appear pale before your friends like a delicate Nalini blasted by the cold wind.

Candra-lekhā

45. [The metre with] the feet of twelve syllables of which the first five, the seventh and the tenth as are light [and the rest heavy] and the caesura falls after the first five syllables, is called Candra-lekhā¹.

Example:

46. vaktraṁ saunyāṁ te padma-patrāyatākṣaṁ
    kāmasyāvasaṁ svabhruvoś cāvabhāsāṁ
    kāmasyāpīdam kāmam āhartukāmaṁ
    kāntyā tvan känte candra-lekhēva bhāsi
g

O beloved one, your sweet face with eyes as large as lotus-petals and the splendour of your eyebrows, are the abode of love, and they are ready to bring love even to the god of love; you shine as it were like a phase of the moon.

Pramitākṣarā

47. [The metre with] the feet of twelve syllables of which

¹ Scheme (v, o, o, o, o, o). B. gives another metre of this name with a different scheme (v, o, o, o, o, o, o) and an example of this (B.XV.56-58).

44 (C.41, B.XV.60).
45 (C.42, B.XV.61). ¹ Scheme (v, o, o, o, o, o).
46 (C.43, B.XV.62).
47 (C.44, B.XV.63).
the third, the fifth, the ninth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Pramitākarsā.\(^1\)

**Example:**

48. smita-bhāṣīṇī hy acapalāparuṣī
nibhitāpavāda-vimukhi satatam \(1\)
yadi kasya cид yuvatir asti sukhā
pramitākṣarā sa hi punānā jayati \(1\)

If any one has a pleasing young wife with restrained speech, who is always smiling and averse to speaking ill of him [even] secretly, and is never fickle or harsh, that person verily thrives.

**Vamśasthā**

49. [The metre with] the feet of twelve syllables of which the second, the fourth, the fifth, the eighth, the tenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Vamśasthā.\(^1\)

**Example:**

50. na me priyā yad bhūmāṇa-varjītā
kṛtāprīya te pāruṣābhīṣaṅgānī \(1\)
tathā ca pāsyāmy ahām adya vigrahān
dhrvān hi vamśastha-gatiḥ kariyati \(1\)

You are not dear to me, for you are wanting in esteem [for me] and your harsh words [also] have made you displeasing [to me]. So I see that the natural habit will surely bring a quarrel today.

**Hariṇa-plutā**

51. [The metre with] feet of twelve syllables of which the fourth, the seventh, the tenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Hariṇa-plutā.\(^1\)

---

\(1\) Scheme \((O O , - , O O - , O O - , O O -).\)

48 (C.45, B.XV.64).

49 (C.46, B.XV.65, 66). \(^1\) Scheme \((- O , - O , O - O , - O -).\)

50 (C.47, B.XV.67).

51 (C.48, B.XV.68). \(^1\) Scheme \((O O O , - O O , - O O , - O -).\)

This is called Druta-vilambita by Piṅgalā and his followers.
Example:

52. paruṣa-vākya-kaśabhihata tvayā
    bhaya-vilokana-pārśva-nirūkṣanā
    varatanuḥ pratata-pluta-sarpaṇaś
    anukaroti gatair harīṇa-plutam" 

The fair lady (lit. fair-limbed one)\textsuperscript{1}, smitten by the whip of your harsh words, and looking in fear to her sides and running away continuously with quick steps is imitating by her movements a deer's gallop.

Kāmadattā

53. [A metre with] the feet of twelve syllables of which the seventh, the ninth, the eleventh and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Kāmadattā\textsuperscript{1}.

Example:

54. karaja-pada-vibhūṣita yathā tvam
    sudati daśana-vikṣatādharā ca
    gatir api caraṇāvalagna-mandā
tvam asi mṛga-samākṣi kāmadattā "

O fair lady\textsuperscript{1}, you have been adorned with the marks of nails, your lips have been bitten by teeth and your gait also is faltering and slow. It seems, O deer-eyed one, that you have given [yourself up] to [the enjoyment of] love.

Aprameyā

55. [The metre with] the feet of twelve syllables of which the first, the fourth, the seventh and tenth are light [and the rest heavy] is called Aprameyā\textsuperscript{1}.

---

53 (C.50, B.XV.70). \textsuperscript{1} Scheme (\(\bullet \bullet \bullet \bullet \), \(\bullet \bullet \bullet \bullet \bullet \bullet \bullet \bullet \bullet \bullet \)). C. calls this Kāma-mattā.
54 (C.51, B.XV.71). \textit{Sudati}—O fair-toothed one.
55 (C.52, B.XV.72). \textsuperscript{1} Scheme (\(\bullet - - \), \(\bullet - - \), \(\bullet - - \), \(\bullet - - \)). This is called Bhujāṅga-prayaṭa by Piṅgala and his followers.
Example:

56. na te kā cid anāyā samā śṛyate strī
    nṛ-loke viśāṣṭā guṇair advityaiḥ
    trilokyaṁ guṇāgryān samāhrtya sarvān
    jāgaty aprameyaiḥ stṛṣṭā vidhātā

Nowhere amongst the mortals (lit. in this world) is to be seen a woman who is your equal, and is distinguished by singular accomplishments. The creator has made you matchless by putting together [in you] all the best virtues of the three worlds.

57. [The metre with] the feet of twelve syllables of which the second, the fifth, the eighth and the eleventh are light [and the rest heavy] is called Padmini.

Example:

deha-toyaśayā vaktra-padmōjjivalā
    netra-bhṛṅgākula danta-hamsaśiḥ smītā
    kośa-patrao-chadā cakravāka-stant
    padminīva priye bhāśi me sarvadā

58. O dear lady, you always appear to me like a lotus-lake, for your body is a pool of water which shines by the lotus-face, and your eyes are the restless bees [there] and you smile with the swan-like teeth and your hairs are [the lotus] leaves, and the breasts are like the Cakra-vākas [swimming there].

59. [The metre with] the feet twelve syllables of which the first six and the tenth are light [and the rest heavy] is called Pātuṣṭṭa.

56 (C.53, B.XV.73).
57 (C.54, B.XV.74, 75). 1 Scheme: (- - - - - - - -).
58 (C.55, BXV.76). 1 B. gives a second example (B.XV.77) which seems to be a variant of this.
59 (C.56, B.XV.78, 79). 1 Scheme: (- - - - - - - - - - - -).
This is called Sragvinī by Piṅgala and his followers.
Example:

60. upavana-salilanam bala-padmair
    bhramara-parabhrтанam kañhā-nādaих
    samada-gati-vilasaiḥ kāminināṁ
    kathayati pañuvrtaṁ madhu-māsaiḥ

The month of Caitra (lit. honey-month) with lotus-buds in the garden-lakes, songs of bees and cuckoos and the playful movements of intoxicated women, is announcing its smart manners.¹

Prabhāvati

61. [The metre with] the feet of twelve syllables of which the second, the fourth and the ninth the eleventh and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Prabhāvati.¹

Example:

62. katham uv idāṁ kamala-visāla-locane
    graham ghanaih pihita-kare niśākare
    acintayanty abhinava-varṣa-vidyutas
    tvam āgatā sutanu yathā prabhāvati

O fair one, with eyes as large as a lotus, how have you come like a radiant being to this house [of mine] when the rays of the moon have been covered by clouds and you have not cared for the impending (lit. new) rains and the lightning?

Praharṣini

63. [The metre with the] feet of thirteen syllables of which the first three, the eighth, the tenth and the twelfth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Praharṣini¹.

---

60 (C.57, B.XV.80). ¹ I am not certain about the exact meaning of the term pañuvrta. One ms. gives it as pañuvrta (see B.) which I adopt.

61 (C.58, B.XV.81). ¹ Scheme (O - O, - O, O O - O, - -).

62 (C.59, B.XV.82).

63 (C.60, B.XV.83). ¹ Scheme (- - - O, O O, O - O, - O - -).
Example:

64. bhavasthair madhura-kathaiḥ subhāṣitaīsvaṁ
   sūtopa-skhalita-vilambita-gataie ca
   sōbhāḍhyair harasi manāmsi kāmukānāṁ
   suvyaktam hy atijagati praharṣīṇaṁ ca

[O fair one], by your loving and sweet words, witty sayings, beautiful, majestic, faltering and slow steps, you captivate the mind of lovers. It is apparent that you are enrapturing beyond [anything else in] this world.

Matta-mayūra

65. [The metre with] the feet of thirteen syllables of which the sixth, the seventh, the tenth and the eleventh are light [and the rest heavy] is called Matta-mayūra

Example:

66. vidyun-naddha śendra-ilhanur-dyotita-dehā
   vātōddhūtāḥ śveta-balakā-kṛta-sobhaḥ
   ete megha garjita-nadōjjvala-cīnaḥ
   prāvṛt-kālaṁ matta-mayūram kathayati

These clouds [characterised] by a thundering noise and brilliant signs containing lightning and rainbow, moved about by the wind, and adorned with white cranes speaks of the [arrival of the] rainy season which maddens the peacocks.

Vasanta-tilakā

67. [The metre with] the feet of fourteen syllables of which the first two, the fourth, the eighth and the eleventh and the thirteenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Vasanta-tilakā

64 (C.61, B.XV.84).
65 (C.62, B.XV.85). 1 Scheme (- - - - - - - , - - - - - -).
66 (C.63, B.XV.86).
67 (C.64, B.XV.87). 1 Scheme,(- - - - - - - - - - - - - -).

(C.81, B.XV.84).
Example:

68. citrair vasanta-kusumaiḥ kṛta-keśa-hastā
srag-dāma-mālāya-racanā-suvi bhūgitāngi 1
nānāvatamsaka-vibhusita-karpapāśā
sākṣād vasanta-tilakēva vibhāti nāri 2

This well-dressed woman who has adorned her braid of hairs with the many-coloured vernal flowers, and the rest of her body with various types of flower-garlands and her ears with various ornaments, looks indeed like the decoration (tilaka) on the forehead [of the goddess] of spring.

Asambadhā

69. [The metre with the] feet of thirteen syllable, of which the first five and the last three are heavy, [and the rest light] is called Asambadhā. 1

Example:

70. māni lokajñāḥ śruta-bala-kula-śīlādiyo
yasmin sammānām na sadṛṣaṁ anupaśyed dhi 1
gacce tām tyaktvā druta-gatir aparām deśan
kīrpa nānārthaś avanir'iyaṁ asambadhā 2

A proud person who knows the world and is learned, strong, of high birth and character, must leave [a country] in which he does not find adequate honour, and quickly goes to a different country; for this world is scattered over with wealth of many kinds and offers no obstruction [to such a person].

Śarabhā

71. [The metre with the] feet of fourteen syllables of which the first four, the tenth, the eleventh the thirteenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Śarabhā. 1

68 (C.65, B.XV.88). 1 Srak and mālya are used here probably to indicate two different kinds of garlands.
69 (C.66, B.XV.89). 1 Scheme ( - - , - - ⊗, ⊗ ⊗ ⊗, ⊗ ⊗ ⊗ ).
70 (C.87, B.XV.90).
71 (C.88, B.XV.91). 1 Scheme ( - - , ⊗ ⊗, ⊗ ⊗ ⊗, - ⊗ ⊗, ⊗ - ).
Example

72. eṣā kāntā vrajati lalitaṁ vepamānā
gulmaç-chennaṁ vanam uru-nagaiḥ sampravidham
hā hā kaśṭam kim idam iti no vedmi mūḍho
vyaktam krodhāc-charabha-lalitaṁ kartu-kāmā

This beloved lady goes trembling in a graceful manner to the forest covered with shrubs and interspersed with high hills. Ah, what a pity, the fool that I am, I could not understand that due to anger she is openly playing the graceful role of an young elephant.

Nāṇḍimukhi

73. [The metre with] the feet of fifteen syllables of which the first six, the tenth, and the thirteenth are light [and the rest heavy] is called Nāṇḍimukhi.¹

Example:

74. na khalu tava kālaçit krodha-tāmryatākṣaṁ
bhrukuṭi-valita-bhaṅgaṁ dṛṣṭa-pūrvaṁ maṁasyaṁ
kim iha bahubhir uktaṁ yā mamāsaṁ hṛdisthā
tvam asi madhura-vākyā devi nāṇḍimukhiva

Never before have I seen your face with eyes red in anger and with eyebrows curved in frowning; O lady, what more shall I say? Are you the same sweet-tongued one who resides in my heart and is like Nāṇḍimukhi?

Gaja-vilasita

75. [The metre with] the feet of sixteen syllables of which the first, the fourth, the sixth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Gaja-vilasita.
Example:

76. toyādharīṇaḥ sudhira-ghan-putu-pataḥravaiḥ
sarja-kadamba-nilpa-kuṭaja-kusumā-surabhīṁ
kandala-sendragopaka-racitam avanitalam
vikāya karoty asau vṛṣabha-gaja-vilasitakam

On seeing the surface of the earth adorned with the Kandala and the Indragopa, and perfumed with the flowers of Sāl, Kadamba 1, Nilpa 2, and Kuṭaja, which open at the loud and clear drum-like peals of thunder (lit. sounds of the clouds) this [man] imitates the sportful movement of a bull-elephant.

Pravara-lalita

77. [The metre with the] feet of sixteen syllables of which of the second, third, the fourth, the fifth, the sixth, the twelfth the thirteenth, the fifteenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Pravara-lalita. 3

Example:

78. makhāḷīḍham gātraṁ daśana-khaṭitam čoṣṭha gāḍaṁ
sirah puspomisram pravilulita-kosālākāntam
gatiḥ khinna cēyaṁ vadanam api sambhrānta-netram
aho śāghyam uṛtām pravara-lalitam kāma-cēṣṭām

Her body has been scratched by nails, and lips and the cheeks are bitten by teeth, the head is set with flowers, hairs have their ends dishevelled, and her gait is languid, and the eyes are restless. Ah, a very graceful exploit of love, has taken place in a praiseworthy manner.

Śikharīṇī

79. [The metre with] the feet of seventeen syllables of which the second, the third, the fourth, the fifth, and sixth, the twelfth,

---

76 (C.73, B.XV.97). 1 Kadamba and nilpa are usually considered synonymous. It is just possible that there are two different trees with these two names and later writers have ignored the difference which may be very slight. It may be noted here that the Concise Oxford Dictionary defines nilpa as a 'kind of E. Indian palm'.

2 See note 1 above.

the thirteenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Śikhariṇī.  

Example:

80. mahānadyābhoga pulinam iva te bhāti jaghanām
     tathāṣayāṃ netrābhyaṃ bhramara-sahitam pāpākajam iva
     tanu-sparśaṃ cāyam sutanu sukumāro na paruṣaḥ
     stanābhyaṃ tuṅgūbhyaṃ śīkhari-nibhā bhāṣā dayitē II

Your hip is like the sand-bank at the margin of a river, your face together with the eyes, is like a lotus with the bees, the touch of your body is soft and not rough; with your two elevated breasts you look like a hill with [two] peaks, O dear one.

Vṛṣabha-cēṣṭīta

81. [The metre with the] feet of seventeen syllables of which the first five, the eleventh, the thirteenth, the fourteenth and the sixteenth are light [and the rest heavy] is called Vṛṣabha-cēṣṭīta.  

Example:

82. jalada-nīnādaṃ śrutvā garjan madoccaya-darpitaḥ
     vilikhati mahāṃ śṛṅgākṣepair vṛṣabh pratimardya ca I
     svayuvti-vṛtto gaśṭhad gaśṭham prayaṭi ca nirihayō
     vṛṣabha-lalitaṃ citraṃ vrīttaṃ karoti ca sāyave II

On hearing the thundering noise of the clouds the bull maddened with an excess of rut, is striking the earth with its horns and is bellowing in reply. And then, surrounded by young females of its class it goes fearlessly from one cow-pen to another and has the various sportive exploits on the green [pasture].

Śrīdhara

83. [The metre with] the feet of seventeen syllables of which the first four, the tenth, the eleventh, the thirteenth,

1 Scheme (U - -, - - -, O O O, O O -, - O O, O -).
80 (C.77, B.XV.103).
81 (C.78, B.XV.104, 105). 1 Scheme (O O O, O O - , -, - O ,
O O O, O -). This is called Hariṇī by Piṅgala and his followers.
the fourteenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Śrīdhārā.\(^1\)

Example:

84.

snānāiś cūṇaiḥ sukha-surabhībhir ganḍa-lepaiś ca dhūpaiḥ
puṣpaiś cāyaiḥ śirasi-racitair vastra-yogaiś ca tais taiḥ
nānā-raṇaiḥ kanaka-racitair aṅga-sambhoga-samsthair
vyakṣam kānte kamala-nilaya śrīdhārēvāti bhāsi

O beloved one, by your bathing, powders, pleasantly fragrant paste smeared on your cheek, the [hair-perfuming] incense, flowers set on the hair (lit. head), various clothes and many jewels combined with gold worn on the limbs, you shine indeed very much like the lotus-dwelling [one] who is the goddess of beauty.

**Vanśa-patra-patita**

85. [The metre with] the feet of seventeen syllables of which the first, the fourth, the tenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called the Vanśa-patra-patita.\(^1\)

Example:

86. esā gajo'dri-mastaka-tate kalabha-parivṛṭaḥ
krīḍatī vṛkṣa-gulma-galane kusuma-bhara-nate
megha-ravaṃ niśamya muditāḥ pavana-java-samāḥ
sundari vanśa-patra-patitam punar api kurute

O fair lady, this elephant which surrounded by young ones is playing near the peak of the hill in the thick forest of trees and shrubs bent with flowers, is delighted to hear, the roaring of clouds and is moreover causing, like the wind, the bamboo leaves to fall [on the ground].

**Vilambita-gati**

87. [The metre with the] feet of seventeen syllables of which the second, the sixth, the eighth, the twelfth, the fourteenth,

---

\(^1\) Scheme (−−, − − −, − − −, − − −, − − −, − −). This is called Mandākrānta by Piṅgala and his followers.

84 (C.81, B.XV.110).
85 (C.82, B.XV.111).\(^1\) Scheme (− − −, − − −, − − −, − − −, − − −, − − −, − − −, − − −, − − −, − − −).
86 (C.83, B.XV.112).
87 (C.84, B.XV.113-114, 115).

36
the fifteenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Vilambitagati.¹

Example:

88. vīghūrṇīta-vilocaṇā prūthu-vikīrṇa-hāraṇa punaḥ
pralamba-raśana ca lat-sākhalita-pada-manda-kramāḥ
na me priyam idāṁ janasya bahumāna-rāgena yan
madena vivasā vilambita-gatiḥ kṛtiḥ tvam priye

O beloved one, your eyes are rolling, the large necklace is displaced, the girdle is hanging loose, and your slow steps are faltering; I indeed like¹ this your slow gait that you assume out of overwhelming pride due to this man’s love and respect [for you].

Citra-lekhā

89. [The metre with the] feet of eighteen syllables of which the first five, the eleventh, the twelfth, the fourteenth, the fifteenth, the seventeenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Citra-lekhā.¹

Example:

90.

nānā-ratnadhyair bahubhir adhikāṁ bhūṣaṇair āṅga-samsthaḥ
nānā-gandhāryair madana-jananair āṅga-rāgaś ca hṛdayaiḥ
kośāiḥ snānārdraiḥ kusuma-racitaḥ vastra-rāgaś ca tais tālaiḥ
kante śanśeṣāt kīm iha bahunā citra-lekhēva bhāśi

O beloved one, you shine very much with the many be-jewelled ornaments worn in your limbs, various pleasant cosmetics rich in passion-inspiring scents, hairs clean after bath and decorated with flowers, and varied colours of your clothes. What shall I say more? To be brief, you appear like a painted picture.

¹ Scheme (O - O, O O - , O - O, O O - , O - O, O - ). This is called Prithvi by Piṅgala and his followers.
88 (C.85, B.XV.116). ¹ lit. Is it not dear to me?
89 (C.16, B.XV.117). ¹ Scheme (- - - , - - O, O O O, O - - , O - - , O - - ). This is called Kusumita-latā-vellitē by Piṅgala and his followers.
90 (C.87, B.XV.118).
Śārdūla-vikriḍita

91-92. [The metre with] the feet of nineteen syllables of which the first three, the sixth, the eighth, the twelfth, the thirteenth, the fourteenth, the sixteenth, the seventeenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Śārdūlavikriḍita.¹

Example:

93.

nānā-śastra-śatagñi-tomara-hatāḥ prabhraṣṭa-sarvāyudhāḥ
nirbhāmōdara-pāda-bālu-vadanā nirbhārt-sitāḥ satrāvah 1
dhairyōtsāha-parākrama-prabhṛtibhis tais tair vicitra-guṇāḥ
vṛttam te ripu-ghāti bhāti samare śārdūla-vikriḍitam 1

The enemies have been repelled after [some of them have been] killed with various weapons, Śatagñi and Tomara and [some have] their bellies, arms, feet and face pierced and [some have] lost all their weapons. Your enemy-killing exploits in battle comparable to the tiger's sports and characterised by virtues such as, patience, energy and valour, are splendid.¹

Suvadanā

94-95. [The metre with the] feet of twenty syllables of which the first four, the sixth, the seventh, the fourteenth, the fifteenth, the sixteenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Suvadanā.¹

Example:

96.

netre lilālasānte kamala-dala-nibbe bhrū-cāpa-rucire
guḍḍoṣṭham pīna-madhyam sama-saḥita-ghanāḥ snigdhāḥ ca daśanāḥ 1
karpāv anśa-pralambau cibukam api nataṃ ghopā surucirā
vyaktaṃ tvam martya-loke varanatu vihitāsyēkā suvadanā 1

91-92 (C.88-89, B.XV.119, 120, 121). ¹ Scheme (− − , ⫠ ⫠ − ⫠ − , ⫠ ⫠ − , − − ⫠ − , − − ⫠ − , −).  
93 (C.90, B.XV.122). ¹ B. gives an additional example of this (B.XV.123).
94-95 (C.91-92, B.XV.124-125, 126). ¹ Scheme (− − − , − , − ⫠ ⫠ , ⫠ ⫠ − , ⫠ ⫠ − , − ⫠ ⫠ , − ⫠ ⫠ , ⫠ − ).
96 (C.93, B.XV.127).
Your eyes are like lotus-patals, beautiful with the bow-like eyebrows and their ends are playfully lazy; the cheeks and lips are plump in their middle, the teeth are all equal, in a line, thickly set and shining, the ears are hanging down as far as the shoulders, the chin is bent and the nose is beautiful, O fair lady, in this mortal world you are indeed the only fair-faced woman whose face has been [carefully] fashioned.

Sragdhāra

97-98. [The metre with] the feet of twentyone syllables of which the first four, the sixth, the seventh, the fourteenth, the fifteenth, the seventeenth, the eighteenth, the twentieth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Sragdhāra.¹

Example:

99.
cutākakāravindaiḥ kuruvaka-tilakaḥ karṇikāraḥ śirīśaḥ
punnāghaḥ pārijātaḥ vakula-kubalayaḥ kīṃśukaiḥ satimuktaiḥ
etair nūṇā-prakāraḥ kuṣuma-sūrabhīḥ viprakārpaḥ ca tais tair
vāsaṇaiḥ paśpa-vṛndair nāravara vasūdhā sragdhāreṇvādyam bhāti

O king (lit. best among men), due to the many and various sweet smelling vernal flowers such as, Cūtu, Aśoka, Aravinda, Kuravaka, Tilaka, Karṇikāra, Śirīśa, Punnāga, Pārijāta, Vakula, Kuvalaya, Kīṃśuka and Atimukta, this earth looks today like a woman wearing [many] garlands of flowers.

Madraka

100-101. [The metre with] the feet of twentytwo syllables of which the first, the fourth, the sixth, the tenth, the twelfth, the sixteenth, the eighteenth, and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Madraka¹.

---
¹ Scheme (− −− − − − − − − − − −). ² Scheme (− − − − − − − − − − − − − −).
Example:

102.
udyatam eka-hasta-carapan dvitiya-kara-recitaṁ suvinatam
vaṁśa-mṛdaṅga-vādyā-madhuram vicitra-karaṇānvinatam bahu-vidham
tad adya subhagair vidagdhā-gati-ceṣitaṁ su-lalitair
nṛtyasi vibhramākula-padaṁ vivikta-rasa-bhāvitam āsī-mukhi

O fair lady (lit. moon-faced one), you are dancing today in accompaniment of sweet sounds of flutes and drums the Madraka dance with one of your hands raised up and another bent, and your feet are restless in a hurry. And you are making happy, clever and graceful movements in pursuance of many and various Karaṇas, and this dance is imbued with a distinct Sentiment (ṛasa).

Aśvalalita

103-104. [The metre with] the feet of twenty-three syllables of which the fifth, the seventh, the eleventh, the thirteenth, the seventeenth, the nineteenth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Aśvalalita.¹

Example:

105. vividha-turaṅga-nāga-ratha-yaudha-
saṁkulaṁ alaṁ balaṁ samuditaṁ
śara-śata-śakti-kunta-parighāsi-
yasti-vitataṁ bahu-praharāpana
ripu-śata-mukta-śastra-rava-bhita-
saṁkita-bhaṭaṁ bhayākulaṁ idaṁ
krtaṁ abhivikṣya samyuga-mukhe
samipsita-ganaṁ tvayāśvalalitam

[Even after] seeing this completely assembled army consisting of many horses, elephants, chariots and fighters, the manifold assaults spread by hundreds of arrows, darts, javelins, clubs and swords, and the foot-soldiers terrified and afraid on account of the

¹ See NS. IV.
noise of released missiles, and the terror-stricken directions, you
have practised in the forefront of the battle the sportful movements
of a horse, the merit of which is very much desired [by people].

Megha-mālā

106-107. [The metre with] the feet of twenty-four syllables
of which the first six, the eighth, the eleventh, the fourteenth
the seventeenth, the twentieth and the twenty-third are light [and
the rest heavy] is called Megha-mālā.¹

Example:

108. pavana vala-samāhata tīvra-gambhirā-
nāda balākāvalit-mekhalā
kṣitidhara-sadṛścīc-a-rūpa mahānīla-
 dhumānābhāmbhā-garbhidvālā 
 sura-pati-dhanur-ujjvāla-baddha-kāksyā
 taḥit-dyota-sannāha-pattōjīvala-
gagana-tala-visārinī prāyṛṣeṇyā
drīḍham megha-mālā 'dhikam śobhate ॥

The sky-covering mass of clouds of the rainy season, having
depth and piercing sounds, wearing a flight of cranes as their girdle,
carrying in their womb water of deep blue colour comparable to
that of smoke and collyrium, girding the waist with the rainbow
as the belt, having their armour-plates illuminated by the flash of
lighting looks indeed very beautiful.

Karuṇca-pādī

109-110. [The metre with] the feet of twenty-five syllables
of which the first, the fourth, the fifth, the sixth, the ninth, the
tenth, and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called
Karuṇca-pādī.¹

¹ Scheme (O O O, O O O, O O O, O O O, O O O, O O O, O O O, O O O).

106-107 (C.103-104, B.XV.140-141, 142).
108 (C.105, B.XV.143).
¹ Scheme (O O O, O O O, O O O, O O O, O O O, O O O, O O O, O O O).
Example:

111. yah kilā dākṣāṇaṃ vidrūta-somaṃ kratuvarām
    a-camāsama apagata-kalasaṃ
    pātita-yūpaṃ kṣipta-cuṣaḷaṃ vicayanan
    a-samidham a-paṣukam acarukam i
    kārmuka-muktenāsu cakāra vyapagata-
    suragaṇa-pitra-gaṇam isūpa
    nityam asau te daitya-gaṇinī pradahatu
    makham iva ripu-gaṇam akhilam ī

Let Śiva (lit. the foe of the demons) who by arrows discharged from his bow quickly spilled the Soma-juice, threw away the Camasa, broke the Kalaśa, felled the Yūpa, dislodged the Cūṣaḷa, put out the fire, destroyed the fuel, scared away the [sacrificial] animals, spilled the Caru and put the gods and the Fiśas to flight in Dakṣa’s great sacrifice, always destroy all your enemies like the same (sacrifice).¹

Bhūjaṅga-vijṛmbhitā

112-113. [The metre with] the feet of twentysix syllables of which the first eight, the nineteenth, twentyfirst, twentyfourth and the last are heavy [and the rest light] is called Bhūjaṅga-
    vijṛmbhitā.²

Example:

114. rūpōpetām devaiḥ śrṣṭām samada-gaja-
    vilasita-gatiṃ nirikṣya tilottamaṃ
    prādakṣiṇyāt pruṣṭām draṣṭum bahu-vaḍanam
    acalā-maṇyanām śiraḥ kṛta-vān haraḥ ī
    dirghaṃ niḥsvasyāntar-gūḍhaṃ stana-vaḍana-
    jaghana-rucirāṃ nirikṣyā tathā punaḥ
    prāṣṭhe nyatam devendreṇa pravaramaṇī
    kaṇaka-valayaṃ bhūjaṅga-vijṛmbhitam ī

¹ (C.108, B.XV.147) B. gives one additional example (B.XV.148) which occurs in Halāyudhā’s commentary to Piṅgala.

¹ (C.109-II) B.XV.149-150). ¹ Scheme (− − −, − − −, − − −, − − −, − − −, − − −, − − −),
           O O O, O O O, O O O, O O O, − O −, O O −, O − −)

114 (C.111, B.XV.151).
Seeing the beautiful Tilottama created by the gods with the gait of an elephant in rut, while she came to circumambulate him, Siva fixed all the eyes on her and kept his heads and mouths motionless. And then the lord of gods (Śiva) on seeing her who was beautiful on account of her breasts, face and the hip, sighed silently and put away on his back the golden bangles set with the best of jewels in which snakes were yawning.

The uneven and the semi-even metres

115. These are, O the best of Brahmins, the even metres I mentioned [before]. Now listen about the uneven and the semi-even metres.

116. The metres of which the feet belong to different, metrical types and are dissimilar, are called uneven (visama).

117-118. The metres in which the two [alternate] feet are similar while the two [contiguous] feet are not similar, are called semi-even (ardha-sama). And the metre in which all the feet are dissimilar is called uneven. The semieven metre is to have its even and odd feet dissimilar and the first of such groups of feet may be shorter or longer than the rest or one of them may be longer and the other shorter than the rest.

Even metres

119. An even metre is defined by defining one of its feet while uneven metre requires the definition of all its feet. And from a definition of the two feet the semi-even metre is known. This is the division of feet [in different semi-even metres].

120. I have described the even metres with reference to their divisions of feet. Now I shall describe the characteristics of the uneven metres in terms of triads, (i.e. yamas).

114a, (C.112, B.XV.158). 1 According to B. it is spurious.
114b (C.113, B.XV.154).
115 (C.114, B.XV.155).
116 (C.115, B.XV.156).
119 (C.118, B.XV.159).
120 (C.119, B.XV.160)
Pathyā

121. If [in Anuśṭup] the first foot contains sa, sa, ga, ga, and the second sa, ra, la, ga and such will be the remaining even and odd feet, it is called Pathyā.

Example:

122. priya-daivata-mitrāsi priya-sambandhi-bandhava:1

priya-dāna-ratā pathyā dayite3 tvam priyāśi me #

You respect the gods and the friends, you love the matrimonial relations and the kinsmen, you are disposed to make affectionate gifts and you are agreeable, O beloved one, you are dear to me.

Uneven Pathyā

123. [The Anuśṭup metre of which] the first foot contains ma, ra, ga, ga, the second ya, sa, la, ga, the third ra, bha, la, ga and the fourth ja, sa, la, ga [is called an all-uneven (sarva-viṣamā) Pathyā].

Example:

124. naivacāro, na te mitraṁ na sambandhi-guṇa-kriyā sarvathā sarvā-viṣamā pathyā na bhavasi priye #

O dear one, you have no [good] conduct, no friend and you have no good action towards the relatives and are in every way very rough; so you are not agreeable.

1. C. gives the correct reading yugmaunjakaun 'even and odd' (feet).
2. (I & III) O O -, O O -, - - and (II & IV) O O -, - O -, O -
3. C. varā for ratā.
4. C. daivata for sambandhi.
5. C. yadyapi for dayite.

122 (C.121, B.XV.163). 1 C. gives the correct reading yugmaunjakaun 'even and odd' (feet).
125. These are the characteristics of the first and the third feet\(^1\). They being inverted i.e. the second and the fourth being of this description, the metre will be called the inverted Pathyā.

Example:

126. krṣtena ramaṇasya kim sakhi roṣena te' pyarthat
    viparitā na pathyāśi tvam jade kena mobita\(^1\)  

What is the use of this anger shown to your beloved one? [It seems that] you are foolish and have been deluded by somebody and have been upset, [so] you are not agreeable.

Capalā

127. [The metre with the feet of eight syllable of which] the fourth, the fifth and the sixth [in the hemistichis] are short, is called Anuṣṭūp Capalā.\(^1\)

Examples:

128. na khalv asyāḥ priyatamāḥ śrotavyām vyāhrtaḥ sakhyā
    nāradasya pratikṛtiḥ kathyate capalā hiyaḥ  

[He] is not this girl’s dearest one. This [information] to be heard [privately] was proclaimed loudly by the female friend. This fickle woman is indeed [to be] called an image of Nārada (the deity of quarrel).

Vipulā

129. [If a metre with the feet of eight syllables has] the seventh syllable short in its second and the fourth feet, it is

---

125 (C.122, B.XV.166). \(^1\) A passage before this seems to be lost. C. reads yugmayor—of the two even (feet). B. has ayujor—of the two odd (feet).

126 (C.123, B.XV.167). \(^1\) We adopt B’s reading. (I) 0 - 0, 0 0 0, 0 - 0, (II) 0 0 0, - 0 0, 0 - 0, (III) 0 0 0, - 0 0, 0 - 0, (IV) 0 0 0, - 0 0, 0 - 0.

127 (C.124, B.XV.168). \(\overset{\text{C.}}{\text{v}}\text{ipulā for capalā.}\)

128 (C.125, B.XV.169).

129 (C.126, B.XV.170).
called [Anuṣṭup] Vipulā. According to some the seventh syllable in all the feet will be short in [such] Vipulā.

Example:

130. samkṣiptā vajravaṇ-madhyā hema-kumbla-nibha-staniḥ
    vipulāsi priye śroṇyāṁ pūrṇa-chandra-nibhaṇaṇe

O dear one, you are thin [in body], your waist is slender in the middle like a Vajra, your breasts are like golden pitchers, your hips are large and your face is like the full moon.

131. gaṅgēva tvaṁ meghāgame śālīvita-vasundharā
    kula-vṛksāṁ ārujati sravanti vipulācalāt

You are like the Ganges at the advent of the rains, flooding the earth, destroying the trees on the bank and flowing down from a high mountain.

132. The feet of Pathyā are thus of various types; in the remaining [types of Anuṣṭup] even and odd feet may be made up with other triads (triṣṭu).

133. In this metre a triad ending in a heavy syllable (i.e. ma, ra, ya, sa) or consisting of light syllables (i.e. na) is never to occur (lit. desired) after the first syllable while after the fourth syllable a short syllable must occur (lit. is prescribed).

134. If in the feet of a Pathyā there are three heavy syllables at the end it is called [Anuṣṭup] Vaktra.

Example:

135. danta-kṣatādharāṁ subhru jāgara-glāṇa-netrāntam
    rati-sambhoga-khinnamp te darṣaniya-taram vaktream

O fair lady, the lips being bitten by teeth, eyes being languid due to keeping awake, your face has become more charming, after its exhaustion in love’s enjoyment.

---

1 Saitava—mentioned in Piṅgala and Agni P. See CSS, p. 38.
180 (C.127, B.XV.171).
182 (C.129, B.XV.174). 1 We follow B.  133 (C.130, B.XV.175).
136. These are all-uneven metres of the Anuṣṭup class. The authorities differ from one another as regards [the arrangement of] the triads and syllables.¹

Vānavāsikā

137. The metre which has its feet consisting of sixteen Mātrās as parts of Gāthā to be divided into four sections in terms of triads and the part of a triad, is called Vānavāsikā.¹

Example:

138. asaṁthita-padaś uvilivalaṁgi
mada-skhalita-cetāta-manojāṁ
kva yāṣyasi varoru surata-kāle
viṣamā kīṁ vānavāsikā tvam

O fair lady, your gait is unsteady, limbs are agitated, and your faltering movements due to ardent passion are charming. Where are you going at the time of love's enjoyment? Are you a perverse woman of Vānavāsī?

Ketumati

139. The metre of which the first and the third feet consist of sa, ja, sa, ga and the second and the fourth bha, ra, ma, gu, is called Ketumati.¹

Example:

140. sphuritādharan cakita-netraṁ
rakta-kapolam ambuja-dalāksam
kim idāṁ ruṣāpahṛtā-sobhāṁ
ketumati-samaṁ vada mukhaṁ te

Your lips are throbbing, the eyes which are like lotus-petals are trembling and the cheeks are red. Tell me why has your face robbed of its beauty by anger, become like Ketumati (flame)?

¹ C. omita this.
¹ Piṅgala calls this Mātrāsamaka. His Vānavāsikā is simply a variety of this. See CSS. p. 21.
Aparvaktra

141. In* the metre called Aparvaktra the first and the third feet consist of na, na, ra, la, ga and the second and the fourth of na, ja, ja, ra.¹

Example:

142. sutanu jala-parita locanaṃ
ejalada-niruddham ivēndu-mañḍalam
kim idam aparā-vaktram eva te
śaśi-vadane'dya mukham parañ-mukham

O fair lady (lit. moon-faced one) why are your eyes full of tears and why do you look like like the orb of the moon obscured by the clouds and why has your face turned today like some one else’s face?

Puspitāgrā

143. In Puṣpitāgrā metre the first and the third feet consist of na, na, ra, ya, and the second and the fourth of na, ja, ja, ra, ga.¹

Example:

144. pavana-rayā-vidhūta-cāru-saṅkham
pramudita-kokila-kaṅṭha-nāda-ramyam
madhukara-parigyam-na-sabdaṃ
varatana paśya vanaṃ supuṣpitāgram

O fair lady, look at the top of the blossoming forest in which the wind is shaking the beautiful branches of trees, the gladdened cuckoos are singing with sweet voice and the bees are humming all around.

Udgatā

145. In Udgatā metre the first foot consists of sa, ja, sa,

---

¹ Scheme: (I & III) 0 0 0, 0 0 0, 0 - 0, 0 - 0, - 0 - .
143 (C.144, B.XV.186). ¹ Scheme (I & II) 0 0 0, 0 0 0, - 0 - .
144 (C.145, B.XV.187).
145 (C.135, B.XV.188).
la, the second of na, sa, ja, ga, the third of bha, na, ja, la, ga and the fourth of sa, ja, sa, ja, ga.

Example:

146. tava roma-rājir atibhāti
   sutanu madanasya manjarīm ||
   nībbhi-kamala-vivarotpita-
   bhramarāvalīka kusumāt samudgata ||

O fair one, the hairs which rise from the hollow of your lotus-like navel are comparable with a swarm of bees coming out of flowers and they exceed in beauty Cupid’s blossoms.

Lalitā

147. The metre Lalitā has its first foot consisting of sa, ja, sa, la the second foot of na, sa, ja, ga, the third foot of na, na, sa, sa, and the fourth foot of sa, ja, sa, ja, ga.¹

Example:

148.

lalitā kula-bhramita cāru-vasana-kara-cāru-pallavā ||
pravikāśitakamala-kānti mukhipravibhāsi-devi surata-śramāturā ||

O lady, hurriedly but gracefully moving the beautiful clothes and the delicate hands and having a blooming lotus-like face you look charming after the fatigue of love’s sports.

149. These are the syllabic metres of the even and uneven types, to be used in dramas and poems.

150. There are besides many other syllabic metres which have been mentioned here collectively. They are not to be used because they do not embellish [a composition].

¹ Scheme (I) o o –, o – o, o o –, o, (II) o o o, o o –, o – o, –, (III) – o o, o o o, o – o, o –, (IV) o o –, o – o, o o –, o – o, –

146 (C.136, B.XV.189).

147 (C.137, B.XV.190).

¹ Scheme (I & II) same as in Udgata. (III) o o o, o o o, o – o, o –, (IV) o o –, o – o, o o –, o – o.
Pitāga's Lalitā has the fourth foot similar to that of Udgatā

148 (C.133, B.XV.191).

151. The syllabic metres forbidden here after may be used in songs. I shall describe their varieties while treating the Dhruvas.

Āryā metres

152. This is the definition of various syllabic metres briefly treated by me. Next I shall give the definition of the Āryās.

153. The Āryās are of five types, viz, Pathyā, Vipulā, Capalā, Mukha-capalā, and Jaghana-capalā.

154. I shall speak about their caesura and division of Mātrās and their varieties depending on Gaṇas which have been prescribed as characteristics of these.

155. In these metres the caesura marks the division [of feet]; the Gaṇa consists of four Mātrās, the second and the fourth (lit. the last) feet are the even ones, and the first and the third (lit. the rest) odd ones.

156. [In an Āryā] the odd Gaṇas consisting of four Mātrās should have no ja and the even Gaṇas may be of any type according to the choice [of the poet].

156 a. The eighth Gaṇa in every Ārya is to be known as half a Gaṇa (i.e. two Mātrās).

157. The sixth Gaṇa may be of two alternative types and the eighth will consist of one [syllable]. The sixth Gaṇa in the second hemistich will consist of one Mātrā only.¹

158. In one alternative is that the sixth Gaṇa will be ja, (००००) and in the other it will consist of four short syllable, (००००) and these relate to the caesura (yati).

¹ Read 157b (with C) as प्रश्चे
159. The caesura may occur when the second la after the fifth Gaṣa has been completed or it may occur from the first syllable [of the sixth Gaṣa], or after the fifth Gaṣa [has been completed]. 1

Pathyā-Āryā and Vipulā-Āryā

160. The Āryā metre of which the caesura occurs after the three Gaṣas (lit. feet are made up of three Gaṣas) is called Pathyā. The Vipula Āryā is different from this, only because it observes no caesura (yati) of any kind [within its hemistichs]. 1

Examples:

Pathyā Āryā

161.

rakta-mṛdu-padma-netrāsita-dirgha-bahula-mṛdu-[kuṭila]-keśī
kasya tu pṛthu mṛdu-jaghanā tanu-bāhvanādari [na]pathyā ||

To whom is not agreeable a woman with lovely and lotus-like soft eyes, copious long, black and [curled] hairs, large and soft hip, slim arms and abdomen?

Vipulā Āryā

162. vipula-jaghaṇa-vadana-stana-nayanaīs
   tāmradhāraśṭha-kara-caraṇaiḥ 1
   āyata-nāśa-ganḍhaira laṭāta-
   caraṇaiḥ śubhā kanyā ||

A maiden is auspicious when her hip, face, breasts and eyes are large, lips, palm and feet are red and nose, cheeks, forehead and ears are prominent.

Capalā Āryā

163. In the Capalā (Āryā) the second and the fourth

159 (C.158, B.XV.202, 210b).  1 Read 159 as नित्यवार्ता अधुर्वंद्र: तन्मात्र दच्छन्ति.

160 (C.159, B.XV.203).  1 Read the couplet as गंधर्व निष्ठा तदः जनमम ग्या त या अधिन 1 जनस्त गंधर्वनक्षत्र निर्मात्रकेतिष्ठतह.

161 (C.160, B.XV. 213).

162 (B.XV.214).

163 (B.XV.215, 204).
Gānas in each hemistich are to consist of a ja (lit. Gāṇa with a heavy syllable in the middle).

Example:

164. ṛudbhātr-gāminī paruṣa-bhāṣīnī kāma-cīhna-kṛta-veśa |
    yā nāti-māṃsa-yuktā surā-priyā sarvatas capalā |

The woman who goes defying her husband, speaks harshly, has erotic signs in her dress, is not very fleshy and is fond of meat, is inconstant in every respect.

Mukha-capalā and Jāghana-capalā Āryā

165. When the definition of a Capalā applies to the first hemistich [only] of an Āryā it is called the Mukha-capalā. And when the same applies to the second hemistich [only] it is called Jāghana-capalā.

Examples:

Mukha-capalā Āryā

166. āryā mukhe tu capalā tathāpi caryā na me yataḥ sā tu |
    dakṣā grha-kṛtyeṣu tathā duḥkhī bhavati duḥkhārtā |

My lady is talkative, but still her conduct [in general] is not bad, for she is an expert in my household work, and in my misery she feels miserable.

Jāghana-capalā Āryā

167. vara-mrga-nayane capalāsi |
    varōru śaśāṅka-darpaṇa-nibhāye |
    kāmasya sārabhūtena |
    pūrṇa-mada-cāru-jaghanena |

O fair lady with the eyes of the best deer, and a face like the moon or the mirror, by your hips which constitute the best prize of love and which are charming on account of your swelling passion, you are [marked as] faithless (lit. inconstant).

---

164 (B.XV.216). 1 B. reads udbhata.

2 B. reads jānāti, for yā nāti. Prof. S. P. Bhattacharya suggested this emendation

168. When the two hemistichs of a Capalä have the same characteristics it is called the all-round Capalä.

169. This metre is known have thirty Mātrās in its first hemistich and twenty-seven in the second\(^1\).

170. Following these rules (lit. thus) one should compose plays (lit. poetical composition) utilising (lit. having) therein different metrical patterns belonging to (lit. arising from) different Rhythm-types, and such plays are to have the thirtysix characteristic marks (lakṣaṇa).

Here ends Chapter XVI. of Bharata's Nātyaśāstra which treats of the Metrical Patterns.

\(^{1}\) The five couples after this (B.XV.222-226) are corrupt and appear to be spurious. These will be discussed in the Introduction.
CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

DICTION OF A PLAY

Thirtysix marks of a good play

1-5. The thirtysix characteristic marks (lakṣāṇa)\(^1\) of [a good] dramatic composition (kārya)\(^2\) are as follows: Ornateness (bhūṣaṇa), Compactness (lakaṇha-saṁghāta), Brilliance (śobhā), Parallellism (uśūṭharaṇa), Causation (kāma), Hesitation (saṁśaya), Favourable Precedent (dṛṣṭānta), Discovery (prāpti), Fancy (abhipāya), Unfavourable Precedent (uśūṭharaṇa), Convincing Explanation (virañjita), Persuasion, (siddhā), Distinction (viśeṣa).

1-5 (C.1-5, B. p.348-350, XVI.1-5). \(^1\) About the significance of the term lakṣāṇa, the commentators of the NŚ, are not at all unanimous. Ag. mentions no less than ten different views on the subject. Evidently some of these are far-fetched and off the mark. It seems that lakṣāṇa in this connexion is comparable to the same word occurring in the compound word mahāpuruṣa-lakṣāṇa (characteristic marks of a superman). According to one view this lakṣāṇa differs from the alamkāra (ornament) and the guṇa (qualities) of a person as figures of speech (alamkāra) and excellences (guṇa) of a composition differ from its characteristic marks (lakṣāṇa). The composition in this connexion is evidently a dramatic one though some of the commentators think otherwise. For a discussion on the position of lakṣāṇas in the history of the Alāmpūra literature see S. K. De, Skt. Poetics, II. pp. 4-5; see also Ramakrishna Kavi, (B.II. pp. 348 349) and V. Raghavan’s paper on Lakṣāṇas in the Journal of Oriental Research, Vol. VI. pp. 70, 71, 81, 82. Mss. of the NŚ. fall into two distinct recensions as regards the text treating the thirty-six lakṣāṇas. One recension followed by older commentators, and late writers like Viśvamītha, and Śiṅgabhūpāla, uses Anuṣṭup verses for the enumeration of lakṣāṇas. We have adopted this as the basis of our translation. The second recension which seems to be later, has been followed by commentators like Kṛtidhara, Abhinavagupta and late writers like Dhana-jaya and others. This greatly varies from the other recension with which it has not more than seventeen names (of lakṣāṇas) in common, and among these, definitions of eight only are similar in both the recensions.

\(^2\) Kārya in this connexion means the dīya-kārya or dramatic composition.
Acusation of Virtue (gunātipāta), Excellence (gunātiśaya), Inference from Similitude (tulya-larka), Multiplex Predication (padacchaya), Description (dīśa), Pointed Utterance (upadīśa), Deliberation (ricāra), Inversion (viparyaya), Slip of Tongue (bhrāmāra), Mediation (anuvaya), Series of Offers (māla), Clever Manner (dakṣiṇa), Censure (garhaṇa) Presumption (artha-patti), Celebrity (prasādāhā), Interrogation (vṛteca), Identity (sārūpya), Indirect Expression of one’s Desire (manoratha), Wit (leśa), Concealment (sāmkṣepa), Enumeration of Merits (guna-kārana), Semi-uttered Expression (anuktā-siddhi) and Compliment (prīyavacona = prioyti).

Ornateness

6. 1To adorn the composition with many figures of speech (alabhāra) and Guna as if with ornaments, for creating manifold meanings is called Ornateness (bhusaṇa, lit. ornament) 2.

Compactness

7. 1When an wonderful sense is expressed by means of a small number of syllables with double entendre, it is called the term named Compactness (aksara-saṃghāta, lit. assemblage of syllables) 2.

---

3 Emend sāmkṣepha to sāmkṣepo. See below 38 note 1.

6 (C.6; B.350, XVI.6) 1 A close study of Ag’s. commentary on passages dealing with laksana is liable to give one an impression that the correct meaning of some of the terms at least relating to this subject, has been to some extent lost, and various explanations have been partly based on guess. But in the absence of anything better we are to depend on them though very cautiously. Definitions of various laksana are mostly not at all clear without examples which have been very liberally given by Ag. To avoid proximity we refrain from quoting them here. Interested persons may see them in the Baroda ed. of the Nś. (Vol II pp. 294ff.). For an example of bhusana. See Kavi. As any old commentary to these (Nś.) passages dealing with laksana, has not come down to us, we used in this connexion the one prepared by M. Ramakrishna Kavi. See B. II pp. 348ff. (Referred to as Kavi).

7 (C.7; B.350, XVI.7). 1 See Kavi.
Brilliance

8. 1 If a charming and novel meaning arises when a less known object is referred to by likening it to a well-known one, and a wonderful sense is expressed through double entendre it is called Brilliance (śobhā, lit. beauty)

Parallelism

9. When by words expressing similar circumstances a suggestion is cleverly made to accomplish an object, it is called Parallelism (udābaraṇa, lit. example) 1.

Causation

10. When brief and pleasing words by the force of their [tactful] use achieve the desired object, it is called [an instance of] Causation (hetu) 1

Hesitation

11. When due to many considerations a sentence is brought to an end without fully communicating the essential theme [in view], it is [an instance of] Hesitation (samśaya, lit. doubt). 1

Favourable Precedent

12. That which supporting the case in hand is an example of its reason and is pleasing to all people, is a Precedent Favourable to the speaker (dṛṣṭānta, lit. example). 2

8 (C.8; B.p.350, XVI.8). 1 C. yatra śliṣṭam viśiṣṭyartham for yatra śliṣṭi viśiṣṭārthā. See Kavi.

9 (C.9; B.p.351, XVI.9). 1 C. tirṛpārtha for tulyārtha. Cf. SD.438 Ag’s definition in trans. is as follows. When from the occurrence (lit. sight) of a single word good many unmentioned ones can be inferred (lit. accomplished) it is called Sample (udābaraṇa).

10 (C.10; B.p.352, XVI.10). 1 Cf. SD. 439. Ag. reads this definition as follows: चतुर्थो भज्जनामानि च। नंशत्रांवर्धितब्रह्मकाणि। सवैयानार्थमेव इन्द्रियाधिकिर्षायत्त (B.XVI.14). Its meaning is not clear, Ag.’s explanation does not seem to be convincing. Possibly there is textual corruption in this.


12 (C.12; B. p.352, XVI.12). 1 C. paksapaksārtha for yastu aksārtha. Cf. SD. 341. Ag.’s text in translation is as follows: That a
Discovery

13. When on seeing some indications, the existence of something is assumed it becomes [an instance of] Discovery (prāpti, lit. attainment)\(^1\) which is included among the marks of a [good] drama.

Fancy

14. When an idea interesting to people [but] hitherto non-existent, is conceived on the basis of similarity [of two objects], it is [an instance of] Fancy (abhīprāya, lit. belief)\(^1\)

Unfavourable Precedent

15. When well-known instance are mentioned for rejecting the contrary view it is [an instance of] Unfavourable Precedent (udarśana, lit example)\(^1\)

Convincing Explanation

16. Words that are spoken in support of the meaning of some faultless statement made before, constitute Convincing Explanation (uirukta, lit etymology)\(^1\).

\(^{1}\) The learned person discovers similarity [of anything] with something perceived by him earlier, is called Illustration (deṣṭanta). Cf. the figure of speech of this name in SD. 697.

\(^{1}\) Cf. SD. 446, Ag. similar (B.XVI.32).

\(^{1}\) SD. 445, Ag. reads this as a variant of yuktis (B.XVI.38) which in translation is as follows: The meaning which is made up only of many mutually compatible objects combining with one another, is called Combination (yuktis). Cf. SD. 501.

\(^{1}\) Cf. SD. 454. Ag. reads this as a variant word (B.XVI.38). The meaning of this def. is not clear. Ag. offers no explanation of this, but gives an example, which it is very difficult to fit in with the definition. Cf. SD. 471.

\(^{1}\) Of SD. 459. Ag.'s text in translation is as follows: Explanation (uirukta) is two kinds: factual and non-factual. Of these the factual [explanation] is that which is well-known (lit. accomplished before), and the non-factual is that which has not been so (lit. not accomplished);
Pursuasion

17. When name of great persons are mentioned with a view to accomplish the object aimed at, it is [an instance of] Persuasion (siddhi, lit. success)\(^2\).

Distinction

18. When after mentioning many well-known great objects something is said distinguishing a thing from them, it is [an instance of] Distinction (vīśeṣānā)\(^1\).

Accusation of Virtues

19. When virtues are mentioned with sweet words of harsh import\(^1\) which carry the contrary implication, it is [an instance of] Accusation of Virtues (guṇātīpyātu, lit. opposition of virtue)\(^2\).

Excellence

20. When after enumerating the qualities available in common men, one mentions some special qualities, it is [an instance of] Excellence (atiśaya)\(^1\).

Inference from Similitude

21. When an object directly perceived is inferred from a metaphor or simile applied in an identical sense, it is [an instance

\(^1\) C. pravaktānām for pradhānānām. Cf. SD. 454. Ag. reads this with a slight variation.

\(^2\) Cf. SD. 452. Ag. reads this as a variant of kṣamā (B XVI.31) which in translation is as follows: When one being hurt by harsh and provoking words uttered by a wicked person in the presence of good people, remains without anger, it is [an instance of] Forgiveness (kṣamā).

\(^1\) C. madhuro nīḍhurūraḥ for madhuraṁ nīḍhurūrthāḥ. Cf. SD. 450. Ag. reads this as a variant of guṇānuvāda (B.XVI.13a) which in translation is as follows: Eulogy (guṇānuvāda) relates to inferior subjects compared with superior ones.

\(^2\) Cf. SD. 451 Ag.'s reading (B.XV.13) in translation is as follows: When anything compares favourably to the best thing [to which it can be compared] it is [an instance of] Excellence (atiśaya).
of] Inference from Similitude (tulya-tarka, lit. reasoning from the comparables)\textsuperscript{1}.

**Multiplex Predication**

22. When a number of words are used along with a number of other words to form different groups for the same purpose, it becomes [an instance of] Multiplex Predication (padocaya)\textsuperscript{1}.

**Description**

23. When any object or incident directly seen or not, is described in harmony with locality, time or from related to it it becomes [an instance of] Description (vīdeha)\textsuperscript{1}.

**Pointed Utterance**

24. When one says something of his own on the basis of Śāstras and thereby pleases the learned, it is a Pointed Utterance (upadiśa, lit. utterance)\textsuperscript{1}.

**Deliberation**

25. That which establishes something not directly perceived and is in harmony with the meaning expressed earlier\textsuperscript{1}.

---

\textsuperscript{1} Cf. SD. 442. Ag. reads this as a variant of the definition of Exhortation (B.XVI.19) which in translation is as follows: To say something very pointedly through suggesting one's own idea by means of likening it to others' actions, is called Exhortation (ākranda). Cf. SD. 472.

22 (C.22 ; B.p.356, XVI.22). \textsuperscript{1} Cf. SD. 443 Ag.'s reading in translation is as follows: When anything is described as possessing different aspects by means of many words of similar import, it is [an instance of] Multiplex Predication (padocaya) which puts together many objects.

23 (C.23 ; B.p. 356, XVI.23). \textsuperscript{1} BC. diśa for diśa Cf. SD. 448. Ag. reads this as a variant of sānya (B.XVI.15) which is different from XVI.35 and is as follows:

24 (C.24 ; B.p.357, XVI.24). \textsuperscript{1} Cf. SD.449; Ag. reads this as a variant of Argumentation (upapatti, B.XVI.35). The def.in translation is as follows: When faults discovered are explained away as being otherwise it is called Argumentation (upapatti) in connexion with drama. Cf. SD. 482.

25 (C.25 ; B.p. 357, XVI.25). \textsuperscript{1} C. purvadeśa for purvāśaya; B. anekopādi for anekāpoka. Cf. SD. 447. Ag.'s reading of the definition in
includes much elimination of errors (apōha), is called Deliberation (vicāra).

Inversion
26. When due to seeing [something] an alteration of Deliberation, takes place on account of a doubt, it is called Inversion (viparyayā).\footnote{1}

Slip of Tongue
27. Manifold deviation of proud and similar other persons from the intended words to something else is called Slip of Tongue (bhrama, lit. lapse).\footnote{1}

Mediation
28. [Words] which please the two persons with mutually opposed resolution and [are aimed at] accomplishing some object, constitute Mediation (anunaya, lit imploring).\footnote{1}

Series of Offers
29. When for the purpose of accomplishing an object one (lit. learned men) suggests to a person his many needs [which may be fulfilled], it is [an instance of] Series of Offers (maḷā, lit. garland).\footnote{1}

---

translation as follows: Deliberation (vicāra) is the critical examination of many things (under B.XVI.33).

26 (C.26; B.p. 357, XVI.26). \footnote{1} B. diṣṭopadiślayoh for diṣṭopayogatah
Cf. SD. 456. Ag. reads this as a variant of the def of Wrong Perception (mīthādhyāvasāya B.XVI.16) which in translation is as follows: When in place of a non-existent object one takes for certain something similar to it, it becomes an instance of] Wrong Perception (mīthādhyāvasāya).

27 (C.27; B.p.358, XVI.27). \footnote{1} Emend diṣṭudibhir to diṣṭudinām
Cf. diṣṭudinām bhareb bhramio viṣyād anyatarad vacaḥ. SD. 455. Ag. reads this as a variant of the def. of Witty Compliment (priyavacana) which in trans. is as follows: That which is apparently liable to provoke anger but brings joy in the end and includes a blessing, is called Witty Compliment (priyavacana=priokti) B.XVI.29.

28 (C.28; B.p.358, XVI.28). \footnote{1} Cf. SD. 458 Ag. reads this as a variant of the def. of Subservience (anuvṛtti) which in trans. is as follows: To follow with a purpose another person as a matter of courtesy, love or favour, is called Subservience (anuvṛtti) B.XVI.34. Ag. reads this differently. Cf. SD. 494.

29 (C.29; B.p.359, XVI.39). \footnote{1} Cf. SD. 459.
Clever Manners

30. When one attends another person with a happy and pleased face, [sweet] speech and [agreeable] movements, it [is an instance of] Clever Manners (dāksinīr).\(^1\)

Censure

31. If any one mentions [someone's] faults and explain them as merits, or decrees his merits and calls them faults, it becomes [an instance of] Censure (yarhaṇa)\(^2\).

Presumption

32. When from a sweetly-worded mention of something, some other object is to be understood, it is [an instance of] Presumption (aṭṭhpattī).\(^1\)

Celebrity

33. That which is expressed with excellent words mentioning many well-known exploits, gives rise to Celebrity (prasilhī)\(^1\).

Interrogation

34. When by courteous (lit. proceeding from courtesy)\(^1\) words one questions oneself or another [imaginary person] it is [an instance of] Interrogation (prccchā).

---

30 (C.30; B.p.359, XVI.30). \(^1\) Cf. SD. 457. Ag. reads this as a variant of the def. of Clever Request (yācū) which in translation is as follows: Words which are apparently liable to provoke anger, but bring joy in the end and turn favourable are called. Clever Request (yācū) See B. XVI. 22 Cf. SD. 496.

31 (C.31; B.p. 359, XVI.31). \(^1\) Cf. SD. 461, Ag. reads this as a variant of the def. of Deceit (kapatamasāghita) (B.XVI.30) which in translation is as follows: Application of some stratagem for the deception or defeat of others, is called Deceit (kapatā). When two or three (stratagems) are applied together it becomes a Multiple Deceit (kapatā- samghita) Cf. SD. 473.

32 (C.32; B.p.360, XVI.37). \(^1\) Cf. SD.460. Ag. reads as a variant of the def. of Embellishment (kārya, B.XVI.37) which in translation is as follows: When defects of an object are explained as merits or merits are derived from the defects it is [an instance of] Embellishment (kārya).

33 (C.33; B.p.360, XVI.33). \(^1\) Cf. SD. 463. Ag. reads this as a variant of the def. of Submission (anumiti, B.XVI.33) which in translation is as follows: Sweet words which are uttered, to please one after forgiving one's singular offence due to anger, is called Submission (anumiti). See also under B.XVI. 21.

34 (C.34; B.p.361, XVI.34). \(^1\) Emend ākārod (ākārod C) to ācārod
Identity

35. When from seeing or hearing something [suddenly] one is confused by its suspected identity [with another it is an instance of] Identity (sārūpya)\(^1\).

Indirect Expression of Desire

36. Expressing one's secret desire of the heart\(^1\) by a pretence of referring to somebody else's condition, is called Indirect Expression of Desire (manoratha, lit. object of the mind).

Wit

37. Words which are addressed in a [clever] manner by expert disputants and which relate to accomplishment of similar objects\(^1\), constitute Wit (lēhi).\(^2\)

Concealment

38. When being faultless one declares to be taking upon oneself various faults of another, it [is an instance of] Concealment (sāmkṣepa, lit. taking away)\(^1\)

---

Cf. abhyarthanāparair vākyair, SD. 462. Ag. (B.XVI.24) reads this identically.

35 (C.35; B.p.361, XVI.35). \(^1\) Cf. SD. 464. Ag. reads this as a variant of the def. of Wounded Self-respect (abhimāna, B.XVI.8) which in translation is as follows: *When one is not pacified even when one is consoled by means of many words and acts, it is [an instance of] Wounded Self-respect (abhimāna).* Cf. SD. 493.

36 (C.36; B.p. 362, XVI.36). \(^1\) Cf. SD. 468. C. hṛdayārthasya for hṛdayastraḥasya Ag. reads this in substantially identical manner (B.XVI.20).

37 (C.37; B.362, XVI.37). \(^1\) C. sadāsārtha-vināśpannah for bhinnipatyaḥ, Cf. SD. 467. Ag. reads this as a variant of the def. of Obstruction (pratīṣṭha) B.XVI.23 which in translation is as follows: *When one sets out to do something contrary to another's desire and is opposed by clever persons (lit. those who know the business) it is called Obstruction (pratīṣṭha).*

38 (C.38; B.p.363, XVI.38). \(^1\) Emend tu kṣobha to sāmkṣepa. C. tu dosa) Cf. SD. 465, sāmkṣepa yat tu sāmkṣepāḥ utmānayathe pratyijjyate. Ag. reads this as a variant of the def. of paridevanam (parīvedanam of Bhoja, parīvāda of Śāradātānaya, parīvedana of Sarveśavara) See B.XVI.39 foot note (\(^*\)). The meaning of its def. is pot clear.
39. When merits of men who excel [others] in qualities in this world, are ascribed to one single person it [is and instance of] Enumeration of Merits (guna-kirtana)².

Semi-uttered Expression

40. When from the mere commencement of a subject the rest of it is comprehended without being actually expressed in words¹ it [is an instance of] Semi-uttered Expression (auvaktu-sīlīthi, lit. unuttered achievement)².

Compliment

41. When words are uttered in a pleasant mood to honour an honourable person and to express joy [for his acts] it [is an instance of] Compliment (priyākta, lit. pleasing utterance)⁴.

42. These thirtysix characteristic marks of a dramatic (lit. poetical) composition conducing to the object in view (i.e. writing plays) will beautify a play (lit. composition)¹ and [hence they] should be properly used according to the Sentiment² [introduced in it].

Four figures of speech

43. Four figures of speech available in drama¹ are: Simile (upamā), Metaphor (ṛūpaka), Condensed Expression (ṛīpaka, lit. lamp) and Yamaka.

---

39 (C.39; B.p.363, XVI.39). ¹ Cf. SD.466. Ag. reads this def. in translation as follows: When a proclamation of various qualities of a person takes place, but his faults are not given out, it is [called an instance of] Enumeration of Merits (guna-kirtana). See B. XVI. 9.

40 (C.40; B.pp. 363-64, XVI.40). ¹ C. viñjanaṭu for viniṇukta. Cf. SD. 469. Ag. reads this as a variant of the def. paridevāna etc. (see 38 note above).

41 (C.41; B.p.364, XVI.41). ¹ Cf. SD. 470. Ag. reads this differently, see above 27 note 1.

42 (C.42; B.p.364, XVI.42).

¹ C. kiṃyagantu sodāharasāṇī for prabandhaśobhākārāṇī, C. balānu-rūpam (rasānu-rūpam), C. for yathārasāṇī.

43 (C.43; B.XVI.40). ¹ B. reads the second hemistic as kiṃyasy etc. hyālambhārūta caivaṛāḥ pariśirīthaḥ.
Simile

44. When in a poetical composition anything is compared on the basis of some similarity it is [an instance of] Simile (upamā). It relates to quality and form.

Number of objects compared

45-49. This comparison may be of one with one or many, or of many with one, or of many with many. (Examples of these are as follows): your face is like the moon (one compared with one)¹, stars shine like the moon (many compared with one), having an eye like⁴ that of a hawk, a peacock and a vulture (one compared with many); and elephants are like clouds (many compared with many).

Five kinds of simile

50. Simile is of five kinds, viz. [that of] praise (prāśamsā), [that of] censure (niudā), [that of] conceit (kalvita), [that of] uniqueness (saudṛi, lit. similar looking) and [that of] partial likeness (kinecit saudṛi).

Simile of praise

51. The king was pleased to see that large-eyed lady just as the sages are pleased to see the success incarnate after it has been achieved with austerity.

Simile of censure

52. The woman clung to that rough-looking person devoid of all good qualities just as a creeper clings round a thorny¹ tree which has been [partially] burnt by the forest-fire.

Simile of conceit

53. The Elephants exuding ichor and moving slowly with gracefulness look like mobile mountains.

---

44 (C.44; B.XVI.41).
45-49 (C.45-49; B.XVI.42-45). ¹ ekasyānekaviṣayā should be emended to anekasy ekaviṣayā (47b).
¹ tulyukṣa (ms. na in B.) for tulyṛtha (B. C.).
50 (C.50; B.XVI.46).
51 (C.51; B.XVI.47).
52 (C.52; B.XVI.48). ¹ Read kaṇṭakinam for kaṇṭhagatam, C.
53 (C.53; B.XVI.49).
Simile of uniqueness

54. What you have done today to satisfy someone else's desire, is comparable only to your [other] superhuman\(^1\) deeds.

Simile of partial likeness

55. Here is come my lady friend whose face is like the full moon, eyes are like the petals of a blue lotus and the gait is like that of an elephant in rut.

56. These briefly are the varieties of similes. Those not described here are to be gathered from [different] poetical works and from the popular speech (lit. the people).

Condensed Expression

57. When words agreeing with different [sets of] words are combined into one sentence by way of illuminating them together it is [an instance of] Condensed Expression (dīpaka, lit. light)\(^3\).

Example:

58. In that region (lit. there) fullness (lit. want of emptiness) was always effected\(^1\) by swans in the lakes, by flowers in the trees, intoxicated bees in the lotuses and by friendly groups [of men and women] in the parks and the gardens.

Metaphor

59. An image of slight likeness which is conceived due to indecision [from objects] characterised by similar limbs, is called Metaphor (vīpāka)\(^4\).

Example:

60. The pool of water and women, with their lotus-faces, Kumuda-smiles, beautiful and open Nilotpala-eyes and swans cackling around, seem to be talking to one another.

54 (C.54; B.XVI.50). \(^1\) Read atiminusa for iti minusa, B.
55 (C.55; B.XVI.51).
56 (C.56; B.XVI.52).
57 (C.60; B.XVI.53). \(^1\) B. gives an additional def. (XVI.54).
58 (C.61; B.XVI.55). \(^1\) The plain meaning is that the lakes were full of swans, the trees full of flowers, lotuses full of bees, and the parks and gardens full of friendly groups of people.
59 (C.58; B.XVI.56). \(^1\) (B.XVI.57) and (C.57) give a second def. which does not appear in all mss.
60 (C.59; B.XVI.58).
Yamaka

61. Repetition of words at the beginning of the feet and the other places constitute Yamaka (lit. twin). Listen to their characteristics which I am going to tell [you].

Ten kinds of Yamaka

62-64. Yamakas are of the ten kinds: Pādānta Yamaka, Kāñci Yamaka, Samudga Yamaka, Vikrānta Yamaka, Čakravāla Yamaka, Āṃreṭa Yamaka, Catur-ṛyasvāsa Yamaka and Malā Yamaka.

Pādānta Yamaka

65. When similar syllables occur at the end of all the four feet they constitute Pādānta Yamaka.

Example:

66. dina-kṣayāt saṃhṛta-raśmi-maṇḍalāṃ
    divīva laṅgam taṇaṇiya-maṇḍalāṃ
    vibhātī tāmṛtām divi sūrya-maṇḍalāṃ
    yathā tarunyāḥ stana-bhūm-maṇḍalāḥ

At the decline of the day, the reddish (lit. copper-coloured) orb of the sun shorn of its cluster of rays, shining like a golden disc in the heavens, looks like a big round breast of a maiden.

Kāñci Yamaka

67. Two similar words occurring at the beginning and at the end of each foot constitute Kāñci Yamaka.

61 (C.62; B.XVI.59). ¹ For an old definition of Yamaka see Bhāmaha, II. 17.

62-64 (C.63-65; B.XVI.60-62). ¹ Bhāmaha mentions a fivefold division of Yamaka See II. 9. He seems to have known the tenfold division of the NŚ, and is of opinion that his fivefold division includes at least Sandaṣṭa and Samudga Yamakas. See II. 10.

65 (C.66; B.XVI.63).

66 (C.67; B.XVI.64). ¹ B. gives an additional def. (B.XVI.65).

67 (C.68; B.XVI.66).
Example:

68. yāmāyāmāś candravatīnāṁ dravatīnāṁ
vyaktāryaktā sāra-janīnāṁ rajanīnāṁ ́
phulle phulle sa-bhramare vābhramare vā
rāmārāmā vismaya ca smayate ca. 1

The length of hours (yāma) of the moon-lit nights, passing swiftly in the company of young women are scarcely perceived.

Flowers having blown whether with or without bees, the fair lady looks at them admiringly, and the park smiles [with their beauty].

Samudga Yamaka

69. When the same hemistich by its repetition completes the verse it is [an instance of] Samudga Yamaka.

Example:

70. ketaki-kusuma-pāṇḍura-dantah
śabhate pravara-kānana-hasti ́
ketaki-kusuma-pāṇḍura-dantah
śabhate pravara-kānana-hasti ́

The very big wild elephant with its tusks as pale-white as Ketaki flowers, looks beautiful; and the elephant-like large forest looks beautiful with Ketaki flowers as its pale-white tusks.

Vikrānta Yamaka

71. When two alternate feet are similar, it is [an instance of] Vikrānta Yamaka.

72. sa pūrvam vāraṇo bhūtvā dvārāṅga iva parvataḥ ́
abhavad danta-vaikalyād-visṛgga iva parvataḥ ́

Formerly being an elephant comparable to a two-peaked mountain, [now] its two tusks being broken it has become like a mountain without any peak.

68 (C.69; B.XVI.67).
69 (C.70; B.XVI.68). 1 Read yāmā-yāmāś for yāman yāman (B) and māyā māyā (C). This Yamaka occurs in Bhāmaha, II. 10, and Dāgda, III.53-54. 70 (C.71; B.XVI.69).
71 (C.72; B.XVI.70). 72 (C.73; B.XVI.71).
Cakravāla Yamaka

73. When the word at the end of a foot is similar to the word at the beginning of the next foot it is [an instance of] Cakravāla Yamaka.¹

Example:

74. śārais² tathā satrubhir āhatā hataḥ
dhatas ca bhuyas tv anupuṣṭkhagaiḥ khagaiḥ ।
khaṅgaiḥ ca sarvair yudhi saṅcitāś citāś
citādhirūḍhā niḥatās talais talaiḥ. ॥

Thus they were killed after being struck by arrows of the enemies as well as by birds of prey flying closely behind such missiles; the battle-field was swamped with such birds by which dead bodies placed on the funeral pyre were being pounced upon with their [sharp] talons.²

Sandaṣṭa Yamaka

75. When the two words at the beginning of a foot are similar, it is [an instance of] Sandaṣṭa Yamaka.¹

Example:

76. paśya pasya me ramaṇasya guṇān
yena yena vaśagāṁ karoti māṁ ।
yena yena hi mamaiti darśanaṁ
tenā tenā vaśagāṁ karoti māṁ ॥

Look at the qualities of my lover, by which he makes me bow to him, and he charms me by those qualities with which he comes to my view.

Pādādi Yamaka

77. When the same word occurs at the beginning of each foot, it is [an instance of] Pādādi Yamaka.

---

73 (C.74; B.XVI.72). ¹ B. has an additional definition (B.XVI.73) of of Cakravāla Yamaka.
74 (C.75; B.XVI.74). ² Emend śāraś to sarais.
75 (C.76; B.XVI.75). ¹ This term occurs in Bhāṣā, II.10, and Dāṇḍin, III.51-52. But the latter’s def. is different.
76 (C.77; B.XVI.76).
77 (C.77; B.XVI.77). 72 (C.77; B.XVI.77).
Example:

78. visṇuḥ srjati bhūtāni visṇuḥ saṁpharate praṇāh
tvisṇuḥ prasūte trālokyaṁ visṇur lokādhī-daivatam

Viṣṇu creates all living beings; Viṣṇu destroys all creatures. Viṣṇu creates (lit. gives birth to) the three worlds and Viṣṇu is the over-lord of [all] the worlds.

Āmṛedīta Yamaka

79. When the last words of a foot are reduplicated, it becomes [an instance of] Āmṛedīta Yamaka.

Example:

80. viṛ̱mḥitaṁ niḥśvasitāṁ mulur mululā
erm kathām vidheya-smaraṇam pade pade
yahā ca te dhyānam idaṁ punah punah

[You had] deep repeated sighs, [yon] remembered [her] as you uttered her name frequently and thus as [you were] in constant meditation [of her] your [sad] night passed without her.²

Catur-vayavasita Yamaka

81. When all the feet consist of similar syllables it is [an instance of] Catur-vayavasita Yamaka.

Example:

82. vāraṇānam ayaṁ eva kalo vāraṇānam ayaṁ eva kālāh
tvāraṇānam ayaṁ eva kalo vā raṇānām ayaṁ eva kālāh

This is the time of the Vāraṇa [flower]; this is the season when the elephants (vāraṇa) are free from disease. This is the time [for] the enemies to come; or this is the time for [going to] battle.

Mālā Yamaka

83. When one consonant with different vowels occurs in various words it is [an instance of] Mālā Yamaka.

---

78 (C.78; B.XVI.78). 79 (C.79; B.XVI.79).
80 (C.80; B.XVI.80). ⁰ Emend te to tēm.
² The trans. is not very literal.
81 (C.81; B.XVI.81). 82 (C.82; B.XVI.82). 83 (C.83; B.XVI.83).
Example:

84. ḫali ḫali mālī śūli khelī ḫali jali  
      balo baloča-loḷākṣo muṣalī tv abhirakṣatu  

   Let the strong Balarāma, the garlanded Balarāma, who 
holds a a spike, is sportive, faltering [in gait] and is full of 
Sentiment, and Balarāma who is high in strength and who 
has his eyes rolling and who holds a club, protect you.

85. asau hi rāmā rati-vigraha-priyā  
     rahāḥ-pragālbbhā ramaṇāṁ raho-gataṁ  
     ratena rātrau ramayet parena vā  
     no ced udesyatī aruṇāḥ puro ripuḥ  

   This beautiful woman who is fond of love's fight and is 
unashamed in it, will secretly please her lover at night with the 
best embrace, till the sun will rise in the east as her enemy.

86. sa puṣkarākṣaḥ kṣatajokṣitākṣaḥ  
     kṣatra kṣatebhayaḥ kṣatrajam durikṣam  
     kṣatajār gavākṣair īva sāṃvṛtāṅgāḥ  
     sākṣaṁ sahasrākṣa īvabhaḥāti  

   The lotus-eyed one having his eyes bathed in blood, letting 
fall from his wounds awful blood and [having his body] covered 
with window-like wounds looked like the thousand-eyed god 
(Indra) in person.

87. A play (lit poetical work) should be composed by 
[introducing] these [characteristic] marks after considering their 
objects and functions. I shall speak hereafter about faults (doṣa) 
in such works.

Ten faults

88. Faults in a play (lit. poetical work) may be of ten kinds 
such as, Circumlocution (graḍhārtha), Superfluous Expression 
(ārthāntara), Want of Significance (arthaṁna), Defective Signi-
ficance (bhinnārtha), Tautology (ekārtha), Want of Synthesis

---

84 (C.84; B.XVI.84).     85 (C.85; B.XVI.85).  
86 (C.86; B.XVI.86).     87 (C.87; B.XVI.87).  
88 (C.88; B.XVI.88).
Logical Defect (nuṣṭhāpayeta), Metrical Defect viṣama), Hiatus (visandhi) and Slang (abādacyuta)\(^1\).

Circumlocution

89. Mentioning [anything] by means of a [manufactured] synonym, is to cause Circumlocution (gūḍhārtha, lit. hidden meaning)\(^2\).

Superfluous Expression

When anything not to be mentioned is described it is [a case of] Superfluous Expression (urthāntara)\(^2\).

Want of Significance

90. An expression which is irrelevant\(^3\) or which remains incomplete\(^4\) is [an instance of] Want of Significance (urthakinna)\(^5\).

Defective Significance

Defective Significance (bhinnārtha, lit. broken meaning) includes an expression which is not refined, or is worthy of a rustic.

91. When the intended sense is changed into another sense it is also called Defective Significance.

Tautology

92. Tautology (ekārtha), means [indiscriminating] use of [many] words for a single purpose\(^6\).

---

\(^1\) For a discussion of the faults in Nā, see S. K. De, Skt. Poetics, II, pp. 19.

90 (C.90; B.XVI.90). \(^1\) An example of such a synonym is Eknātika-nava-dhārma for Dāvatikha, Cf. Bhāmaka (1.37.) seems to be using gūḍha-abādacyuta in an identical sense. See 1. 45-46. S. K. De translates this term as "use of difficult expressions" (loc cit).

\(^2\) An example of such an expression is viṣamābhikṣaṇā which means absurd. The beautiful lady’s look injects (lit. spreads) indeed love as well as anxiety and insensitivity. Here “anxiety and insensitivity” are superfluous, for love includes these two states of the mind (Ag.).

90 (C.90; B.XVI.90). \(^1\) An example of such an expression is kṣatānaka (kṣatān) heroine can be sāmara-catura (expert in love) as well, is incoherent. (Ag.).

\(^3\) The example of sūvāsena is स मरणम् अवच्छेदनम् महाकाब्यम् स्तवमान.

\(^4\) For mahātma abhāgyavāśat may be construed as mahātma abhāgyavāśat and thereby its meaning may remain incomplete or undecided without a reference to the context. 91 (C.91; B.XVI.91).

\(^5\) 92 (C.92; B.XVI.92). \(^1\) An example of Tautology (ekārtha) is kundendu-hāra-hara-hāsa-sitam. White like a Kunda flower, the mooc
Want of Synthesis

[When a sentence is] completed within [each] foot [of a verse] it [is an instance of] Want of Synthesis (abhiplutartha)².

Logical Defect

93. Anything devoid of reasoning is an example of Logical Defect (nyāyād-apeta)¹.

Metrical Defect

Lapse in the metrical structure is called Metrical Defect (viśama, lit. unevenness).

Hiatus

94. When words [which should combine in Sandhi] are kept separate it is [an instance of] Hiatus (avisandhi).

Slang

When a sound or accent is dropped it is an instance of slang (śabdācayata, lit. lapse in a word)¹.

Gūnas

95. These are the faults of a poetical work properly described by me. Gūnas (merit) are their negation and are characterised by sweetness and depth of meaning¹.

The ten Gūnas

96. The ten Gūnas are: Synthesis (śleṣa, lit. union), Perspicuity (prasāha), Smoothness (samatā), Concentration (samādhi),

and the laughter of Śiva. Any one simile would have been enough. Each simile here serves the same purpose and hence Tantology has occurred (Ag.). See Bīmāma, IV. 12.

² Read samāpyate (ms. na. in B.) for samasyate. An example of this is स श्रवण वातिक्षान: मर: क्रमुवोधविभम्। स्नेहिनां भवणवी योहे मानवतिक्षासम्। Here all the four feet contain four complete sentences which are not connected with one another by sense.

93 (C.93; B.XVI.93). ¹ nyāyād-apetam = dēśakūla-viruddhan etc. (Ag.) 'defying the limitation of place and time'. Bīmāma's desa-sūla-kāla-lokanuyāgamu-virodhita (IV.28ff) seems to be included in this.

94 (C.94; B.XVI.94). ¹ Such dropping occurred probably due to the Prakritic habit in speech.

95 (C.95; B.XVI.95). ¹ Vāmāna holds the opposite view (gūya-viparyayāyātmii dosaḥ II. 1.1.) and according to him Gūnas are positive entities (kāva-ōabhayāḥ kartāro dharmā gūnāḥ, III, 1. 1).

96 (C.96; B.XVI.96). ¹ Bīmāma, III. 1. 4., and Dvārakī, 1.41-94.
Sweetness (mādhurya), Grandeur (ujās), Agreeableness (saaku-marṣa, lit. delicacy), Directness of Expression (artha-vyakti, lit. expression of meaning), Exaltedness (udāra, lit. deep) and Lovelines (kānti).

Synthesis

97. Union of words connected through meanings intended is called Synthesis (śleṣa)\(^1\).

Perspicuity

98. Where the unexpressed word or sense is comprehended through a use of easily understood words and sense, it is [an instance of] Perspicuity (prasaṅga)\(^1\).

Smoothness

99. When a composition does not contain too many un-compounded words, redundant expressions and words difficult to understand it is [an instance of] Smoothness (samata)\(^1\).

Concentration

100. Possessing some special sense which the men of genius can find out in a composition (lit. here) is called Concentration (saṃādhī)\(^1\).

have ten Guṇas and name them similarly But their descriptions are different. Cf. De, Skt. Poetics, II. pp.15ff. Nobel, Foundations, pp. 104ff.

97 (C.97; B.XVI.97). \(^1\) Cf. Vāmana, III. I. 11; Daśādin I. 43-44. BC, give another description (C.98, B.XVI.98) of this Guṇa, which in translation is as follows : I [composition] which is, imbued with deep logic but from its nature is [very] plain and is very well-knit-together is called Compact (śiṣṭa).

98 (C.99; B.XVI.99). \(^1\) Cf. Vāmana III. I. 6; Daśādin I.45.

99 (C.100; B.XVI. 100). \(^1\) Cf. Vāmana III. I.12; Daśādin I-47-50. (B.XVI.101) and C. (100) gives an additional description of this Guṇa which in translation is as follows: When alamkāras and guṇas match and illuminate one another it is called [an instance of] Smoothness (samatā).

100 (C.p.212 f.n. 1, B.XVI.102). \(^1\) Cf. Vāmana, III. 1.13; Daśādin I. 98-94. B.(XVI.103) and C (101) gives an additional description of samādhīi, which in translation is as follows: Careful condensation of meanings suggested by and derived from similes, is called Concentration (samādhīi).
Sweetness

101. When a sentence heard or uttered many times does not tire or disgust [anyone], it [is an instance of] Sweetness (mādhurya)

Grandeur

102. When a composition consists of a use of many and varied compound words exalted [in sense] and agreeable [in sound], it is [an instance of] Grandeur (ojas)

Agreeableness

103. When a composition consists of words easy to pronounce, euphonically combined, and giving agreeable impression [even when treating some unpleasant topic], it is [an instance of] Agreeableness (sukumārya)

Directness of Expression

104. If any subject (lit. action) relating to the [common] events occurring in the world gets expressed by means of well-known predicates, it becomes [an instance of] Direct Expression (arthā-vyakti)

Exaltedness

105. When in a composition superhuman characters are


102 (C.p.212, f. n. 2; B.XVI.105). 1 Cf. Vāmana III.1.5; Daṇḍin I.80-85. B. (XVI.106) and C. (103) gives a second definition of this Guna which in translation is as follows: If a [composition otherwise] censured and deficient in quality reflects an exalted sense through its words and is rich in sound and sense it becomes [an instance of] Grandeur (ojah). Hemacandra utilised this definition (Ch. IV.)

103 (C.104; B.XVI.107). 1 Cf. Vāmana III. 1. 22; Daṇḍin calls this sukumāraṭa.

104 (C.p.212, f. n. 3; B.XVI.108). 1 C. suprasiddhadhātunā for suprasiddhābhidhāna, (B.XVI.109) and C.(105), gives a second definition of this Guna, which in translation is as follows: When the meaning of a composition can be grasped by the penetrating mind just after its recital (lit. use) it is [an instance of] Directness of Expression (artha-vyakti)

105 (C.p.212, f. n. 4; B.XVI.101).
described in relation to the Erotic and the Marvellous Sentiments and the various States, it is [an instance of] Exaltedness (udātta)².

106. That which [in a composition] while describing the sportive movement of [a character] delights the ear and the mind just as the moon [pleases us], is [an instance of] Loveliness (kānti)².

Ālaṃkāras, and Guṇas according to Sentiments

107. These are the figures of speech, faults and Guṇas [available in a poetical composition]; I shall now describe their application in connexion with different Sentiments.

Sounds and Figures of Speech according to Sentiments

108. The poetical composition in connexion with the Heroic, the Furious and the Marvellous Sentiments should consist mostly of light syllables and should include similes and metaphors.

109-110. In the Odious and the Pathetic Sentiments it (the composition) should be similar except that it should consist mostly of heavy syllables.

Metres according to Sentiments: in the Heroic and the Furious Sentiments

Whenever any act of boldness is described (lit. occurs) in connexion with the Heroic and the Furious Sentiments, it (the composition) should be in the Āryā metre and should have metaphor and Condensed Expression in it.

In the Erotic Sentiment

In the Erotic Sentiment: the composition should be in gentle metres.

¹ Cf. Vāmana, III. 1. 23; Daśālin, I. 76-78. B (XVI. III.) and C(106) give along with this a definition of the Guṇa named udāra. In translation it is as follows: When the composition includes witty and graceful words having many special senses which are marvellous, it is [an instance of] Exaltedness (udātta).

106 (C.p.212 f. n. 5; B.XVI.112). ¹ Cf. Vāmana, III. 1. 25; Daśālin, I. 85-88. C (107), gives an additional definition of this Guṇa, which in translation is as follows: When a composition gives delight to the ears as well as to the mind on account of its well-put-together words, it is [an instance of] Loveliness (kānti).

109-110 (C.110-111; B.XVI.115-116).
In the Heroic Sentiment

111-112. In the Heroic Sentiment the poetical composition should have gradation [of sounds] and it should be in metres of the Jagati, Atijagati and Šaṃkṛti types. In the description of battles and tumults Utkṛti has been prescribed by the experts.

In the Pathetic Sentiment.

Śakkarī and Atidhṛti would be the proper metres in the Pathetic Sentiment.

In the Heroic and the Furious Sentiments

113. The metres prescribed for the Heroic Sentiment may be applied in the Furious Sentiment as well; and as for metres in the rest of the cases (i.e. those not mentioned) they should be made suitable to the meaning intended.

Vowel-length in different Sentiments and States

114. In connexion with the drama the poets should use¹ short, long and prolated (pluta) vowels for representing different Sentiments and States.

115. In the intonation [in Recitation] a vowel consisting of one Mātrā is short, of two Mātrās is long and of three Mātrās is prolated (pluta).

Uses of the prolated vowel

116. In remembering anything, in [expressing] indignation¹, in lamenting or in the reading of Brahmans the prolated (pluta) vowels occur.

117. [Syllables concerned in these connexions] will be ‘a’ for remembering, ‘ā’ for indignation, ‘āh’ for lamentation and ‘om’ for the reading of Brahmans.

---

111-112 (C.112-113; B.XVI.117-118).
113 (C.114; B.XVI.119).
114 (C.115; B.XVI.122). ¹ C. kāvyam viśeyam for kāryam kavibhīr.
115 (C.116; B.XVI.123).
116 (C.117; B.XVI.124). ¹ C. smṛte cātryate for smṛte cāṣyate.
117 (C.118; B.XVI.125).
118. Besides these, other syllables in a play (lit. poetical composition) should also be made short, long or prolated (πλοτά) according to the Sentiments and States [they are to express].

119. The uneven and uneven metres which have been described before should also be used in composition with agreeable and soft sounds according to the meaning [intended].

120. The playwright should make efforts to use in his composition sweet and agreeable words which can be recited by women. For, furnished with these (i.e. such words) a play will appear very much beautiful just as lotus-lake [will appear] adorned with swans.

121. With harsh words such as ecbriqita\(^1\), delicate dramatic art does not appear beautiful just as a public woman does not appear well by the side of Brahmins who are clad in Ruru-skin, and are annointed with ghee and who carry the skin of black antelopes and have the Akṣa-māla [in their hands].

122. A play abounding in agreeable sounds and senses, containing no obscure and difficult words, intelligible to country-people\(^2\) having a [good] construction, fit to be interpreted with (lit. fit for) dances, developing Sentiments by many [characters]\(^3\) and having suitable Junctures (sandhi) and their [proper] unions, becomes fit for presentation to the spectators.

Here ends chapter XVII of Bharata's Nāṭyaśāstra which treats of the Characteristics of a good play in connexion with the Verbal Representation.

---

118 (C,119; B.XVI.128).
119 (C,120; B.XVI.120). 1 B. reads 120a as yac chandah p̄īrvam evoktam visamārdhasame samam. B. śabdais tat kāryam tu rasāmugam for kāryas te'rthaśasāmugāḥ.
120 (C,121; B.XVI.121). 1 The word ecbriqitām occurs in the Avi. (III.18) ascribed to Bhāṣa. (See A.D. Pusalker, Bhāṣa, Lahore, 1940, p.131).
121 (C,122; B.XVI.127).
122 (C,123; B.XVI.128). 1 C. budhajanāsuṣkhaṣṭrayogam yuktam. 2 B. bahukṣṭarasaṃārgam for bahuraṣaṇaṃārgam, C.
CHAPTER EIGHTEEN
RULES ON THE USE OF LANGUAGES

The Prakritic Recitation

1. Thus I have spoken in brief of the Sanskrit recitation. Now I shall speak of the characteristics of the Prakritic recitation.

2. The former (lit. this) [when] changed and devoid of the quality of polish, is called the Prakritic recitation, and it has as its chief feature changes due to different conditions.¹

Three kinds of the Pkt. Recitation

3. In connexion with the dramatic representation, it (the Pkt. Recitation) is of three kinds, viz, that with the same words [as in Sanskrit] (sambâna-sûdha), that with corrupt (vibhrâgu) words and that with words of indigenous origin (deśi).

4. A sentence containing words like kamala, amala, reṇu, taraṇga, bolu, sakila and the like are used in the Prakrit composition [in the same manner] as in Sanskrit.¹

5. Sounds which change their combined form or vowels or sustain loss and that often in the middle of a word² are corrupt (vibhrâgu).³

¹ (C.1, B.XVI.1). ¹ For an English translation (with the text and notes) of XVIII. 1-2, see M. Ghosh, “Date of the Bharata Nāṭyaśāstra”, JDL. Vol. XXV. (1933). For a French translation (together with the romanised text) of this chapter see L. Nitti-Dolci, Les Grammairiens Prakrites, 1938, pp. 64-76.

² samsâtaḥ (C. dvijottamah).

³ (C.2; B.XVII.2). ¹ Cf. Nitti-Dolci, p.70.

⁴ (C.3; B.XVII.3). ¹ Later Prakrit Grammarians called the above three classes of words tâtsamas, tadbhava and deśi respectively.

⁵ (C.4; B.XVII.4b-5a). ¹ B. reads one additional hemistich (4a) before this. Cf. Nitti-Dolci, p.20.

⁶ (C.5; B.XVII.5b-6a). ¹ Cf. Nitti-Dolci, p.70.

³ C; yânti apadâda prayas, B. for gacchanti padanyasti, C.

² B. reads one additional couplet after 5.
Vowels and simple consonants

6. Sounds following e and o (i.e., ai and au) and the Anuvāra [in the alphabet] do not occur in Prakrit. And such is the case with sounds between va and sa (i.e., śa and ṣa) and the final sounds in the ka, ca and ta groups (i.e., ṣa, ṣa, va).  

7. Ka, ga, ta, da, ya, and va are dropped [in Prakrit] and the meaning is carried by the [remaining] vowels, and kha, gha, tha, dha and bha become ha without giving up the meaning of the word.

8. In Prakrit va does neither precede nor follow [a consonantal sound] except in cases of bhadra, vodra, hrada, candra and the like.  

9. Kha, gha, tha, dha and bha always become ha in words such as mukha, megha, kathā and vaṭha prabhatā. And as for ka, ga, ta, da, ya and va, the vowel following them always represents them.

10. Sa it should be known, always become cha in words such as satpada. The final syllable of kīla should be va and the word khalu should become khū.

---

6 (C. 6-8; B.XVII.7). 1 This together with three following couplets are written not in Skt. but in Prakrit. Hence they seem very much to be an interpolation. The first of these occurs as a quotation (without the author’s name) in a late metrical work edited by M.H.D. Velankar (Annals of the Bhandarkar Inst. XIV. 1892-33, pp. 1-38, citation, Nitti-Dolei, p.71).

7 (C.6-8; BXVII.8).


9 (C.6-8; B.XVII.10). Evidently hard aspirates in case of other words did not change. Ag’s example of such words are kheḷa, parigha, atha. This speaks of the high antiquity of the Pkt. of the NS.

3 The non-aspirate consonants mentioned here are to be understood as devoid of the inherent vowel ‘a’.

3 The word saro (=svarah) here means “vowel” and not “sound”. Cf. Nitti-Dolei p.71.

10 (C.9; B.XVII.11). Ag. is silent about this satpadūdi gaṇa.
11. Ta becomes da in words such as bhata, kuti and tata, and sa and sa always become sa, e.g. viqa (visa) and samkā (srnkā).

12. In words such as itara and the like ta standing not in the beginning of a word becomes an indistinctly pronounced da. Da in words such as vavadā and tadāga becomes la.

13. Tha in words such as satha, patha, pathi and the like become dha, and na becomes na everywhere in pronunciation.1


15. One is to know parusā as pharusā, for pa becomes pha [in it], and mṛga will be changed to mao while mṛta will also be mao.1

16. An employed in words like anusāda etc. will change to o, and ca in words such as praçaya, acira and acala etc. will change into yo.1

17. Thus [change] the sounds in Prakrit when they are not mutually connected (i.e. they are simple). Now I shall describe the change of conjunct sounds.

Conjunct consonants

18. Śva, psa, tsā and thya change into (c)ra, bhya, hya and dhya into (j)ha, śta into ūha, stā into ttha, sma into mha, kṣya and ṣa into ṣha, and kṣa into (k)kha.

11 (C.10; B.VII.12).
12 (C.11; B.XVII.18). 1 This indistinctly pronounced da is perhaps a spirantised da. Ag. thinks that it is somewhat like a la. (भवेचि लघुन्य च वषास्त्रवधः वषास्त्रवधम् कात्रेत्वा भाति यथा उदरे उत्तरे).
13 (C.12; B.XVII.14 f.n.). 1 B. reads the first hemistich as follows: वर्तवते च माये भाषारिद् प्रसद्यास्ति and C. too differently. Dha in vardhana (i.e. in combination with ra) changes into ṣha.
14 (C.12b-13a, B.XVII.15).
15 (C.13b 14a B.XVII.16). 1 The word maa (maya) from mṛta as well as mṛga had its spirantised da reduced to ya-ṝuti: which however was not shown in writting during the early days of this phonetic change (See IHQ. VIII. 1833, suppl. p. 14-15).
16 (C.14b-15a; BXVII.17). 1 This ya-ṝuti for ca did not probably at once lead to its graphic elimination.
17 (C.15b-16a; B.XVII.18). 18 (C.16b-18a; B.XVII.19.)
19. Aścaryā will be acchariya and niścaya nicchaya, 

   uṣāha uchāha and pathya, paccha.¹

20. Tukhyām becomes tujjhaṃ, māhyam majhām, vindhyā 
vimjha, dāṣṭha daṭṭha and hasta hattha.

21. Gṛiṣṭa becomes gṁha, ṭakṣṇa sanha, uṣṇa upha²; 
   jaka jaka, paryoṅka pallaṅka.

22. There is metathesis in the group hma occurring in 
    words such as brahmaṇ etc., and in bhṛhaspati [the group spa] 
    becomes pha, yatna becomes jaṅṇa, bhṛṣaḥ bhimha.

23. Kā and similar other letters (sound) while on the top 
    of another letter (sound) will have to be disjointed in their 
    pronunciation¹.

24. Thus are to be learnt the pronunciation of Prakrit and 
    Sanskrit. I shall discuss hereafter the classification of regional 
    languages (dēṣi-bhāṣā).

25. The [languages] to be used in drama are of four types 
    in which Recitation should be either of the refined (samskṛta) or 
    of the vulgar (prākṛta) kind.

Four types of languages

26. The Super-human Language (atihāṣā), the Noble 
    Language (āryabhāṣā)¹ the Common Language (jāti-bhāṣā) and 
    the Language of Other Animals (yonyantari bhāṣā)² are the [four] 
    languages occurring in plays.

---

¹B. reads one additional hemistich between 19a and 19b.
²C. reads kṛṣṇaḥ kaṇkhaḥ.
³This probably relates to svara-bhakti (anaptyxis). Kīlesa (kīśa), radama (ratna) and dvāra (dvāra) 
may be examples of this.
⁴Some commentators think that āryabhāṣā means a language in which Vedic words preponderate (Ag.).
²C. reads jātyantari and yonyantari.
The Superhuman and the Noble Languages

27. The Super-human Language is for the gods, and the Noble language for the kings¹. These have the quality of refinement² (śaṃskāra) and are current over the seven great divisions³ (dvīpa) of the world.

The Common Language

28. The Common Language prescribed for use [on the stage] has various forms⁴. It contains [many] words of Barbarian (mleccha) origin and is spoken in Bhārata-varṣa [only]⁵.

The Animal Language

29. The Language of Other Animals⁶ have their origin in animals domestic or wild and in birds of various species, and it follows the Conventional Parctice (nāṭya-dharma).

Two kinds of Recitation

30. The Recitation in the Common language which relates to the four castes, is of two kinds, viz, vulgar (prākṛta) and refined (śaṃskṛta).

---

²⁷ (C.26b-27a; B.XVII.28b-29a). ¹ The atibhāṣā and āryabhāṣā are possibly the dialects of the pure Indo-Aryan speech. It should be noted that “śaṃskṛta” (Sanskrit) as the name of a language is absent here. Bhoja takes ati-, ārya- and jāti- bhāṣas respectively as śravita (Vedic), ārya (Puranic) and laukīka (literary) speeches. See Śr. Pr. pp.191ff.
³ Read śaṃskāra-pāṭhya for śaṃskāra-pāṭhya (the ms. bha in B.).
⁴ Read saṁcāra-pratīcūrī for saṁcāra-pratīcūrī (the ms. bha in B).
²⁸ (C.26b-27a; B.XVII.29b-30a). ¹ Read vīvidha-jātibhāṣā; vīvidha (ca, da in B.) for devidha.
⁵ The common speech or the speech of the commoners is distinguished here from that of the priests and the nobility by describing it as containing words of Barbarian (mleccha) origin. These words seem to have been none other than vocables of the Dravidian and Austric languages. They entered Indo-Aryan pretty early in its history. See S. K. Chatterji, Origin and Development of the Bengali Language, Calcutta, 1926 pp. 42,178.
²⁹ (C.27b-29a; B.XVII.30b-31a). ¹ Neither the NŚ. nor any extant drama gives us any specimen of the conventional language of lower animals, which is to be used in the stage.
³⁰ (C.26b-29a; B.XVII.31b-32a).
Occasion for Skt. Recitation

31. In case of the self-controlled (dīrā) Heroes of the vehement (uddhata), the light-hearted (lakīta), the exalted (udāīta), and the calm (pratāṇa) types, the Recitation should be in Sanskrit.

Occasion for Pkt. Recitation

32. Heroes of all these classes are to use Prakrit when the occasion demands that.¹

33. ¹In case of even a superior preson intoxicated with the kingship (or wealth) or overwhelmed with poverty no Sanskrit should be used.²

34. To persons in disguise¹, Jain monks², ascetics³, religious mendicants⁴ and jugglers should be assigned the Prakrit Recitation.

¹ (C. 29b-30a; B.XVII.32b-33a).
² (C.30b-31a; B.XVII.33b-34a). ¹ As Arjuna disguised as Brhannalāi.
³ (C.31b-32a; B.XVII.34b-35a). ¹ We follow C. text.
⁴ No extant drama seems to furnish any illustration of this rule.
B. reads one additional hemistich before this.

34 (C.32b-33a; B.XVII.36). ¹ vījātisingapraśāntānam—persons in disguise of different kinds of professional and religious mendicants etc. See Kauṭilya’s Arthasastra. An example of this is Indra in the guise of a Brahmin speaking Pkt. in Kāṛaṇa ascribed to Bhāṣa. Nitti-Doli takes this expression as an adjective of śramanāntām etc. But it need not be construed like this. This part of the rule seems to relate to Skt. speaking characters assuming disguise. Virādhagupta (Mudrā II.) assuming the guise of a snake-charmer, is an example of such characters. And so are Yaugandharāyana and Ramaṇya in the Pratijñā, (III) ascribed to Bhāṣa.

² Śramaṇa (Pkt. samāya). The word is to be taken to mean here a Jain monk. Cf. Jadi vattham avanemi samanoh homi, Avi. (V.) ascribed to Bhāṣa; śramaṇa was sometimes used also in connexion with the Buddhists. See below 36.

³ tapasvin.—It appears that the author of the NŚ. meant by this term ascetics in general. Though we find Brahmin ascetics in ancient literature, the institution of asceticism was most probably of non-Aryan origin. This seems to be justification of assigning Prakritic Recitation to all the ascetics irrespective of their sectarian affiliation.

⁴ bhikṣu—religious mendicant in general. It should not be restricted to Buddhists alone. The alternative name of the Brahma-sūtra is the Bhikṣu-sūtra.
35. Similarly Prakrit should be assigned to children, persons possessed of spirits of lower order, women in feminine character persons of low birth, lunatics and phallus-worshippers.

Exception to the rule for Pkt. Recitation

36. But to itinerent recluses, sages, Buddhists; pure Śrotiyas and others who have received instruction [in the Vedas] and wear costumes suitable to their position (liṅgastha) should be assigned Sanskrit Recitation.

---

35 (C.33b-34a; B.XVII.37 fn. 9). B’s reading in translation is as follows: Similarly Pkt. should be assigned to Śaiva teachers, lunatics, children, persons possessed of spirits of lower order, women, persons of low birth and hermaphrodites (B.XVII.37).

2 In a queen’s role a woman may sometimes speak Skt. See 38-39 below. The parivṛṭikā in the Mālavī speaks Skt.

3 salīṅga.—This possibly means the member of a sect which like the Liṅgāyets wears a phallus suspended from their neck.

36 (C.34b-35a; B.XVII.38). parivṛṭ—A person of the fourth úrama. A recluse belonging to the Vedic community.

2 muni.—This word, probably of non-Indo-Aryan origin meant in all likelihood “wise man.” See NŚ. I. 23 note 1. In the ancient world, wisdom was usually associated with religious and spiritual elevation. This might have been the reason why the word was applied to persons like Vasiṣṭha and Nārāyaṇa.

Śākya.—A follower of the Buddha. There is nothing very astonishing in Skt. being assigned to Buddhist monks. Buddhist teachers like Aśvaghoṣa, Nāgārjuna, Āryadeva, Vasubandhu were almost all great Sanskritists, and the Mahāyāna literature was written in Sanskrit of corrupt as well as of pure variety. This might have been the general linguistic condition before the schism arose among the Buddhists. In Aśvaghoṣa’s Sāriputra-parakaraṇa Buddha and his disciples speak Sanskrit (Keith, Skt. Drama p.82). Aśvaghoṣa assigns Skt. to a śramaṇa, as well (loc. cit). This śramaṇa was possibly a Buddhist; see 34 frr.

4 cokaśe (caikaśe, C) śrotiyeṣu—for the pure Śrotiya or a learned Brahman. The adjective “pure” (cokaśa) used with Śrotiya is possibly to separate him from an apostate who might have entered Jain or any other heterodox fold and was at liberty to use Pkt.

Śīlāḥ liṅgasthāḥ—religious mendicants who have received instruction (in Vedas).
37. Sanskrit Recitation is to be assigned to queens, courtesans\(^1\), female artistes to suit special times and situations in which they may speak.

38-39. As matters relating to peace and war, the auspicious and inauspicious movements of planets and stars and cries of birds concern the well-being or distress of the king these are to be known by the queen, and for this reason she is to be assigned Sanskrit Recitation in connexion with these (lit. in that time)\(^1\).

40. For the pleasure of all kinds of people, and in connexion with the practice of arts, the courtesans are to be assigned Sanskrit Recitation which can be easily managed.

41. For learning the practice of arts and for amusing the king the female artiste has been prescribed to use Sanskrit in dramatic works\(^1\).

42. The pure speech of the Apsarasas\(^1\) is that which has been sanctioned by the tradition (i.e. Sanskrit), because of their association with the gods; the popular usage conforms to this [rule].

43. One may however at one's pleasure assign Prakrit Recitation to Apsarasas [while they move] on the earth. [But to the Apsarasas in the role of] wife of a mortal also [the same] should be assigned when an occasion (lit. reasons and need) will occur\(^1\).

44. In the production of a play their [native] language should not be assigned to tribes such as, Barbaras, Kirātas, Andhras and Dramidās\(^1\).

---

\(^{1}\) An example of this is Vasantasenā speaking Skt. (Mrch. IV.).

\(^{1}\) This rule cannot possibly be illustrated by any extant drama.

\(^{1}\) There is possibly no example of this in any extant drama.

\(^{1}\) No play with an Apsaras speaking Skt. is available. All the Apsaras as in Vikram, speak Pkt.

\(^{1}\) Read mānuṣīṇām (ca in B) for mānuṣānām. Urvāsi is an example of an Apsaras who became the wife of a mortal. (Vikram).

\(^{1}\) See NŚ. XXIII. 99 notes.
45. To pure tribes of these names, should be assigned dialects current in Śaurasena.

46. The producer of plays may however at their option use local dialects; for plays may be written in different regions [for local production].

Seven major dialects

47. The Seven [major] dialects (bhāṣā) are as follows: Māgadhi, Āvanti [Āvantija], Prācyā, Śauraseni (Śūrasent), Ardhamāgadhi, Bāhlikā, Dākṣinātyā.¹

48. In the dramatic composition there are, besides, many less important dialects (vīｂhaṣā)² such as the speeches of the Śakāra, Ābhiras, Cāndalas, Śabaras, Dhrimiṣas³, Oḍras⁴ and the lowly speech of the foresters.

Uses of major dialects

49. [Of these] Māgadhi is assigned to guards (lit. inmates) of the royal harem¹, and Ardhamāgadhi to menials, princes and leaders’ of merchants’ guilds².

---

¹ C.43b-44a; B.XVII.47.
² C.44b-45a; B.XVII.48.
³ C.45b-46a; B.XVII.49. Māgadhi, Śauraseni and Ardhamāgadhi are well-known. But any old and authentic description of Āvanti, Prācyā, Bāhlikā and Dākṣinātyā Pkt. seems to be non-existent. According to Prthvīdhara a very late authority, Mṛch. contains the specimens of Āvanti and Prācyā only. It is to be noted that the present list does not include Mahāraṣṭrī. See M. Ghose. “Mahāraṣṭrī a late phase of Śauraseni”, JDL.
⁴ C.46b-47a; B.XVII.50. By the word vībhaṣā Prthvīdhara understands vīśābha bhāṣa kinaṇītra-prayojyatvād hinaḥ. See Pischel, Grammatik, §§ 3-5. No old and authentic specimen of the vībhaṣās has reached us. According to Prthvīdhara the Mṛch. contains Śakārī and Cāndalī besides Dhakkī which last the NŚ. does not know.
⁵ It is curious that after forbidding the use of languages like Dhrimiṣa (Dramila) in 44 above, the author is including it among the dialects that can be allowed in dramatic works. One possible explanation of this anomaly may be that here we meet with a late interpolation, and passages from 48-61 belong to a later stratum of the text.
⁶ Read draviḍodrajaḥ for draviḍandhrajaḥ, B; draviḍodrajaḥ, C. See 55 note 1.
⁷ C.47b-48a; B.XVII.51. For a list of such persons see DR.II.74.
⁸ According to Pischel this passage assigns AMg. to servants,
50. Prācyā is the language of the Jester and the like; and Āvanti is of the rogues (ilhāti). The Heroines, and their female friends are also to speak Sauraseni when not in any difficulty.

51. To soldiers, gamesters, police chief of the city and the like should be assigned Dākṣipātyā, and Bāhliki is the native speech of the Khasas who belong to the north,

Uses of minor dialects

52. Śakarī should be assigned to the Śakāra and the Śakas and other groups of the same nature, and Cāḍāli to the Pulkasas and the like.

53. To charcoal-makers, hunters and those who earn their

Rajputs (rājapatra) and leaders of merchants' guild (śreṣṭhi). See Grammatik § 17. But no extant drama seems to illustrate this rule. For Candaanaśa who is a śreṣṭhi, does not speak AMg. (Mudrā, I) while Indra in the disguise of a Brahmin speaks this dialect of Pkt. (Karaṇa, ascribed to Bhāṣa).

50 (C.49b-50a; B.XVII.52). 1 According to Pṛthvīdhara Vidūṣaka in the Mṛceh. speaks Prācyā the sole characteristic of which is abundance of pleonastic ka. See Pischel, Grammatik, Grammatik, § 22.

2 C. 300 b hāṣa for dhūrtānām apy. According to Pṛthvīdhara the the two policemen Viraka and Candaanaśa in the Mṛceh. (VI) speak Āvanti. But according to the latter's own admission he was a Southerner and a man of Karṇīta. No old and authentic description of this dialect is available, see Pischel, Grammatik § 26.

51 (C.49b-50a; B.XVII.53). 1 Candaanaśa's language in Mṛceh. in spite of Pṛthvīdhara's testimony to the contrary may be taken as a specimen of Dākṣipātyā. See 50 note 2 above. No old and authentic description of this dialect is available. Cf. Pischel, Grammatik § 24.

52 (C.50b-51a; B.XVII.54). 1 śakaraṇāṃ śakādānuṃ for śakira-raghośakādānuṃ (B), and śabarāṇāṃ śakādānuṃ (C). According to Pṛthvīdhara Śakāra in Mṛceh. speaks Śakāri dialect. Cf. Pischel, Grammatik, § 24.

3 Pṛthvīdhara thinks that Cāḍālas in Mṛceh (V.) speak the Cāḍāli dialect. Cf. Pischel, Grammatik, § 25.

53 (C.51b-52a; B.XVII.55). 1 B. śakira-bhāṣa for śabarā-bhāṣa. This dialect seems to have been the patent of the modern Sora language.
livelihood by [collecting] wood and leaves should be assigned Sābarī as well as the speech of forest-dwellers.

54. For those who live in places where elephants, horses, goats, sheep, camels or cows are kept [in large numbers] Ābhīrī or Sābarī has been prescribed, and for forest-dwellers and the like, Drāviḍī [is the language].

55. Oḍrī is to be assigned to diggers of subterranean passages, prison-warders, grooms for horses; and Heroes and others like them while in difficulty are also to use Māgadhī for self-protection.

Distinguishing features of various local dialects

56. 1To the regions [of India] that lie between the Ganges and the sea, should be applied a dialect abounding in e².

57. To the regions that lie between the Vindhayas and the sea should be assigned a language abounding in na¹ (or to).

58. Regions like Surāśṭra and Avanti lying on the north of the Vetravati one should assign a language abounding ca¹.

---

² See 54 note 3.

54 (C.52b-54a; B.XVII.56). Ābhīrī dialect is not available in any extant drama.

² Drāviḍī dialect is not available in any extant drama. It is possible that it was not a pure Dravidian speech (See 44 above). Possibly a Middle Indo-Aryan dialect in which Dravidian phonetic and lexical influence predominated was meant by this. Its habitat was in all likelihood some region of North India. Cf. Nitti-Dolci, p. 120-122.

55 (C.54b-55a; B.XVII.57). 1 Emend oṣṭrikāraśvarakṣatām (atha in B) into oḍrī kāraśvarakṣatām (C. oṣṭrikānaś ca rakṣatām and B. sandhikāraśvarakṣatām); for Oḍrī Pkt. see 48 note 3. and Nitti-Dolci, pp. 120 f.n. 4 and 122.

56 (C.55b-56a; B.XVII.59). 1 B. again reads 44 after 55.

² This "e" is perhaps termination of the nominative singular the a-bases in AMg.

57 (C.53; B.XVII.60). 1 This relates to a dialect of Pkt. which changes na always into ηa. Though according to some grammarians Pkt. is always to change na into ηa, it seems that such was not strictly the case with all its dialects. For example in the so-called Jain Pkt. (AMg. of Hemacandra) has initial n and intervocal mm.

58 (C.56b-57a; B.XVII.61). 1 It seems that at the time of the
59. To people who live in the Himalayas, Sindhu and Sauvira a language abounding in \( \ddot{u} \) should be assigned. ¹

60. To those who live on the bank of the Carmarvatī river and around the Arvuda mountain a language abounding in \( \dddot{a} \) (or \( \dddot{ta} \)) should be assigned.

61. These are the rules regarding the assignment of dialects in plays. Whatever has been omitted [here] should be gathered by the wise from the popular usage.

Here ends Chapter XVIII of Bharata’s Nātyaśāstra which treats of the Rules regarding the Use of Languages.

Author of the passage intervocal \( ca \) in this particular region was yet maintained or dental \( t \) sounds were mostly changed into \( c \) sound (as in \( cis\text{̄}ha \) for \( ti\text{̄}tha \)).

59 (C.57b-58a; B.XVII.62). ¹ This \( \ddot{u} \) perhaps relates to a close pronunciation of the \( \dddot{o} \) vowel.

60 (C. omits this; B.XVII.63). ¹ This \( \dddot{a} \) perhaps relates to an open pronunciation of the \( \ddot{u} \) vowel.

61 (C.53b-59; B.XVII.64).
CHAPTER NINETEEN

MODES OF ADDRESS AND INTONATION

Different modes of address

1-2. These are, O the best of Brahmans, the rules on the use of languages [in a drama]. Now listen about the rules of popular modes of address or the manner in which persons of equal, superior or inferior status in a play are to be addressed by those of the superior, the medium or the inferior class.⁷

Modes of addressing males: addressing great sages

3. As the great sages are adorable (lit. god) even to the gods they are to be addressed as “holy one” (bhagavan)¹ and their wives are also to be similarly addressed.³

Addressing gods, sectarian teachers and learned men

4. Gods,¹ persons wearing sectarian teacher’s dress² and persons observing varied vows⁹ are to be addressed as “holy one” (bhagavan)⁸ by men as well as women.

---

¹ This manner of addressing different persons includes referring to them before their own selves or before others e.g. In Śak. (I), Dusyanta is referred to by his charioteer as āyusman and then he is addressed in the same term (Yathūñapayati āyusman, āyusman paśya paśya).

² Rules given hereafter do not cover all the numerous and different cases occurring in the extant dramatic literature in Skt. and Pkt.

³ (C.3; B.XVII.67). Ex. Kāśyapa (Kānya) addressed by his disciple (Śak. IV.) Mārica by Dusyanta (ibid. VII) and Rāvana in ascetic’s disguise by Rāma (Pratimā. V).

⁴ No ex. of this seems to be available in any extant drama.


⁶ Ex. (Rāvana disguised as an ascetic addressed by Rāma (Pratimā. V.). The Jester in Pratijñā (III) addressing the Jain monk (śramaṇaka) as bhaavam (bhagavan) to create laughter; bhadanta would have been the proper term in this case. See below 15.

⁷ Read here nānāvratadhara (bha in B) for nānāṣrutadhara (B) and nānāṣrutidhara (C). Ascetics belonging to minor heterodox sects
Addressing the Brahmin

5. The Brahmin is to be addressed as “noble one” (ārya). ¹

Addressing the king

And the king [is to be addressed as “great king” (mahārāja). ²

Addressing the teacher

The teacher [is to be addressed] as “professor” (acārya). ³

Addressing an old man

And an old man [is to be addressed] as “father” (tāto). ⁴

Brahmins addressing the king

6. Brahmans may address the kings at their pleasure, by their names. This should be tolerated, for the Brahmans are to be adored by the kings.

Brahmins addressing ministers

7. A minister is to be addressed by Brahmans as “Counsellor” (amaṭeya) or “minister” (sarīva), ¹ and by other persons, inferior to them (i.e. Brahmans) he [is] always [to be addressed] as “sir” (ārya). ²

Addressing the equals

8. One is to accost one’s equals by the name with which they are styled. ³

---

¹ Ex. Cāṇakya addressing Daśaratha (Pratima, II), and Vibhīṣṇu addressing Rāvana (Abhiseka II).
² Ex. Cāṇakya addressed by his disciple (Mudrā, I).
³ Ex. Bharata addressing Sumana the old charioteer (Pratima, VI).
⁴ Ex. Indra disguised as a Brahmin addressing Karna (Karna), Cf. Cāṇakya addressing Candragupta mostly as Vṛṣala (or Śudra) in Mudrā.
⁵ C.7; B.XVII.71. ¹ No example of this rule seems to be available in any extant drama. See note 2 below.
⁶ Ex. The door-keeper (pratihāra) addressing Yaugandharāyaṇa (Pratijā, I). But curiously enough Rākṣasa has been addressed not as ‘Ārya’ but as ‘Amaṭeya’ (counsellor) by the door-keeper, and by his friend Vīrādhagupta too he is addressed likewise (Mudrā, II).
⁷ C.8; B.XVII.72. ¹ Ex. Cāṇakya addressing Rākṣasa and vice versa (Mudrā, VII).
Privileged inferiors addressing superiors

A superior person may however be addressed (or referred to) by name by inferior persons when the latter are privileged to do so.

Addressing employees, artisans and artists

9. Men and women in one's employment, and artisans and artists are to be addressed as such (i.e. according to their status).

Addressing persons of respect

10. A respected person is to be addressed as 'honoured sir' (bhāna), and a person of slightly less so as 'comrade (mārṣaka or mārṣa).

Addressing persons of equal status

A person of equal status should be addressed as 'brother' (vayasya) and a low person as 'hey man' (ham-ho).

The charioteer addressing the chariot-rider

11. The chariot-rider should always be addressed by the charioteer as "long-lived one" (āyugmam).

---

2 B. saparivūram, so also Ag.


9 (C.9; B.XVII.73). Yaugandharāyaṇa addressing Śālaka by name (Pratijñā, I. 2. 4) and the hero Cārudatta addressing the maid-servant Ratanikā (Cāru, I. 21.15).

2 Ag. explains kūruka and śilpi as follows: kūruka: mūḍha rūpasī: śilpi: mūḍha rūpa: kūruka: mūḍha rūpa: śilpi: mūḍha rūpa: artists are those that build stūpas and the like objects, artists are painters and the like.

3 Ex. The king addressing Haradatta one of the teachers of dramatic art (Mālavi, II. 12.4).

10 (C.10; B.XVII.74). Ex. pāripārāvika addressing sūtradhāra as bhāva, and sūtra addressing pāripārāvika as mūṛṣa (Abhi. I. 1.6,8). Śākara once addressing viśa as bhāva and next time as mūṛṣa (mūṛṣa) in Cāru, I.17.3; 26.3). The word mārṣaka does not seem to occur any extant drama while mūṛṣa occurs very often. See Uttara. (I. 4.7) and Mālavi (I. 1.3).

2 Ex. Siddhārthaka and Samiddhārthaka addressing each other (Mudrā, VI. 2. 14, 16).

3 Ex. Cāṅkayā's spy addressing his disciple as ham-ho bamhāya, (Mudrā, I. 18.4).

11 (C.11; B.XVII.75). Ex. Duṣyanta's priest addressing the two...
Addressing an ascetic or a person with beatitude

An ascetic or a person who has attained beatitude (pratītanta) is to be addressed as “blessed one” (śūlha).²

Addressing princes

12. The crown-prince is to be addressed as “sire” (svāmin),¹ and other princes as “young master” (bhartya-dāraka).³

Addressing inferior persons

Inferior persons are to be addressed as “pleasing one” (saumya),² “auspicious-looking one” (bhadrasmukha)⁴ and such terms should be preceded by ‘O’ (ho).⁵

³ The word śūlha as a form of address does not seem to occur in any extant drama.

¹ A list of examples of this rule of address can be found in: B. XVII.76. No example of this rule seems to be available in any extant drama. On the other hand, svāmin is very often used in addressing a king. For example, Yuvarajaharaya addressing the king Udayana (Svām. VI. 17.1). Kaviājaya and Bhūtika addressing the king Kuntibhoja (Avi. I. 5.3; 8.5). On the use of the word svāmin in inscriptions, see Sylvain Lévi, Journal Asiatique, Ser. 9, XIX.95ff. L’Ant. Vol. XXXIII. p. 163. Sita’s maid addresses Rāma as bhātī (Pratīmā. I. 9.2). The door-keeper (pratihar) refers to the crown-prince Rāma as bhātīdrāmā pīmā (Pratīmā. I. 2.9), and not as simūtṛa pīmā,³

² The word has been used with reference to the crown prince in Pratīmā (loc. cit. 1). In referring to other princes, playwrights use the word ṅūmāra. In Pratīmā. (III. 14.12) Bharata has been addressed with this term. In Mudrā. (IV. 12.5) Malayaretu has been addressed similarly. Avimāraka, the lover of Kuraṅgi is addressed as bhātīdrāmā by her maid (Avi. III. 17.2).

³ This use of the term saumya does not seem to occur in any extant drama, and bhadrā appears to have taken its place, e.g., Bharata addressing the messenger (bhāta) in Pratīmā (III. 4.2). Dasyusa addresses his chief of the army (sūhrati) similarly (Śak. II. 5.4).

⁴ Ex. Rākṣasa’s spy (puruṣa) addressing his door-keeper (Mudrā. IV. 8.2). In Abh. (VI. 31.1) Agni (god of fire) addresses Rāma as bhadrasmukha, though earlier, (VI. 36.7) he says: na me namaskaram kartum arhati devadāḥ. The Jester addresses the caṇḍīlas as bhābhaddaṁuka (Mrčch. X. 23.3).

⁵ It does not seem to occur before these terms in any extant drama.
Addressing persons by their occupation or birth

13. In a play a person is to be addressed by a term appropriate to his birth or to the vocation, art or learning practised by him.¹

Addressing a son or a disciple

14. A disciple or a son is to be addressed by the guru or the father as “child” (vatso)¹ “son” (putraka)², “father” (tāta)³ or by his own name or clan-name (gotra)⁴.

Addressing Buddhist and Jain Monks

15. Buddhist and Jain (nirgrantha) monks are to be addressed as “blessed sir” (bhadanta)¹.

Addressing persons of other sects

Persons of other sects² are to be addressed by terms enjoined by their own rules³.

People addressing the king

16. The king is to be addressed by his servants as well as

---
¹ Not many examples of this rule seem to be available in any extant drama. In Mech. (X.20.1) Cārūdattā's son addressing the Cāydrītas as arc candălī may be an example of this.
² Ex. Sauvíra king addressing Avimāraka (Avi VI. 17.4). Cf. Droṇa addressing Duryodhana (Paśca I.22.3).
³ Ex. The form putraka does not seem to occur in any extant play. The form usually available form is putra. Droṇa addressing Duryodhana as putra (Paśca I. 23.3). Duryodhana addressing his son similarly (Uru. I. 42.3).
⁴ No example of this seems to be available in any extant drama.
⁵ Ex. Vāli addressing Aṅgada by name (Abhi. I. 25.2). Kāśyapa (Kanitya) addressing Śāṅgarava by name (Śak. IV. 16.1). Instances of a son or a disciple addressed by clan-name (gotra) do not seem to occur in any extant drama.
⁶ Ex. Kṣapanaika addressed by Rākṣasa and Siddhārthaka as bhadanta (Mudrā IV. 18.2; V. 2.1). A Buddhist monk is very rarely met with in extant dramas. Āśvaghoṣa's drama included such a character, but one cannot say from the fragments how he was addressed. (See Keith, Skt. Dr. p. 82)
⁷ According to Ag. one is to understand 'other sects' Paśupatas and the like.
⁸ An example of such a rule is a term like bhāpuṣan or bhā-sarvajña used in addressing Paśupata teachers (Ag.).
his subjects as "lord" (deva), but when he is an overlord [of other kings] he is always [to be addressed] by his servants as "sire" (bhatā).

Sages addressing the king

17-18. The king is to be addressed by sages (rā) as "king" (rājan) or by the patronymic term.

The Jester addressing the king

And he should be addressed as "friend" (rāyasya) or "king" (rājan) by the Jester (vī/sakā).

Jester addressing the queen and her maids

The queen and her maids are to be addressed by him as "lady" (bhavati).

The king addressing the Jester

The Jester is to be addressed by the king by his name or as "friend" (rāyasya).

---

1 Ex. The Kaśeṣukina addressing the king (Mudrā. III. 10.3). Gaṇadāsa addressing the king (Mālavi. I. 12. 8). Vibhiṣaṇa refers to Rāma as deva (Abh. VI. 29.3) when he is not yet a king; besides this the same Vibhiṣaṇa addresses Rāvana as maḥurīṇa (Abh. III. 15.1). See also 12 note 1.

2 Ex. Yavanikā addressing the king Dasyanta (Śak. VI. 24.10). But in Bala. (III. 3.1) the cowherds address Saunākarasaṇa as bhatā, and Nanda-gopa too addresses Vasudeva likewise (Bala. I. 19. 30).


3 No ex. of this seems to occur in extant dramas. Nārada addresses the two kings simply as Kuntibhoja and Saunākaraṇa in Avī (VI. 20. 8, 12).

4 Ex. The Jester in Śak. (II. 2.1) and Mālavi. (V. 3.18).

No example of this seems to occur in any extant drama. In Ṛatnā (I. 18.35) the Jester once addresses the king as bhātī.

5 Bhavati in the Jester's speech would be bhodi. Ex. The Jester addressing the queen's maid in Svapna. (IV. 0.29) also addressing the queen (Mālavi, IV. 4.23.) and addressing the queen's maid Susangata (Ṛatnā. IV. 0.30).

6 Examples are easily available. See Svapna, Śak. Vikram. etc. The Jester is addressed also as sakhe. See Mālavi. (IV. 1.1 and Vikram. II. 18.11. etc.) and as bhadra (Vikram. II. 18.15).
Women addressing their husband

19. By all women in their youth the husband should be addressed as a "noble one's son" (ārya-putra)\(^1\), but in other cases, the husband is to be addressed simply as "noble one" (ārya)\(^2\), and in case of his being a king he may be addressed as "great king" (mahārāja)\(^3\) also.

Addressing the elder and the younger brothers

20. The elder brother should be addressed as "noble one" (ārya)\(^1\) and the younger brother like one's son\(^2\).

These are the modes of address to be used to male characters in a play.

Modes of addressing women

21. I shall now speak of the modes of address to be used to female characters in a play.

Addressing female ascetics and goddesses

Female ascetics and goddesses are to be addressed as "holy lady" (bhagyārati)\(^1\).

Addressing wives of senior persons, and elderly ladies

22. Wives of respectable seniors, and other elderly ladies (sthāniyā) are to be addressed as 'lady' (bhuṣati)\(^1\).

---

19 (C.19; B.XVII.83). \(^1\) Examples are easily procurable; see Śak, Mālavi, Svāpna etc.

\(^2\) Ex. Naṭi in the prologue (prastāvanā) addressing the sūtradhāra her husband (Cāru. and Mudrā).

\(^3\) Ex. Gandhāri addressing Dhūḍarāśtra (Uru. I. 38.2). Urvaśi refers to the king likewise (Vikram. IV. 39.2).


\(^2\) Usual from in such a case is vatsa; but the younger brother is also sometimes differently addressed, e.g. by name of the mother as Saunmitre, (Pratimā. I. 21.1), Kākeyimātā, (ibid. IV. 2.21). See above 14 and 4.

21 (C.21; B.XVII.85a-86a). \(^1\) The king addressing the priśorāśikā (Mālavi. I. 14.3) ; the Kaṅcukina addressing the female ascetic (tisapī) in Vikram. (V. 9.2).

22. (C. 22; B. XVII 86b-87a). \(^1\) Ex. Sumantra addressing the widowed wives of Daśaratha as bhawatyah (Pratimā. III. 12.2). The Kaṅcukina addressing the Pratihārī in Svāpna. (VI. 6.6).
Addressing an accessible woman and an old lady

An accessible woman (gamyā) is to be addressed as "gentlewoman" (bhadre) and an old lady as "mother" (amba).

Addressing king’s wives

23. In a play king's wives are to be addressed by their servants and attendants as “mistress” (bhattini), “madam” (svāmini) and “lady” (devi).

24. [Of these], the term “lady” (devi) should be applied to the chief queen (mahisī) by her servants as well as by the king. The remaining [wives of the king] are to be addressed [simply] as “mistress” (bhattini) and “madam” (svāmini).

Addressing unmarried princesses

25. Unmarried princesses are to be addressed by their handmaids as “young mistress” (bhartī-dārikā).

---

2 gamyā— not within the prohibited degree of sexual relationship.
3 Ex. Avimaraka addressing Kuraṅgikā (Avi. III. 19.0). Duṣyaṇa addressing Priyamvadā (Śāk. I. 22.6). But the king addresses Citralekhā as bhadravaksa (Vikram. II. 15.9) as well as bhadrī (ibid. III. 15.0).
4 Ex. The king, Urvāśī and their son addressing the female eunuch. (Vikram. V. 12.3,5,18).

23 (C. 23; B. XVII. 87b-88a). 1 Ex. (i) bhattini. Nipunjikā addressing the queen (Vikram II. 19.19); Kājanamāli addressing the queen (Ratnā I. 18.11). But in Pratijnā (I. 5.4) the maid (ceti) addresses Śitā who is not yet a queen, as bhattini. (ii) Svāmini as a term of address to the queen does not seem to occur in any extant drama.

8 Bx. The maid (ceti) addressing the queen Bhānumati (Veṇī. II. 2.14).

24 (C.24; B. XVII. 88b-89a). 1 See above 23 note 2. For an example of king addressing the queen as devi see Pratijīnā. II. 10.12.

5 The term bhogini meant those who were merely an object of enjoyment i.e. those who were not dharma-patis (wives eligible to take part in religious rites).

3 No example of svāmini being used in addressing such a wife seems to occur in any extant drama. In Mālavī. IV. 17.8 Nipunjikā addressing Irāvati the second wife of Agnimitra uses the term bhattini the very term to be used rightly for the chief queen Dhārīnī.

25 (C.25; B. XVII. 89b-90a). 1 Ex. The maid (ceti) addressing Padmāvatī (Śvapna. I. 15.11) and Kuraṅgī (Avi. III. 0.48).
Addressing a sister

An elder sister is to be addressed as “sister” (*bhaṇḍini*)² and an younger sister as “child” (*vatsa*)³.

Addressing a Brahmin lady, a nun or a female ascetic

26. A Brahmin lady, a nun (*laṅkaṇā) or a female ascetic (*vratinā) is to be addressed as “noble lady” (*ārye*)¹.

Addressing one’s wife

A wife is to be addressed as “noble lady” (*ārye*)² or by referring to her father’s³ or son’s⁴ name.

Women addressing their equals

27. Women friends among their equals are to be accosted by one another with the word “hallo” (*halā*)¹.

Addressing a handmaid

By a superior woman a handmaid (*pṛṇyā) is to be accosted with the word “hey child” (*ham-je*)².

Addressing a courtezan

28. A courtezan is to be addressed by her attendants as *Ajjukā*, and when she is an old woman she is to be addressed by other characters in a play as *Attā*³.

² This mode of address does not seem to occur in any extant drama.

² Ex. Yaugandharāyaṇa in the role of an elder brother addresses the queen who is playing the role of his younger sister as *vatsa* (Pratışāla, I. 9.11). C. om. 25a.

26 (C. 25b-26a; B. XVII. 90b-91a). ¹ No ex. of this rule seems to be available in any extant drama. Parivrajikā in Mālavi (I) and the female ascetic in Vikram (V) could have been addressed as *ārīṇe* instead of as *bhagavati*. In Madhyama, Ghaṭokana addresses the wife of the Brahmin as *bhavati*.

² Ex. *Sūtradhāra* addressing his wife (Mṛch. I Malati. I)
³ e.g. Māṇḍara (Māṇḍara’s daughter). No example seems to occur in any extant drama.

² e.g. Somāśarman (Somāśarman’s mother). No example seems to occur in any extant drama.

27 (C. 26b-27a; B. XVII. 91b-92a). ¹ For ex. see Śak. Vikram- etc.
² Ex. *Sīta* addressing her maid (Pratini, I. 4.21), Irivati addressing Nipunjikā (Mālavi. III. 14.1).

28 (C. 27b-28a; B. XVII. 92b-93a). ¹ Read the hemistich 28a as *या लम हा या वपामहा परिधिनेन तः*. 
29. In love-making the wife may be accosted as “my dear” (priye)\(^1\) by all except the king. But priests’ and merchants’ wives are always to be addressed as “noble lady” (ārye)\(^2\).

Giving names to different characters in a play

30. The playwrights should always assign significant names [to characters] which are not well-known and which have been created [by them]\(^3\).

Name of Brahmans and Kṣatriyas

31. Of these, Brahmans and Kṣatriyas in a play should, be given, according to their clan or profession, names ending in saran or varman\(^1\).

Naming merchants

32. The names of merchants\(^1\) should and in datta\(^2\).

Naming warriors

To warriors should be given names indicating much valour.\(^3\)

---

\(^1\) Ex. the hetere (ganjika) addressed by her maid (Caru. II. 0.6). The word ajjukā (āryaki, OIA) “madam” afterwards came to mean ‘hetere’ as in the title of the Prahasana Bhagavadajukiyam by Baudhāyana Kavi

\(^2\) No example of this seems to be available in any extant drama. But the word occurs in the form of atti in Myceu. (IV.30).

\(^3\) (C.39b-39a; B.XVII. 94b-94a). \(^1\) No example of such names seems to occur in any extant drama.

\(^4\) (C.30b-31a; B.XVII. 25b-96a). \(^1\) No example of such names seems to occur in any extant drama.

\(^5\) (C.31b-32a; B.XVII. 96b, 97b). \(^1\) Ex. Cārudatta the hero of Bhāsa’s play of the same name.

\(^6\) B. reads after this one additional hemistich which in translation is as follows: The name of Kāśikās should end in ghanta. The interpolator had evidently Bhavabhūti’s Aghoragaṅga (Malati) in mind.

\(^7\) Ex. Virasena in Mālavi. (I.8.1).
Naming king’s wives

33. The king’s wives should be given names [which are connected] with the idea of victory (vijaya).1

Naming courtisans

Names of courtisans should end in dattā2, mitrā3 and senā4.

Naming hand-maids

34. In a play hand-maids should be given the names of various flowers.1

Naming menials

Names of menials should bear the meaning of auspiciousness.2

Naming superior persons

35. To superior persons should be given names of deep significance so that their deeds may be in harmony with such names.1

Naming other persons

36. The rest of persons1 should be given names suitable to their birth and profession.

Names [that are to be given] to men and women [in a play] have been properly described [by me].

37a. Names in a play should always be made in this manner by the playwright.

33 (C. 32b-33; B.XVII. 98). 1 No example of this seems to occur in any extant drama.

2 No example seems to occur in any old drama. And the name Vasavadattā for the queen in several dramas seems to be a clear violation of the rule (See Svapna, Ratnā, etc.).

3 No example seems to occur in any old drama.

4 Ex. Vasantasena in Bhāsa’s Cāru. and Śudraka’s Myech.

34 (C.33b-34a; B.XVII. 99). 1 Nalinikā in Avi. (II) and Padminikā in Svapna (V) seems to be rare examples of this.

2 Ex. Jayasena the servant (bhāta) of the king (Avi. I).

35 (C.34b-35a; B.XVII 100). 1 No example seems to occur in any extant play.

36 (C.35b-36a; B.XVII. 101). 1 E.g. Brahmaçāri (Svapna. I), Viṣa (Cāru.) Devakulika, and Sudhākara (Pratimā. IV.) etc.

37a (C. 36b; B. XVII. 102a).
37-38. After knowing exhaustively everything about the rules of language in a drama, one should practise Recitation which is to have six Alamkāras.

Qualities of Recitation

2 I shall now describe the qualities of Recitation. In it there are seven notes (svara), three voice registers (sthāna), four Varnas (lit. manner of uttering notes), two ways of intonation (kāku), six Alamkāras and six limbs (āhya). I shall now explain their characteristics.

The seven notes (svāra) are: Śādja, Rśabha, Gāndhāra, Madhyama, Paścama, Dhaivata and Niṣāda. These are to be made suitable to different Sentiments.

Seven notes to suit different Sentiments

38-40. In the Comic and the Erotic Sentiments the notes should be made Madhyama and Paścama. Similarly in the Heroic, the Furious and the Marvellous Sentiments they should be made Śādja, and Rśabha. In the Pathetic Sentiment the notes should be Gāndhāra and Niṣāda, and in the Odious and the Terrible Sentiments they should be Dhaivata.

Uses of the three voice registers

There are three voice registers (sthumā): the breast (avrā) the throat (kāṇṭha) and the head (āṭivas).

40-41. In the human body as well as in the Vīṇā notes and their pitches proceed from the three registers: the breast, the throat and the head.

41-42. In calling one who is at a distance, notes proceeding from the head register should be used, but for calling one who is not at a great distance, notes from the throat register is to be used, while for a person who is by one’s side, notes from the breast will be proper.

---

37-38 (C. and prose 37a; B.XVII. 102b, 103a). 1 It will be apparent from the notes given above that the rules regarding forms of address have very often been overlooked in extant dramas.

2 The text from here till the beginning of 38-40 is in prose.

38-40 (C.38-39; B.XVII. 103b, 104-105a).

40-41 (C.40, 41a; B.XVII. 105b-106).

41-42 (C.41b-42a; B.XVII.107).
42-43. At the time of Recitation, a sentence begun with notes from the breast should be raised to notes of the head register and at its close it should be brought down to notes of the throat.

Uses of the four accents

43. In Recitation the four accents will be: acute (udāṭṭa), grave (aṇuḍāṭṭa), circumflex (svārītī) and quivering (kampitā).

Recitation in circumflex and acute accents is suitable to the Comic and the Erotic Sentiments, acute and quivering accent is suitable to the Heroic, the Furious and the Marvellous Sentiments, while grave, circumflex and quivering accents are appropriate to the Pathetic, the Odious and the Terrible Sentiments.

Two ways of intonation

There are two ways of intonation, e.g., one entailing expectation (sākāñkṣa) and another entailing no expectation (nirākāñkṣa). These relate to the sentence uttered.

44. A sentence which has not completely expressed its intended meaning, is said to be entailing an expectation (sakāṅkṣa) and a sentence which has completely expressed such a sense, is said to be entailing no expectation (nirākāṅkṣa).

Now, entailing an expectation relates to [the utterance of a sentence] of which the meaning has not been completely expressed and which has notes from the throat and the breast, and begins with a high pitch (tāra) and ends in a low pitch (maṇḍra) and has not completed its Varṣa or Alamkāra.

And, entailing no expectation relates to [the utterance of a sentence] the meaning of which has not been completely expressed and which has notes from the head and begins with a low pitch (maṇḍra) and ends with a high pitch (tāra) and has completed its Varṣa and Alamkāra.

42-43 (C.42b-43a; B.XVII.408).

43 (C. 43b, 43c; B. XVII. 109-110). The text from here till the beginning of 44 is in prose.

44 (C. 44; B. XVII. III). The text from here till the beginning of 45 is in prose.
The six Alamkāras

45. The six Alamkāras of the [note in] Recitation are that it may be high (ucca), excited (dīpta), grave (manudra), low (ūcura), fast (druta), and slow (vilambita). Now listen about their characteristics.

Uses of the six Alamkāras

2 The high (ucca) note proceeds from the head register and is of high pitch (tāra); it is to be used in speaking to anyone at a distance, in rejoinder, confusion, in calling anyone from a distance, in terrifying anyone, in affliction and the like.

The excited (dīpta) note proceeds from the head register and is of extra high pitch (tāntara); it is to be used in reproach, quarrel, discussion, indignation, abusive speech, defiance, anger, valour, pride, sharp and harsh words, rebuke, lamentation and the like.

The grave (manudra) note proceed from the breast register and is to be used in despondency, weakness, anxiety, impatience, low-spiritedness, sickness, deep wound from weapons, fainting, intoxication, communicating secret words and the like.

The low (ūcura) note proceeds from the breast register but has a very low pitch (manudra-tāra) sound; it is to be used in natural speaking, sickness, weariness due to austerities and walking a distance, panic, falling down, fainting and the like.

The fast (druta) note proceeds from the throat register and is swift; it is to be used in women’s soothing children (lallana) refusal of lover’s overture (manumana), fear, cold, fever, panic, agitation, secret emergent (ātyayika), act, pain and the like.

46 (C.45; B.XVII. 112-114). 1 the text from here till the beginning of 46 is in prose.

C. om. "krandita," "nirbhartsana."  2
B. inserts kriṣṭa after vyādhi.  3
C. om. guhyarāntaraścana.  4
After vyādhi read tapa-pathesranta-trasta.  5
C. sakhita-vellana-madana for lallana-manumana. On the meaning of lallana (lallana) and manumana there is no unanimity. We follow Ag’s uṣādkyāya, who says शास्त्रार्थिनां नाविकारति शास्त्रविनिज्ञान-विलक्षणी, उपेन्धेन प्रायस्यनिविन्दीनांस्वदानादिकृति (Ag)  6

After trāṣ (trastā, C.) read yastvātyayika (gūḍha) kāryavedanādiyu.  7
The slow (vilambita) note proceeds from the throat register and is of slightly low pitch (manda)\(^8\); it is to be used in love\(^9\), deliberation, discrimination, jealous anger, envy, saying something which cannot be expressed adequately, bashfulness, anxiety, threatening, surprise, censuring, prolonged sickness\(^10\), squeezing and the like. [On this subject] there are the following traditional couplets:

46-48. To suit various Sentiments the intonation (kāku) should always be made high (neon), excited (dīpta), and fast (druta) in a rejoinder, confusion, harsh reproach, representing sharpness and roughness, agitation, weeping, challenging one who is not present (lit. away from the view) threatening and terrifying [anyone], calling one who is at a distance, and rebuking [anyone].

49-50. Intonation should be made grave (manda) and low (nīca) in sickness, fever, grief, hunger, thirst, observation of a lesser vow (niyama), deliberation, deep wound from a weapon, communicating confidential words, anxiety and state of austerities.

51. Intonation should be made grave (manda) and fast (druta) in women’s soothing children (lallā)\(^1\), refusal to love’s overture (maumana)\(^2\), panic and attack of cold.

52-55. The intonation should be made slow (vilambita), excited (dīpta) and of low pitch (manda) in following an object lost after being seen, hearing anything untoward about a desired object or person, communicating something desired, mental deliberation, lunacy, envy, censure, saying something which cannot be adequately expressed [by words], telling stories, rejoinder, confusion, an action involving excess, wounded\(^1\) and diseased limb, misery, grief, surprise jealous anger, joy and lamentation.

\(^8\) C. manda for tanumanda. \(^9\) B. reads karuna after śyigāra.
\(^10\) C. reads roga for roga.
51 (C.49; B. XVII. 120). \(^1\) C. malle ca mardane for lalle ca munnane.
\(^2\) See note 1.
51-55 (C. 50; 51a-53a, 51b, 53b, B.XVII.121-124). \(^1\) Read vikṣate vyūdhito tvāige.
56. Grave (manda) and slow (vilomita) intonations have been prescribed for words containing pleasant sense and bringing in happiness.

57. Exited (dipta) and high (noca) intonations have been prescribed for words which express sharpness and roughness. Thus the Recitation should be made to have to different intonations (lit. shelter) by the producers.

Intonation in different Sentiments

58-59. Slow intonation is desired in the Comic, the Erotic, and the Pathetic Sentiments. In the Heroic, the Furious and the Marvellous Sentiments the excited intonation is praised. Fast and low intonations have been prescribed in the Terrible and the Odious Sentiments. Thus the intonation should be made to follow the States (bhāca) and the Sentiments.

Six limbs of enunciation

1Now there are six limbs [of enunciation] such as Separation (viccheda), Presentation (arpāṇa), Closure (visarga), Continuity (anubandha), Brilliance (dipana) and Calming (prasāmana).

Of these, Separation (viccheda) is due to pause (virāma). Presentation (arpāṇa) means reciting something by filling up the auditorium with graceful modulation of voice. Closure (visarga) means the finishing of a sentence. Continuity (anubandha) means the absence of separation between words [in a sense group] or not taking breath while uttering them. Brilliance (dipana) means the gradually augmented notes which proceed from the three voice registers (sthāna), and Calming (prasāmana) means lowering the notes of high pitch (tāra) without making them discordant.

Now about their uses in connexion with different Sentiments.

56 (C.54; B.XVII.126). 1 B. reads one additional couplet before this.
57 (C.55; B.XVII.127). 1 C. reads three additional hemistiches after this.
58-59. (C.57b, 58; B.XVII. 128-131). 1 The text from here till the beginning of 60 is in prose.

2 B. līlāyamānamadharavalguna for līlāvarna.
3 B. padāntareṣu vicchedah for "atreṣavicchedah."
In the Comic and the Erotic Sentiments the enunciation should include Presentation, Separation Brilliance and Calming.

In the Pathetic Sentiment it should include Brilliance and Calming.

In the Heroic the Furious and the Marvellous Sentiments it should abound in Separation, Calming, Brilliance and Continuity.

In the Odious and the Terrible Sentiments it should include Closure and Seperation.

All these are to be applied through notes of high (tāra), low (maṇḍra) and medium (maṭhya) pitch proceeding [from the three voice registers]. In addressing one at distance the notes should be made of high pitch (tāra) from the head; the person addressed being not at a great distance the notes should be made of medium pitch (maṭhya) from the throat, and to speak to one at one's side notes should be made of low pitch (maṇḍra) from the breast. But one should not proceed to the high pitch (tāra) from the low (maṇḍra) one, and from the low pitch to the high one. The three kinds of tempo (lāya) of these notes are to be utilised in different Sentiments. In the Comic and Erotic Sentiments the tempo should be medium, in the Pathetic it should be slow and in the Heroic, the Furious, the Marvellous, the Odious and Terrible Sentiments quick.

Pause defined

Now, Pause (cirāna) in connexion with enunciation is due to the completion of sense and is to depend on the situation (lit. practical), and not on metre. Why? Because it is found in practice that there occurs pause even after one, two three or four syllables, e.g.

60. kim gaccha mā viṣa sudurjana vāritōṣi !
kāryam tvayā nama ma sarva-janopabhukta

What [is the matter]? Be off. Don't enter. You are prohibited

4 B. adds ākākeśāyāṃ uttar kāṣya-ṛṣigārayor.
5 C. vākyam for pāṭhyam.
6 The text here is in prose.
60 (C. 59; B.XVII. 132). 1 B. bhuktam C. bhuktaḥ.
[to enter]. O very wicked man, the enjoyed-by-all, I have nothing to do with you.

Use of Pause

Thus in a play (lit. poetical composition) occur words containing small number of syllables in cases of Śucī and Aṅkura [which are connected with Pause].

Hence, care should be taken about Pause. Why? Because [an observation of] Pause clears the meaning. There is a couplet [on this subject]:

61. In the [Verbal] Representation (abhīnaya) the producers should always take care about Pause; for, on it depends the meaning [of words uttered].

Hands in connexion with Alamkāras and Pause

62. Keeping the eyes fixed in the direction in which the two hands move one should make the Verbal Representation by observing proper Pauses for indicating the [intended] meaning.

63–64. In the Heroic and the Furious [Sentiments] the hands are mostly occupied with the weapons, in the Odius they are bent due to contempt, in the Comic they are to point to [something], in the Pathetic they are to hang down and in the Marvellous they are to remain motionless due to surprise.

65. On similar other occasions too, the meaning should be made clear by means of Alamkāras and Pauses.

66–67. Pauses which are prescribed in a verse require Alamkāras. Pause should be observed after a word, when the meaning or the breath (prāṇa) requires it. And when words and syllables are combined into a [big] compound or [the utterance is] quick, or confusion about different meanings is liable to arise, Pause should be observed at the end of a foot or as required by the breath. In the remaining cases Pause should depend on the meaning.

---

1 These are the words of a vipralabdhi Heroine.
2 See ŚŚ, XXIV. 43.
3 See ŚŚ, XXIV. 44.
4 See ŚŚ, XXIV. 44.
61 (C.60; B.XVII. 133), 62 (C.61; B.XVII. 134).
63–64 (C.62–63; B.XVII. 135–136), 65 (C.64; B.XVII.137)
Here one should know about Drawn-out Syllables (kṛṣyā-kiṣāra) in connexion with the States and the Sentiments. e.g.

The Drawn-out Syllables and their use

68-69. The consonant ending in a long vowel like ā, e, ai, or au is known as a Drawn-out Syllable. In sadness, argumentation, questioning or indignation such a syllable should take (lit. be pronounced in) one Kalā time.

70. As for the rest of the syllables they may be pronounced with Pause required by their meaning, and such a Pause may be one, two, three, four, five or six Kalās' duration.

71. The Pause being of great duration (vilambita) the syllable pronounced will always be [rendered] long. But its duration should not be more than six Kalās.

72. Or, taking account of the practice as required by some cause, or of the act on one should observe Pause in a verse to suit the State or the Sentiment [involved].

73 In verse, Pauses arising from the foot-division [only] are recognized; but the position of these may be varied [on the stage] by the experts to suit the meaning [of a passage].

74. But [while observing Pause as directed above] one should not create (lit. pronounce) ungrammatical words (apākāsā) or spoil the metre, and one should not pause too long except in places of caesura, and in [uttering words expressing] sorrow one should not make the intonation excited (līpla).

75. One should recite a dramatic composition (kāvyā) which is free from literary defects (kāvyā-dosa), possesses best characteristics and has [literary] qualities, and in such a Recitation

---

1 The text here is in prose. We follow B.'s text.
2 C. nīkṣyākiṣāra for kṛṣyākiṣāra.
68-69 (C. 68-69; B.XVII. 140-1:1). 70 (C.70; B.XVII. 142).
71 (C.71; B.XVII. 143). 1 C. yadā for sadā.
2 C. padinām for kalānām.
72 (C. 71a-72a; B.XVII. 144). 73 (72b-73a; B.XVII. 145).
74 (C.73b, 74a; B.XVII. 146). 1 C. repeats 77a before this.
75 (C. 75; B.XVII. 147).
one should observe proper rules relating to the utterance of notes and their Alamkāras.

76. Alamkāras and Pauses that have been prescribed in case of Sanskritic Recitation should all be observed in un-Sanskritic (Prakritic) Recitation of women as well.

77. Thus in the representation of the ten kinds of dramatic works (ṛāpa) performers should prepare Recitation subject to an observance of proper notes, Kāla, time (tāla) and tempo (lāya).

78. Rules of intonation have been described [by me] in proper sequence. I shall describe hereafter the ten kinds of dramatic work.

Here ends Chapter XIX of Bharata’s Nātyaśāstra which treats of the Display of Intonation in Connexion with the Verbal Representation.

76 (C. 76; B.XVII. 148).
77 (C. 77; B.XVII.149).
78 (C. 78; B. XVII. 150)
CHAPTER TWENTY

TEN KINDS OF PLAY

1. I shall now describe the tenfold\(^1\) division of plays together with their names, functions and modes of production.

2-3. For their definition (\textit{lokagāna}) plays are known to be of ten kinds such as Nāṭaka, Prakaraṇa, Ańka (Utsṛṣṭikāńka)\(^2\), Vyāyoga, Bhāna, Samavakāra, Vīthi, Prahasana, Dīma\(^3\), and Itāmriga. I shall describe their characteristics in detail (lit. from the beginning).

4. Styles (\textit{ṛtī})\(^4\) are known as the constituent elements of all dramatic works (lit. poems). Considering their production the ten kinds of play are considered to have proceeded from these.

5. Just as the Jātis\(^1\) and the Šrutis\(^2\) of notes constitute a scale (\textit{grāma})\(^3\), so varieties of Styles make up the dramatic composition (\textit{kārga-bānīlka}).

6. Just as the Śadja\(^1\) and the Madhyama\(^2\) scales include all the notes, so these two [kinds of] dramatic compositions (Nāṭaka and Prakaraṇa) are made up of all the Styles.

7. The Nāṭaka and the Prakaraṇa are to be known as made up of all the Styles and they utilise all the methods of constructions\(^3\).

---

\(^1\) Old writers on the subject like Kohala mention additional types of play such as Saṭṭaka, Toṭaka and Rāsaka (Ag.). Bhoja ignores the Toṭaka and recognises only twelve kinds of play including the Nāṭikā mentioned in the NŚ. (See, V. Raghavan, Śr. Pr. p. 27).

\(^2\) This word is sometimes loosely used as a synonym of \textit{rūpa} or \textit{rūpaka}.

\(^3\) It is evidently a non-Aryan word.

\(^4\) See NŚ. XXII.

\(^5\) See NŚ. (C.) XXVIII. 36ff. \(^6\) \textit{ibid.} \(^7\) \textit{ibid.}

\(^6\) See NŚ. XXVIII. 22ff.

\(^7\) It seems that 6 and 7 have taken each other’s place.
8-9. Plays of the Vithi, the Samavakāra, the Ihamga, the Utsritakā (Ankā), the Vyāyoga, the Bhāpa, the Prahasana and the Dima classes should be made devoid of the Graceful Style. I shall hereafter describe the different methods of constructing plays.

The Nātaka

10-11. [A play] which has for its subject-matter a well-known story\(^1\), for its Hero a celebrated person of exalted nature (udatta)\(^2\) or which describes the character of a person descending from a royal sect\(^3\), divine protection [for him], his many superhuman powers\(^4\) and exploits such as, success [in different undertakings] and amorous pastimes, and which has appropriate number of (lit. richly furnished which) Acts (anāka)\(^5\) and Introductory Scenes (praveśaka), is called a Nātaka.\(^6\)

12. Character of kings, their acts and movements representing many States and Sentiments and arising from (lit. made by) their joys and sorrows [when described in a play] is styled a Nātaka.

The Act

13. After considering the denouement (kārya) suitable to the particular stage [of the plot] an Act should be constructed by expanding the Turning point (bhūjā) [of the play]. It should be furnished with a group (gṛha) [of characters].\(^1\)

---

8-9 (C. 8-9; B.XVIII. 8-9).

10-11 (C. 10-11; B.XVIII. 10-11). \(^1\) It must occur in some form in a Purāṇa, Itihāsa (Rām. and Mbh.) or any other celebrated work (e.g. Bhāratakathā).

2 Rāma, Kṛṣṇa and Udayana are examples of such persons. This and the other conditions mentioned in the note above exclude living persons as Heroes of the Nātakas. Cf. ND, p. 27.

3 Janaka and Viśvāmitra are examples of such persons.

4 Divine personages may be introduced in a Nātaka only as Heroes of an Episode (patāka) or Episodical Incident (prakāri). See Ag. and ND, (loc cit).

5 For the description of Act (anāka) see below 13-15, 23.

6 For a description of the Introductory Scene (praveśaka) see below 19-21, 27-35.

12 (C.12; B.XVIII. 12).

13 (C.13; B.XVIII. 13). \(^1\) C. reads this couplet differently.
14. The Āṅka (Act) is a rutkhi (traditional) word. As, by means of the States and the Sentiments it causes the meanings [of plays] to ruha (to grow) through [an adherence to] some [technical] rules, it is called an Āṅka (Act).

15. An Act should be brought to a close by (lit. in) a division of the play, and no final disposal of the Germ (bija) should be made in it. And the Turning Point (bindu) of (lit. arising from) a play should again and again (lit. always) be made to occur (lit. pervade) in the plot (cakta).

16. That [part of the play] where a [particular] meaning is fully expressed, but where the Germ (bija) is not finally disposed of, is always to be known as an Act which slightly attaches itself to the Turning Point (bindu).

17. An Act which relates to the direct exploits of the persons (lit. Heroes) mentioned [before] and their various States, should not be made too long.

18. It should also be known that the Act is to contain the various Sentiments arising from [words and deeds of] the queen of the Hero, his superiors, priest, minister and leader of the army (ṣūrthavāha).

---

14 (C.14; B.XVIII. 14). 1 the root ruh—to grow.

15 (C.15; B.XVIII. 15). 1 From the Turning Points, the plot attains rapid a movement, and due to these the dramatic situations arise.

16 (C.16; B.XVIII. 16). 1 Emend ca into na. Such an emendation seems to be necessary from the special meaning of the word bija. Cf. sarveṣaṃ aikinam yo 'rīho bijalakaśayah (Ag).

17 (C.17; B.XVIII. 17). 1 Sīgaranaudi reads this differently. See NL, p. 11.

18 (C.18; B.XVIII.18). 1 Queens include his concubines and the mahādevi (chief queen) (Ag).

* Superiors include his parents and teachers (Ag).

Sūrthavāho'la senāpati (Ag). In extant dramas senāpati seldom appears.
Incidents not directly presentable in an Act

19. 1 Feats of anger, favour, grief, pronouncing a curse, running away, marriage, commencement of some miracle and its actual appearance, should not be made directly visible in an Act. 2

20. A battle, loss of a kingdom, death, and siege of a city being not directly visible in an Act, should be presented by Introductory Scenes (pravṛṣṭakula).

21. In an Act or in an Introductory Scene of the Nāṭaka or the Prakarana there should be no killing of a person who is known as the Hero. 1

22. His flight, treaty or capture should always be indicated by means of special descriptions (lit. poetical passages) and the Introductory Scenes will refer to such incidents (lit. acts).

23. An Act should cover incidents that can take place in course of a single day; it should relate to the Germ of the play and should proceed without a hindrance of the routine duties. 1

---

19 (C.20; B.XVIII.20). 1 B. and C. read before this one additional couplet which in trans. is "The number of Acts in the Nāṭaka and the Prakarana should not be less than five and more than ten (read pāncaparṇa dasā para in the text)". But in view of the couplets 25 and 57 below, this seems to be superfluous.

2 aiṅke pratyakṣajñini = aiṅke + apratyakṣajñini (aiṅka-pratyakṣa, C.). See An. R. commentary (p.53) where we have एव यथौ नृत्यसंगीत काली प्रवापच न भूत. See also 20 below.

20 (C.21; B.XVIII.36). 1 This clearly shows that death scenes were not prohibited on the ancient Indian stage. See Nś. VII.85. note 1.

2 B. pratyakṣini tu nātak for apratyakṣakālidāni. Cf. Sāgaranandini's view on this point (NL. p.13).

21 (C.22; B.XVIII.39). A misunderstanding of this rule as adopted in SāD. (274) has given rise to the belief of modern scholars that the ancient Indian drama did not permit death-scenes on the stage. See Keith, Skt. Dr. p.293, 354; Haas, DR. p.93.

22 (C.23; B.XVIII.40). 1 B. reads yojyaḥ for nityam, and kāvyākāsair bahubhir yathārasaṁ nātya-tattvajñānak ar 22b.

23 (C.24; B.XVIII.21). 1 B. apravittam for apravittah. Sāgaranandin reads it with a slight difference. He quotes also other views about the duration of incidents present in an Act. See NL. (p.13).
24. A wise playwright should not put in [too] many incidents in a single Act\(^1\). And incidents in it should be depicted without a hindrance of the routine duties\(^2\).

25. Persons who will enter the stage in an Act (lit. there) will go out after performing things connected with the Germ and the meaning of the play, and [they are to create] the proper Sentiments.

26. Knowing the length of a day which is divided into Kṣapas\(^1\), Yāmas\(^2\) and Muhūrtas\(^3\) one should distribute all the different incidents in a play to different acts.

The Introductory Scene

27. When incidents that are to be finished in course of a [single] day, cannot be accommodated in an Act they should be presented in Introductory Scenes after closing the [same] Act.

28. [Incidents] that may take place in course of a month or a year, are also to be presented [similarly] after closing the Act\(^1\); but [incidents covering] more than a year should never be treated [in such a manner].\(^2\)

29. When in an Act any person goes out on business to a distant land, it should be brought to a close [at that point] as perscribed before.

30. With an Act of the Nāṭaka and the Prakaraṇa the Hero should be closely associated. And an Introductory Scène\(^1\) should be made up\(^2\) of a conversation of attendants.

---

24 (C.25; B.XVIII.22). \(^1\) Read ekāṅke nā instead of ekāṅkeṇa (B.C.). The controversy over the reading is anterior to the time of Ag. (See Ag.).

25 (C.26; B.XVIII.23). \(^2\) Routine duties include prayers as well as taking meals. (sandhyā-vandanāde).

26 (C.27; B.XVIII 25).

27 (C.28; B.XVIII.26). \(^1\) Ex. Avi, II, Vikrām, V.

28 (C.29; B.XVIII.31). \(^1\) C. reads aikarchedām kuryāt for eche-dam kṛtvā. The meaning of this rule is that an Act will include events covering a month or a year. But this contradict 23 above.

29 (C.30; B.XVIII.32).

30 (C.31; B.XVIII.38). \(^1\) B. viśryah for kartavyah; C. praveśake for praveśakya.
31. An Introductory Scene in the Nātaka and the Prakaraṇa should be made to relate to the essentials of the Turning Points (bindu) and follow the preceding (lit. another) Act.

32. It (the Introductory Scene) should not consist of exploits of the superior and the middling characters, and there should be no exalted speech in it. And in practice it should adopt speeches and manners of the common people.

33. An Introductory Scene may have many purposes. [For example], it may indicate the advent or passage of time, change of the Sentiments or the beginning [of an Act] or the denouncement (kārya).

34. Incidents which depend on many [persons] are to be compressed by means of Introductory Scenes or in Junctures (saudhi). For a play containing [too] many prose passages will be tiresome [to the actors] at [the time of] the production [of the play].

35. When a particular item cannot be completely presented in an Act lest it should be too large for [successful] production, its account should be compressed in a few words and put in an Introductory Scene.

The Explanatory Scene

36. In the Nātaka the Explanatory Scene (vīkaṃbhakā) should always be made up with the middling characters and it

31 (C.32; B-XVIII.33). 1 C. bhavati kārycam for sanvidhūtavydī.
32 (C.33; B-XVIII.34).
33 (C.34; B-XVIII.35). 1 Read 33a as अवास्ते नानिति आवास्ते नास्ति चेतानुभावः, ("तेषां बासार्थः, B.").
2 B. reads the first hemistich with the change accepted by Ag. The passage in B. in trans. will be as follows: An Introductory Scene may have many purposes. For example, it may indicate the advent or passage of time, or present some explanation or other aspects of planning the denouncement (kārya).
34 (C.35; B-XVIII.36). 1 For bahuṣūñnapadāya yuktam. C. reads bahu-ṣūna-paḍyaḥpratām. 35 (C.36; B-XVIII.37).
36 (C.37; B-XVIII.38). 1 This is meant that superior characters do not appear in an Explanatory Scene. See below 37 note.
should be concise and follow the polished style of speaking (ṣamskṛta-vacan).\footnote{2}

37. It should be of two kinds: pure (śuddha) and mixed (ṣamkīrṇa). Of these, the pure is made up with the middling characters, and the mixed with the inferior and the middling characters.

38. In the Nāṭaka and the Prakaraṇa an Explanatory Scene between two Acts or at the beginning of an Act, should always include the middling and the inferior characters\footnote{1}.

Number of dramatis personae

39. The Nāṭaka and the Prakaraṇa should not be made to contain a large number of attendants [to the Hero]. The Hero’s attendants (lit. men of work) in such plays (lit. there) should [at most] be four or five\footnote{1}.

40. Plays of the Vyāyoga, the Iñārga, the Samavakāra, and the Dīma classes should be made to have ten or twelve characters \footnote{2}.

Introducing chariots and palaces on the stage

41. A chariot, an elephant, a horse and a palace should not be presented on the stage. These should be provided [in a play] by means of appearance and costumes\footnote{1} [of men concerned] and [their] Gaits\footnote{2} and movements (gati-vicāra)\footnote{2}.

37 (C.38; B.XVIII.55). \footnote{1} Ex. Pratijñā II. Śak. III.
\footnote{2} Ex. Pratimā. II, Vikram. III.

38 (C.39). \footnote{1} The exact significance of this rule is not clear. It possibly means to say that plays other than of the Nāṭaka and the Prakaraṇa types, will not allow an Explanatory Scene of the mixed kind. An example of such a scene probably occurs in the Pañca of Bhāsa, which does not fall into any of the known types of drama. See Pusalker, Bhāsa, pp. 209ff.

39 (C.40; B.XVIII.41). \footnote{1} This rule is possibly meant for avoiding the practical difficulty of producing a drama with too many characters.

40 (C.41). \footnote{1} C. gives it in a mutilated form. Its second hemistich should be read as daśabhīḥ dvīdaśabhīr vā kāryaṁ......

41 (C.42). \footnote{1} This couplet should be read na ग लबनर्भे कामे द्वे राजाः-निमानां. नालामहाश्रिविविधानम् नालीविविधार्द्वे. \footnote{2} See NŚ. XXIII. 6-9.
\footnote{2} See NŚ. XII.
42. But an elephant, a horse, a palace, a hill or any conveyance as well as imitation weapons may be presented (lit. made) by means of model-work by those who know the rules [for their construction].

Introducing an army on the stage

43. If due to any reason a detachment of an army is to be introduced on the stage (lit. here), only five (lit. four) or six persons are to make their appearance (lit. going).

44. [In a play an army] should be made to appear as consisting of a small number of men, representing mounts and travelling requisites, and it should move slowly. For in the military role (kṣatrā) of the actors, [actual] rules of polity do not apply.

45. In the composition of a play Denouement should be made [like] the tip of the cow's tail, and all the exalted situations (lit. states) should be put at the end.

46-47. At the conclusion of all the plays which contain various States and Sentiments, experts should always introduce the Marvelous Sentiment. Thus I have briefly but properly spoken about the characteristics of the Nāṭaka. I shall hereafter describe the Prakarana by mentioning its characteristics.

The Prakarana

48. The play (lit. where) in which the writer prakaran (devises) by his own genius an original plot with its Hero, and works up its elaboration (ṣārīra), is called the Prakarana.

42 (C.42). ¹ See above 41 note 2.
43 (C.44). ² Emend karṇaṭapāṇa into kṝṇaṭapāṇa.
44 (C.45). ¹ Emend kṣatena into kṣatre na.
45 (C.46; B.XVIII.42). ¹ The exact significance of this expression as well as the implication of the entire rule is not clear. Ag. however quotes two different views on the subject but none of them seems to be convincing.
46-47 (C.47-48; B.XVIII.43-44). ¹ This is mostly to be done by causing unexpected things to happen. The sudden revelation of Āvantikā as Vāsavadatā in Bhāsa's Svapna, (VI) and the dramatic reunion of Śakuntalā with Duṣyanta in Śāk. (VII) are examples of this rule.
48 (C.49; B.XVIII.45). ¹ From this it may be assumed that once there were Prakaranaś in which the plot was not wholly original, i.e. the
49. When a playwright constructs a play with an original (lit. invented) Germ and a plot which is not connected with Rśis’ works¹ and which that play has gathered from some other works and has some marvellous qualities in it, the same is also called the Prakaraṇa.

50. The plot and its elaboration as the basis of the Sentiments,¹ which have been prescribed in case of the Nāṭaka are also to be applied with [the the detail of] their characteristics to the Prakaraṇa in all its Junctures (sandhi)².

51. The varied exploits¹ of Brahmans, merchants, ministers, priests, officers [of the king] and leaders of the army [when presented in a play] are to be known as the Prakaraṇa².

52. The Prakaraṇa should be known as not made up with an exalted Hero. And it does not contain the character of any god, has no story of king’s enjoyment, and it is connected with the men outside [the royal palace].

53. The play of the Prakaraṇa type should include [in some cases] servants, parasites (vīṭa) and heads of the merchants’ guild, [as characters and should contain incidents arising from] the conduct of courtezans as well as exploits of depraved women of good family.

54. [In an Act of the Prakaraṇa] where a minister, head of the merchants’ guild, Brahmin, priest, minister and leader of the

---

¹ The types of characters mentioned in the rule are mostly absent in the scanty number of extant plays of this type. The Pratīṣṭhā is an example of a Prak. having ministers as its Hero.

² The playwright worked up materials from the source of the plot, such as Mbh. Rām. and Bṛhatkathā. See above 10-11 note 1.

49 (C.50; B.XVIII.46). ¹ Rām and Mbh. are examples of such works.

50 (C.51; B.XVIII.47). ¹ C. rasiśrayopetam for ca vṛttibhedaś ca.

51 (C.51; B.XVIII.48). ¹ C. kevalam upādyavastu syāt for salakṣaṇam sarva-sandhiṣu tu.

53 (C.54; B.XVIII.50).
caravan stay in their family circle, no courtesan should be brought in there\(^1\).

55. [In the Prakaraṇa] when a person is in the company of a courtesan there should not be [at the same time] his meeting with any respectable woman (lit. woman of good family), and while he is with a person of high family no courtesan should meet him then.

56. If out of necessity (lit. reason) there occurs a meeting\(^1\) of courtesans and respectable ladies in [any scene of] a Prakaraṇa their language and manners should be kept undistorted.

57. In the Nāṭāka and the Prakaraṇa the playwrights should have the number of Acts as not less than five and not more than ten\(^1\); and this should be furnished with the various Sentiments and the States\(^2\).

58. After considering the need and action of the plot one should place between two Acts the Introductory Scenes which are to compress the events in the Junctures (śanḍhi)\(^1\).

The Nāṭīkā

59. In a play of the Nāṭīkā (Nāṭi) class producers are to recognise a more or less well-known variety of these two (the Nāṭāka and the Prakaraṇa)\(^1\).

\(^1\) See 55 below.
55 (C.56; B.XVIII.52).
56 (C.57; B.XVIII.53). \(^1\) The nature of the necessity, and the language which the author of the Nāṭa had in view in formulating this rule, has probably been indicated in the following couplet. विशेषादिव्यदर्दिन अविधायांकर्मम्. भावम् याहारं नियोजणं संयुतं कुलदानिषः. Bh. P. 242
57 (C.58; B.XVIII.29). \(^1\) Read daśā pari for daśāparibhā.
58 (C.59; B.XVIII.59). \(^2\) B. reads the second hemistich as चिन्तनमेधिष्ठि ग्रन्थोपालिकायम् समाविष्ठोऽस्त्राः. दृष्टिकार्य विनिःसंगमान विविधाणाः. Cf. DR. I.118 (ed. Haas, pp. 34-35) and SD. 302. The Introductory Scene cannot be placed in the beginning of a play and it must be in Pkt.
59 (C.60a-61b; B.XVIII.57). \(^1\) Read nāśaṇjūśrīte kāvye for nāṭakāyoge prakaraṇe. See Avaloka on DR. (ed. Nīrṇayasagar) III.43. Description of the Nāṭīkā given here (59-83) has been rightly suspected as an interpolation, though Keith is for rejecting this suspicion. See Skt. Dr. p. 349.
60. Different in origin from the [two types of plays] the Naṭṭaka and the Prakaraṇa, its plot should be invented, the Hero should be a king and it should be based on [an incident relating to music or affairs of the harem].

61. And it contains an abundance of female characters, has four Acts, graceful gestures as its soul; well-arranged constituents, many dances, songs and recitations, and love’s enjoyment are its chief features.

62. The Naṭṭika should be known also to contain [a display of] royal manners, [fit of] anger, its pacification, and [acts of] deceit (blunder), and to have the Hero, his queen, the female Messenger and the attendants [as its dramatis personae].

63. The characteristics of the Naṭṭaka and the Prakaraṇa have been briefly described by me. I shall now speak about the characteristics of the Samavakāra.

The Samavakāra

64-65. It should have the [exploits of] gods as its subject matter (līlā) and an Asura as a well-known and exalted character.

---

60 (C.60b-61a; B.XVIII.58). 1 Keith seems to be in error about the nature of the subject matter (plot) of the Prakaraṇa. See Skt. Dr. p. 349. Justification for calling the Pratīṭhā a Naṭṭikā may be found in the fact that its plot is based on musical lessons given by Udayana to Vāsavadatta and it has four Acts. But according to its Prologue it is a Prakaraṇa. See Pusalker, Bhāṣa, pp. 271-272.

61 (C.62; B.XVIII.59). 1 But for this feature of having four Acts only, the Mālavī may be considered a Naṭṭikā. See Keith. Skt. Dr. p. 350. Ratnā is a well-known example of the four Act Naṭṭikā.

62 (C.63; B.XVIII.60). 1 C. kumopacāra for rūjopacāra.

2 B. krodhadambhāsanyuktā for krodhasanāyula cāpi.

3 C. reads 62b as नायिकेऽनि विनिर्माणं नायिनेऽनं भवेत्.

63 (C.65; B.XVIII.62). 1 B.C. read one additional couplet (C.64; B.XVIII.61) on the basis of two mss. It does not give any new information.

2 C. Prakaranaṇāṭaka-naṭi-lakṣaṇam uktam for नायिकालक्षण-विनिर्माणं uktam vīpṛa. Evidently the interpolator who is responsible for the description of the Naṭṭi (Naṭṭikā) inserted nāṭi in the reading of C. See above 59 note.

64-65 (C.66-67; B.XVIII.63-64). 1 No old specimen of this type.
as its Hero, and it is to consist of three Acts [presenting] the three kinds of deception, the three kinds of excitement or the three kinds of love. [Besides this] it should have as many as twelve dramatis personae and a duration (lit. length) of eighteen Nādikās. I shall now speak about the rule regarding the number of Nādikās to be allotted to the different Acts.

66. A Nādikā should be known as the half of the Muhūrta which is a [well-known] measure of time. The Acts in a Samavakāra should be measured according to the directions given in terms of this Nādikā.

The first act of the Samavakāra

67. The first Act [of the Samavakāra] should have a duration of twelve Nādikās and it is to contain laughter, excitement, deception or a Vīthi.

The second and the third acts of the Samavakāra

68. The second Act also should be similar [except that] it is to have a duration of four Nādikās. And the third Act, which will bring the plot to a close will have a duration of two Nādikās only.

---

of drama is available. Samudramanathana by Vatsarāja (12th century) is a very late work. See Keith, Skt. Dr. p. 267. Bhāsa’s Paṇca is not a Samav. Cf. Mankad, Types of Skt. Dr. p. 58; Pusalker, Bhāsa, pp. 292-210.

1 It does not seem likely that any one play of this type will include all three objects (deception, excitement and love) in their three varieties.

2 As the topics (and hence the Acts) in the Samavakāra are to be loosely related (see 69 below); this limitation has been placed on the time lest it should be made too long.

66 (C.72a, 68b, BXVIII.67). \( nādikā = 24 \) minutes. See below 67 note.

2 mukūrta = a period of 48 minutes. See below 66 note 1. Curiously enough Śāradātmanayā thinks that nādikā is one fourth of a mukūrta. See BhP. p. 249.

67 (C.71; BXVIII.65). \( 12 \) nādikās (nādíś) = 4 hours and 48 minutes.

68 (C.71; BXVIII.66). \( 12 \) nādikās = 1 hour 36 minutes.

2 2 nādikās = 48 minutes.
69. In composing the Samvākāra different Acts should be made to have different topics. And topics in the Samvākāra are to be loosely related to one another.

The three kinds of Excitement

70. Excitement (vibhrama) is known to be of three kinds such as being due to battle and flood (lit. water), storm (lit. wind) and fire, or big elephant at large, and siege to a city.

Three kinds of Deception

71. Deception (kapātā) is known to be of three kinds such as being due to a devised plan, accident or [the stratagem of] the enemy, It creates joy or sorrow [to persons].

Three kinds of Love

72. In this connexion (lit here) three kinds of love to be presented through different actions are: that in relation to duty (dharma), that actuated by material gain (artha) and that actuated by passion (kāma).

Love together with duty

73. When in [discharging] the duty one attains one's [much] desired well-being accomplished in many ways and in this connexion means like observing vows, austerities and penance are adopted, it is to be known as love in relation to duty (dharma-gṛihāra).

---

69 (C.72b, 73; B.XVIII.69). Before this B. reads one additional couplet (B.69) which does not give any important information and has the support of two mss. only. In C. this occurs after C. 68.

2 From this it appears that Samav. was not a play of the regular type and belonged to a very early stage of evolution of Indian drama.

70 (C.74; B.XVIII.70). C. Jalendra-sambhavo for gajendra-sambhrama.

71 (C.75; B.XVIII.71). C. yasti gatikrama, for vastugatakrama.

72 (C.76; B.XVIII.72). C. reads 72b as विविधाविनिधृतार्थे देवि धर्मार्थ-कामकालः.

73 (C.77; B.XVIII.73). B. reads 73a as वनिन्द्र धर्मार्थकाद्वितीयं सत्यव शास्त्रम.

2 C. prati for vrata.
Love together with material gain

74. Love in which attainment of material gain occurs in various ways\(^1\) is called Love in relation to material gain (\textit{arthā-\v{s}yāgāra}) or it may be that love in which the enjoyment of pleasure with women is for the purpose of some material gain.

Love due to passion

75. Love actuated by passion (\textit{kāma-\v{s}yāgāra}) includes the seduction of a maiden and it causes, and also secret or excited intercourse\(^1\) of a man with a woman.

Metres not allowed in the Samavakāra

76. \(^{2}\)In the Samavakāra the playwright should make proper use metres other than Usñik and Gāyatrī etc. which are of complex construction\(^9\).

77. In this manner an expert should compose a Samavakāra which will be the source of various Sentiments\(^1\). I shall hereafter speak about the characteristics of the Ihāmṛga.

The Ihāmṛga

78. It (Ihāmṛga) has as its dramatis personae divine males who are implicated in fights about divine females. It should be constructed with a well-arranged plot and should be convincing\(^1\).

---

74 (C.78; B.XVIII.74). \(^1\) Read 74a as \textit{प्रेमतिष्ठ शंक्षक्षणा भर्ति शौर्य-महार:} (\textit{ms. cha B.}).

75 (C.79; B.XVIII.75). \(^1\) Read 75a as \textit{क्षणभंतिनेन द प्रभा धीरस्मीहसु रसा न सिन्हते वातेवं यह सिवाय: काम प्रभारः} (\textit{ms. ya, na, pha, bhi in B.}).

76 (C.80; B.XVIII.76). \(^1\) Read this couplet as follows: \textit{उपासक सामविक-नायिका। क्षणभंतिनेन द प्रभा समसकारे कहिंस: समस्मा धीरस्मिः। The reading accepted by Ag. seems to be corrupt. For Usñik and Gāyatrī type of metres cannot by any means be considered as being of complex construction (\textit{handhakuśila}). Our emendation has the support of \textit{ms. cha} in B. Udbhāṭa (the noted commentator of the NŚ.) too thinks that the rule prescribes complex metres such as Sragdharā for the Samav. See Ag.}

77 (C.81; B.XVIII.77). \(^1\) C. \textit{sukhaduhkhasamātīrayaḥ} for \textit{nīnārasa-samātīrayaḥ}.

78 (C.82; B.XVIII.78). \(^1\) C. \textit{Viprātyaya} for \textit{viprātyaya}. No old specimen of this type of drama is available. Rukmiṇīharaṇa by Vatsarāja is an artificial production of a very late period (12th century).
79. It is to abound in vehement (uddhata) Heroes and to have its construction dependent on feminine anger which is to give rise to commotion (sankṣobha), excitement (vidrava) and angry conflict (sampheṣa).

80. The Iñāmrīga should be a play with well-ordered construction in which the plot of love is to be based on causing discord among females, carrying them off and oppressing [the enemies].

81. All that are to be made [available] in the Vyāyoga—its male characters, Styles and Sentiments—should be brought in the Iñāmrīga also, except that the latter is to include (lit. have connexion with) the goddesses (lit. divine females) only as its female characters.

82. [In the Iñāmrīga] when persons intent on killing is on the point of killing, [the impending] battle should be avoided by some artifice.

83. O Brahmins, the characteristics of the Iñāmrīga have been briefly mentioned by me. I shall speak hereafter on the characteristics of the Dīma.

The Dīma

84. The Dīma should be constructed with a well-known plot, and its Hero should be wellknown and of the exalted (udātta) type. It is to contain the six Sentiments and to consist of four Acts only.

85-86. It should contain all the Sentiments except the Erotic and the Comic, a plot (kāryayoni) with exciting Sentiments and various States, and it is [also] to include incidents such as an

---

(See Keith, Skt. Dr. p. 266). Two other late specimens of this kind are Kṛṣṇamiṣra’s Vira-vijaya and Kṛṣṇa Avadhūta’s Sarva-viṇāda-māṭaka. (See Sten know, ID. p. 114).

79 (C.83; B.XVIII.79). 80 (C.84a, 85a; B.XVIII.80).
81 (C.85b-86a; B.XVIII.81). 1 See below 90-93.
82 (C.84b, 85b; B.XVIII.82). 1 C. vadho’pyuddārayo for vadho’pyudagro.
83 (C.87; B.XVIII.83).
84 (C.88; B.XVIII.84). 1 No old example of this type of drama is available.
85-86 (C.89-90; B.XVIII.85-86).
47
earthquake\(^1\), fall of meteors, an eclipse of the sun or the moon, battle\(^2\), personal combat, challenge, and angry conflict.

87-88. The Dīna should abound in deceit and juggling and should have the energetic activity of many persons, and dissension (*bheda*)\(^1\) among themselves, and it is to include sixteen characters which may be gods, Nāgas, Rākṣasas, Yakṣas and Piśacās, and [besides this] the play is to be carefully made in the Grand and the Energetic Styles and is to have many States to support it\(^2\).

89. The Dīna has been described by me in all its characteristics. I shall speak now about the characteristics of the Vyāyoga.

The Vyāyoga

90. The Vyāyoga should be constructed by experts with one well-known Hero as its basis, and it should include a small number of female characters and [the events related in it] will be of one day’s duration only\(^1\).

91. Many males are to take part in it as in the Śamavākāra, but it is not to have the latter’s length, for it is to have only one Act (*ānka*).

92-93. It should have a royal sage as its Hero and not a divine personage, and it should include battle, personal combat, challenge and angry conflict. Thus the Vyāyoga should be made with exciting Sentiments as its basis. I shall now speak of the characteristics of the Utsṛṣṭikānika (*Aṅka*).

\(^1\) C. reads 86a as निःसृकवतनिरोधत्वेऽवयः कीर्तिविवर्णविवणः.

\(^2\) C. ‘yuddha-prakaraṇa for yuddh-ūdākaraṇa.

87-88 (.91-92); B. XVIII. 87-88. \(^1\) B. bhu-pustottthānayoga for bahupurūṣottthana-bheda.

\(^a\) C. tajjñair-suśrūya-viśeṣana for suśrūya-bhūvasampanna.

89 (C.93; B.XVIII.89).


91 (C.95; B.XVIII.91). 92-93 (C.96-97; B.XVIII.92-93).
The Uṣṭṭhitakāṇa

94. The Plot in it is [usually to be] well-known, but it may sometimes be otherwise, and it is to be furnished with male characters other than those who are divine.¹

95-96. The Uṣṭṭhitakāṇa should abound in the Pathetic Sentiment; it will treat women's lamentations and despondent utterances at a time when battle and violent fighting has ceased; it should include bewildered movements [of mourners] and it must be devoid of the Grand, the Energetic and the Graceful Styles and its Plot should relate to one's fall (lit. end of the rise).²

Scenes with celestial Heroes

97. [Scenes of] all the plays which have celestial Heroes, and which [treat] a battle, capture and killing [of enemies], should be laid in Bhārata-varṣa.¹

98. Of all the Varṣas (sub-continents) prescribed for the gods why¹ is Bhārata-varṣa chosen [in this connexion]? Because the entire land here is charming, sweet-smelling and of golden colour.

99-100. [But scenes of their] garden party (lit. going to a garden), sport, pastime and enjoying the company of females, are always to be laid in the other Varṣas; for there is neither any sorrow nor any grief there. Their enjoyments should take place in the mountains which are connected with those Varṣas in the Purānic accounts, but their [other] deeds should begin here (i. e. in Bhārata-varṣa).

---

¹ Bhāsa's Īru. is a solitary example this type of drama. See Pusalkar, Bhāsa, pp. 199, 200. Keith seems to be in error when he says that a play within a play is often called an Īṇa. See Skt. Dr. p. 268.

² C. kartrayo abhyudayāntas tajnaiḥ for kāryāḥ kāvyavidhijñaiḥ

³ This and three following couplets (97-100) seem to be more relevant after NS. XIV. 26 which treats similar topics.

⁴ C. tasūṭ for kasmū.
101. The characteristics of an Utsyṣṭikāṅka (Anka) have been exhaustively explained by me. I shall now speak of the Prahasana with its characteristics.

The Prahasana

102. The Prahasana should be known to be of two kinds: pure and mixed. I shall separately treat their characteristics.

The pure Prahasana

103-104. The Prahasana is known as pure (śuddha)¹ when it contains comic disputations by Śaiva gurus (bhagavat)² and Brahmins, abounds in jocular remarks by persons of ill repute, and gives uniformly to the plot a realistic picture of the language and the conduct of all these in passages describing their special States.³

The mixed Prahasana

105. That Prahasana is called mixed⁴ in which courtzans, servants, eunuchs, parasites (cilā) rogues and unchaste women appear with their immodest appearance, dress and movements.

---

101 (C.105; B.XVIII.101).
102 (C.106; B.XVIII.102). ¹ Śaikhalāra’s Lataka-mela (12th century), Jyotirśvara’s Dhūrīta-samāgama (15th century) and Jagadīśvara’s Hasyārṇava (date uncertain), etc. are very late works (See Keith Skt. Dr. pp. 261-262). The Matta-vilāsa of Mahendra-vikrama-varman (620 A.C.) and the Bhagavad-ajjukīya ascribed to Baudhāyana Kavi, are fairly old specimens of the Prahasana. See Keith Skt. Dr. pp. 182. Bhagavad-ajjukīya ed. P. Anujan Achān, Cochin, 1925.
103-104 (C.107-108; B.XVIII.103-104). ² The word bhagavat relates primarily to a Śaiva saint. It is in this sense that the word has been used in the Prahasana named Bhagavad-ajjukīya and this speaks for the antiquity of this work (See above 102 note). A Śaiva saint appears in the Matta-vilāsa, the Dhūrīta-nartaka and the Hasya-cūḍāmaṇi. Both these Prahasanas one are however late. See Keith, Skt. Dr. pp. 182, 262, 265. For some aspects of the Śaiva tenets see Karpūramaṇjari, ed M. Ghosh, pp. LXIII-LXIV.
2 C. reads 102a as śrī pataḥpanditabhidbhavatvaśīlalakṣaṇam
dhūrītasaṃāgama.
3 Prahasanas named in note 1 above may be taken as specimens of the pure variety.
105 (C.109; B.XVIII.105). ¹ Prahasanas like the Dhūrīta-samāgama and the Hasyārṇava may be taken as specimens of the mixed variety. See Keith, Skt. Dr. pp. 260-262.
106-107. Some popular topic [of scandal] or incident of hypocrisy should be introduced in the Prahasana through the disputations of pretenders. The Prahasana should include [any of] the types of the Vithi it may properly require.  

The Bhāṇa

107-108. I shall now speak of the characteristics of the Bhāṇa. The Bhāṇa is to be acted by a single character, and it is of two kinds: that [with one's] recounting of one's own experience and that [with one's] describing someone else's acts.

109. [The Bhāṇa which is to include] somebody else's words addressed to oneself, should be acted by means of replies in course of Conversations with Imaginary Persons (ākāśāḥ-hāṣṭāda) in accompaniment of [suitable] movement of the limbs.

110. The Bhāṇa should include characters of rogues and parasites (vīte) and treat their different conditions, and it is always to consist of one Act and should include many movements which are to be acted by a rogue (dhārta) or a parasite.

111. All the characteristics of the Bhāṇa have been described by me according to the tradition (āgni).[1] I shall now speak of the characteristics of the Vithi in due order.

The Vithi

112-113. The Vithi is to be acted by two persons or one. And it is to include characters of the superior, the middling or the
inferior type, and it may contain [any of] the Sentiments, and it may include [any of] the thirteen types. I shall now speak of the characteristics of all these.

Thirteen types of the Vīthī

114-115. The thirteen types of the Vīthī are: Accidental Interpretation (udghāṭyaka), Transference (avālagito), Ominous Significance (varaspaṃdita), Incoherent Chatter (uṣṭapralāpa), Compliment (prapāvra), Enigma (vāti = nālīkā) Repartee (vākkeli), Outwitting (udkhicīla), Deception (chala), Declaration (vyahāra), Crushing (vyāhāra), Three Men's Talk (triyakta), and Undue Combination of Words (yagda).

116. [Any of these] thirteen types is always to be attached to the Vīthī. I shall now speak of their characteristics in due order.

Accidental Interpretation

117. If, in order to explain them men connect words of obscure meaning with words other than [those intended by the speaker] it becomes Accidental Interpretation (udghāṭyaka).

Transference

118. When [anything] occurring in [relation to] something, will be made to accomplish something else, it becomes [an instance of] Transference (avālagito).

Ominous Significance

119. That one attaches (lit. creates) out of misunderstanding an auspicious or inauspicious meaning (lit. auspicious or inauspicious rise) to the words (lit. meaning) mentioned, is [an instance of] Ominous Significance (varaspaṃdita).

114-115 (C,118-119, Cf. B.XVIII.113b-114). Aūga in this connexion has been translated as 'division' (Hass, DR. p. 84). But 'types' seems to be a more suitable word. 116 (C,120; B.XVIII.115a).

117 (C,121, B.XVIII.115b-116a). Hass translates the word as 'Abrupt Dialogue' (DR. p.81). For an example see SD. 228; cf. Ag. DR. (III. 13-14) seems to define it differently.

118 (C,132; B.XVIII.116b-117a). Hass translates it as 'Continuance' (See p. 85). For an ex. See SD. 299; Ag. Cf. DR. III. 14b-15a.

119 (C,123; B.XVIII.117b-118a). The spelling avastādita though accepted by SD. and DR. seems to be wrong (See Ag.). Hass
Incoherent Chatter

120. When an irrelevant question (lit. sentence) is followed by [an equally] irrelevant answer, it is [an instance of] Incoherent Chatter (vad-t-praläpa)\textsuperscript{1}.

121. When to a foolish person a learned man speaks the right words, but his words are not listened to, it is [an instance of] Incoherent Chatter\textsuperscript{1}.

Compliment

122. When comic and untrue words purporting to be mutual praise of two persons, are uttered in the interest of one [of them] it is [an instance of] Compliment (prapaña\textsuperscript{3}).

Enigma and Repartee

123. An enigmatical remark that gives rise to laughter (lit. followed by laughter) is called an Enigma (vālikā\textsuperscript{4}). Repartee (vākkeli = vākkelikā) arises from a single or twofold reply.\textsuperscript{2}

Outvying

124. When somebody else’s words and those of one’s ownself, in course of a dialogue, lead to their mutual modification, it is [an instance of] Outvying (adhivāla)\textsuperscript{1}.

Deception

125. When after alluring one by replies, something opposite is done (lit. takes place) through those very replies being considered meaningless, it is [an instance of] Deception (vhalā)\textsuperscript{1}.

\textsuperscript{1} We accept the reading of mss. ṇa and ṇa in B. (under 119) which has the support of DR. III. 29 and SD. 539. Ag. differs and accepts the reading of 121 below. See Haas, p. 87.

\textsuperscript{2} See 120 note and Ag.

\textsuperscript{3} See Haas, p. 86, SD. 525.

\textsuperscript{4} See Haas, pp. 84, 87 probably under the influence of the SD. (528). DR. (III. 19a) has a different definition. For an example see Ag.

\textsuperscript{5} See Haas, p. 85; SD. 522.

\textsuperscript{6} See Haas, pp. 87; SD. 529.

\textsuperscript{7} See Haas, 120a. 120b.
Declaration

126. If anything [liable to occur] is described vividly in the presence of the Hero and is similarly made to happen [there] without any fear, it is [an instance of] Declaration (vyahāra)².

Crushing

127. That due to an altercation one represents [another’s] merits as demerits by [showing] cause [for it] and vice versa, is called Crushing (mrdava)¹.

Three Men’s Talk

128. When exalted words with the Comic Sentiment are shared by three [characters] it should be known as Three Men’s Talk (trigata)⁴.

Undue Combination of Words

129. Undue combination of words (garða) according to the wise, occurs due to excitement, confusion, quarrel, reviling and many people’s abusive words³.

130-131 If in a play any of these thirteen types¹ with clear meanings, occur and they possess all the characters Sentiments and States prescribed for them by the Śāstra it is called the Vithī. It may be acted by one or two persons⁴.

¹ B’s reading seems to agree with the def. given in DR. III. 20b and SD. 531. Haas translates the term as ‘Humorous Speech’. See p. 88.
² 127 (C.131; B.XVIII.121b-122a).
³ DR. III. 21a; SD. 532. Haas translates the term as ‘Mildness’; see p. 88.
⁴ 128 (C.132; B.XVIII. foot note to 124).
⁵ DR. III. 16 and SD. 523 define this differently and they agree with the reading of B. Our reading is supported by the ba ms. in B. Haas translates the term as ‘Triples Explanation’. See p. 84.
⁶ C. sarambha for samrambhā
⁷ C. bandhaviśūdam for vidūdayuklam.
⁸ DR. III. 18b and SD. 527 seem to def. it differently. Haas translates the term as ‘Abrupt Remark’ see p. 87.
⁹ 130-131 (C.134-135). ¹ Ag. reads Lūṣyūngas in the next chapter (his XIX). It is possible that these were introduced later in the NS. For the ms. bha of B. and some commentators using it ignore them altogether. Sāradātānaya and others reads lūṣyūngas differently. See Kavi’s Intr. to B. pp. XI-XII. foot note.
The Lāṣya

132. [Similar] other limbs are attached to the Nāṭaka in connexion with the performance of the Lāṣya, and they owe their origin to this (i.e. Nāṭaka), and are to be acted like the Bhāṇa by a single person.

133. The Lāṣya has a form similar that of the Bhāṇa and it is to be acted by one person. Its theme is to be inferred like that of the Prakaraṇa and should relate to [loving] intimacy [with any one].

The twelve types of the Lāṣya

134-135. The [twelve] types of the Lāṣya are: Geyapada, Sthitapāṭhya, Āśīra, Puṣpagaṇḍikā, Pracchedaka, Trimūlha, Saiṅdhava, Dvimānāka, Umtottamaka, Vicitrāpada, Ukta-pratyukta and Bhāvita (Bhāva).¹

Geyapada

136. When [the Heroine] is seated¹ on her seat surrounded with stringed instruments and drums near her, and singers are singing [before her] without any accompaniment of these, it is called the Geyapada (simple song).

132 (C.136 K.XVIII. 169). ¹ Lāṣyāṅga is an one act play which requires lāṣya or a gentle form of dance for its representation; for this term may be interpreted as lāṣyam aṅgaṃ yasyaḥ saḥ (that which has lāṣya as its principal element). The ten lāṣyāṅgas seem to be only so many varieties of the Lāṣya. These are not its ‘elements’ as some scholars are apt to consider.

² The word viṣṭhaṅga also may be similarly interpreted. Viṣṭha seems to be nothing but a particular kind of one act play (defined in 112 above) and viṣṭhaṅga may therefore be translated as ‘a play of the Viṣṭha type’.

133 (C.137 ; K. XVII. 182). ¹ See above 132 note; lāṣya used in this passage means merely lāṣyāṅga.

134-135 (C.138-139 ; K. XVIII. 171-171). ¹ SD. (504) gives only ten and BhP. (p. 245-246) eleven lāṣyāṅgas, but DR. (III. 52-53) gives their number as ten but does not define them.

136 (C.141 ; K. XVIII. 172). ¹ See SD. 505. The seating posture included in this and some of the other varieties of the lāṣya need not appear to be puzzling. For the Gentle Dance in this connexion did not imply the movement of the entire body. See Gilbert Murray, Euripides and His Age, London, 1946, p. 150.

48
137. If a woman sings in a standing posture a song dealing with the praise of her beloved and delineates the same with the gestures of her different limbs, it is called the Geypadā.

Sthitapāṭhyā

138. If a separated woman burning with the fire of love, recites anything in Prakrit while seated on her seat, it is [an instance of] the Sthitapāṭhyā.

Āśīna

139. When one sits without making any toilet and is overcome with anxiety and sorrow, and looks with oblique glances it is [an instance of] the Āśīna.

Puspaganḍikā

140. When a woman in the guise of a man recites something sweetly in Sanskrit for the pleasure of her female friends, it is [an instance of] the Puspaganḍikā.

Pracchedaka

141. When a [separated] woman pained by the moon-light prepares to go to her beloved even if he has done her wrong, it is [an instance of] the Pracchedaka.

Trimūḍhaka

142. A play adorned with even metres and abounding in manly States and composed of words which are neither harsh nor large, is called the Trimūḍhaka.

Śaṅdhavaka

143. When [one represents] a lover who has failed to keep his tryst and is using Prakrit [to express his grief] through well-performed Karuṇas, it is [an instance of] the Śaṅdhavaka.

---

137 (C.141). ¹ See above 136 note 1.
139 (C.143; K. XVIII. 174). ¹ SD. 507; see above 136 note 1. The Gentle Dance (jāyya) in this connexion will consist of slowly moving glances only. Cf. BhP. p. 245, l.19-20. ² Read aprasādhita gātra.
140 (C.144). ¹ Cf. SD. 507; see above 136 note 1. Cf. K. XVIII. 175, BhP. p. 245, l. 21-22.
141 (C.145; K. XVII. 176). ¹ The def. given in SD. (507) is different. SD. reads the term as Trigūḍhaka. Cf. BhP. p. 246 l. 1-2.
142 (C.146; K. XVIII. 177). ¹ See BhP. p. 246, l. 3-4.
Dvīṃḍhaka

144. Delineating a song of the Caturasra type which has an auspicious meaning and which treats (lit. has) clear States and Sentiments, with the pretension of efforts, is called the Dvīṃḍhaka.

Uttamottamaka

145. The Uttamottamaka is composed in various kinds of Ślokas; it includes various Sentiments and is adorned with the condition of Passion (kēlā).

Vicitrupaḍa

146. If any woman burning with the fire of love soothes her mind by seeing the portrait [of her lover] it is [an instance of] the Vicitrupaḍa.

Ukt-pratyukta

147. The Ukt-pratyukta is a combination of speeches and counter-speeches due to anger or pleasure, and it [sometimes] contains words of censure. It is to be set to music.

Bhāvita

148. If a woman who is burning with the fire of love after seeing her beloved in a dream, expresses [her] different States, it is [an instance of] the Bhāvita.

149. These are the characteristics of the [different] types of Lāśya growing out of anger or pleasure, that I had to tell you in detail. If anything more has not been said, it has been due to the fact that nothing more is required in this context.

150. The rules regarding the ten kinds of play with their characteristics, have been stated by me. I shall now speak about their bodies and the Junctures with their characteristics.

Here ends chapter XX of Bharata’s Nātyaśāstra, which treats of the Ten Kinds of Play.

---

146 (C.150 ; K. p. 207. f. n. 12). * SD. and BhP. omit this.
148 (C.152 ; K. p. 207. f. n. 12.). * SD. omits this. See BhP. p. 246. l. 13-14.
CHAPTER TWENTYONE

THE LIMBS OF THE JUNCTURES

The five Junctures of the Plot

1. The Plot (itičṛtta) has been called the body of the drama (lit. poem). It is known to be divided into five Junctures (sāvilīki).

The two kinds of Plot

2. The Plot is of two kinds: Principal (ā/hikārika) and Subsidiary (prāsaṃgikā).

Their definition

3. The [assemblage of] acts which are fabricated with a view to (lit. by reason of) the attainment of [some particular] result, is to be known as the Principal Plot. [Acts] other than these constitute the Subsidiary Plot.

4-5. The attainment of the result and its exaltation which the ingenuity of the playwright (lit. poet) plans by means of the associated characters (lit. Heroes) acting in a regular manner (lit. resorting to rules), constitute the Principal Plot on account of an attainment of the result. And any incident (lit. anything) mentioned for helping any other [incident] in it, is called the Subsidiary Plot.

The five stages of the Action

6. The exertion of the Hero (lit. one who strivies) towards the result to be attained, is known to have five stages occurring in due order.

1 (C.1 ; K. XIX. 1). 1 Also called nastu. Cf. DR. I. 11, SD. 294-295.
2 See DR. I. 22-23, SD. 330 and NL. 458 read vihhahāṃ samprākalpitāh for vihhahā etc. See NL. 216-217.
3 (C.2 ; K. XIX. 2). 1 See DR. I. 11, SD. 295 and NL. 218 219.
5 See above note 1.
6-5 (C.4-5 ; K. XIX. 4-5). 1 See above 3 note 1 and NL. 223-229.
7 See above note 1.
8 (C.7). 1 Č. reads one additional couplet (C. 6) before this. Cf. NL. 55-56.
7. These five stages of the Action are known to arise in the Nāṭaka and the Prakaraṇa. [Their] Fruition (phala-yoga) relates to duty (dharma), enjoyment of pleasure (kama) and wealth (artha).¹

8. They are: Beginning (prārambha), Effort (prayatna), Possibility of Attainment (prāpti-sambhava), Certainty of Attainment (niyatā phala-prāpti) and Attainment of the Result (phala-prāpti).

Beginning

9. That part of the play (lit. composition) which merely records eagerness about the final attainment of the result with reference to the Germ (viśa), is called the Beginning (ārambha).

Effort

10. [Heroe's] striving towards an attainment of the Result when the same is not in view, and showing further eagerness [about it], is called the Efforts (prayatna).

Possibility of Attainment

11. When the attainment of the object is slightly suggested by an idea, it is to be known as the Possibility of Attainment (prāpti-sambhava).

Certainty of Attainment

12. When one visualises in idea a sure attainment of the result, it is called Certainty of Attainment (niyatā phala-prāpti).

Attainment of the Result

13. When the intended result appears in full at the end of events [of a play] and corresponds to them, it is called Attainment of the Result (phala-yoga).

14. These are the five successive stages of every action begun by persons looking for results.

---

1 K. omits this.
8 (C.10 ; K. XIX.7). ¹ Cf. DR. I. 19; SD. 324; NL. 57-58.
9 (C.11 ; K. XIX. 8). ¹ Cf. DR. 20; SD. 325; NL. 59-60.
10 (C.12 ; K. XIX. 9). ¹ Cf. DR. I. 20; SD. 328; NL. 66.
11 (C.13 ; K. XIX. 10). ¹ Cf. DR. I. 21; SD. 327; NL. 69-70.
12 (C.14 ; K. XIX. 11). ¹ Cf. DR. I. 21; SD. 328; NL. 77.
13 (C.14 ; K. XIX. 12). ¹ Cf. DR. I. 22; SD. 329; NL. 89.
14 (C.15 ; K. XIX. 13). ¹
15. Putting together all these naturally different stages which come together [in a play] for the production of the result conduces towards the fruition.

Play to begin with the Principal Plot

16. The Principal Plot which has been described before should be taken up at the Beginning [of a play], for it is to attain fruition.

17. The Plot should either have all the Junctures (sandhi) or lack some of them. The [general] rule requires that all the Junctures should occur in it, but due to a [special] reason some of them may be left out (lit. absent).

Rules about the omission of Junctures

18. If one Juncture is to be omitted then the fourth one goes; in case of an omission of the two Junctures, the third and the fourth are to be left out, and in case of the three to be omitted, the second, the third and the fourth should be given up.

19. In case of the Subsidiary Plot this rule will not apply; for it is to serve the purpose of another [Plot]. Any event can be introduced in this [Subsidiary Plot] without violating the rule.

The five Elements of the Plot

20. The five stages of the plot such as the Beginning (ārambha)\(^1\) etc. have five corresponding Elements of the Plot (artha-prakṛti)\(^2\).

21. The Germ (bija), the Prominent Point (bīnu), the Episode (pataś), the Episodical Incident (prakārī) and the Dénouement (kārya) are the five Elements of the Plot (artha-prakṛti), which should be reckoned and applied in proper manner.

---

15 (C. 16 ; K. XIX. 14)
16 (C.17 ; K. XIX. 15).
17 (C.18 ; K. XIX. 18). \(^1\) Emend yat-kāryam into tat kāryam. See NL. 442ff.
18 (C.19 ; K. XIX. 17).
19 (C.20 ; K. XIX. 18).
20 (C.21 ; K. XIX. 19) \(^1\) See DR. I. 19 ; SD. 325 NL. 57-58.
\(^2\) See DR. I. 18 ; SD. 317; NL. 134-135.
21 (C.22 ; K. XIX. 20). \(^1\) See above 20 note 2.
The Germ

22. That which scattered in a small measure, expands itself in various ways and ends in fruition, is called the Germ (bijā) of the Plot.

The Prominent Point

23. That which sustains the continuity (lit. non-separation) till the end of the play even when the chief object [of the play] is [for the time being] suspended, is called the Prominent Point (bindu).

The Episode

24. The event which is introduced in the interest of the Principal [Plot] and is treated like it, is called an Episode (patākā).

The Episodical Incident

25. When merely the result of such an event is presented for the purpose of another (i.e. the Principal Plot) and it has no Secondary Juncture (aṃbhandhānā)1 it is called the Episodical Incident (prakurī)2.

The Dénouement

26. The efforts made for the purpose of the Principal Plot introduced [in play] by the experts, is called the Dénouement (kārya).

27. Among these [Elements] that which has others for its support (lit. purpose) and to which the rest are taken as subordinate, should be made prominent (lit. chief) and not the remaining ones.

22 (C.23 ; K. XIX. 21). 1 Cf. DR. I. 17; SD. 318; NL. 136-137.
23 (C.24 ; N.XIX. 22). 1 cf. DR. I. 17; SD. 319; NL. giving a second view about the meaning of the bindu says.—चवी ति, याहि नाटकायेहं ब्रह्मसंसारमथानीतिः-वाह्यान्ति प्रवर्त्तकपरिकौन्ते स विनोः। यदा राज्यान्तरेण वेदयाः। चवीकौन्तेः प्रवर्तकपरिकौन्तेः। याहि ति नाटकायेहुः अनुच्छादनं प्रवर्तितमान्तिः। ।ब्रह्मसंसारमथानीतिः। (159ff.-173ff.). There is a third view also ; see NL. 183ff.
24 (C.25 ; K. XIX. 23). 1 Cf. DR. I. 13; SD. 320; NL. gives also a second view about the meaning of the patākā as follows: नाम-ब्रह्मसंसारमथानीतिः अनुच्छादनः (195ff.)
25 (C.26 ; K. XIX. 24). 1 As opposed to this, the patākā possesses continuity. Anubandho nairantaryena pravartanam (NL. 204).
27 (C.28 ; K. XIX. 26). 1 Cf. NL. 234ff.
Secondary Juncture in the Episode

28. One or more Junctures should be applied in an Episode (\textit{patākā}). As these serve the purpose of the Principal [Plot] they called Secondary Junctures (\textit{anubandha}).

Limit of the Episode

29. The Episode should come to an end either at the Develoment (\textit{garbhā}) or at the Pause (\textit{vimāraśa}). Why? Because its treatment is for the purpose of something else (i.e. the Principal Plot).

The Episode Indication

30. When some matter being taken in hand (lit. already thought about), another matter of similar nature (lit. characteristics) is suggested through an accidental idea (\textit{agamālakā-bhāra}), it is called Episode Indication (\textit{patākā-sūkha}).

The First Episode Indication

31. The sudden development of a novel meaning (\textit{urthāstān-patti}) due to an indirect suggestion, is called the First Episode Indication

The Second Episode Indication

32. Words completely carrying double meaning and expressed in a poetic language, are called the Second Episode Indication.

The Third Episode Indication

33. That which suggests with courtesy the object [of a play] in a subtle manner and in the form of a dialogue, is called the Third Episode Indication.

---

28 (C.29; K. XIX. 27). ¹ Some read \textit{anubandha} as \textit{anusandhi}; cf. DR. III. 26-27.
29 (C.30; K. XIX. 28). ¹ Emend \textit{tasmāt} into \textit{kasmāt}.
30 (C.31; K. XIX. 29). ¹ DR. (I. 14) merely defines the term and ignores its varieties. But SD. (298-299) follows NŚ. and defines them. See NL. 1000-1001. Sāgaranandin says that these should not be applied to the last Juncture (\textit{nirvāhana}).
31 (C.32; K. XIX. 30). ¹ Emend \textit{gunavatuyupa} into \textit{guna-vatīyupa}.
32 (C.33; K. XIX. 31). ¹ Emend \textit{vaṣaṣṭiśaya} into \textit{vacaḥ sūtiśaya}.
33 (C.34; K. XIX. 32). ¹ See SD. 302; NL. 1021-1022.
The Fourth Episode Indication

34. Words with a double meaning expressed in a well-knit poetic language and having a reference to something [other than what appears at first sight] is called the Fourth Episode Indication.

35. The poetical composition meant to be acted should have the five Junctures (sawilhi) and four Episode Indications (pataka-sthanaka)\(^1\). I shall next speak of the Junctures.

The five Junctures

36. The five Junctures in a drama are the Opening (mukha), the Progression (pratimukha), the Development (garbha), the Pause (vimaśa) and the Conclusion (nirvahaṇa)\(^1\).

37. The Principal [Plot] is known to be consisting of the five Junctures (sawilhi). The remaining Junctures are to be supported by the Junctures of the Principal [Plot]\(^1\).

The Opening

38. That part of a play, in which the creation of the Germ (bijā) as the source of many objects and Sentiments takes place, is called in consideration of its body the Opening (mukha, lit. face)\(^1\).

The Progression

39. Uncovering of the Germ placed at the Opening after it has sometimes been perceptible and sometimes been lost, is called the Progression (pratimukha).

The Development

40. The sprouting of the Germ, its attainment or non-attainment and search for it, is called the Development (garbha)\(^1\).

The Pause

41. One’s pause (vimaśa, lit. deliberation) over the Germ (bijā) that has sprouted in the Development (garbha) on account

---

34 (C.85; K.XIX.38).  \(^1\) See SD. 303; NL. 1033.
35 (C.86; K.XIX.34).
36 (C.87; K.XIX.35). \(^1\) See DR. I. 23-24; SD. 381-332; NL. 458.
37 (C.88; K.XIX.36). \(^1\) These relate to the Subsidiary Plot.
38 (C.89; K.XIX.37). \(^1\) See DR. I 24-25; SD.333; NL. 536f. quotes NŚ.
39 (C.90; K.XIX.38). \(^1\) Cf. DR. I. 30; SD. 334; NL. 684f.
40 (C.91; K.XIX.39). \(^1\) Cf. DR. I. 36; SD. 335; NL. 710f.
41 (C.92; K.XIX.40).
of some temptation, anger or distress, is called the Juncture of that name (i.e. Pause)\(^1\).

The Conclusion

42. Bringing together the objects [of the Junctures] such as the Opening (\textit{mukha}) etc. along with the Germ (\textit{bijā}), when they have attained fruition, is called the Conclusion (\textit{vīravāna})\(^1\).

43. These are Junctures of the Nāṭaka to be known by the producers of a drama. They may occur in the Prakaraṇa and the other types of plays as well.

Junctures vary in different types of drama

44. The Đima\(^1\) and the Samavakāra\(^2\) are to have four Junctures, and the playwright should never make the Pause (\textit{vimāraśā}) in them.

45. The Vyāyoga\(^1\) and the Ihamrga\(^2\) are to have three Junctures. There should be no Development and Pause (\textit{avamarśa} = \textit{vimāraśa}) in these two, and the Graceful (\textit{kaiśikī}) Style also has no place in them.

46. The Prahasana\(^3\), the Vithi\(^8\), the Aṅka\(^3\) and the Bhāna\(^4\) are to have only two Junctures which should be the Opening (\textit{mukha}) and the Conclusion (\textit{vīravāṇa}), and their Style should be the Verbal one (\textit{bhārati}).

47. These are the Junctures to be adopted by the producers in the ten types of play. Listen now about different kinds of Junctures which also will as it were mark their limits.

\(^1\) DR. I. 53 calls this \textit{avamarśā}, SD. 336; NL. 770ff, gives two more definitions of this Juncture. Read the second hemistich as श्रीववाणी नामि बिनमेते छहमी धर्म।

\(^2\) (C.43; K.-XIX.-41). 1 Emend the first hemistich as follows — कमाववण पद्यनां मुखायां वीरवाणीं. Cf. DR. I. 48-49; SD. 337; NL. 554 f.

\(^3\) (C.44; K.-XIX.-42).

\(^4\) (C.45; K.-XIX.-44a, 43b). 1 See NS. XX. 90ff. 2 See \textit{ibid} 78ff.

\(^5\) (C.46; K.-XIX.-43a, 44b). 1 See NS. XX. 84ff. 2 See \textit{ibid}. 64ff.

\(^6\) (C.47-48; K.-XIX.-45). 1 See NS. XX. 102ff. 2 See \textit{ibid} 112ff.

\(^7\) See \textit{ibid} 94ff.

\(^8\) See \textit{ibid} 107ff.
48-50. The twentyone Sub-junctures are as follows\(^1\): Conciliation (śāna), Dissention (bheda), Making Gifts (pradāna), Chastisement (danda), Killing (vadha), Presence of Mind (pratyutpannamatītva), Blunder in Addressing (gotra-skhalita), Rashness (sāhasa), Terror (bhaya), Intelligence (ādi), Deceit (māyā), Anger (krodha), Strength (ujas), Concealment (samvarana), Error (bhvaṁti), Ascerteiment (avadhrana)\(^2\), Messenger (dha), Letter (lekha), Dream (svapna), Portrait (citra) and Intoxication (mada).

Alternative Juncetures

51. The events of the Juncetures in their respective parts (pradest)\(^4\) will in due order support those Limbs [of the Juncetures] by means of their own qualities.

The sixfold needs of the Limbs of the Juncetures

52-53. Expressing\(^1\) the desired object, non-omission of any essential item in the Plot, accession to feeling in production, concealment of the objects to be concealed, telling tales of surprise\(^2\) and disclosing things to be disclosed are the sixfold needs of the Limbs described in the Śāstra\(^3\).

Uses of the Limbs of the Juncetures

54. Just as a man without all his limbs are unable to fight a battle, so a play without the Limbs will be unfit for [successful] production\(^1\).

55. A play (lit. a poem) though it may be poor as regards its theme (lit. meaning) will, when furnished with requisite Limbs, attain beauty because of the brilliance of its production.

---

\(^1\) NL. 925ff. seems to give this passage more correctly with slight variation. The Sub-junctures (sandhiṁ sandhi) are to be distinguished from the Secondary Juncetures (anubandha=anuṣandhi: DR. III.26 mentioned in 28 before.

\(^2\) Read bhavah for vadhaḥ.

\(^3\) Pradēṣa seems to signify Sub-juncture (sandhiṁ sandhi) discussed in 50 above. See NL. 923.

\(^4\) Read vacakam for racanā.

\(^5\) Emend āścaryaavad abhikhyātan into āścaryaavad abhikhyānan. 

\(^6\) Cf. DR. I. 55; SD.407ff.

\(^7\) Cf. SD. 407ff.

---

48-50 (C.49-51; K.XIX.191b, 103b).  
51 (C.52; K.XIX.47).  
52-53 (C.53-54; K.XIX.48-49).  
54 (C.55; K.XIX.49a, 50a).  
55 (C.56; K.XIX.50a, 51a).
56. And a play having lofty theme, but devoid of [requisite] Limbs, will never capture the mind of the good [critics] because of its [possible] poor production.

57. Hence in applying the Junctures [in a drama] the playwright should give them their Limbs properly. Now listen about them [in detail].

The sixtyfour Limbs of the Junctures

58-59. The Limbs of the Opening (mukha) are; Suggestion (upukṣepa), Enlargement (parikara), Establishment (parināya), Allurement (vibhāvana), Decision (yuktī), Accession (prāpti), Settling (samādhāna), Conflict of Feeling (vidhāna), Surprise (paribhāvana), Disclosure (ubheda), Activity (karana), and Incitement (bhedā). Now listen about the Limbs in the Progression.\(^1\)

60-61. The Limbs of the Progression (pratimukha) are; Amorousness (vītasa), Pursuit (parisāpa), Refusal (vibhata), Pessimism (tāpana), Joke (varna), Flash of Joke (varmanāyuti), Moving Forward (pragamana), Pacification (parignāpāna), Sweet Words (puṣpa), Thunderbolt (vajra).\(^1\)

62-64. The Limbs of the Development (garbha) are; Misstatement (abhātāharana), Indication (mārga), Supposition (vāma), Exaggeration (udāharana), Progress (krama), Propitiation (samgraha), Deduction (māna), Supplication (prārthana), Revelation (ākṣipta), Quarrel (tāpaka), Outwitting (adhikala), Dismay (udvega) and Consternation (vidrava).\(^1\)

64-66. The Limbs of the Pause (cima vā = avamśā) are; Censure (aparastā), Angry Words (samphetā), Insolence (ahkidrava), Placation (śkti), Assertion (vyvacaśāya), Reverence (prasānga), Rebuff (īṣṭi), Lassitude (bhedā), Opposition (uśedhāna).

---

56 (C.57; K.XIX.51b, 52a).
57 (C.58; K.XIX.52b, 53a).
58-59 (C.59-60; K.XIX.53b, 25 a). 1 See DR. I. 25-26; SD. 338; NL. 552ff.
64-66 (C.65-67; K.XIX.60-61).
Alteration (virodhana), Summing up (ādāna), Concealment (chādana), and Foresight (prarocana) ¹.

66-69. The Limbs of the Conclusion are: Junction (sandi), Awakening (vibodha), Assembling (gravhana), Ascertainment (nirṇaya), Conversation (paribhāṣana), Confirmation (dhṛti), Gratification (prasāda), Joy (ānanda), Deliverance (samaya), Surprise (apagūhana), Clever Speech (bhāṣana), Retrospect (pūrva-vākyo), Termination of the Play (kāvyasamhāra) and Benediction (praṣasti). These are the sixtyfour Limbs of the Junctures [in a play] ².

Limbs of the Opening

69. I shall now give their definitions in due order ³.

Suggestion

Suggestion (upakṣepa) is the origin of the object of the play. ⁴

Enlargement

70. Enlargement (parikāra) is the amplification of the object originated ¹.

Establishment

Describing it (i.e. the object) thoroughly is called Establishment (parivṛtta) ².

Allurement

71. The mentioning of good qualities is known as Allurement (vilobhana) ¹.

---

¹ Emend vidrava into abhidrava. DR. I. 44-45, omits abhidrava, khoda, nisodhana and sudana and adds vidrava, drava chalana and vicalana; SD. 378ff. follows NS, except that abhidrava appears there as drava; chidana should be emended into sudana; see NL. 798ff.

66-68 (C.67-69; K.XIX.62-63). ¹ Emend dyuti. See SD. 391 reads kṛti as dhṛti. DR. I. 49-50 gives dhṛti as kṛti, pūrvavākyas pūrvabhāva, upasamhāra as kāvyasamhāra. NL. 850ff. omits sandhi and vibodha, gives dhṛti as dyuti, and instead of the first two gives artha and anuvyoga.

² Cf. DR. I. 40; SD. 374; NL. 755.

69 (C.71; K.XIX.64b-95a). ¹ C. reads before this another couplet which in trans. is as follows: For the development of the Ger, all these (i.e. 64 limbs) should make up the Junctures properly and have clear meanings. This does not occur in K.

³ See NL. 556; SD. 388 Cf. DR. I. 27.

70 (C.72; K.XIX.65b-66a). ¹ See NL. 569; SD. 340 DR. I. 27.

⁸ See NL. 575; SD. 341; DR. I. 27.

71 (C.73; K.XIX.69b-67a). ¹ See DR. I. 27; SD. 342; NL. 586.
Decision

Settling the issues is called Decision \((yukti)\).\(^2\)

Accession

72. Accession \((prāpti)\) is summing up the purpose of the Opening \((mukha)\).\(^3\)

Settling

Settling \((samābhāna)\) is summing up the purpose of the Germ \((bijā)\).\(^2\)

Conflict of Feelings

73. Joys and sorrows occurring in a situation, is called conflict of Feelings \((viśthāna)\).\(^1\)

Surprise

Surprise \((paribhāvana)\) is an excitement giving rise to curiosity.\(^2\)

Disclosure

74. The sprouting of the purpose of the Germ \((bijā)\), is called Disclosure \((uḷbheda)\).\(^4\)

Activity

Taking up the matter in question is called Activity \((karaṇa)\).\(^2\)

Incitement

75. That which is meant for disrupting an union is called Incitement \((bhedā)\).\(^1\)

These are the limbs of the Opening \((mukha)\).

Limbs of the Progression

I shall now speak of those of the Progression \((pratimukha)\).

\(^{2}\) See SD. 343; DR. I. 28; Haas translates it differently. SD. 343 and NL. 593 seem to misunderstand this definition.

72 (C.74; K.XIX.67b-68a). Emend \(sukhārtha\) to \(mukhārtha\).

See NL. 598-599, DR. I. 28; and SD. 344 follows what seems to be a wrong reading of the NS.

\(^{2}\) See NL. 605 f. Cf. DR. I. 28; SD. 345.

73 (C.75; K.XIX.68b-69a). See DR. I. 28; SD. 346; NL. 609-610.

\(^{3}\) See NL. 617; Cf. DR. I. 29; SD. 347.


\(^{4}\) See SD. 349; NL. 623. Cf. BR. I. 29.

Amorousness

76. Amorousness (vīlāsa) is the desire for the pleasure of love (rati)\(^1\).

Pursuit

Pursuit (parisarpā)\(^2\) is the pursuing of an object once seen and then lost.

Refusal

77. Refusal (vidhūta)\(^1\) is not complying with the request made [by any one].

Pessimism

Thinking about (lit. seeing) some danger [in future] is called Pessimism (tāpana)\(^2\).

Joke

78. The laughter which is meant for sports is called Joke (narma)\(^1\).

Flash of Joke

The laughter which is meant for concealing one's fault is called Flash of Joke (narma-dvinti)\(^2\).

Moving Forward

79. Speaking words which bring in other words after them is called Moving Forward (prayamana)\(^1\).

Hindrance

Appearance of some calamity is called Hindrance (virodha)\(^2\).

Pacification

80. Conciliating an angry person is called Pacification (paryuṣāsana)\(^1\).

---

76 (C.78; K.XIX.71). \(^1\) See SD. 352; NL. 650ff. Cf. DR. I. 32.
\(^2\) See SD. 353; DR. I. 32-33. Cf. NL. 657.
77 (C.79; K.XIX.72). \(^1\) Cf. -NL 663; DR. I. 33; SD. 354 has vidhūta for vidhūta.
\(^2\) See NL. 669. Cf. SD. 355 defines it as upiyadarśana. DR. defines śama instead of tāpana (I.33).
78 (C.80; K.XIX.73). \(^1\) Cf. DR. I. 33; DR. 356; NL. 1310ff.
\(^2\) Cf. DR. I. 33; SD. 357; NL. 672.
79 (C.80; K.XIX.74). \(^1\) Read uttarottaram vākyam tu bhavet pra-gramanam. Cf. NL. 676; DR. I. 34; SD. 358.
\(^2\) See NL. 683; DR. I.34; SD. 359 reads virodha for nirodha.
80 (C.82; K.XIX75). \(^1\) See NL. 687. Cf. DR. I. 34; SD. 360.
Sweet Words

Mentioning some favourable peculiarity is called Sweet Words (puspa, lit. flower)².

Thunderbolt

81. Harsh words uttered on one's face is called Thunderbolt (vajra)¹.

Reference

Reference (upanyāsa) is a remark based on reason.

Meeting of Castes

82. Coming together of the four castes is called Meeting of Castes (varṇa-samhara)¹.

These are the Limbs of the Progression (pratimukha).

Limbs of the Development

Now listen about those in the Development (gurhha).

Mis-statement

83. [A speech] founded on deceit is called Mis-statement (kapalāśraya)¹.

Indication

Speaking out [one's] real intention (lit. reality) is called Indication (mārya)².

Supposition

84. A hypothesis with which novel meanings are combined, is called Supposition (rupa)¹.

Exaggeration

A speech with an overstatement is called Exaggeration (udāharaṇa)².

---

² Cf. DR. I. 34; SD. 361; NL. 691.
² See NL. 700; cf. DR. I. 35; SD. 363ff. defines it differently and refers to the view of the NŚ as kecit tu etc.
82 (C.84; KN.XIX.77). ¹ NL. 704ff. defines it as varṣitasyaśūthasya tirakāro (concealing the matter expressed), and refers to the view of the NŚ as catuṣṭiṃ varṣaṇāṃ sammelanam api ke'pi varṣayanti. See SD. 364; DR. I. 35.
83 (C.85; K.XIX.78). ¹ Cf. DR. I. 38; SD. 365; NL. 727.
² Cf. SD. 366; NL 730; DR. I. 38.
84 (C.88; K.XIX.79). ¹ Cf. DR. I. 39; SD. 367; NL. 735.
² Cf. NL. 788; DR. I. 39; SD. 388.
THE LIMBS OF THE JUNCTURES

Progress
85. Foreseeing of what is coming afterwards, is called Progress (krama).\footnote{Emend bhāvakto into bhāvitatvo. Cf. SD. 69; NL. 740; DR. I. 39.}

Propitiation
Use of sweet words and gift, is called Propitiation (samgraha).\footnote{Cf. SD. 370; NL. 744; DR. I. 40.}

Deduction
86. Perceiving something by the name of a thing similar to it in form, is called Deduction (anumāna).\footnote{Cf. NL. 746; DR. I. 40; SD. 371.}

Supplication
Request for love’s enjoyment (rati), rejoicing, festivity and the like, is called Supplication (prārthanā).\footnote{Cf. SD. 372; DR. I. 40. NL. 749.}

Revelation
87. The unfolding [of the Germ] in the Development (garbha), is called Revelation (ābhirpta).\footnote{Cf. DR. I. 42 has ābhirpta; SD. 373 has sīptī=ābhirpta; NL. 751 has ulkripta.}

Quarrel
An angry speech is called Quarrel (toṭaka).\footnote{Cf. DR. I. 40; NL. 751.}

Outwitting
88. Cheating of a deceitful person is called Outwitting (ulhīhala).\footnote{Cf. DR. I. 42; SD. 377; NL. 766.}

Dismay
Fear arising from the king, an enemy or a robber is called Dismay (udvega).\footnote{Cf. SD. 376; NL. 761; DR. I. 42.}

Panicky Commotion
89. Flurry caused by fear from the king or fire is called Panicky Commotion (vidrava).\footnote{Cf. SD. 375; DR. I. 40; NL. 755.}
These are the Limbs in the Development (garbha).

Limbs of the Pause
Now listen about those in the Pause (avamarśa = rimarśa).
90. Proclaiming anyone's fault is called Censure (aparacàda).\(^1\)

Angry Words

Words spoken in anger are called Angry Words (sampheta)\(^2\).

Insolence

91. Transgression of the superiors is called Insolence (abhidrava)\(^1\).

Placation

Allaying of disagreement [with anyone] is called Placation (sakti)\(^2\).

Assertion

92. A promise made on account of some reason is called Assertion (vyavasåyo)\(^1\).

Reverence

Mentioning one's superiors is called Reverence (prasañga)\(^2\).

Rebuke

93. Words spoken in contempt are called Rebuke (idyutì)\(^1\).

Lassitude

Fatigue arising from a mental effort is called Lassitude (kheda).

Opposition

94. Obstruction to one's desired object is called Opposition (niṣedha)\(^1\).

Altercation

Speaking and counter-speaking in excitement is called Altercation (virodhanå)\(^2\).

---

\(^1\) See NL. 801; Cf. DR. I. 45; SD. 378.

\(^2\) See NL. 807, Cf. DR. I. 45; SD. 379.

\(^1\) Emend vidrava into abhidrava. See NL. 813. SD. 381 and DC. I. 45, has drava in place of abhidrava.

\(^2\) Emend virodhopagamo into virodhopasåmo; cf. NL. 819; DR. I. 4; SD. 383.

\(^1\) Emend pratiññëjdoṣa into pratiññëhetu

\(^1\) Cf. NL. 829; DR. I. 46; SD. 382; SD. 385.

\(^2\) NL. 826 defines differently.

\(^1\) SD. 388, and SD. 388 has pratisedha in place of this.

\(^1\) Cf. 840; SD. 387.
Summing up
95. Bringing together (lit. attaining) [all aspects] of the Germ (bija) and the action is called Summing up (adana)\(^1\).

Humiliation
Putting in insulting words for some purpose is called Humiliation (sadana)\(^2\).

Foresight
96. That which represents the Conclusion (samhara) [in advance] is called Foresight (pravocana)\(^1\).

These are the limbs in Pause (avamsha = vimarsa).

The Limbs in Conclusion
Now listen about those in the Conclusion (samhara = nirvahan\(\text{a}\)).

Junction
97. The coming up of the Opening (mukhu) and the Germ is called Junction (sandhi)\(^1\).

Awakening
Looking duly for the Dénouement (karya) is called Awakening (vibodha)\(^2\).

Assembling
98. Intimation of [the various aspects] of the Dénouement is called Assembling (grathana)\(^1\).

Ascertainment
Declaration of facts personally known is called Ascertainment (nirnya)\(^1\).

Accusation
99. That which is said to blame some one, is called Accusation (paribhasana)\(^1\).

---

95 (C.97; K.XIX. 99).  \(^1\) See NL. 844; DR. I. 48; SD. 389.
96 (C.98; K.XIX.88a, 91a).  \(^2\) Emend chadana into sadana. See NL. 848. DR. I. 46 has wrongly chedana for sadana. SD. 390 also has chadana wrongly.
97 (C.99; K.XIX. 91b-92a).  \(^1\) See SD. 388; NL. 850. DR. I. 47.
98 (C.100; K.XXI.92b-93a).  \(^2\) Cf. DR. I. 51; SD. 392.
99 (C.101; K.XIX.93b-94a).  \(^1\) Cf. DR. I. 51, SD. 394; NL. 864.
99 (C.101; K.XIX.93b-94a).  \(^2\) Cf. S. 395; DR. I. 51; NL. 870.

Cf. the Limb differently.
Confirmation

Turning to use (lit. conquering) the object gained is called \( \text{dhyāti} \)^2.

Gratification

100. Treating one with waiting upon or the like, is called Gratification \( \text{praśāda} \)^1.

Joy

Attaining objects [of one’s desire] is called Joy \( \text{ānanda} \)^2.

Deliverence

101. Passing away of all misery, is called Deliverance \( \text{samaya} \)^1.

Surprise

Appearance of something wonderful is called Surprise \( \text{nagāhana} \)^2.

Clever Speech

102. Words mentioning conciliation, gift and the like are called Clever Speech \( \text{bhāsana} \)^1.

Retrospect

Retrospect \( \text{yāra-vākya} \)^2 is to be understood as a reference to something spoken before.

Termination

103. Giving and receiving of a boon is called Termination \( \text{kāra-samāra} \)^1.

Benediction

[A prayer seeking perfect] peace to the king and the country is called Benediction \( \text{praśasti} \)^2.

104. With a view to introducing Sentiments \( \text{vā-va} \) and

---

2. Emend \text{dyuti} into \text{dhyāti} Cf. DR. I, 53; SD, 397.
100 (C.102; K.XIX.94b-95a). 1 Cf. NL. 879; SD. 398; DR. I, 52.
2 Cf. NL. 881; SD. 399; DR. I, 52.
101 (C.103; K.XIX.95b-96a). 1 Cf. DR. I, 52; SD. 400; NL. 883.
2 Cf. NL. 889; SD. 401; DR. I, 53.
102 (C.104; K.XIX.96b-97a). 1 Cf. SD. 402; DR. I, 53. NL. 891.
2 Cf. NL. 891; SD. 403.
103 (C.105; K.XIX.97a-98a). 1 See SD. 404; cf. NL. 893; DR. I, 54.
2 Read \text{nagā-dēna}. Cf. SD. 405, NL. 895, DR. I, 54.
104 (C.106; K.XIX.98b-99a). 1 Cf. SD. 406; NL. 906.
States (bhāva) an expert playwright should insert all these Limbs into appropriate Junctures of his work.\footnote{See above 104 note 1.}

105. Considering [the scope] of the Action or its condition he may sometimes insert all the Limbs or a combination of two or three [of them] into the Junctures.\footnote{Cf. DR. I. 58; SD. 308. NL. 393. Haus translates arthropakṣepaka as "Intermediate Scenes", see p. 38. But the 'Explanatory Devices' are all not complete scenes but parts of scenes, \textit{vide infra.}}

Five Explanatory Devices

106. The Supporting Scene (viśkambhaka), the Intimating Speech (cūlikā), the Introductory Scene (praveśaka), the Transitional Scene (viṅkāṇakāra), and the Anticipatory Scene (viṅkamukhā) are five Explanatory Devices (arthopakṣepaka).\footnote{Cf. SD. 308; DR. 338; DR. I. 59 Emend viśkambhakas tu āmskiṣṭa into viśkambhakāh āmskṣitāh NL. 362 f. quotes the view of Čārāyaṇa as follows: \textit{स्यवय नाटकास्वय: विश्वेषक दीर्घ।} (Viśkambhaka relates to the Prakaraṇa and the Nāṭaka 'only'). It seems that such was the case at a later stage of the development of Indian drama. First it related to the Nāṭakas only.}

The Supporting Scene

107. The Supporting Scene (viśkambhaka)\footnote{For a definition of the middling character see NS. XXXIV. 4} should employ the middling\footnote{According to this direction the \textit{viśkambhaka} at the beginning of Pañca, would be an ideal one.} male characters, relate to the opening Juncture (munkhasanākhi)\footnote{Cf. NL. 414 f., 498f.; DR. I. 61; SD. 310.} only of the Nāṭaka, and it is [to be] graced (lit. refined) by a priest, minister or Kaṃcukin (armour-bearer).

108. The Supporting Scene is of two kinds; pure and mixed. Of these the pure is made up of the middling characters and the mixed of the inferior and the middling ones.

The Intimating Speech

109. When some points are explained by a superior, middling or inferior character from behind the curtain, it is called the Intimating Speech (cūlikā).\footnote{108 (C.110; K.XIX.106).}
The Introductory Scene

110. The Introductory Scene (pravākta) in relation to the Nāṭaka and the Prakaraṇa, is to occupy a place between two Acts and to treat the summary of the Prominent Point (bindu).  

111. The Introductory Scene should be known as not consisting of the exploits of the superior and the middling characters and there should be no exalted speech in it, and its language should be Prakrit.

The Transitional Scene

112. As in practice it falls between two Acts or within an Act, and relates to the purpose of the Germ (bijā), it is called the Transitional Scene (aṅkāvatāra).

The Anticipatory Scene

113. When the detached beginning of an Act is summarised beforehand by a male or a female character, it is called the Anticipatory Scene (aṅkamukha).

An ideal Nāṭaka

114-117. The playwright should write a Nāṭaka having

---

110 (C.112; K.XIX.108). 1 Cf. DR. I. 60-61; SD 309; NL. 307 ff.
111 (C.113; K.XIX.109). 1 See NS. XX. 32. Cf. DR. I. 60-61. SD. 309. C. gives one additional couplet after this. But this (not occurring in K.) seems to give no new information.
112 (C.115; K.XIX.110). 1 Cf. DR. I. 62-63; SD. 311; NL. 398-399. The def. is not very clear. The aṅkāvatāra seems to furnish an indication of the subject-matter of the next Act. An example of this seems to be the dialogue of the Četi and Vāsavadattā at the end of the Act II. of Svapna. This relates to the making of a garland by Vāsavadattā. Another example may be Avimāraṇa speaking एवः समातः। मध्यम विषेषतः कल्याणः समाययः। तत्र नमुनयित्वं मध्याभ्रणः, II. 5-6. This gives a clue to the subject-matter of the next Act which treats Avimāraṇa's entry into the royal harem.

113 (C.116; K.XIX.111). 1 The aṅkamukha seems to relate mostly to plays other than of the Nāṭaka and the Prakaraṇa types. Examples of this are perhaps the speeches of the Bhaṭa in the beginning of the Karṣa, and of the Dittagha. The reason for the above assumption is that the rules prescribe vīskambhaka for Nāṭakas only (see 107), and pravēkha for both Nāṭakas and Prakaraṇas (see 110). Cf. DR. I. 62; SD. 312, 313; NL. 408.

114-117 (C.117-120; K.XIX.112-115).
[different] Styles and minor Limbs (pratyaṅga)\(^1\), Episode Indication (patākā)\(^2\), Explanatory Devices (athaprakāriya)\(^8\) arising from the five stages (avasthā)\(^4\), having five Junctures (sandhi)\(^6\), twentyone Alternative Junctures\(^6\), sixtyfour Limbs (aṅga)\(^7\), thirtysix lakṣaṇas\(^8\), Guṇas (excellence)\(^9\) and figures of speech (alāmārā)\(^10\), many Sentiments\(^3\)\(^1\)\(^1\)\(^1\)\(^1\), topics of many enjoyments, exalted speeches, characters of great people, description of good conduct, and it should be popular, wellknit in its Junctures, easy for production [on the stage], composed with soft words and capable of giving pleasure.

118. The condition of the world arising from the happiness and misery and connected with the activity of various people should find a place in the Nāṭaka\(^1\).

119. There is no wise maxim, no learning, no art or craft, no device, no action that are not found in the drama (nāṭya)\(^1\).

120. And the human nature with its joys and sorrows depicted through the means of representation such as Gestures, [Words, Costume and Temperament] is also called a drama (nāṭya)\(^1\).

121. A mimicry of the past exploits of gods, sages, and human beings should be also called a drama\(^1\).

122. As [this] is represented (ahhinīgat) and interpreted (ganyate) by the actors who after suppressing their own nature make [for this purpose] various movements of their different limbs, it is called the Nāṭaka\(^1\).

\(^1\) Pratyaṅga has not been defined anywhere. It is possible that the reading is corrupt.

\(^2\) Patākā here stands for patākā-sthūnaka just as "Bhima" for "Bhūmasena", see above 30ff.

\(^3\) Arthaprakāriya is only a synonym of arthaprakāri. See before 20ff.

\(^4\) See before 6ff.

\(^5\) See before 35ff.

\(^6\) See before 48ff.

\(^7\) See before 58ff.

\(^8\) See NŚ. XVII. 96ff.

\(^9\) See NŚ. XVII. 43ff.

\(^10\) See NŚ. XVII. 43ff.

\(^11\) See NŚ. VI.

118 (C. 121; K. XIX. 116).

119 (C. 122; K. XIX. 117).

120 (C. 123; K. XIX. 118).

121 (C. 124; K. XIX. 119).

122 (C. 125; K. XIX. 120).

\(^1\) This very clearly defines the artistic character of drama.
123. The Nāṭaka is to be so composed as to include all States, Sentiments, inclination to all deeds, and the various conditions [of men and nature].

124. The various arts and crafts produced by human beings may be applied in the Nāṭaka in their endless forms.

125. One is to construct a Nāṭaka [only] after observing the human character, strength and weakness of men, their [mode of] enjoyment and reasoning.

126. In succeeding ages men will be deficient in wisdom; hence those who will be born [after us] will have small learning and intellect.

127. When the world deteriorates, men’s intellect, activity, [production of] crafts and skill in arts will dwindle.

128. Hence after observing the strength and the weakness of human feeling, one should compose the Nāṭaka with pleasant and easily intelligible words.

129. The plays (lit. poems) which contain [harsh], words like cokriṣṇita is repulsive (lit. do not shine) like a courtezan in the company of a Brahmin bearing a Kamaṇḍalu.

130. O Brahmins, I have spoken about the Plot with its Junctures and Limbs. I shall hereafter speak of the characteristics of the Styles.

Here ends chapter XXI of Bharata’s Nāṭyasāstra, which treats of the Limbs of the Junctures.

123 (C.126; K.XIX.121). 1 Cf. Nś. 1.113
124 (C.127; K.XIX.122). 1 Emend ekakarma into lokakarma.
125 (C.128; K.XIX. 123). 4 This puts emphasis on depicting characters in a drama.
126 (C.129; K.XIX.124).
128 (C.131; K.XIX.126).
129 (C.132; K.XIX.127). 1 Bhāsa actually uses the root of this verb form in his Avī. (III.18.0).
13 (C.133; K.XIX.128).
CHAPTER TWENTYTWÖ

THE STYLES

The origin of the Styles

1. I shall now explain in detail (lit. from the beginning) the rise of the Styles (ṛṛtāi) and [in relation to them] the origin and the formation of dramas¹.

2-3. When the lord Acyut (Viṣṇu) after reducing the universe into a single [vast] ocean and compressing the creation [into a seed] by his supernatural power, was lying on the couch of snake, the two Asuras Madhu and Kaśṭābha maddened with the pride of their strength challenged the god at once for battle².

4-5. These two, after making gestures of challenge, (lit. rubbing their arms) fought the imperishable lord Viṣṇu (bhūta-bhāvanā, lit. the creator of beings) with their fists and legs (lit. knees), and while doing so they also assailed him (lit. one another) with harsh words and shook as it were the ocean with their reviling speech³.

The origin of the Verbal Style

6-7. Hearing the various [abusive] words of these two who were threatening¹ [Viṣṇu], Druhiṇa (Brahman) was slightly perturbed in mind and said, "Is it the bhārati ṛṛtī that start with these words [for the fighters] and goes on increasing stage by stage? Kill the two [at once]."

8-10. Hearing these words of Pitāmaha (Brahman), Madhusūdana (Viṣṇu) said, "Yes, I have made this bhārati ṛṛtī

¹ (C.1; K.XX.1). ¹ Sāgaranandin explains the ṛṛtī as follows: नेन्द्रगो नीतिसाधनसाधनसाधनसाधनतथाशीर्षेष्वरेण्य विषयपाक्षिणमिति किं कार्यं: विषयविषयानी परिवर्तिति, NL. 1044ff.

²-3. (C.2-3; K.XX.2-3). ¹ The story of Nārāyaṇa’s reducing the three worlds into ‘a single ocean’ occurs in the Rām. VII. 72; Kūrma P. XIII. See JK. under Viṣṇu (8) and Nārāyaṇa (8).

⁴-5 (C.4-5; K.XX.4-5). ¹ Madhu and Kaśṭābha charged Nārāyaṇa with the theft of the Vedas. Rām. VII. 72. See JK. under Kaśṭābha.

⁶-7 (C.6-7; K.XX.6-7). ¹ Emend garjatoli into tarjatoli (tarjalim, K).

⁸-10 (C.8-10; K.XX.8-10).

51
for the purpose of my work. It will be the bhārati vr̥tti of the speaker, in which words will preponderate. I shall kill these two Asuras today". So saying Hari (Viṣṇu) with his perfect gestures and Aṅgahāras severely fought these two Daityas who were experts in the method of battle.

11. At that time Hari's pacing with the Sthānakas on the ground created a great bhāra (burden) on the earth (bhāni); the bhārati vr̥tti (Verbal Style) was built on that (bhāna).

The origin of the Grand Style

12. And at that [very] time, by the rebounding of the bow named Śrīṅga which was intensely brilliant, steady and full of much sattva (strength) the sāttvati vr̥tti (Grand Style) was made.

The origin of the Graceful Style

13. When [in course of fighting] the god moved sportively with various Aṅgahāras and tied up his sīkha (krṣa ?) the kaśaikī vr̥tti (Graceful Style) was made.

The origin of the Energetic Style

14. Then from the various personal combats which were full of energy and excitement, and which entailed various Cāris the Energetic (ārabhaṭi vr̥tti) was made.

15. Whatever acts the god Brahman observed as arising out of the different Styles (vr̥tti), were associated by him (Druhiṇa - Brahman) with words suitable to their meaning.

16. When the two Asuras Madhva and Kaṭabha were killed by Hari (Viṣṇu) Brahman spoke to him (Nārāyaṇa = Viṣṇu) who was the subddupa of foes (arivulama).

---

1 aṅgaiḥ here means aṅgikaiḥ and aṅgahāraiḥ.
2 See NŚ. IV.19-27, 170ff.
11 (C.11; K. XX.11). 1 See NŚ. XI. 49ff.
2 This is a clear instance of folk- etymology and does not really explain the origin of this Style. It possibly comes from the Bharata tribe; see NŚ. I. 41 f.n.
12 (C.12; K. XX.12). 1 See above 11 note 2.
13 (C.13; K. XX.13). 1 See above 11 note 2.
15 (C.15; XX.K.15). 1 Emend pratyapiṣṭayat into pratyayojayat.
16 (C. 16; K. XX.16).
The origin of the Nyāya

17-18. O god, thou hast killed the Dānavas with various clear, expressive and graceful Āṅgahāras; hence this method of personal combat [applicable] in throwing all kinds of missiles in this world, will be termed as Nyāya.¹

19. Even this fight made with the Āṅgahāras which arose from the Nyāyas and observed them (Nyāyas) [in practice] will be called the Nyāya.¹

20. Then the high-souled Drupiya (Brahman) gave over to the gods this Style full of various States and Sentiments, [for its use] in the production of plays.

21-22. The name Style (vr̥t̥i) was made a repository of the various States and the Sentiments. And whatever was made and in whatever manner, the exploits of the god (Viṣṇu) were utilised by the sages in fashioning the similar Styles arising from the Words and the Gestures which have their origin in materials taken from the four Vedas, and which also have Words and Gestures as their chief characteristics.

23. These Styles which were desired, wellborn and full of various Cāris, were again, taken by me at Drupiya's command, for the purpose of making plays (lit. poem)³.

24. The Verbal Style (bhāratī vr̥t̥i) was from the Rgveda, the Grand (sātvatī) from the Yajur-veda, the Graceful (kāsikī) from the Śāma Veda and the remaining one (i.e. the Energetic or ārabhaṭī) from the Atharva [Veda].³

25. The Style which is to be applied by the male characters and not by females and which gives prominent place to speeches

---

¹ See NŚ. XI. 74ff.
² See NŚ. IV. 170ff.
³ Emend nāṭyaveda into caturveda.
² Emend 23a as follows. प्रभुव्रता मुशात्वा
⁴ This is a different story about the origin of the vr̥t̥is. See before 2-14.
made in Sanskrit, is used by the eponymous bhavatas (actors) as bhaarati (Verbal).¹

The four varieties of the Verbal Style

26. It has four varieties such as the Laudation (pravōana), the Introduction (ānukha), the Vithi and the Prahasana, and these have became its component parts (ānga).¹

The Laudation

27. The Laudation (pravōana) in the Preliminaries is to attain success, prosperity, good luck, victory and removal of all sins.¹

The Introduction

28-29. That part of a play where an actress¹, the Jester or the Assistant has a talk with the Director on some relevant topic, and they use interesting words or adopt any type of the Vithi or talk in any other way is called the Introduction (ānukha).¹ I shall speak in detail about its five varieties (lit. elements).

The five varieties of the Introduction

30. The Accidental Interpretation (udyātyaka), the Opening of the Story (kathoghāta), the Particular Presentation (prayogātisāga) the Personal Business, (pravrītika) and the Transferrence (avalyita) are the five varieties of the Introduction (ānukha).¹

31. Of these the characteristics of the Accidental Interpretation (udyātyaka)¹ and the Transferrence (avalyita)² have been mentioned by me. I shall now speak in detail of the characteristics of the rest.

Opening of the Story

32. [That Introduction in which a character enters [the stage] taking up a remark of the Director or its meaning, is called the Opening of the Story (kathoghāta).¹

¹ NL. 1054ff. DR. II. 5 ; SD. 274, AP. modifies this def. by adding striyuktā prakṣākovita, Haas, on DR. III. 5 (p.81).

26 (C 26; K.XX 26). ¹ Cf. NL. 1008-69; DR. III. 5 ; SD. 285.

27 (C.27; K.XX.27). ¹ Cf. NL. 1070-71ff; DR. III. 6 ; SD. 286.

28-29 (C.28-29; K.XX.28-29). ¹ Cf. NL.1178-81; DR. III. 7 ; SD. 286.

30 (C.30; K.XX.30). ¹ Cf. NL. 11-88-89 DR. III. 8; SD. 287.


³ See NŚ. XX. 118; NL. 1192, DR. III. 15; SD. 292.

32 (C.32; K.XX.32). ¹ Cf. NL, 1196; DR. III. 9; SD. 289.
Particular Presentation

33. When, over this production [of the Introduction] the Director imposes another production and then a character enters [the stage], it is called the Particular Presentation (prayogatiṣaya).\(^1\)

Personal Business

34. [The Introduction] in which the Director speaks on some business in hand and taking cue from this (lit. with its help) a character enters the stage, it is called the Personal Business (pravṛttaka)\(^1\).

35. Taking up one of these types and skilfully giving double meaning to it, the wise [playwright] should construct the Introduction by freely assembling different characters\(^1\).

36. The wise are thus to know the Introduction with different bases\(^1\). The characteristics of the Vithi\(^2\) and the Prahasana\(^3\) have been mentioned before.

37. These are the eight\(^1\) different aspects (lit. meanings) of the Verbal Style I spoke of. I shall now explain the rules of the Grand Style (sāttvati) with its characteristics.

The Grand Style

38. The Style which is endowed with the sāttvati quality, the Nyāyas, metres, and has exuberance of joy and an undercurrent of the State of sorrow\(^1\), is called Grand (sāttvati)\(^3\).

39. The Grand Style is known to consist of representation by Words and Gestures, and of strength in speeches and acts showing the rise of spirit.

---

33 (C.33; K.XX.33). \(^1\) See NL. 1201-1202; DB. III. 11; SD. 290.
34 (C.34; K.XX.32). \(^1\) Cf. NL. 1214-1215; SD. 291; DR. III. 10.
35 (C.35; K.XX.35). \(^1\) i.e. actress, Jester or the Assistant. See 28 above.
36 (C.36; K.XX.36). \(^1\) Emend vīrūdhhoṣrayam into vīrūdhaśrayam.
37 (C.37; K.XX.37). \(^1\) Prarocatri, Vithi, Prahasana and five varieties of Āmukha. See before 26-30.
38 (C.38; K.XX.38). \(^1\) This shows that no pathetic subject-matter should find a place in this Style.
39 (C.39; K.XX.39).
40. It is to contain the Sentiments such as Heroic (vīra), the Marvellous (adbhuta) and the Furious (raudra) and to a small extent (alpa) the Pathetic (karunā) and the Erotic (śrṅgāra), and characters in it should be mostly majestic and defying one another.

The four varieties of the Grand Style

41. It is known to have the four varieties such as challenge (uttāpaka), Change of Action (parivartaka), Harsh Discourse (sanlāpaka) and Breach of Alliance (samghāta).

Challenge

42. One’s rising up with a view to conflict after saying “I am getting up [for battle, now]” show me your own prowess” is called the Challenge (uttāpaka).

Change of Action

43. If after leaving the thing which caused the rising up, one takes to other things due to some need, it is called the Change of Action (parivartaka).

Harsh Discourse

44. Various kinds of words containing abuse or insult whether these arise from a challenge or not, are called Harsh Discourse (sanlāpaka).

Breach of Alliance

45. The stopping of an alliance for the sake of a friend, money or due to an accident or [one’s] own fault, is called Breach of Alliance (samghāta).

46. These are the eight meanings of the Grand Style that I spoke of. I shall hereafter describe the characteristics of the Graceful Style (kaiśikī vṛtti).

40 (C.40; K.XX.40). ¹ See NL. 1271-1273.
41 (C.41; K.XX.41). ¹ Cf. Dr. II. 53 SD. 416, NL. 1274ff.
42 (C.42; K.XX.42). ¹ Cf. NL. 1276, 4278. The text on this point seems to be corrupt, also cf. DR. II. 54; SD. 416.
43 (C.43; K.XX.43). ¹ Cf. DR. II. 55; SD. 419; NL. 1279-1282.
44 (C.44; K.XX.44). ¹ Cf. DR. II. 54; SD. 418, NL. 1288.
45 (C.45; K.XX.45). ¹ Read mīśrāṭtha-kārya.
46 (C.46; K.XX.46). ¹ Uttāpaka, parivartaka, the two kinds of sanlāpaka and the four kinds of samghāta. See before 41, 44, 45.
The Graceful Style

47. That Style is called Graceful (kaśīkī) which is specially interesting on account of charming costumes worn by [dramatis personae] mostly women, and in which many kinds of dancing and singing are included and the themes acted are practices of love and are connected with (lit. arising from) its enjoyment.

The four varieties of the Graceful Style

48. The Graceful Style is said to have the four varieties such as Pleasantry (narma), Beginning of Pleasure (narma-phurja) Unfoldment of Pleasure (narma-sphota) and Covert Pleasure (narma-garbha).

The three kinds of Pleasantry

49. The Pleasantry (narma) which abounds in remarks made in jest, is of three kinds: that based on love, that with pure laughter and that having Sentiments other than the Heroic.

50. The Pleasantry (narma) is known as concerned with acts of jealousy and anger, words of rebuke, self-reproach and deception of others.

Beginning of Pleasantry

51. The Beginning of Pleasantry (narma-phurja) is to be known as the first meeting [of lovers] in which words and dresses exciting love [are in evidence] but which ends in fear.

Unfoldment of Pleasantry

52. The Unfoldment of Pleasantry (narma-sphota) is the cause of the Sentiment contributed by small fraction of different States (bhāva) and not by any State as a whole.
Covert Pleasure

53. When the Hero acts incognito out of any necessity through his qualities such as intelligence, [good] appearance and affection, it is called Covert Pleasure (narma-garbha)\(^1\).

54. These are the eight different meanings of the Graceful Style that I was to speak about. I shall hereafter describe the Energetic Style (ārabhāti) which is concerned with haughty Sentiment.\(^1\)

The Energetic Style

55. The Style which includes mostly the qualities of a bold person (ārabhāti) such as speaking many words\(^1\), deception, bragging and falsehood, is to be known as Energetic (ārabhāti)\(^2\).

56. The Style in which there is a representation of falling down\(^1\), jumping, crossing over, deeds of magic and conjuration, and various kinds of fighting, is called Energetic (ārabhāti)\(^2\).

The four varieties of the Energetic Style

57. It has varieties such as Compression (samksiptaka), Commotion (acapāda), Raising Various Feelings (rastālthāpama) and Conflict (samephaṭa)\(^1\).

Compression

58. Compression (samksiptaka) is furnished with workmanship (ṣilpa) in the true sense of the words and it includes the

---

\(^1\) According to Sūgananandin Ārabhaṭi is an ainga of the Gauḍī viśṭhi: NL. 1365. Cf. DR. II. 52; SD. 415; NL. 1838 f. C. adds an additional def. (C.54) of this, but it is wanting in K.

\(^2\) The three kinds of narma, the three kinds of narma-garbha and narma-phūraṇa and narma-ṣphoṭa.

55 (C.56; K.XX.55). 'Many words' probably mean altercation or verbal duel.

56 (C.57; K.XX.56). The reading prastāv in prastāva seems to be corrupt. Emend this to vastava\(^2\).

2 See above 56 note 2. C. adds one more def. (C.58) of ārabhaṭi but this is wanting in K. In trans. it will be as follows: That which includes excitement due to an application of the sixfold policy (ṣadgūṇa), running away due to deception of the enemy, and that which relates to [material] gain or loss, is called the Energetic Style.


58 (C.60; K.XX.58). Cf. DR. II. 57-58, SD. 432, NL. 1858 f. gives another def. samksiptaka.
presentation of model works (pradhāna) drawings, and dresses, and relates to some condensed matter.

Commotion

59. Commotion (avapāla) is known to relate to the occurrence of fear and jubilation, panic, flurry, many kinds of speaking, quick entrance and exist\(^1\).

Raising the Theme

60. That deed which is represented as being connected with panic or no panic, and includes a combination of all the Sentiments is called the Raising the Theme (rastāṭthāpana)\(^1\).

Conflict

61. Conflict (sampřeta) is known to include excitement, many fights, personal combats, deception, split and [mutual] striking of weapons\(^1\).

62. These are the Styles to be reckoned by the wise in connexion with the drama. Now listen about their application in different Sentiments, which I am going to tell you.

Styles according to Sentiments

63-64. The Style in the Erotic and Comic Sentiments should be Graceful and in the Heroic, the Furious and the Marvellous Sentiments it should be Grand. And in the Terrible, the Odious and the Furious Sentiments one should use the Energetic Style, while the Verbal Style is applicable in the Pathetic and the Marvellous Sentiments\(^1\).

65. I have spoken properly about the Histrionic Representation dependent on Words, Gestures, Temperament and the Styles. Now I shall treat of the Costumes and the Make-up used in the production of plays.

Here ends Chapter XXII of Bharata's Nātyaśāstra which treats of the Styles.

59 (C.61; K.XX.59). \(^1\) Cf. DR. I. 59. SD. 423; NL. 1368f.
60 (C.62; K.XX.60). \(^1\) Cf. DR. II. 59, SD. 420; NL. 1372f.
61 (C.63; K.XX.61). \(^1\) Cf. DR. II. 50; SD. 421; NL. 1380f.
62 (C.64; K.XX.62).
63-64 (C.65-66; K.XX.63-64). \(^1\) Cf. NL. 1059-1062. DR. II. 62; SD. 410. C. repeats after this two couplets from the Ch. VII. (118-119).
65 (C.69; K.XX.65),
CHAPTER TWENTYTHREE

THE COSTUMES AND MAKE-UP

Necessity of the Costumes and Make-up

1. I shall similarly speak in due order, O Brahmans, about the Costumes and Make-up; for the production [of a play] depends on this.\(^1\)

2. The Extraneous Representation (ahāryābhinas) deals with the rules of the Costumes and Make-up (nepathyas).\(^2\) Anyone who wishes for the success (lit. swell-being) of a dramatic production should pay attention to these.\(^3\)

3. The dramatis personae are of different types. Indicated first by their Costumes and Make-up they accomplish the representation without much effort by means of Gestures and the like.

Four kinds of the Costumes and Make-up

4. The Costumes and Make-up (nepathyas) are of four kinds: model work (prastā), decoration (alakāra), painting the limbs (āṅga-racanā) and living creatures (saṅjiva).

The four kinds of model-work

5. [Of these] the model-work is of three kinds and of various forms. They are: the Joined Object (sandhima), the Indicating Object (vyājima) and the Wrapped Object (vestima).\(^1\)

6. The model work which is made up of mat, cloth, skin and the like, is called the Joined Object (sandhima).\(^1\)

---

1 (C.1; K.XXI.1). \(^1\) K. reads lb differently.
2 (C.2; K.XXI.3). \(^1\) C. reads after this an additional couplet.
3 (C.4; K.XXI.2). \(^1\) Nānāvastha—nānābhūnā yā śokdyā nānābhūtaśrayā ca (Ag. p. 429).
4 (C.5; K.XXI.4). \(^1\) K. mukta for prasta.
5 K. nātīngara-racanā for tathāngara-racanā.
6 (C.6; K.XXI.5). \(^1\) Čestimaḥ, C. for vestimaḥ, K.
7 (C.7; K.XXI.6). \(^1\) Sandhimaḥ—sandhānālayā nirvittah (Ag. p. 429).
7. That which is made by means of a mechanical device (gantra) is called an Indicating Object (vyājima)\(^1\) and that which is produced by wrapping, is called a Wrapped Object (veśima)\(^2\).

8. Hills, carriages, lofty palaces, shields, armours, banner-staffs and elephants\(^1\) which are constructed for use in a dramatic performance are called model-works (pūsta).

Decorations

9. Decorations (alambāra) are known to consist of flower-garlands, ornaments and drapery which are differently used on different parts of the [human] body.

Garlands

10. Garlands are of five kinds: encircling (veśita)\(^1\), spread-up (vitata), grouped (samghaya)\(^2\), tied-round (granthima), and hung-down (pralambita).

Four kinds of ornament

11. Ornaments of the body are known by the wise to be of the four kinds: that to be fixed by piercing the limbs (āvedhyā)\(^1\), that to be tied up (bandhanīya), that to be worn (prakṣepya), and that to be put round (āropya)\(^2\).

Piercing ornaments

12. [Of these, the ornaments] to be fixed by piercing the limbs are ear-rings (kundala) and other ear ornaments\(^1\).

Tied-up ornaments

And those to be tied-up (bandhanīya) are the girdles (śroni-sūtra) and the Aṅgada (arm-band).
Worn ornaments

13. The ornaments to be worn (prakṣaṇya) are the anklets (nāpura) as well as the wearing apparels.

Put-round ornaments

And those [ornaments] to be put round (ārṇy) are the golden neck-chain (hemasūtra) and necklaces (hāra) of different kinds.

Ornaments according to habitation and tribal origin

14. I shall now speak of the varieties of ornaments of men and women according to their habitation and tribal origin.

Ornaments for males:

Head ornaments

15. The crest-jewel (vīṅgāmaṇi) and the crown (mukulo) are called ornaments of the head.

Ear ornaments

And the ear-ring (kunḍala), Mocaka (ear-pendant) and ear-top (kila) are ornaments of the ears.

Neck ornaments

16. The pearl-necklace (muktācali) the Harṣaka and the [gold] thread (sūtra) are ornaments of the neck.

---

15 (C.16; K.XXI.15). 1 To be worn on the top of the head. Cvāgaṇī śivromadhye (Ag. p. 430).
2 To be worn above the forehead. Mukulo lalāordhe (Ag. l.c.).
3 To be worn in the lower lobe of the ear. Kunḍalam adharapālām (Ag. l.c.).
4 To be worn in the hole in the middle of the ear. Mocakaḥ kāṇṭāskulāḥ madhyacchidre uttarakorniketi prasiddham (Ag. l.c.).
16 (C.17; K.XXI.16). Harṣaka—a snake-shaped ornament, samudgala-sarpādi rūpalayā prasiddham. (Ag. l.c.).
2 Sūtram—golden neck-chain, sūtrakam iti guccha-grivā-sūtrādīlayā prasiddham (Ag. l.c.).
3 Kāṭakaḥ (vatiśā, K.). Ag. (l.c.) reads the term differently. He says veśiketi sūtikacakra-rūpā.
4 Aṅguli-mudrā—In later times the two members of this compound word (aṅguliya and mudrā) gave rise to two different synonyms for the object (ring) denoted by it.
Finger ornaments

And the Kaṭaka [Vaṭika] and the finger-ring (aṅgulīya-
mudrā) are ornaments of the finger.

Ornament of the forearm

17. The Hastavī and the Valaya are the ornaments of
the fore-arm (bāhu-nālī).

Wrist ornaments

And the bracelet (rucika) and the Uccitika are
ornaments of the wrist.

Ornaments above the elbow

18. The Keyūra (armlet) and the Aṅgada (arm-band)
are ornaments to be worn above the elbow.

Breast ornaments

And the three-stringed necklace (trisara) is the ornament
of the breast.

19. The suspended pearl necklace, the flower-garland and
the like, are ornaments for the [entire] body.

Waist ornaments

And the Tarala and the golden thread (śūlī/a) are
ornaments of the waist.

---

17 (C.19). 1 This is seems to be very rarely mentioned in Skt.
literature.

a This word is the same as Bengali bālu (bangle).

b This seems to be a variant of the word rucika. See note a below.

1 This word seems to be never met with elsewhere. Ag.'s frag-
mentary gloss on this word or rucika is as follows: • • cakra iti kara-
golake vīlaṁ tata ūrdhva cūliketi prasiddhau (ṇ niśkuke agrābhā-
sthāne etat [niḥū]-sanam (p. 430).

18 (C.19, K.XXI.17). 1 To be worn above the elbow. Keyūre
karpārā (kūrpara)-syordhvataḥ (Ag. i.c.), but ke bāhuśīrṣe yauti iti
keyūram, Kṣirasvāmin on Amara II. 6,107.

2 To be worn above the keyūra. Tayor (=keyūrayor) ūrdhva
tu aṅgadām (Ag. i.c.).

3 Trisara—trisaro mukti-lātā-trayena (Ag. i.c.).

19 (C.20; K.XXI.18). 1 To be worn below the navel; talara/la/kaṁ
nābher atāḥ (Ag. i.c.)

2 To be worn below the taralaṇa. Tasyāpyadhaṁ suṭrakam (Ag. i.c.).
20. These are the ornaments for males in case of the gods and the kings. I shall now speak about the ornaments for females.

Ornaments for females

Head ornaments

21-22. The Śikhāpāsa¹, the Śikhājāla², the Piṇḍapātra³ (Khaḍgpatra), the Crest Jewel (cūḍāmaṇī)⁴, the Makarika⁵, the pearl-net (mukta-jāla)⁶ the Gavākṣa⁷ and the hair-net (śirṣa-jāla) are ornaments of the head.

22-23. The Tilaka on the forehead should be produced by many artistic touches, and group of design above the eyebrows should imitate flowers.

Ear ornaments

23-25. The ornaments of the ear are the Kurḍāla, the Śikhinapatra¹ (Khaḍgpatra), the braid [of hairs], the lotus² and the Mocaka³ the Karṇikā⁴, the Karṇavalaya⁵, the Patrakarnikā⁶, the Karṇamudrā⁷ that entwines the ear, the Karṇotkilaṅgā (ear-top),

20 (C.21; K.XXI.19).

21-22 (C.22-23a; K.XXI.20-21a). ¹ This is same as ciśṭāmaṇī mentioned in Megha, II. 2.
² Ag. (p. 431) reads it as śikāvyāla and explains this as niyagram-thibhir upāśi-baddho madhyekarmikā-sthāniyam, and adds to explain piṇḍapātra (=piṇḍapātra) as tasyaiva dalaśandhānāt tayā citra-vacanā (?), vartutamhi pātrīni piṇḍapātrāni. ²⁶ See note 2 above.
³ The same as mentioned in 15 above.
⁴ Ag. reads this makarapatram.
⁵ This is the same word which occurs in Megha, III. 64.
⁶ No head ornament with this name seems to occur anywhere else.
22-23 (C.24; K.XXII.21b-22a).
¹ Ag. (loc.) reads śikhāpatra and explains this as śikhāpatra mayura-pīcchakāro victravarna-maṇi-racitaḥ.
² gṛcca. K. for kaṁja. C.
³ Rocaka, C. and dārakaḥ K.
⁴ This was never met with before.
⁵ This is perhaps the same as mod. Bengali kāmbala, kāmbala, karṇavalaya. ⁶ This was never met with before.
⁷ This ornament is still in use among women of backward classes.
the various kinds of the Dantapatrás⁸ set with jewels and the Karṇapūra⁹.

The Tilaka and the Patralekhā¹⁰ are ornaments of the cheeks¹¹.

**Neck ornaments**

26. The pearl-necklace, the snake-group (ṛgāla-paṅkti)¹¹, the Maṅjari², the jewel-string³ the jewel-necklace⁴ and the neck-chain (sūtra)⁵ are ornaments of the neck.

27. The necklace with two, three or four strings as well as a [gold] chain is the ornament of the neck¹.

---

¹ These were possibly made with ivory.
² The well-known ear ornament.
³ The same as patrabhaṅga (drawing decorative designs with-scented pigments).
⁴ C. reads after this four additional and somewhat corrupt couplets (C.37b-38a) which may be tentatively translated as follows: And the triveti is to be known as the ornament of the breast. The two eyes are to be touched with collyrium, and the lips are also to be painted. The four front teeth (of the upper and the lower rows) are to have varying colours as well as whiteness. When covered with artificial colours their beauty is enhanced. Pearl-like teeth of beautiful young women embellish their smile, and dyed with the colour of lotus petals they will be lovely, and when dyed with emerald colour the lips will attain the beauty of tender leaves. And their amorous look will constitute their charms.
⁵ An ornament with the snake-motif; see above 16 note 1. This was never met with before.
⁶ Maṅjari—This was never met with before.
⁷ Ratnamālikā—This is to be distinguished from ratnāvali (see note 4 below) which is a bigger necklace; for the word mālikā means a small mūlī.
⁸ Ratnāvali—See note 3 above.
⁹ Sūtra (lit. thread) evidently means a thin thread-like necklace made of gold; cf. kanakasūtra in Pañcatantra I. (vīyasa-dampati-kathā).
¹⁰ K. omits this passage. The terms like dvirasa (wrongly dvirasa), trisara (wrongly trisara) and catū-sara (wrongly catūrasa) mean respectively necklaces with two, three and four strings.
Breast ornaments

28. The necklaces with the most artistic work\(^1\) are to be ornaments of the breasts.

The jewelled net is the ornament of the breasts (or the back)\(^2\).

Arm ornaments

29. The arm-band (aṅga-la)\(^3\) and the bangles (raḷayu)\(^4\) are ornaments of upper (lit, the root of the) arms.

The Varjura\(^5\) and the Svecchitika\(^6\) are ornaments of the fore-arm.

Finger ornaments

30. The Kaṭaka, the Kalaśākha, the Hastapata, the Supāraka, and the ring (mulaṅgulīya)\(^7\) are ornaments of fingers.

Hip ornaments

31. The Kaṭi with a net of pearls, the Kulaka, Mekhalā, the Raśanā and the Kalāpa are ornaments of the hip (śrōṇi).

32. The Kaṭi is [a girdle] of one string, the Mekhalā of eight, the Raśanā of sixteen and the Kalāpa of twenty-five strings.

---

\(^1\) K. \textit{nīnā-ratnakṛta} (in K.) meaning made up of many jewels.

\(^2\) \textit{Pṛṣṭha-vibhīṣana} (in K.) meaning 'ornaments of the back'.

\(^3\) K. \textit{aṅga-la}. \textit{Prakrit} reading is corrupt. See above 18 note 2.

\(^4\) It is now-a-days called \textit{ananta} in Bengal. Kālidāsa’s Yakṣa (Megha, I. 2) had a kind of \textit{raḷaya} in his \textit{prakṣṇa} (fore-arm).

\(^5\) This seems to connected with the \textit{bōju} still in use among women of rural areas in Bengal.

\(^6\) \textit{Svecchitika}—This was not heard of before.

\(^7\) This was never met with before. There is however an ornament \textit{hasta-stūra} (Apte).

---

30 (C.35b-36a; K.XXI.27b, 27a). \textit{K.} reads of 30a as \textit{sāṅkha-kalāpi}, \textit{kaṭaka} tathā syāt patrapūrakam. \textit{Kaṭaka} is usually met with in the sense of an ornament of the wrists.

31 (C.36bc; K.XXI.29). \textit{K.} reads 31a differently. All the ornaments except \textit{kulaka} have been defined in 32 below. \textit{Kulaka} seems to be a girdle of the special kind.

32 (C.37; K.XXI.30). \textit{Kaliṣṭa} seems to have been used by Kālidāsa in the sense of a necklace (Kymāra I. 42).
33. The pearl necklace of the goddesses and the queens are of thirtytwo, sixtyfour or one hundred and eight strings.

Ornaments of the ankles

34. The Nāpura, the Kiṅkiṇī, the Jewel-net (rataujāla) and the ringing Kaṭaka are the ornaments on the ankles.

35. The Pāda-patra is the ornament of the shanks (jaṅghā) and the toe-rings that of the toes, and the Tilaka on the big toe are ornaments of the feet.

36. Similarly [an additional decoration of the feet] will be the lac-dye applied on them in various patterns to impart to them the natural colour of Asoka blossoms.

37. These are the decorations of women from the hair to nails [of the feet]. Considering the States and the Sentiments these are to be applied [in different parts of the body].

38. These ornaments (lit. works) having their origin in Viśvakarman are to be applied also after a consideration of the tradition (āgama), measurements [of the wearer] and her physical form.

39. [In dramatic production] one is not entitled to decorate the limbs freely and at one's will, with gold, pearls and jewels.

40. Utilised on account of wealth, the jewelled ornaments put on in proper places will lend beauty to the limbs.

---

33 (C.38, K.XXI.31).
34 (C.39, K.XXI.32). ¹ K. reads ghanṭika lālam evā ca.
35 (C.40; K.XXI.33). ¹ C. reads jaṅghayoh for padayoh.
36 (C.41). ¹ This passage is wanting in K.
37 (C.42; K.XXI.34b, .34a). ¹ Ag. (l.c.) ānakhād—alaktaka-rūpa-paryantam.
38 (C.43; K.XXI.35). ¹ Ag. (l.c.) explains āgama as upādanakāraṇam.
39 (C.44; K.XXI.37b-38a). ¹ K. reads tarhi śaktyanusārena.
40 (C.45). ¹ Read viśhavato. ² K. omits this passage.
41. But in the production of plays there should not be a use of too many ornaments; for these by stiffening movements will cause fatigue [to actors and actresses].

42. Weighed down with heavy ornaments one cannot move much, and one so weighed down, is likely to be exhausted and to be fainting.

43. Hence [in a dramatic production] there should be not used ornaments made of pure gold, but those made of lac and inlaid slightly with jewels, will not bring exaustion [to the wearers in a play].

44. The rules of decoration are optional in case of the celestial beings (gods and goddesses); but the decoration of human beings are to be made carefully.

45. The celestial females are to be distinguished for their own roles by means of ornaments and Costumes suited to the various States.

46. Women of the Vidyādharas, the Yakṣas, the Nāgas, and the Apsarasas, and the daughters of sages and gods are to be distinguished by their Costumes.

47. The same rule applies also to women of the Siddhas, the Gandharvas, the Rākṣasas, the Asuras, the godly monkeys, and human females.

48. The Vidyādharas women should be made to have hairs (śikhā) tied in top-knot decorated with string of many pearls and clothes [completely] white.

49. The Yakṣa women and the Apsarasas should have

---

41 (C.46). ¹ A very sensible warning.
42 (C.44): See above 41 note.
43 (C.48).
44 (C.49). ¹ For gods are beautiful by nature.
45 (C.50). ¹ Read 45a as भुवनेष्वरी वर्षीया गणय नागान्सा भस्माद्येः.
46 (C.51, K.XXI.42).
47 (C.52). ² Read dīśya-vānara-nārīqāṃ; cf. 57 below.
48 (C.53, K.XXI.44). ¹ K. reads citra for buddha, C.
49 (C.54, K.XXI.43).
ornaments of jewels, and the same will the dresses of [all] these, except that the Yakṣa women are to wear the simple Śikhā.

50. The Nāga women are to wear like the goddesses the ornaments abounding in pearls and jewels, but they are also have hoods [in addition to these].

51. The daughters of sages are to wear a single Veṇī of the hair on their head, and they should not be made to have too much decoration.

Siddha women

52. The Siddha women should have ornaments abounding in pearls and emeralds, and their dresses should be of yellow colour.

Gandharva women

53. Ornaments of the Gandharva women should be made to abound in rubies. And they are to carry a Viṇā in the hands and to have clothes of saffron colour.

Rākṣasa Women

54. The Rākṣasa women are to have sapphires as their ornaments, and their teeth are to be made white and the dresses of black colour.

Goddesses

55. The celestial women are to have lapis lazuli and the pearls as their ornaments, and their dresses are to be made green like [the colour of] the parrot’s tail.

Monkey females

56. The women of the [godly] monkeys are to have topaz and sometimes lapis lazuli as their ornaments, and their dresses are to be made of blue colour.

---

1 Read samas tuṇāṁ for samastānām (K.) and yas tuṇām (C.)
50 (C.55, K. XXI.38b). 1 K. omits 50a. 2 Read phanūs tuṇām (K).
51 (C.56, K. XXI.39 and 45). 1 Read tūṇāṁ vēko vanocitaḥ (K).
52 (C.57). 1 For the Siddha women see Megha I. 14.
53 (C.58). 1 Read kuryū before padma-maṇi.
54 (C.59). 55 (C.60).
56 (C.61). 1 Puṣparāga = puṣparāja, NIA. pokh-rāj.
57. This should be the dress of celestial women in their love-making. But in other conditions their dresses are to be made white.

Human females according to their countries

58. Human females are to have dresses and ornaments according to their places of origin. Listen properly about them.

Women of Avanti and of Gauḍa

59. The young women of Avanti are to have curling hairs, and the women of Gauḍa are to have hairs mostly curled and they are to have the Śikhāpāśa and the Veṇī.

Ābhira women

60. The Ābhira women are to have two Veṇīs on their head which should be covered with a [piece of] deep blue cloth.

Women of the North East

61. The women of the North East are to hold up their Śikhaṇḍas, and in dressing themselves they cover the body up to their hair.

Women of the South

62. The women of the South are to have Ullekhya with Kumbhpadaka, and Āvara on the forehead.

63. Thus, dresses, ornaments, and hair-cutting etc. should be regulated for the remaining characters according to their habitation and birth.

Ornaments to be worn in the right place

64. An ornament not put on in its proper place will create

---

57 (C.62; K.XXI.40a, 46). ¹ Read divyāṅgana² ca.
58 (C.63; K.XXI.47, 40a).
59 (C.64; K.XXI.48). ¹ Probably the district of Malda and neighbouring regions in modern Bengal.
60 (C.65; K.XXI.49).
61 (C.66; K.XXI.50).
62 (C.67; K.XXI.51). ¹ Ullekhya is probably connected with Bengali ulki (tattoo).
63 (C.68b-69a; K.XXI.52). ¹ K. omits 62a C. adds one hemistich (C. 68a) before 62, which in trans. is follows: Courtesans are to have the decoration [of the body] according to their choice.
64 (C.69b-70a; K.XXI.53).
no beauty: for by wearing a Mchhā (girdle) on the breast one will create laughter.

Dresses to suit the condition of females

65. Similarly, the condition of females whose lover has gone abroad and who are afflicted with misery are to not to have a clean dress, and they are to wear their hair as a single Veṣū of the head.

66. The dresses of women who are separated from their lovers, should be white and they are not to wear many ornaments and not to cleanse their body.

67. Such should be [the dresses] of women according to their habitation and the condition [of existence]. Now I shall speak about the proper dresses of men.

Painting the limbs

68. But in their (i.e. men's) case the producers of plays should first of all paint the limbs, and then Costumes according to their habitation should be provided.

The four original colours

69. The four original (lit. natural) colours are black, blue, yellow and red; the limbs should be painted with these.

The derivative colours

70. There are besides these, the primary and the secondary derivative colours. I shall speak about the ways in which the producers are to make them.

The primary derivative colours

71. The yellowish white (pāṇḍu) colour is made up of the white and the yellow, and the pegion (kāpota) colour, of the white and the blue.

72. The lotus (padma) colour is made up of the white and the red, and the green (harit) colour, of the yellow and the blue.
73. The dark red (kāśāya) colour is made up of the blue and the red, and the pale-red (jañara) colour, of the red and the yellow.

74. These are the primary derivative colours. Besides these there are [many] secondary derivative colours which may be made up of three or four [original] colours.

The secondary derivative colours

75. Of these, the strong colour should form one part and the weak colour two parts; but the blue colour should be taken as directed below.

76. The blue should form only one part while the other colours will form three parts, for the blue is known to be the strongest of colours.

77. Knowing these rules of colours which are to be prepared by mixing them variously¹, one should paint the body of different characters.

78. The painted body together with the change of the Costume is, to be considered as due to the convention (nāṭyadhāma) affecting the dramatis personae¹.

79-80. Just as [the soul of] a man on entering the body of another being, renounces his own nature connected with a different body and assumes another character¹, so a person having (lit. covered with) [a different] colour and Costume adopts the behaviour connected with the clothes he will wear.

Living beings

81. As they have breath, the gods, the Dānavas, the Gandharvas, the Yakshas, the Rakṣasas and the Panagas (Nāgas) are called living beings (prāṇī)².

73 (C.75b-76a, K.XXI.62).
74 (C.76b-77a, K.XXI.63).
75 (C.77b-78a, K.XXI.64).
76 (C.78b-79a, K.XXI.65).
77 (C.79b-80a, K.XXI.66). ¹ nānasaṃyoga (C) for mūnasasaṃyoga (K).
78 (C.80b-81a, K.XXI.67). ¹ C. reads after this an additional couplet.
79-80 (C.82b-83a, K.XXI.65). ¹ Read parabhūvan for parābhavan.
81 (C.84b-85a, K.XXI.70). ¹ C. reads an additional couplet after this.
Hills, palaces, mechanical contrivances (gaṇṭaka), shields, armours, banner-staffs and the various weapons are known as lifeless objects (aḥrāṇī).  

Lifeless objects in human form

But whenever necessary (lit. due to a reason) they may assume a human form with [suitable] dress and speech according to the dramatic convention (yāṣya-atthama).

Painting the limbs

After learning the rule of making colours one should paint the limbs [of the dramatis personae] in keeping with their habitation, birth and age.

Colours for gods

Gods as well as the Yaksas and the Apsarasas should be painted reddish yellow (gaṇḍa), and Rudra, Arka (the Sun) Dravīḍa (Brahman) and Skanda are to have the colour of gold.

Soma (the Moon), Bhṛṇḍapati. Śukra, Varuṇa and the stars, the ocean, the Himālaya, and Gaṅgā (the Ganges) are to be made white in colour.

Aṅgāraka [Maṅgala = Mars] should be painted red and Budha and Hutaśana (Agni) yellow and Narāyaṇa and Nara as well as Viśvākara should be dark blue (śāyāma).

Colour for demi-gods

The Daityas, the Dānavas, the Rākṣasas, the Guhyakas, the Piśācas, gods of hills, and the sky are dark blue in colour.

The Yaksas, the Gandharvas, the Bhūtas, the Pannagas (Nāgas), the Vidyādharas, the Pīṭras and the monkeye are of various colours.

82 (C.86b-87a; K.XXI.71). 1 Read ṛṇḍāṇa.
83 (C.87b-88a; K.XXI.72).
84 (C.86b-89a, K.XXI.73).
85 (C.89b-90a; K.XXI.74). 1 Read rudrāraṇakaḍruhina (K.) for rudrāraṇa sadṛukshaḥ (C.).
86 (C.90b-91a; K.XXI.75).
87 (C.91b-92a, K.XXI.76).
88 (C.92b-93a; K.XXI.77). 1 Presiding deity of hills (Ag.).
89 (C.93b-64a; K.XXI.78).
90 (C.94b-95a, K.XXI.79).
Colours for human beings in different regions

90. Human beings who dwell on the Seven Continents (cepālaśīpā) are to be painted in the colour of burnished gold.

91. But among the inhabitants of Jambudvīpa where men of various colours live, every one except those who dwell in the North Kuru region should be given the colour of gold.

92. People of Bhadrāśva\(^1\) should have the white colour of their body, and so should those of Ketumāla. But those of other Continents should be made reddish yellow (gurva) in colour.

Colours for Bhūtas and dwarfs

93. Bhūtas and the dwarfs are known to be of various colours. They possess odd faces and may have faces of bears, rams, buffaloes and deer as well\(^1\).

Colours of different peoples of Bhārata-varṣa

94. Listen now about the different colours of the people of Bhārata-varṣa. Kings there should be of lotus colour, or dark blue or reddish yellow [in complexion].

95-96. And the happy mortals there are to be made of the reddish yellow (gurva) colour. Those who practice vile acts, are possessed of evil spirits, diseased or engaged in penance and do not perform sacrifices (yājña) and are of inferior birth, should be made brown (sīla, lit. not fair). And the sages should always be given the colour of plum (padamvarṇa). And such should be the colour of sages observing penance (tapuṣ).

97. But out of any necessity and not according to one’s pleasure, colours of persons may be varied according to the habitation, birth and age.

98. An expert in [dramatic] production should paint persons after knowing their place [of action] and time of action, birth and the region of the earth they dwell in.

---

91 (C.95b-96a; K.XXI.80).
92 (C.96b-97a; K.XXI.81). \(^1\) Read bhadrāśvaḥ.
93 (C.97b-98a; K.XXI.82). \(^1\) K. reads this differently.
94 (C.98b-99a; K.XXI.83). \(^1\) padamvarṇaḥ for pañcavarṇaḥ.
95-96 (C.99b; K.XXI.84-86a). \(^1\) C. omits 95b-96.
97 (C.100; K.XXI.86-87a). 98 (C.101; K.XXI.87b-88a).
Colours of different tribes

99. Kirātas\(^1\), Barbarians\(^2\) (barbara), Andhras\(^3\), Dramilas\(^4\), Kāśis\(^5\), Kosalas\(^6\), Pulindas\(^7\) and the inhabitants of the South (śāsīnātya)\(^8\) are mostly known to be brown (aśīla lit. not white).

100. Śakas\(^1\), Yavanas\(^3\), Pahravas (Pahlavas)\(^3\) and Vāhlikas (Bāhlikas)\(^4\) who dwell in the North should be made almost reddish yellow (guava).

\(^1\) Colours mentioned in this and the following passages probably show that the groups allotted a special colour approximately of the same complexion and not actually of the colour mentioned. These passages seem to give a valuable information about some ethnological features of ancient India. Pre-Aryan people including the Dravidians (Andhras and Dramilas) were not fair in complexion. The separate mention of the Southerners after Andhras and Dramilas (Dravidas) taken along with some Northern tribes like the Kāśis and Kosalas, seem to show that the NS. here records the tradition of their once living in the North. Kirāta—a hill tribe probably living in the Himalayan region; see Mbh. XII. 207, 43.

\(^2\) Barbara—Some non-Āryan tribe mentioned very rarely in Skt. literature (Mbh. XII. 207, 43). This may be a synonym of Mleccha as well.

\(^3\) Andhra—This tribe is well-known in history and literature.

\(^4\) Dramila—Known in Pali (Mahāvaṇḍa) as Damila (modern Tamil).

\(^5\) Kāśi—The tribe after which the ancient kingdom of Kāśi and the city of that name was known.

\(^6\) Kosala—The tribe giving name to the ancient kingdom of Kosala.

\(^7\) Pulinda—An aboriginal people living probably in the Vindhyā region. See Mallinātha on Rāghu. XVI. 32; also Pāṇḍu I.1. and Nyāya I.1.

\(^8\) They may be members of Kol and other tribes living in the South. 100 (C.103, K.XXI.19b-90a). Śaka—Hoard of nomadic tribes from Central Asia who descended on the Indian plains in about 200 B.C.; mentioned in Manu 10, 44.

\(^2\) Yavana—Probably the same as Yona in Aśoka’s edicts. They seem to have been Perso-Greeks and their descendants.

\(^3\) Pahrava (Pahlava)—Usually taken to mean Parthians who annexed the Western Punjab in about 140 A. C.

\(^4\) Vāhlika (Bāhlika)—Inhabitants of the region known as Balkh.

\(^5\) Read यवात् परवान परवान परवान (यवात् परवान परवान, K. यवात् व निवान विवान C.). The tribes mentioned here came from their home in the North-West.
101. Pañcālas, Śūrasenas, Udhras, Māgadhias, Aṅgas; Vaiṅgas and Kalinjas should be made dark or deep blue (śāma) in complexion.

Colours of different castes

102. Brahmins and Kṣatriyas should be always made red (or reddish yellow)¹ and Vaiṣyas and Śūdras dark or deep blue (śāma) in complexion².

Rules for the beard

103. After painting the face and other limbs one should provide beards to persons after considering their habitation, activity and age.

104. The beard according to the change of States of persons should be of four kinds: shaven (śāma)¹, black (śāma)² smartly done (vicitra)³ and bushy (romaśa, lit. hairy)⁴.

¹ Pañcāla tribe is well-known in Mbh.
² Śūrasena—The tribe which once settled around Mathura. It gave its name to the principal Pkt. of the Indian drama (Śūraseri).
³ Udhra (Udra)—The name of a tribe after which the modern Orissa (Odriṣiṣa) has been named. See Mann, 10; 44.
⁴ Māgadha—The tribe after which the ancient country of Māgadha was named.
⁵ Aṅga—The tribe after which the ancient country of Aṅga was named.
⁶ Vaiṅga—The tribe after which the ancient Vaiṅga (South-East Bengal) was named.

102 (C.105; K.XXI.91b-92a). ¹ Red (rakta, C) or reddish yellow colour (gaurā, K) assigned to Brahmins and Kṣatriyas probably show that at one time when the various theatrical conventions crystallised, these two sections of the society still retained their original Indo-Iranian physical features one of which was certainly the colour of their skin. The dark colour of the Vaiṣyas and Śūdras similarly shows in all likelihood that these were not Aryans or Aryans of the pure type. ² See note 1 above.

103 (C.106; K.XXI.92b-93a).

104 (C.107; K.XXI.93b-94a). ¹ Śuddha (śukla, C)—clean-shaven, kyureya sarvada visitam, always treated with razor (Ag.).
² Śvama—ordinarily black in colour; but see above.
³ Vicitra—cut or done in special fashion. Ag. (p.433) on this point says: विसिरत्ःसिताम् तत् भवताम्। तत्र विसिरत्सि। The reading though evidently corrupt seems to give the meaning suggested.
⁴ Romaśa—bushy, romaśam ili yatohpamnams (Ag. I.c.), bushy
105. The beards of religious mendicants (liṅgas) ministers, priests and persons who are indifferent to sensual pleasure or have consecrated themselves for any ritual should be made clean shaved.

106-107. The beards of celestial males such as the Siddhas and the Vidyādharas, kings, princes, officers of the king and persons who are foppish and proud of their youth, should be made smartly done (vicitra) by the producer of plays.

108. The beard of persons who could not fulfil their promises, are sorry and miserable on that account or have been struck with any calamity, should be made black (ūgāma).

109. The beard of sages, ascetics and persons observing a long-standing vow, and of those who are bent on revenge should be made bushy (romaśā).

Rules for different Costumes

110. Thus the beard should be made of different kinds. I shall now speak of costumes suited to different occasions.

111. Drapery suited to different ways of painting limbs may be of many kinds; but generally it is of three varieties: white, red and variegated (vicitra).

means as they are naturally grown. The last three classes do not seem to be mutually exclusive.

105 (C.108; K.94b-96a). 1 Liṅgaṇa—व्रजविविशिष्टकर्मादेशो मयास्त ये पुष्पम् ये तिरच समाखिता द्वारयः (Ag. p.433-434).

2 Madhyastha—मध्यस्त धति भोगवस्तुवस्तुवस्तु प्रवर्यः (Ag. p.434).

3 It is even now the custom among some Hindus is that they shave themselves clean before consecrating themselves for some special kind of daiva and pāitra rites.


1,5. 2 A class of demigods. See Bhartṛhari’s Vair. Śat. 24.

3 Ag. says शैवबौद्धाजां व्रजस्तराजस्तराजाः पूष्पादेशो भास्क (p. 434).

108 (C.111; K.XXI 95).

109 (C.112; K.XXI. 96b-99a). 1 C. reads 109b as व्रजविविशिष्टकर्मादेशो व रोमाश यितीते which seems to be wrong. See above 106 where Siddhas and Vidyādharas have been taken as clean shaven.

110 (C.113; K.99b-100a). 1 C. repeats here 10.

111 (C.115). 1 See above 85ff.

2 K. omits this.
112. Costumes are of three kinds: white, variegated and soiled (*malina*). I shall now explain their difference according to their use by producers.

113-114. In going to the temple of gods, observing some auspicious rite or a vow or at the conjunction of some Tithis and stars (*nakṣatra*) or at the time of marriage\(^1\) or any other sacramental rite, men and women should have white costumes and the same is the rule for a trader (*prāpanika*)\(^2\).

115. Costumes of gods, the Dānavas, the Yaksas, the Gandharvas, the Nāgas, the Rāksasas, kings, and people of foppish nature\(^3\) should be variegated (*citra = vieitra*).

116-117. Costumes of Kaṇecukins (armour-bearer), ministers, leaders of army, priests, the Siddhás, the Vidyādhāras, merchants, adepts in Śāstras, Brahmins. Kṣatriyas, Vaiśyas and kings' officers (*sthāṇiga*)\(^4\) should be made white in a dramatic production.

118. Costumes of lunatics, intoxicated persons, wayfarers and persons struck with calamity should be made soiled (*malinai*).\(^1\)

119. Costumes and decorations of the sages, the Jain (Nirgrantha) and the Buddhist (Śākya) monks, the Trilokis\(^1\) and Brahmins well-versed in the Vedas (*svetārīya*) should be made according to their respective sectarian rules.

120. Costumes of the wandering ascetics (*varicra*), great sages and other ascetics should be made, whenever necessary, with dark red (*kārīya*) cloth\(^1\).

---

112 (C.116; K.XXII. 108b-101a).
113-114 (C.117-118 ; K.XXI. 101b-102a). 1 K. omits. 113. As (p.434) explain śuddha as रूखवायु.\(^5\)

\(^*\) Prāpanika (*C. prāpatnīka, K. pryat, priyat*) see Magh. IV. 11.

116 (C.119; K.102b-103a). 1 Emerd karkāsa into kinniha.\(^6\)
116-117 (C.120-121; K.103b-105a). 1 They were possibly inferior in rank to *pāraśīka* of Aśoka. See B.M. Barua, Inscriptions of Aśoka Pt. II. Calcutta, 1943, p.242.

119 (C.123; K.XXI.108). 1 A sannyāsin who carries three staves tied together and has control over his mind, speech and body. See Manus 12:10. (Ref. Apte). For trīduṇi-śrotiṛgīro, K. reads yatipāsūpateṣu (members of the Pāśupata sect.). 120 (C.134). 1 K. omits this.
121-122. To the Pāṇḍavas should be given a veriegated dress, and costumes of persons of high family should be made according to their position. Besides this the ascetics are sometimes to have the bark of trees and the [animal] skin as their clothing.

122-123. To persons engaged in guarding the harem should be given armour and clothes of dark red (kāśāya) colour. The same should be the dresses of females when they attain special conditions.

124. Costumes of the warriors should be suitable for fighting a battle, and they are to be provided with brilliant weapons, armours, quivers and bows.

125. Kings should always be made to have a many-coloured dress; but when due to ominous appearance of any star (uakṣṭaḥ-pāta) they are engaged in any propitiatory rite their costumes should be white.

126. Thus should be made the dresses of persons (lit. types men and women) of the superior, the middling and the inferior classes according to their age, birth and other conditions (lit. qualities).

127. These are the rules of costumes in a dramatic production according as persons attain different conditions, and practice good or bad deeds.

Use of masks

128. Similarly different masks (pratiśīka) are to be used for gods and men according to their habitation, birth and age.

---

121-122 (C.125, 127a; K.XXI 110b, 109).
122-123 (C.126, 127b; K.XXI. 109b-110a, 111a).
125 (C.129; K.XXI.112b-113a). ¹ मयोपन्यसचरमाय चव्रापि, Ag. (p. 474).
126 (C.130; K.XXI.113b-114a).
127 (C.131; K.XXI.114b-115a).
128 (C.132; K.XXI.115b-116a). ¹ Pkt. padisāsa=Skt. pratiśīka (Karp 1). It is not laid down anywhere whether masks are to be used in all types of plays and for all characters. For a discussion on this see the Introduction.
Three kinds of crown

129. [In the masks] crowns for the gods and kings are of three kinds: Pārśvagata (= Pārśvamauili), Mastakī and Kiriṭī.¹

130. For the gods [in general], the Gandharvas, the Yakṣas, the Pannagas (Nāgas) and the Rākṣasas the crowns of the Pārśvamauili (Pārśvagata) type have been prescribed¹.

131. And the Kiriṭī crown has been prescribed for the superior gods, and the middling gods are to have crown of the Mauili (= Mastakī ?) type, while the common (lit. inferior) gods are to have crowns of the Pārśvamauili¹ type.

132-133. The kings should be given crowns of the Mastakī type. While the Vidyādharas, the Siddhas and Cārāṇas¹ should be provided with crowns made up of locks of hairs (kroṣa-mukṭa).

133-134. The masks of ministers, Kaṭeukins (armour bearer), leaders of the merchants' guild, and priests should be furnished with turbans¹.

134-135. And the masks of the army-leaders (senāpati) and the crown-prince should be combined with a small crown (atitha-mukta, lit. half-crown).

135 136. As for the rest [of persons] the head [in the mask] should be treated in dramatic production in relation to their habitation, birth and age.

136-137. The heads of boys should be adorned with the Śikhaṇḍa¹ and that of the sages should have a crown of matted hair (jaṭā-mukta).

¹ C. omita 129b.
¹ C. omits 130.
¹ C. omits 131.
¹ K. vānarāṇāṃ. Cārāṇas are demi-gods who sing the praise of superior gods. C. reads after this five more hemistichs.

¹ Read veṣṭita-baddha-pāṭaṇi (Veṣṭita-baddha-pāṭāṇi).
¹ Read eśāḥ śikhaṇḍa-bhūṣita.
137-138. The masks of the Rakṣasas, the Dānavaśa and the Yakṣas should be furnished with brown hairs and twany beards.

138-139. The masks of the Piśācas, lunatics, the Bhūtas, spiritual aspirants, ascetics and those who have not yet fulfilled their vows should have long hairs.

Rules of different hairs

139-141. The head [in the mask] of the Buddhists monks (śākyo), experts in Vedic studies (śvātriṅga), the Jain monks (Nir-grantha), wandering ascetics and those who have consecrated themselves for a ceremony should be shaven clean. And according to their [respective] sectarian doctrine (vṛitta) the remaining ascetics should have their heads shaven or should have curling hairs or long hairs loosely hanging down.

141-142. Married women, officers of the king and men of foppish nature should have on their head curling hairs.

142-143. The menials should have three Śikhās on their head or will have the head clean shaven. And the Jester should have a bald head or head with the Kākapāda (lit. crow’s foot).

143-144. Thus after carefully distinguishing these [persons] in different ways, their conditions and nature should be represented by means of ornaments, different costumes and garlands, for giving rise to [proper] Sentiments at the time of production [of a play].

145. After men and women have been treated like this (lit. made to attain these treatments), their limbs will have to be painted to suit their different roles.

(K. śiras triśikha-bhūṣītām: C. na śikhaṇḍa). Śikhaṇḍa means looks of hair left on the sides of the head. These are three or five in case of the Kṣatriyas (vide Apte s.v.)

137-138 (C.143; K.XXI.121). 1 Read rakṣa-dānava-yakṣiyām (C. "dānava-dālīyūnām, K. devadānava").

138-139 (C.144; K.XXI.124).

139-141 (C.145-146). 141-142 (C.147).

142-143 (C.148; K.XXI.126). 1 For kākapāda see Apte s.v.

143-144 (C.149, 150a). 145 (C.150b-151a).
The Sañjīva

146. Now I shall speak of the characteristics of what is known as Sañjīva (= living object). The entrance of animals [in the stage] is called Sañjīva.

147-148. The animals may be fourfooted, two-footed and with no foot (apāda). Of these, serpents are without foot, birds and men are two-footed, and different animals in the forest or human settlements are known to be fourfooted.

Use of weapons

148-149. In fight, angry conflict (sampheṣa) or siege in a play they (people) are to be furnished with different weapons.

149-150. Weapons and armours should be proportionate to the stature of men. I shall now describe them together with the rules for their measurement.

150-151. The Dhālā should measure twelve Talas, the Kunta (javelin) ten and the Śataghni, the Sūla (spike), the Tomaṇa and the Śakti eight.

151-152. The bow should measure eight Talas and its width should be two cubits. Arrows, mace and the Vajra should be four Talas long.

152-153. The sword should measure forty Aṅgulis and the disc (cakra) twelve and the Prāśa the latter’s half.

---

146 (C.151b-152a; K.XXI.128). ¹ This seems to show clearly that sometimes living animals were brought on the stage. This was however not the the general rule. See NB. XIII. 106-107.

147-148 (C.152b-153; K.XXI.129-130a).

148-149 (C.154; K.130b-131a). ¹ Etc means the different types of characters mentioned before.

¹ On this point Ag. (p.434) says: नागामार्होपिनिः शति युद्धायोपिनिः प्रत्ययः। तत्क नागामार्हो वर्णा वनाधिकरित्वा सत्यार्हो महात्रादिति।

149-150 (C.155; K.XXI.131b-132a).

150-151 (C.156; K.XXI.132b-133a). ¹ For the measurement of Tāli see NB. III. 21 note.

151-152 (C.157; K.XXI.133b-134a).

153-154. The Pāṭṭiśa will measure like the Prāsa, and the rod (lāṇḍi) should measure twenty Aṅgulis while the Kampana (Kaṃpā) will be of the same measure.

155-155. The shield (carna) should be sixteen Aṅgulis in width and two cubits in length, and it should have Vāybas (hairs?) and bells attached to it. The Kheṭaka (rider’s shield) should be thirty aṅgulis in width [and two cubits in length].

Use of other objects

156-157. The Jārjara\(^1\), the Dāpḍakāśṭha\(^2\), masks, umbrellas, chowris, banner-staffs, and water-jars (bhṛṇgāra)\(^3\) and every other thing that men make use of, are [also] to be utilised in the production of a play.

158. The characteristics of all these have been mentioned by those to whose sphere they belong. Now I shall speak of the characteristics of the Jārjara and the Dāpḍakāśṭha\(^1\).

Indra’s Banner-staff

159. Trees planted under the Pusya asterism, on the white soil have been made eligible for Indra’s banner-staff by Viṣvakarman\(^1\).

The Jārjara

160. Some of these trees should be [fashioned into] the Jārjara by a carpenter. The branch of a tree may also be [fashioned into] the Jārjara\(^1\).

161. But the bamboo will be most suitable [for this kind of work] and its length should be one hundred and eight Aṅgulis (4½ cubit).

---

153-154 (C.159; K.XXI.135b-136a).
156-157 (C.161b-163a; K.XXI.137b-139a). ¹ See NŚ. III. 73ff.
158 (C.163b-164a; K.XXI.139b). ¹ Emend dānḍa-koṭṭha into dānḍa-koṭṭha.
159 (C.164b-165a; K.XXI.142). ¹ দি বাসামন্তে যন্ত্রিত সপ্ততথ্যাত্ব সপ্তাঙ্গাত্মক রাম; (Ag.434). ¹
160 (C.165b-166a; K.XXI.140b-141a). ¹ See above 157-157 note 1.
161 (C.166b-167a; K.XXI.141b, 143a).
162. It should have five sections and four joints. But its joints should not be very prominent (lit. thick), and it should not have any branch and should not be worm-eaten.

163-164. One should select (lit. take) as the Jarjara a piece of bamboo which is not worm-eaten or inferior to any other piece, after smearing it with honey and ghee and worshipping it regularly with garlands and incense.

164-165. The ceremonies and their order which have been prescribed for [the consecration of] Indra's banner-staff should be observed also in case of the holy bamboo for converting it into the Jarjara.

165-166. It may have long and short sections (parvan). And if after each of these sections a ring [appears] it is called the holy bamboo.

166-167. This is the rule in connexion with the characteristics of the Jarjara. I shall hereafter speak of that of the Danḍakāśṭha.

The Danḍakāśṭha

167-168. The Danḍakāśṭha should always be made of the Bilva or the Kapiththa tree or the bamboo. It should be carved and have three hants and should have [good] characteristics.

168-169. That which is neither worm-eaten nor diseased and has small (lit. poor) branches, is called the Danḍakāśṭha.

169-170. He who will get fashioned the Jarjara and the Danḍakāśṭha devoid of the said characteristics, will certainly sustain a great loss.

162 (C.167b-168a; K.XXI.143b-144a).
163-164 (C.168b-169; K.XXI.144b-145).
164-165 (C.170; K.XXI.146). ¹ See NŚ. III. 73-75ff.
165-166 (C.171; K.XXI.147). ¹ The reading of K. is corrupt.
166-167 (C.172; K.XXI.148).
² Vakram, K.
168-169 (C.174; K.XXI.150). ¹ Mandāśūkham, K, mandaśūlam, C.
169-170 (C.175; K.XXI.151).
The making of masks

170-171 Similarly one should prepare the Pati of the masks which will have their special measurements or will measure thirty-two Angulis1.

171-173. The Pati should be made by using the Bilvapaste on cloth. Masks should be made with ashes or husks of paddy being mixed up with the Bilvapaste or some watery form of it, after covering these with cloth smeared with the thick Bilva-paste2.

173-174. The Pati made out of cloth smeared with the Bilvapaste should neither be made too thick nor too thin and neither should it be made too soft.

174-175. After getting it (the Pati) dried up by fire or the sun one should pierce holes in it according to the rule, by means of a sharp instrument, and these holes should be made after dividing it into two [equal] halves.

176. In the Pati so prepared an opening six Angulis long and an Anguli wide should be made in the form of the forehead, and it should have [two] angles [at the two end].

177. Then [a pair of] openings two Angulis long and one and a half a Anguli1 wide should be made for the cheeks, and after [this has been done for] the cheeks [another opening] three Angulis more [in length] are be made for the ears.

178. The opening for the ear being three Angulis1 long the same should be the length for the opening of the mouth,

---

170-171 (C.176; K.XXI.159). 1 We follow C. Ag. seems to read sīr̥ṣaḷaḥbhāgūrtham for sīr̥ṣavudānārtham and he explains it as शरीरसायग शति विष्या विष्या इर्षां इर्षां. यति वा विनमित तत् वास्तार्थाय मित्रोऽद्धते, मानिष्य(?)द मनविष्यार्थवै एव अन्तः (p. 435).

171-172 (C.177-178; K.XXI.153-154). 1 This passage seems to be corrupt. The trans. is tentative.

173-174 (C.179; K.XXI.155).

174-175 (C.180-181a; K.XXI.156-157a).

176 (C.181b-182a; K.XXI.157b-158a).

177 (C.182b-183a; K.XXI.158b-159a). 1 Read adhyardham.

178 (C.183b-184a; K.XXI.150b-160a). 1 tryangulam; C. aingulam, K.
and the symmetrical neck (avatī)² should be made twelve Angulis long.

179-180. So much about the rules for the cutting openings in the Paṭi for the mask. Various forms of crowns set with different kinds of jewels are to be set on them.

Other accessories

180-181. And at the production of a play (lit. here) one should use differently in relation to dramatis personae many kinds of accessories (upakaraṇa) demanded by the art of theatre.

181-182. Now, all the manufactures or crafts that are executed in this world including moving and immobile objects, are to be known as the accessories in [a performance].

182-183. [And to obtain them] one is to go to persons on whose special knowledge (lit. in whom) they depend. For [obtaining] such accessories in a dramatic production men have no other means.

183-184. The measurement and description of an object depend on a person who is [professionally] to make it or to devise it through his [special] art.

184-185. Large objects which require much iron are not favoured by us on the stage; for their heaviness creates fatigue [in actors].

185-186. Imitation of any object which exists in this world full of living beings, in different varieties may be included in the accessories [to be used] in the performance of a drama.

186-187. But palaces, houses and vehicles though these are accessories [for the performance] cannot be produced for the stage realistically (lit. in due manner).

² Tatas ca vānaśaḥ for tatas ca vāṇaśaḥ, C. tatas ca vīyai, K.
179-180 (C.184b-185; K.XXI.160b-161).
180-181 (C.186; K.XXI.162).
182-183 (C.188; K.XXI.164).
184-185 (C.190; K.XXI.166).
186-187 (C.192; K.XXI.168).
The realistic and conventional objects

187-188. Some accessories [however] will be realistic (lokadharmi), while others will be conventional (nātyadharmi). Any thing following its natural form is called realistic while any deviation from the same will be known as conventional.

188-189. Accessories for use on the stage should not be made with stone as well as iron and other metals, for these due to their heaviness will create fatigue [in actors].

189-190. Light objects should be made with lac, wood, leather, cloth, leaves [of trees] and sliced bamboo, for their use as accessories in a dramatic production.

190-192. Skeleton frames of armours, shields, banner-staffs, hills, palaces, gods, caves, horses, elephants, aerial cars, and houses should first be made with pieces of sliced bamboo and then by covering such frames with painted cloth, likenesses of such objects are to be produced.

192-193. But if it is not found possible to use cloth suitably for this purpose then palm-products¹ and mats (kāñji)² may also be used instead.

193-194. Similarly weapons are to be made with grass and pieces of sliced bamboo, and with lac and Bhenḍa (Bhāṇḍa)³ other objects should be represented.

194-195. Imitation legs, heads and skin should be made with grass, mat and Bhenḍa (Bhāṇḍa).

195-196. Various articles should [thus] be made with earth in imitation of their proper forms.

196-197. Various hills and shields, armours, banner-staffs

---

¹ Tākayair iti tālapatraiḥ (Ag. p.435).
² Read kaliṣ ḫair for kaliṣair.
³ Bhenḍa K, bhāṇḍa C, bhāṇḍa (क)।
are to be made with Bhṛpḍa (Bṛḍḍa), cloth, bees-wax, lac and sheets of mica.

197-198. And fruits and flowers growing in various regions and the various vessels should be made with lac.

Making of ornaments

198-200. Ornaments should be made with Bhṛpḍa (Bṛḍḍa), cloth, bees-wax thin copper sheets and mica sheets of blue as well as other colours, and their basis should be polished copper (sheets).

200-201. The different kinds of crowns of which I spoke before, should be made dazzling with pieces of mica [set on them], so that they may shine like jewels.

201-202. In cases of [all] these objects instructions given in the Śāstras [for their making] have not been mentioned. Here one must act according to the directions of the Ācārya and be guided by relevant reasoning.

202-203. This is the rule of action regarding the future mortals, (that should be adopted in dramatic production). Because want of sufficient strength will occur in men [of the future generation].

203-204. Mortals of poor strength should not make any undue physical exertion, and hence it is not desirable that their crowns or ornaments should be made with gold and jewels.

204-205. For in battle, personal combat, dance and casting glances a persons burdened with heavy weight will feel fatigue and may even faint.

205-206. When the actor is overcome with pain or fatigue or is fainting his performance is spoilt. One may even endanger his life by making movements with difficulty under such conditions.
206-207. Hence ornaments are to be made with thin sheets of copper, coloured sheets of mica, Bhêñḍâ (Bhêñḍa) and bees-wax.¹

207-208. Thus by following the popular practice or exercising one’s own discretion one is to make properly theatrical accessories.

Use of weapons on the stage

208-209. No missile should be released on the stage and no weapon should pierce or strike anyone. They should simply touch a spot, and the weapons are to be used only to make a gesture [of an attack].¹

209-210. One should release missiles on the stage with skill or with skill and cleverness [so that they do not hurt].¹

210-211. Any [relevant] instruction which I may have omitted regarding the present topic, is to be gathered from the popular usage (lit. people). This is all about the Extraneous Representation that I was to tell you. I shall hereafter speak of the Basic Representation on the stage (sāṁāyāyābhāvinayā).

Here ends chapter XXIII of Bharata’s Natyaśāstra, which treats of the Extraneous Representation.

206-207 (C.210a-211a; K.XXI.186b-187a). ¹ We follow K.
207-208 (C.211b-212a; K.XXI.187b-188a).
209-209 (C.212b-213a; K.XXI.189b-189a). ¹ We follow K.
209-210 (C.213b-214a; K.XXI.189b-190a). ¹ C. reads additional hemistich after this.
210-211 (C.214c-215; K.XXI.190b-191).
CHAPTER TWENTYFOUR.

THE BASIC REPRESENTATION

Importance of Temperament

1. The Basic Representation (sānānyābhinaya)\(^1\) is known to depend on the Words, Gestures and Temperament (sattva). [Among these] one should take special care about Temperament,\(^2\) for the dramatic production has this as its basis.

2. The Histrionic Representation with an exuberant Temperament (sattvātirikta) is superior, the one with the level Temperament (samassattva) is middling, and that with no [exercise of] Temperament is inferior.

The definition of Temperament

3. Temperament (sattva)\(^2\) is something invisible, but it gives support (lit. shelter) to the States and the Sentiments by means of horripilation, tears and similar other signs displayed in proper places and in harmony with the Sentiments [to be produced].

Feminine graces in the drama

4-5. The dramatic experts know the young women’s Graces (alaṃkāra, lit. ornament) to be the support of Sentiments in a drama\(^3\), and these consist of changes in respect of their faces and other limbs. Of these, firstly the change of limbs (ayāja)\(^2\) is of

---

1 (C.1; K.XXXII.1). \(^1\) Ag. seems to have no very convincing explanation as to why sānānyābhinaya was so called. He discusses it from different points of view (pp. 436-430). From the contexts of this Chapter as well as the def. given here and in 72 below, it appears that the expression means a totality of the four kinds of abhinaya (N Ś. VI. 23) and as such it should be distinguished from the citrābhinaya (N Ś.XXVI) which applies only to the pictorial representation of particular objects and ideas. \(^2\) See N Ś. VI. 22 note.

2 (C.2; K.XXXII.2).

3 (C.3; K.XXXII.3). \(^1\) See N Ś. VI.22 note.

4-5 (C. 4-5; K.XXXII.4-5). \(^1\) K. reads 4a as जयाक्षांलो यज्ञवल्क्य तदारम्भम् \(\text{Cf. DR. II. 30a; BhP. p.6.1.20 ; ND. p. 203.}\) \(^2\) See DR. II. 30b ; ND. p. 203.
three kinds, next the natural (sañhāra)\(^3\) change of ten kinds, and involuntary (a-yatunāja)\(^4\) change, of seven kinds.

Physical Graces of women

6. Feeling (bhāra), Emotion (hāra) and Passion (helā) arising from one another being different aspects of Temperament (sattva) [are Graces] connected with the physical nature\(^1\).

The origin of these Graces

7. Temperament partakes of the nature of the body, and feeling (bhāra) arises from Temperament, while Emotion (hāra) from Feeling, and Passion (helā) from Emotion\(^1\).

Feeling

8. See Nā. VII. 2. Cf. [Feeling (bhāra) is the first touch of emotion in a nature that was previously unaffected. DR. II. 33].\(^1\)

Emotion

9. Temperament with excessive Feeling (bhāra) [manifests itself] in relation to persons of the opposite sex. And Emotion (hāra) should be marked as relating to its various conditions.\(^1\)

10. In the same connexion (lit. there) Emotion (hāra) should be known as arising from the mind (citta) and manifesting itself in changes of eyes and eye-brows and the Reaca of the neck, indicative of the Erotic Sentiment.\(^1\)

Passion

11. Everyone’s Emotion which depends on the Erotic Sentiment and expresses itself as graceful movements (lalitābhinuyā) is called Passion (helā) by the wise.\(^1\)

\(^3\) See DR. II. 32-33a; ND. p. 203. 
\(^4\) See DR. II. 31; ND. p. 203.

6 (C.6; K.XXII.6). \(^1\) Cf. DR. II. 30b.
7 (C.7; K.XXII.7). \(^1\) Cf. DR. II. 33b-34b.
8 (C.8; K.XXII.8). \(^1\) Cf. DR. II. 33b; ND. p.204. BhP. p.8. l4-10.
9 (C.9; K.XXII.9). \(^1\) See below 10. note 1. K. reads 9a as महाभावाकर्म व कृत्तिप्रमत्तवा व कृत्तिप्रमत्तवा.
10 (C 10; K.XXII. 10). \(^1\) According to ND. (p.204) the bhāra relates to a slight manifestation of erotic feelings through words and gestures, while the hāra to a very clear expression of one’s emotion through various gestures.
The Natyasastra

Natural Graces of women

12-13. The ten natural Graces (alaṅkāra) of women are: Sportive Mimicry (līlā), Amorous Gesture (vilāsa), Dishabille (vicchitti), Confusion (vibhrama), Hysterical Mood (kilākīci/a), Manifestation of Affection (mūtāgīta), Pretended Anger (kuṭāambi/a), Affected Coldness (bhībha), Lolling (lalita) and Want of Response (vīrāta).\(^1\)

Sportive Mimicry

14. Imitating the behaviour of a lover by means of relevant words, gestures and make-up (alaṅkāra, lit. ornament) which are delightful and inspired by affection, is called Sportive Mimicry (līlā).\(^2\)

Amorous Gestures

15. Relevant changes of the special kind relating to the standing and sitting postures as well as to gait and the movements of hands, eye-brows and eyes, [which occur at the sight of the beloved] are called Amorous Gestures (vilāsa).\(^2\)

Dishabille

16. The great beauty that results from the slightly careless placing of garlands, clothes, ornaments and unguents, is called Dishabille (vicchitti).\(^1\)

Confusion

17. Inversion of various items such as words, gestures, dresses, and make-up and Temperament due to intoxication, passion and joy, is called Confusion (vibhrama).\(^2\)

---

ND. (pp.204-205) these three aspects of women's Temperament depend on one another. For example the āvana depends on the bhīvā and the kēla on the āvana.

12-13 (C.12-13; K.XXII.12-13). 1 DR. II. 37b; BhP. p. 9, l. 5. ND. p. 205.

14 (C.14; K.XXII.14). 1 Cf. DR. II. 37b; BhP. p. 9, l. 5; ND. p. 205.

15 (C.15; K.XXII.15). 1 Cf. DR. II. 38a, BhP. p. 9, l. 6-7, p. 205.

16 (C.16; K.XXII.16). 1 The word is Pkt. in form and comes probably from vikṣipti. Cf. DR. II. 38b; BhP. p. 9, l. 8-9; ND. p. 205.

17 (C.17; K.XXII.17). Cf. DR. II. 39a; BhP. p. 9, l. 10-11. ND. p. 205.
Hysterical Mood

18. Combination of isolated states of smiling, weeping, laughter, fear, sickness, fainting, sorrow and fatigue on account of excessive joy, is called Hysterical Mood (kiliḥkīṇīta).¹

Manifestation of Affection

19. Manifestation of Affection (mālaṇā) occurs through Sportive Mimicry (līlā), Amorous Gesture (cilāsa) and the like, when at the mention of the beloved, one is being absorbed in thought of him.²

Pretended Anger

20. Pretended Anger (bhūtaṇīta) arises on account of the joy and perplexity in [lover’s] touching the hair, the breast, the lip and the like, and it is feigning distress when actually there is delight.³

Affected Coldness

21. The indifference which women show [to their lovers] on account of vanity and pride, after they have realised their cherished desire (i.e. conquering the lover’s heart), is called Affected Coldness (bibboka).³

Lolling

22. Graceful movement of hands, feet, brows, eyes, lips etc. made by women is known as Lolling (loliṭa).³

Want of Response

23. That due to bashfulness, pretence and nature women do not make any reply [to her lover] even when they have heard his words, is called Want of Response (vilīṭa).³

¹ Cf. DR. II. 39b; BhP. p. 9, l. 1-12. ND. p. 206.
² Cf. DR. II. 40a; BhP. p. 9, l. 13-14; ND. p. 206.
³ Cf. DR. II. 40b; BhP. p. 9, l. 15-16; ND. p. 206.
⁴ Cf. DR. II. 41a; BhP. p. 9, b. 17-18; ND. p. 285-206.
⁵ Cf. DR. II. 41b; BhP. p. 9, l. 19-20; ND. p. 206.
⁶ Cf. DR. II. 42a; BhP. p. 9, l. 21-22; ND. p. 206.
Involuntary Graces of women

24. The Involuntary [Graces] are: Beauty (śobha), Charm (kāti), Delicacy (madhurya), Radiance (dīpti), Self-control (dhrīrya), Courage (prāgalbya) and Dignity (andārya).¹

Beauty

25. Decoration of limbs on account of good physical form, youth and loneliness being rendered manifest after the enjoyment [of love], is called Beauty (śobha).¹

Charm

26. Beauty which is full of a lover's passion, is called Charm (kāti).¹

Radiance

A high degree of charm, is called Radiance (dīpti).⁹

Delicacy

27. Moderation in the movement [of limbs] in all conditions, especially in Radiance (dīpti) and in Lolling (lalita), is called Delicacy (madhurya).¹

Self-control

28. A natural bent of the mind which in all matters is free from rashness and boasting, is called Self-control (dhrīrya).¹

Courage

29. The quality of not becoming agitated in speaking, or acting anything [lit. in practice], is called Courage (prāgalbya).¹

---

¹ Cf. DR. II. 31.
² Cf. DR. II. 35a; BhP. p. 8. l. 15-16; ND. p. 207. This def. seems to mean that a young woman's loneliness is augmented after she has had her first experience of love's enjoyment and this augmented loneliness is called śobha.
³ Cf. DR. II. 36a; BhP. p. 8. l. 17-18; ND. p. 207.
⁴ Cf. DR. II. 36a; BhP. p. 8. l. 19; ND. p. 207.
⁵ Cf. DR. II. 37a; BhP. p. 8. l. 21; ND. p. 207.
⁶ Cf. DR. II. 36b; BhP. p.8, l. 22; ND. p. 207.
Dignity

Courteous bearing in all situations is called Dignity (audāryā)\textsuperscript{2} by the wise.

30. These [Graces] are tender in connexion with performance of delicate nature, but [in other cases] they (i.e. the Graces) except Amorous Gesture (vīlāsa)\textsuperscript{3} and Lolling (lalīta)\textsuperscript{2} are brilliant (depta)\textsuperscript{3}.

Eight aspects of the male Temperament

31. Brilliant Character (śobhā), Graceful Bearing (vīlāsa), Self-possess (mādhurya), Steadiness (sthairya), Gravity (gāmbhīrya), Sportiveness (lalīta), Nobility (audārya) and Spirit (tejā) are the different aspects of the male Temperament\textsuperscript{1}.

Brilliant Character

32. Skill [in various things], heroism, and energy, aversion to mean acts and emulation of the best virtues constitute Brilliant Character (śobhā, lit. beauty)\textsuperscript{1}.

Graceful Bearing

33. Eyes moving straight, gait graceful like that of a bull, and smiling words constitute Graceful Bearing (vīlāsa)\textsuperscript{1}.

Self-possess

34. If due to a [long] practice [in this direction] one's sense-organs retain their firmness even when great changes of the natural state have occurred, it is called Self-possess (mādhurya, lit. sweetness)\textsuperscript{1}.

Tenacity

35. Not relinquishing any undertaking relating to duty,

\textsuperscript{2} Cf. DR. II. 36b, BhP. p.8' l. 20-22 ND. p. 297.
30 (C-30; K.XXII.30). \textsuperscript{1} See above 15.
\textsuperscript{3} See above 22.
31 (C-31; K.XXII.31). \textsuperscript{3} See above 26.
32 (C-32; K.XXII.32). \textsuperscript{1} Cf. DR. II. 10, BhP. p. 9, l.24; p. 10, l. 1; ND. p. 197.
33 (C-33; K.XXII.33). \textsuperscript{1} Cf. DR. II. 11a; BhP. p. 10, l. 2-3; ND. p. 197.
34 (C-34; K.XXII.34). \textsuperscript{1} Cf. DR. II. 11b; BhP. p. 10, l. 5; ND. p. 197.
35 (C-35; K.XXII.35).
wealth and enjoyment, irrespective of its good or bad results, is called a Tenacity (sthairya).\(^1\)

Gravity

36. Gravity (gāmbhirya) is something due to an influence of which [outward] changes in cases of anger, joy and tear do not occur.\(^1\)

Sportiveness

37. Erotic movements and changes [of features] which are not deliberate and which grow out of a tender nature, constitute Sportiveness (lakitu).\(^1\)

Nobility

38. Making gifts, bestowing favours and speaking sweet words to others as well as to one’s own men, is called Nobility (udārya).\(^1\)

Spirit

39. That one does not tolerate even at the risk of one’s life any reproach or insult made by others, is called Spirit (kojā).\(^1\)

Histrionic Representation through the body

40. O the best of Brahmans, I have spoken before about the Histrionic Representation through Temperament (sattva), I shall now explain in detail the Histrionic Representation through the body.\(^2\)

---

\(^1\) DR. II. 13a; BhP. p. 10,16 gives the term as dhairya, ND. p. 198.

36 (C.36; K.XXII.36). \(^1\) Cf. DR. II. 12b; BhP. p. 10, l. 7; ND. p. 198.

37 (C.37; K.XXII.37). \(^1\) Cf. DR. II. 14a; BhP. p. 10, l. 8; ND. p. 198.

38 (C.38; K.XXII.38). \(^1\) Cf. DR. II. 14b; BhP. p. 10, l. 10; ND. p. 197.

39 (C.39; K.XXII.39). \(^1\) Cf. DR. II. 13b; BhP. p. 10, l. 10; ND. p. 197.

40 (C.40; K.XXII.40). \(^1\) See above l-39.

\(^2\) It is curious that the author of the N Ś is classifying abhinaya in a different manner and reckons its two broad classes: sāttvika and ēśārika and gives their sub-divisions. For a four-fold division of the abhinaya see N Ś. VI. 23.
41. This is sixfold: Words (vākyas), Sūcī, Aṅkura, Śākā, Nāṭyāyita and Nivṛttyaṅkura.  

Words

42. Recitatives in Sanskrit and Prakrit composed in verse or prose when they possess meanings giving various Sentiments, constitute the Histrionic Representation by Words.  

Sūcī

43. When the meaning of a sentence or the sentence [itself] is indicated first by Temperament and Gestures, and then the Verbal Representation is made, it is called Sūcī.  

Aṅkura

44. When one skillfully represents by Gestures in the manner of the Sūcī the words which one has in one's heart, it is called the Representation of Aṅkura.

Śākā

45. The representation that is made in due order by the head, the face, shanks, thighs, hands and feet in the manner of the Śākā(?), is known as the Śākā Representation.

Nāṭyāyita

46. The intimation of Histrionic Representation which is made at the beginning of a drama by [different] practices, for enlivening the time, and which lasts till the coming together of the dramatis personae on the stage is called Nāṭyāyita.

47. The Histrionic Representation of Dhrūvas relating to the States and the Sentiments which are made by means of


42 (C.42; K.XXII.42). 1 This seems to be the same as the vācikābhīnaya.

43 (C.43; K.XXII.43). 1 This kind of representation is mainly to accompany songs and dance.

44 (C.44; K.XXII.44). 1 This kind of representation is meant to be combined with dance.

45 (C.45; K.XXII.45). 1 This kind of representation is to accompany recitatives (pāṭhya).

46 (C.46; K.XXII.46). 1 This is the use of gestures in connection with songs and dance before the beginning of the dramatic performance.

47 (C.47; K.XXII.47).
delineating joy, anger, grief and the like, is also to be known as Nātyāyita.  

Nivṛṭtyaṅkura

48. When one represents words of another person by Śiśa it is called Nivṛṭtyaṅkura.  

Twelve forms of the Verbal Representation

49-51. These are the [histrionic] ways connected with proper States and Sentiments that are available for the subject-matter of plays. The representation of these, is to take the following twelve forms: Accosting (āḍāpa), Pratting (pralāpa), Lament (vīlāpa), Repeated Speaking (ānulāpa), Dialogue (samplāpa), Change of Words (āpalāpa), Message (sāuleśa), Agreement (avileśa), Command (nivileśa), Pretext (cāpalēśa), Instruction (napalēśa) and Statement (āpalēśa).  

Accosting

52. Accosting (āḍāpa) is a sentence used in addressing [any one].

Pratting

Irrelevant (lit. meaningless) words are called Pratting (pralāpa).  

Lament

53. Words originating in a pathetic condition are called Lament (vīlāpa).  

Repeated Speaking

Speaking again and again on anything is called Repeated Speaking (ānulāpa).  

Dialogue

54. Dialogue (samplāpa) is made up of utterance and counter-utterance.
Change of Words

Change of words (apalāpa)\(^2\) is the alteration of words spoken before.

Message

55. "Speak this to him", is [an example of] Message (śabdāra)\(^1\).

Agreement

Saying "You have said what was uttered by me" is [an example] of Agreement (utidrāśa)\(^2\).

Command

56. "I alone am speaking", is [an example] of Command (nirudāśa)\(^1\).

Pretext

To speak with the purpose of deception, is called Pretext (vyapādāra)\(^2\).

Instruction

57. To say "Do this" or "Take this" is [an example] of Instruction (upādāśa)\(^1\).

Statement

∗ ∗ ∗ is [an example of] Statement (apadeśa)\(^2\).

Another classification of the Verbal Representation

58. These are the forms [of sentences] that are to create the Verbal Representation. I shall speak [hereafter] of the characteristics of the seven forms which it may have.

59. [A sentence may contain a statement which] treats an act visible (pratyakṣa) or invisible (parokṣa); it may relate

\(^1\) See ibid p. 11, l. 5.
\(^2\) Cf. BhP. p. 11, l. 6.
\(^3\) Cf. BhP. p. 11, l. 7.
\(^4\) Cf. BhP. p. 11, l. 8.
\(^5\) Cf. ibid p. 11, l. 11.
\(^6\) Cf. BhP. p. 11, l. 9.
\(^7\) Cf. BhP. p. 11, l. 10.
\(^8\) The texts omit the def. of apadeśa, which is given by BhP. (p. 11, l. 10) and is as follows: यस्याद्विदम् यथा सोऽयस्मात् विन विन.
\(^9\) (C.57a; K.XXII.56a.)
\(^10\) (C.57bc; K.XXII.57).
\(^11\) (C.58; K.XXII.58).
to the present, past or future time; it may affect one's ownself (atmāsthā) or another (parastha).

60. "O this [person] is speaking and I am not speaking" is a statement which treats a visible act (pratyakṣa), affects another person (parastha) and relates to the present time.¹

61. "I am doing, or going or speaking" is a statement which affects one's ownself, relates to the present time and treats a visible act.

62. "I shall do, go or speak" is a statement which affects one's ownself, treats an invisible act and relates to the future time.

63. "All my enemies have been killed by me", is a statement which affects one's ownself as well as others, and relates to the past time.

64. "[The enemies] have been killed by thee", is a statement which treats an invisible act, affects others, and relates to the past time.

65. "This [person] is speaking, doing or going", is a statement which affects another, relates to the present time and treats a visible act.¹

66. "He is going or doing" is a statement which affects another, relates to the present time and treats a visible act.¹

67. "They will do, go or speak", is a statement which affects others, relates to the future time and treats an invisible act.¹

68. "That work is to be done today by me together with you", is a statement which affects one's ownself as well as another and relates to the present time.¹

69. Anything that is spoken on the stage (lit. in drama) under the cover of the hand, will affect one's ownself, relate to something at one's heart or will relate to an invisible (parokṣa) act.

---

¹ K. omits this.

60 (C.59).  61 (C.60; K.XXII.59).
64 (C.63; K.XXII.62).  65 (K.XXII.63).  ¹ C. omits this.
66 (K.XXII.64ab).  ¹ C omits this.
67 (K.XXII.64c-65a).  ¹ C omits this.
68 (C.64).  ¹ K. omits this.  69 (C.65; K.XXII.66b-67a).
70. The seven forms of this (i.e., Verbal Representation) will have many more varieties when they will be modified according to time, and persons who are affected (lit. of the self and others).

71. These are the ways of the Histrionic Representation, known to producers of a drama. Different kinds of representations are to be made through these.

The Basic Representation

72. The Basic Representation (sāmānyābhikarṇa) is that which is made simultaneously by the head, the face, the feet, the thighs, the shanks, the belly and the waist.

73. Experts in acting are to represent [a character] by graceful movements of hands and delicate efforts of limbs [in general], which are to delineate the Sentiments and the States.

Regular Histrionic Representation

74-75. The acting (lit. drama) which is [performed] by physical efforts which are not violent, hurried or complex and which rest on proper tempo (laya), time (lālā) and the measurement of Kalās, and in which words are distinctly uttered without harshness and hurry, is called “regular” (ābhyaṇṭara).

Irregular Histrionic Representation

76. When it is of the opposite kind and observes free movements and is not in harmony with songs and instrumental music accompanying it, is called “irregular” (bāhya).

77. It is called “regular” (ābhyaṇṭara, lit. inner) when it conforms to the rule (lit. within the lāksana or rule) and ‘irregular’ (bāhya, lit. outside) when it is outside [the prescription] of the Śāstra.
Lakṣaṇa defined

78. As a performance is lakṣya or marked, it is called lakṣaṇa (characteristic mark). Hence it is of use in a drama.

Practice preferred to the Śāstra

76. Those who have not received training from (lit. lived with) any master (āvārya) or who have no access to the Śāstras, resort to the “irregular” [ways], which depend on merely the practices [of the stage]¹.

Representation of the sensual perception

80. A wise [actor] should represent sound, touch, form, taste and smell by the sense-organs concerned, and by Gestures delineating their objects¹.

Sound

81. By making a sidelong (ṣāvat) glance, bending the head sideways and putting a hand near the ear, one should represent the sound (śabda).

Touch

82. By slightly narrowing down the eyes, raising the eyebrows in the like manner as well as by touching the shoulder and the cheek, the wise one should represent the touch (sparśa).

Form

83. By holding on the head the Patāka hand with its fingers slightly moving, and looking intently [at something] with eyes, the wise one is to represent the form (vūja).

Taste and Smell

84. By slightly narrowing down the eyes and expanding the nostrils in the like manner as well by intently gazing [at something] the wise one is to represent the taste (rasa) and the smell (gaṇṭha).

---

¹ Read the couplet as "पञ्चाशर्ताविनु स भव । अपूर्वशिलान्तशुष्क्काः। जागे ते तु प्रसोधां संसाराविश्वात्। संसाराविश्वात्। तत् जागे ते तु प्रसोधां संसाराविश्वात्।" This shows that the ancient India's artists did not follow the Śāstras slavishly. See also ŚN, VIIIff.

80 (C.76; K.XXII.75b-76a).
81 (C.77; K.XXII.76b-77a).
82 (C.78; K.XXII.77b-78a).
83 (C.79; K.XXII.78b-79a).
84 (C.80; K.XXII.79b-80a).
85. These are the gestures which arise from the activities of the five sense-organs such as skin, eyes, nose, tongue and ears.

Importance of the mind

86. When an object of a sense-organ is contemplated in mind it gets represented [outwardly]. A person out of his mind cannot know the object of senses which come through five sources.

The three aspects of the mind

87. With reference to the representation, the mind has three attitudes [towards objects], e.g., favourable (iśā), unfavourable (an-iśā) and indifferent (madhyastiśā).

The favourable mind

88. Everything favourable should be represented by the happy movement of limbs, horripilation and the opening of the mouth.

89. In case of a favourable sound, form, touch, smell or taste, one should show a happy face by concentrating the senses [concerned] in mind.¹

The unfavourable mind

90. By turning the head, not using the eyes and keeping them fixed to the nose, one should represent whatever is unfavourable.

The indifferent mind

91. An indifferent attitude should be represented by expressing not too much delight or to much abhorrence, and by keeping oneself in the middling state.

92. The representation of words like "[It is done] by him", "It is his", or "He does this" which relate to invisible acts is [an example of] indifferent attitude.

The meaning of "personal"

93. The object which a person himself feels is called "personal" (atmastiśa).

---

¹ The expression used is indrīyair manasū prūptair, 'by means of senses coming together with the mind'.
The meaning of "external"

And anything which is to be described by another is called "external" (parastha).

Desire

94-95. Almost all the States proceed from passion which combined with desire will be considered as having many forms such as, desire for virtue (dharma-kāma), desire for wealth (artha-kāma) and desire for liberation (mokṣa-kāma).

Love

95-96. The union of a man and a woman is called love (kāma). This love which may end in joy or sorrow for all people, is mostly to be observed as leading to happiness even in unpappy situations.

Erotic Affair

97. The union of men and women which finds them sexually united is known as an Erotic Affair (śrigām). This benefits the two, and brings them happiness1.

98. In this world people always desire happiness of which women are indeed the source. These women are of various nature1.

Various types of women

99-100. Women are known to possess the nature of gods, Asuras, Gandharvas, Rakṣasas, Nāgas, birds, Piśācas, Yakṣas, tigers, men, monkeys, elephants, deer, fish, camel, Makara, asses, horses, buffaloes, goats, cows and the like1.

The woman of divine type

101-102. A woman who has delicate limbs, steady and soft looks from the corner of her eyes, is free from any disease, has lustre, munificence, truth and simplicity, emits very little sweat, has

---

94-95 (C.90-91a; K.XXII.99b-99a).
95-96 (C.91; K.XXII.91b-92a).
97 (C.92; K.XXII.92b-93a).  1 C. omits 96.
99-100 (C.94-95; K.XXII.94-96a).  1 See BhP. p. 109, l. 12-15.
middling sexual passion, takes moderate food, loves sweet scent and is engaged in vocal and instrumental music, is known to possess the nature of a goddess\(^1\).

**The woman of Asura type**

103-104. A woman who transgresses laws and practices trickery, is confirmed in anger, very cruel, fond of wine and meat, always irascible [in temper], very proud, fickle-minded, very covetous, harsh, fond of quarrel, jealous and inconstant in affection, is said to possess the nature of an Asura\(^1\).

**The woman of Gandharva type**

105-106. A woman who enjoys roaming in many gardens, is adorned with good nails and teeth, speaks with a smile, is slim-bodied, has a slow gait, loves sexual pleasure, is always pleased to hear music (\textit{gīth} and \textit{rāgāyās}) and to witness dance, is careful about the cleanliness [of the body] and has soft skin, glossy hairs and charming eyes, is known to possess the nature of a Gandharva\(^1\).

**The woman of Rākṣasa type**

107-108. A woman who has large and broad limbs, red wide eyes, hard hairs, loves to sleep in day time, speaks loudly, has the habit of hurting [one] with nails and teeth, is disposed to anger, jealousy and quarrel, and likes to roam at night, is said to possess the nature of a Rākṣasa\(^1\).

**The woman of Nāga type**

109-110. A woman who has a pointed nose and sharp teeth, slender body, reddish eyes, complexion of a blue lotus, is fond of sleep, very irascible, has an oblique (\textit{tiṇyakt}) gait and unsteady efforts, takes pleasure in [the company of] many persons (lit. beings), and loves sweet scent, garlands and similar other objects, is said to possess the nature of a Nāga\(^1\).

\(1\) Cf. BhP. (p. 100, 1.20-22) here this type is called \textit{dātrayāśīlā}.

103-104 (C.98-99; K.XXII.98b-100a).

105-106 (C.100-101; K.XXII.100b-102a).

107-108 (C.102-103; K.XXII.102b-104a).

The woman of bird type

111-112. A woman who has a very large mouth, energetic character, loves streams, enjoys spirituous liquor and milk, has many offsprings, likes fruits, is always given to breathing and is always fond of gardens and forests, is [very] fickle and talkative, is said to possess the nature of a bird.

The woman of Piśica type

113-114. A woman who has more or less than the usual number of fingers, is merciless during sexual acts, has the habit of roaming in gardens and fields, and of terrifying children, is treacherous, speaks with a double entendre, behaves abominably during sexual acts, has a hairy body and loud voice, and is fond of spirituous liquor and sexual indulgence, is said to have the nature of a Piśica.

The woman of Yakṣa type

115-116. A woman who sweats during sleep, loves quiet rest in bed or seat, is [very] intelligent, fearless and fond of wine, sweet smell and meat, takes delight on seeing the beloved one after a long time, feels gratitude [to him], does not sleep for a long time, is said to have the nature of a Yakṣa.

The woman of tiger type

117. A woman who takes honour and dishonour in the same spirit, has a rough skin and harsh voice, is wily, speaks untruth and haughty words and has tawny eyes, is said to have the nature of a tiger (ṛṣa).

The type of human female

118-119. A woman who loves uprightness, is always clever and very virtuous, has regular features (cilīkāḥ), is grateful [to her benefactors], disposed to worship the elders and gods.
always careful about duty as well as material gain, and is free from pride and fond of friend and has a good character, is said to have the nature of a human being.

The woman of monkey type

120-121. A woman who has a compact and small body, is impudent, has tawny hair, is fond of fruits, talkative, fickle, and energetic, loves [to roam about in] trees, gardens and forests, cherishes highly even a small kind act [done to her] and is violent in sexual act, is said to have the nature of a monkey¹.

The woman of elephant type

122-123. A woman who has a large chin and forehead, is fleshy and bulky, has tawny eyes, hairy body, is fond of sweet scent, garlands and wine, has irascible temper, steady energy, loves water, garden, forests, sweet things and sexual intercourse, is said to have the nature of an elephant¹.

The woman of deer type

124-125. A woman who has a small abdomen, flat nose, thin shanks, large red eyes, is fickle, has the habit of quickly going, of taking fright, is timid, fond of songs and instrumental music, is irascible in temper, unsteady in her efforts, is said to have the nature of a deer¹.

The woman of fish type

126. A woman who has long, large and high breasts, is fickle and without any twinkle in her eyes, has many servants and offsprings, has liking for water, is said to have the nature of fish¹.

The woman of camel type

127-128. A woman who has protruding lips, too much sweat, a slightly awkward gait, slender abdomen, is fond of flowers, fruits, salt, sour and pungent tastes, has her waist and sides loosely bound, speaks harsh and cruel words, has a high and rough neck, is said to have the nature of a camel¹.

¹ Cf. BhP. p. 111, 1. 5-7.  
⁵ Cf. BhP. p. 111, 1. 15-16.
The woman of Makara type

129. A woman who is cruel and has a large head, a steady neck, a mouth wide open, very loud voice and the habits of fish, is known to have the nature of a Makara.¹

The woman of ass type

130-131. A woman who has a thick tongue and lips, rough skin and harsh words, is violent during sexual acts, impudent, fond of nail-scratches and biting [from her lover], jealous of her co-wives, clever, fickle, slow in her gait, angry by nature and has many offsprings, is known to have the nature of an ass.¹

The woman of swine type

132-133. A woman who has a large back, belly and mouth, hairy and strong body, a very narrow forehead, is fond of ordinary and bulbous roots, has black teeth and ugly face, large thigh and thick hairs, mean habits and many offsprings, is said to have the nature of a swine.¹

The woman of horse type

134-135. A woman who is faithful, has symmetrical sides, thighs, hips and neck, straight and thick hairs, is charming, munificent, mysterious, fickle-minded, sharp-tongued, quickly moving, and disposed to anger and sexual passion, is said to have the nature of a horse.¹

The woman of buffalo type

136-137. A woman who has broad back, bones, teeth, sides, belly, rough hairs, is faithless, turbulent and haters of men, has a slightly broad (lit. raised) mouth, large forehead and hips and is fond of forests and sporting in water, has the nature of a buffalo.¹

The woman of goat type

138-139. A woman who is thin, has small arms and breasts, [almost] motionless red eyes, short hands and feet, is covered with

fine hairs, and is timid, foolish, mad, fond of forests, restless, swiftly moving, and has many offsprings, is said to have the nature of a goat.

The woman of horse type

140-141. A woman who is alert in eyes and limbs, disposed to yawning [often], is talkative and grateful, has a small beaming face, short hands and feet, loud voice, irascible [temper], and low manners, is said to have the nature of a horse.

The woman of cow type

142-143. A woman who has large, plump and high hips, thin shanks, short hands and feet, is kind to friends, firm in her efforts, favourable to children, engaged in worshipping ancestors and gods, always clean, respectful to superiors, faithful, and patient in her sufferings, is said to have the nature of a cow.

Etiquette towards women

144-145. After knowing a woman's nature one should approach her accordingly. For courteous acts done to a woman according to her nature, even if these are not many, will be pleasing to her, while great many such acts when they are done with an ignorance of her nature (lit. otherwise), will not satisfy her [at all].

145-146. An external love will arise in a woman when she has been courted (lit. looked for) in a proper manner. And certain Etiquette (upacāra) has been prescribed for man and woman in love [with each other].

146-147. Austerities are practiced for the sake of virtue (dharma), and the [acquisition of] virtue is for the purpose of happiness. And happiness has its source in women the enjoyment of whose company is desired [by people in general].

---

140-141 (C.132-133; K.XXII.133b-135a). ¹ This def. seems to be spurious; see 134-135 above.


144-145 (C.136-137a; K.XXII.139b-141a). ¹ See BhP. p.112, L. 14-16.

145-146 (C.137b-138a; K.XXII.141b-142a).

146-147 (C.138b-139a; K.XXII.142b-143a).
Two classes of Etiquette

147-148. In the theatrical convention, Etiquette relating to the [practice of] love (kāmopacāra) of men and woman is of two kinds: external (bāhya) and internal (abhyantara).

148-149. [Of these two], the internal [Etiquette] is to be observed by kings in the Nāṭaka. And the external [Etiquette] is to be observed by courtezans in the Prakarāṇa.

The king's Etiquette towards women

149-150. In this connexion I shall describe in detail the rules of Etiquette for kings in their enjoyment [of women's love], which have been drawn out from (lit. have arisen from) the Aphorisms of Erotics (kāmasūtra)1.

The three classes of women

150-151. Women who have the nature of various beings are of three classes: "homely" (abhyantara, lit. inside) "public" (bāhya, lit. outside) and "mixed" (bāhyābhyantara, lit. outside and inside). A woman belonging to a high family is a "homely" (abhyantara) and a courtezan is a "public" (bāhya) woman.

152. A thoroughly tested (kriṣṇaṇa) woman, if she is a maiden of high family, is of the mixed (bāhyābhyantara) class1.

153. A maiden of high family has no occasion to receive the king's Etiquette, and a public woman is never desired by a king and she does not receive his courtesies1.

154. A king's Union takes place with a "homely" woman, and a common man may unite with a "public" woman, while the king may have Union with a heavenly courtezan [as well]2.

---

147-148 (C 139b-140a; K.XXII.143b-144a).
148-149 (C.140a-141n; K.XXII.144b-145a).
149-150 (C.141b-142a). 1 This work seems to be lost and is not the present sūtra text ascribed to Vātsyāyana. On this see the Introduction.
151 (C.142b 143; K.XXII.145b-146).
152 (C.144; K.XXII.147). 1 K's reading is fragmentary.
153 (C.145). 1 The reason is obvious. K. omits this.
154 (C.146). 1 As in Vikram, K. omits this.
155. The conduct which (lit. that) is approved by [married] women of high family will hold good in case of maidens too. And [in love affairs] a courtezan too [will behave generally] like a lady of high family¹.

The beginning of love

156. Love of the superior, the middling or the inferior kind arises in men and women, from various causes⁴.


158. An expert in this matter should then observe the various indications of love in men and women who desire one another’s company.

159. A woman becomes overpowered with love on seeing a young man who has personal beauty as well as other innate qualities, and has besides the knowledge of various arts and crafts⁴.

Signs of love

160. The glance in which [the eyes are] charming, tearful drooping and eyelashes are throbbing, is called Kāmyā (lit. loving) and it should be used here¹.

161. The glance in which the corner of the eyes are moving and having sportful expressions, is called Lalita (lit. sportive). It is used in women’s partial looks¹.

162. Due to love, one’s voice becomes slightly impasioned, and the face covered with sweat-drops, and hairs in the body stand on their end¹.

---

¹ Cf. संयुक्त आवेम तद्यत्वादिकताविभिन्नतात् etc. KS. IV. 2.1.
⁴ These three kinds of love have been defined by later authors like शारदातानय; see BhP. p. 113, l. 10-14.
¹ K. omits this. 158 (C.150; K.XXII.148a).
¹ K. omits this. 160 (C.152). ¹ K. omits this.
¹ K. omits this. See Nś. VIII.73.
¹ K. omits this. Cf. BhP. p. 113, l. 17-19.
Signs of a courtesan's love

163-165. A courtesan is to be considered overpowered with love when she expresses her passion by casting side-long glances, touching their ornaments, itching the ears, scratching the ground with her toes, showing the breasts and the navel, cleansing the nails and gathering her hairs.\(^1\)

Signs of love in a highborn lady

166-167. Similarly one should know that there are indications [of love] in a woman of high family. These are as follows; she looks continuously with blooming eyes, conceals her smile, speaks slowly and with a down-cast face, gives reply with a smile, conceals her sweats and appearance, has throbbing lips and is trembling.\(^1\)

Signs of a maiden’s love

168. These are the various signs with which a woman not yet having the experience of love’s pleasure (pati) will express her love which has ten stages.\(^4\)

Various stages of her love

169-171. First there will be a longing (abhilāsa), secondly Anxiety (cirāṭa), thirdly Recollection (anusmṛti), fourthly Enumeration of [the beloved one’s] Merits (gupṭakirtana), fifthly Distress (udghata), sixthly Lamentation (vīlāpa), seventhly Insanity (numā-la), eighthly Sickness (vyāvāha), ninthly Stupor (jñātā), and tenthly Death (maratā). These are the stages of love in case of men as well as of women. Now hear about the characteristics of all these.

172. Longing (abhilāsa) arises from efforts born of desire and wish [for the beloved one] and leads to the means of meeting [him].\(^4\)


168 (C.159; K.XXII.158b-154a). \(^1\) BhP. (p.88) gives the number ‘ten or twelve’.

169-171 (C.160-162; K.XXII.154b-157a). \(^1\) Cf. BhP. (p. 88, l. 3-5) gives two more stages (nīcchā and uktayathā). Also cf. KS, V.1-5; NL.2421ff.

172 (C.168; K.XXII.157bc). \(^1\) Cf. NL, 2427; BhP. p. 88, l. 15-16.
173. One goes out of the place [where the beloved one is] or enters it or stays within his sight, and shows signs of amour in the first stage of his love.

Anxiety

174. Anxiety (cīnā) should be indicated by speaking to the female Messenger (ūtā) words such as "By what means and in what manner will there be an Union with (lit. obtaining) of the beloved?"

175. In the second stage [of love] one should look with half-closed eyes and touch the Valaya (bangles), the Raśanā, the Nivi, the navel and the thighs.

Recollection

176. Sighing again and again, thinking deeply of the beloved (lit. desired) person and disliking other engagements, is called Recollection (saṁśrūptik).

177. Being engrossed in thinking of him (i.e., the beloved) one does not attain composure in sitting or lying in bed, and remains without doing one's duty. The third stage [of love] should be expressed like this.

Enumeration of Merits

178. To express by means of sportful movement of limbs, smiles and glance and [other efforts] the idea that 'there is no one else like him', is called Enumeration of [the beloved one's] Merits.

179. The representation [of love] in the fourth stage (i.e. in the Enumeration of Merits) should be made by horipillation

174 (C.165; K.XXII.159). 1 Read samśrūptik (saṁbhṛintik, C; saṁśrūptik, K).
175 (C.166; K.XXII.160). 1 Cf. BhP. p.89, l. 8-5.
176 (C.167; K.XXII.161). 1 Cf. NL.2449; B.P. p. 89, l. 7-8.
177 (C.XXII.76; K.XXII.162). 1 Cf. NL.2449; B.P. p. 89, l. 9-11.
C.'s reading of the portion of this chapter (XXIV.) given in pp. 281 (line 27)-289 (line 3) is merely an unacknowledged copy of K.'s reading of the same. C.'s own reading occurs in pp. 348 (line 14)-355 (line 8) as a part of the chapter XXXI.
178 (C.XXII.77; K.XXII.163). 1 Cf. NL.2456; B.P. p. 89,l. 12-14.
wiping off tears, sweats, and talking confidentially to the female Messenger to relieve the pangs of separation.

**Distress**

180. That one is not satisfied or pleased with sitting or lying in bed and is always eagerly expecting [the beloved one] is the stage of Distress (udvega) in love.

181. By representing anxiety, sighs, lassitude and burning of the heart in an exaggerated manner, one should express the stage of Distress.

**Lamentation**

182. Lamentation (rīlāya) is represented by speaking sorrowfully words such as "He stood here; he sat here, and here he approached me, etc."

183. A lamenting woman is distressed by very eagerly expecting [the beloved one] and out of uneasiness she moves from one place of grief to another.

**Insanity**

184. When a woman is always engaged in talking about him (i.e. the beloved) and hates all [other] males, it is a case of Insanity (unmāda).

185. To represent Insanity one should sometime look with a steadfast gaze, sometimes heave a deep sigh, sometimes be absorbed within oneself and sometimes weep while walking about.

**Sickness**

186. Being devoid of all pleasures of love and of [any] expectation [about them] one gets Sickness (vīdhi).

---

180 (C.XXXI.79; K.XXII.165). ¹ Cf. NL.2.462ff; BhP. p. 89, l. 19-22.
181 (C.XXXI.80; K.XXII.166). ¹ See note of 180 above.
182 (C.XXXI.81; K.XXII.167). ¹ Cf. NL.2.470; BhP. p. 90, l. 1-3.

An example न तथा न च जिवितम्, न तथा न च जिवितम्, न तथा न च प्रविष्टम्, न तथा न च जिवितम्, न तथा न च प्रविष्टम् etc (Svapna 1-15, 2-4).
183 (C.XXXI.82; K.XXII.168). ¹ Cf. BhP. 90, l. 4-8.
184 (C.XXXI.83; K.XXII.169). ¹ Cf. NL.2.484ff; BhP.p.90 l.9-15.
185 (C.XXXI.84; XXII.170). ¹ See above 184 note.
186 (C.XXXI.85; K.XXII.171). ³ BhP. p. 90. l. 16-18. follows K. NL. (2476) has ādaikā (disquietude) which precedes unmāda.
187. To represent Sickness the eighth stage, one is to show that the heart becomes paralysed, the body is in fever, the head aches badly, and one does not have any tranquility.

Stupor

188. In Stupor (jåda sû) one does not respond when questioned, and does not hear or see anything. It is a pathetic condition in which one’s mind is deranged.

189. To represent Stupor one is to utter response (kum) on the wrong occasion, and is to have one’s limbs relaxed and the mouth given to excessive breathing (lit. swallowed by breathing).

Death

190. If even after adopting all the means [available for the purpose] the Union [with the beloved] does not take place, then burnt in the fire of love one’s Death (måraga) takes place.

191. Thus in case of her meeting (lit. getting) the beloved, one should represent, according to the Science of Erotics (kåmantava- lîva), for the Heroine all the stages of love except the last one.

Manifestation of men’s love

192. Even a man separated from his beloved one will thus make a manifestation of his love in diverse ways through different States.

Characteristics of love

193. One should represent men as well as women who are expressing these stages of love by bringing in their common characteristics [in particular stages].

Women separated from the beloved one

194-196. All the stages of love should be represented in diverse ways by anxiety, sighs, lassitude, weariness of the body, and

---

1 Cf. BhP. p. 90, l. 19-22.
2 Cf. NL249ff; BhP. p. 91, l. 1-6.
3 See above 188 note.
4 Cf. NL250ff. BhP. p. 91, l. 7-8.
5 Cf. NL251ff. BhP. p. 91, l. 9-10.
6 See above 182 note.
7 K. reads after this two additional (XXII.179-180) couplets.
8 (C.XXI.93-95; K.XXI.161-185).
following [the beloved] or gazing [at him] or gazing [vacantly] at the sky, talking pathetically, touching [different ornaments], twisting [some objects] or clinging to some support and similar other conditions and situations arising from an absence of Union (vipralambha).

Relief in love-sickness

197. When burning very much with the fire of love one will use [special] clothes, ornaments, scents, rooms and gardens which have a cooling effect.

The female Messenger

198. Being over-powered with a burning love and affected through its several stages one should send a female Messenger [to the beloved] to speak of one's conditions.

199. One should ask a female Messenger to carry a message of love [to the beloved]. She [should deliver the same] with proper courtesy [and the like] after saying "This is her condition".

200. After the substance (lit. meaning) of the message has been communicated one should think of the means of fulfilling the love. This is the rule where love is to be practised secretly.

The king's Etiquette to women

201. I shall now speak in detail about the rules regarding the practice of kings in relation to "homely" women and these rules are taken out the Science of Erotics (kāmatra)¹.

202. Happy and unhappy conditions which occur [in connexion with love] in persons of various dispositions, and which are assumed by kings, are also followed by common people.

203. Kings have no difficulty in obtaining women; because means for this, is at their command. And the love that grows out of liberality becomes pleasing.

¹ This does not seem to indicate any particular treatise.
204. Out of respect for the queens and for fear of their favourite women, kings are secretly to make love to queen's maids.

205. Though the kings may have many ways of making love, the making it secretly will be [the most] pleasing [of all].

206. That a woman resorts to wily ways, that one is shut out from her and she become available only with difficulty, imparts the supreme pleasure to her love.

207. In case of women of the harem, the king's Union (sambhoga) with them in day time may be permitted, but in dealing with external women Union should take place at night.

Reasons for Conjugal Union

208. The following six are reasons for the Conjugal Union (rāṣṭaka): scheduled order (puripāt), desire for progeny (phalā), newness of relation (anēkha), birth of a child (prasācra), time of sorrow (dukkha) and of joy (prāmohā).

209. When the Conjugal Union (rāṣṭaka) is due, kings should go to the bed-chamber of a queen even if she may be in her menses or may not be his favourite.

Eight kinds of Heroines

210-211. In this connexion Heroines (nājikā) are known to be of eight kinds such as, “one dressed up for Union” (rāṇak-sūrijā), “one distressed by separation” (cakhatkāndikā), “one having her husband in subjection” (rādhīnā-products), “one separated [from her lover] by a quarrel” (kalahāntarikā), “one enraged with her lover” (khaṇḍākā), “one deceived by her lover” (vipralabdhikā) “one with a sojourning husband” (vipralabdhikā) and “one who moves to her lover” (abhisārikā).

---

1 Cf. KS. V. 1, 16.
2 See Hem-acandra, vi/67 on this passage quoted in K.A. (p. 397) where he copies Ag. (p. 177) verbatim.

This rule of the Conjugal Union (rāṣṭaka) seems to have been relaxed at the time of Vākyāyana. See KS.III. 2, 61-63.

1 See DR.II.23-27.
The Heroine dressed up for Union

212. A woman who in eager expectation of love’s pleasure decorates herself joyfully when the Conjugal Union (rāsaka) is due, is a Heroine dressed up for Union (rāsakasajjā)1.

The Heroine distressed by separation

213. A woman whose beloved one does not turn up on account of his preoccupation with many other engagements and makes her sad, is a Heroine distressed by separation (vīrahot-kanḍhita)1.

The Heroine having her husband in subjection

214. A woman whose husband captivated by her conduct as well as by love’s pleasure (suvrata) from her, stays by her side, and who has pleasing qualities, is a Heroine having the husband in subjection (suvādhīnabhārītikā)1.

The Heroine separated by quarrel

215. A Heroine separated by quarrel (kalakahāntarītā) is a woman impatient for her lover who has gone away due to a quarrel or jealousy, and does not return1.

The enraged Heroine

216. A woman whose beloved one on account of his attachment for another female does not come for the Conjugal Union when it is due, is an enraged (kaṇṭhītā) Heroine1.

The deceived Heroine

217. A woman whose lover does not come to her for a certain reason even when the female Messenger was sent to him and a tryst was made, is a deceived Heroine (vīrahotabhātā)1.

The Heroine with a sojourning husband

218. A woman whose husband (lit. the beloved one) is living abroad on account of various duties and who wears her

---

1 Cf. NL. 2525ff; DR. II, 34; BhP. p. 99.
213 (C.XXXI.112; K.XXXII.200).
214 (C.XXXI.113; K.XXXII.201).
215 (C.XXXI.114; K.XXXII.202).
216 (C.XXXI.115; K.XXXII.203).
217 (C.XXXI.116; K.XXXII.204).
218 (C.XXXI.117; K.XXXII.205).
219 (C.XXXI.118; K.XXXII.206).
hair hanging loose, is called a Heroine with a sojourning husband (prajitabhārtikā)

Heroine moving to her lover

219. A woman who due to love or infatuation is attracted to her lover and gives up modesty for going out to meet him, is called a Heroine secretly moving to her lover (abhīsārikā)

Representation of the different Heroines

220. Heroines in a Nāṭaka should be of these conditions. I shall speak of the manner in which the producers are to represent them.

Enraged, deceived and quarreling Heroines

221-223. Enraged (hṛṣṭīlā), Deceived (cīvadānālā), and Quarreling (kalīdāṅkarālī) Heroines should be represented by anxiety, sighs, lassitude, burning of the heart, conversation with female friends, looking to one’s own condition, weakness, depression, tears, appearance of anger, giving up of ornaments and toilet, sorrow and weeping.

The Heroine with a sojourning husband

223b. The Heroine with a sojourning husband (prajitabhārītikā) should also be represented with these states.

The Heroine having the husband in subjection

224. A Heroine having the husband in her subjection should be represented with gaudy and brilliant dresses, face beaming with pleasure and having an excess of physical charm.

Different classes of Heroine moving to her lover

225. Whether she may be a courtesan, a lady of high family or a maid-servant, the producers should make the Heroine move to her lover in the special manner described below.

219 (C.XXXI.118; K.XXII.206). 1 Cf. NL.2572ff; DR. II. 27. see BhP. p. 100.

220 (C.XXXI.119; K.XXII.207). 1 Yathā yōjeyat pratyakṣākhyā, C. for kīmaḷantaram aneṣadhā. K.


The Courtesan

226. [In going down to her lover] the courtesan is to have her body beautifully decorated with various ornaments and to walk slowly in the company of her attendants and with [a display of] passion (*samad/a/na) and joy.¹

The woman of high family

227. [And in such a situation] a woman of high family will cover her face with a veil, and walk timidly with her limbs contracted, and will [very often] look back.¹

The hand-maid

228. And [in the same situation] a hand-maid will walk with uneven steps (*aividhīhayati) and eyes beaming with amorous joy, and will talk distortedly through intoxication (*madaskhalita-samāpā).¹

How to meet a sleeping lover

229. If the beloved (lit. this one) is in bed and she finds him manifestly (*ṣaṅgayatam) asleep she [should] awaken him in the manner I am going to mention.¹

230. A woman of high family is to awaken him by [the sound of] her ornaments, the courtesan by the sweet (lit. cool) scents and the handmaid by fanning the beloved one with her clothes.¹

231. [In this connexion] the scolding words of women friends are to be strong but sweet, and beautifully punctuated by sighs.¹

232. This is the rule of love making for women of high family and others, for the Nāṭāka is to represent all the States [in a Heroine]

---

¹ See notes.
The Conjugal Union

233. For a woman newly in love or for an enraged woman when she is not coming [of her own accord], the Conjugal Union should be arranged through some means or even...[1]

234. [A woman] always enjoys with pleasure various ornaments, dresses, scents and garlands which are charming and are of the best kind[1].

235. Just as a man does not come under the control of love when he has not [previously] met any woman, so being united, with the beloved woman [such a person] becomes doubly delighted[1].

Behaviour at the Conjugal Union

236. At the time of Conjugal Union (lit. union of love) there should be amorous feelings, gestures, words and sportful movements of the sweetest kind (lit. having a special quality of sweetness) and especially looking at each other with love[1].

Preparation for the Conjugal Union

237. When the Hero (i.e. the beloved one) comes, a woman on her part should make some special preparation for the Conjugal Union which will give rise to pleasure[1].

238. After wearing simple clothes, putting on garlands and using sweet scents she should take up the mirror again and again even when she had done with it (lit. has become successful)[1].

239. In preparing for the Conjugal Union one should not put on too many ornaments, [among these] the Raśmī and the Nīpura which have a sound are often to be preferred[1].

---

233 (C.XXXXI.137; K.XXII.249). 1 K's reading is very corrupt.
234 (C.XXXXI.128; K.XXII.220). 1 G. sāpadeśāi for sāpardeśāi, K.
235 (C.XXXXI.129; K.XXII.221). 1 Here to some passage seems to have been lost before this complet.
236 (C.XXXXI.140; K.XXII.222). 1 Here also some passage seems to have been lost before this complet.
238 (C.XXXXI.132; K.XXII.224). 1 K. reads 238b as चापकेष्वकम्-भवन-।
239 (C.XXXXI.133; K.XXII.225). 1 Viśopācāro K. viśopācāro C.
Acts prohibited on the stage

240. [In representing various activities of women] there should be on the stage no ascending of the bed-stead, no bath, no use of unguents and collyrium, no decoration of the body and no handling of their breasts or hair.

241. And women of the superior and the middling types should not be shown as poorly draped (upāryā) or wearing only one piece of garment (ekavastirā) and they should use no colour for their lips.

242. Such a rule [of dresses] will suit only the women of the inferior type, because of their low nature. But on certain occasions they too are not to be represented like that.

243. Men and women of the courtisan class in a play should take up a flower after they have dressed themselves up (lit. having taken ornaments).

244. If a woman with a decoration [of her body] awaits the arrival of her beloved, she should cleverly finish it so that nothing contrary [to propriety] finds expression.

The Heroine in expectancy

245. After finishing the preparation for the Conjugal Union, the Heroine should sit down and expect [every moment] the coming of the beloved (lit. Hero) while listening the sound of of striking the Nāḍikā.

246. After hearing the sound of [the expected] Nāḍikā the Heroine overcome [with joy] on [the chance of] the beloved one’s

240 (C.XXI.1.34; Cf. K.XXII.225). 1 This shows the high moral sense of the people of the time.
241 (C.XXI.1.35; K.XXII.227). 1 See above 240 note.
242 (C.XXI.1.36; K.XXII.228). 1 That is, they might appear on the stage as poorly draped or with one piece of garment or might have their lips painted.
243 (C.XXI.1.37; Cf. K.XXII.229)
244 (C.XXI.1.38; K.XXII.230). 1 Read the couplet as follows: निस्यं के निष्पक्ष यावस्य न निष्पक्षं निष्पक्षं निष्पक्षं
coming should run towards the gate [of the house] with a trembling [body] and with her heart about to stop (lit. motionless).

247. And holding the door-frame with her left hand, and a door-blade with the right one, she should with straight eyes look up for the arrival of the beloved.

248. Overcome with apprehension she should show reasonable [signs of] fear when the beloved will fail to appear (lit. not seeing the beloved), and should turn sad for the moment.

249. Then after heaving a deep sigh and lowering her look (lit. face) she should with a motionless heart drop down herself (lit. her limbs) on a seat.

250. Due to a delay of the beloved she should connect (lit. ponder over) his coming with causes (lit. considerations) which may be good or bad,

251. She will think [as follows:] “Could the beloved have been held up by duties to his superiors, by the friends, or by the ministers engaged in affairs of the state, or could he have been detained by some favourite woman?”

252. She should represent appearances connected with the various good or bad causes [mentioned above] by means of personal omens like quivering or throbbing [of a particular limb].

Personal omens

253. Personal omens indicating occurrence favourable to women will occur to their left [side] while omens in case of all undesirable happenings will take place on their right.

247 (C.XXXI.141; K.XXII.232b, 233a). 1 C reads as 247a न्याया कैन्तिकी मृत्यु यथावते विस्मयतुष्टि; we with K.

248 (C.XXXI.142; K.XXII.233b-234a). 1 K's reading is corrupt.

249 (C.XXXI.143; K.XXII.234b-235a). 1 K. reads nyanambo for न्यायकी कैन्तिकी मृत्यु यथावते विस्मयतुष्टि.

250 (C.XXXI.144; K.XXII.235b-236a).

251 (C.XXXI.145; K.XXII.236b-237a).

252 (C.XXXI.146; K.XXII.237b-238a). 1 K. reads 252 as न्याय नातिरि-कैन्तिकी मृत्यु यथावते विस्मयतुष्टि.

253 (C.XXXI.147; K.XXII.238b-239a). 1 anisfesa, C. for duruktesa, K.
254. If the left eye, eyebrow, forehead, lip, arm, breast or thigh throbs, this will indicate the coming [of the beloved].

255. If these will throb differently¹ that will indicate something calamitous (lit. not desired). In case of perceiving such bad omens she should at once faint².

256. As long as the beloved has not come, her hand will rest on her cheek, and being careless about her toilet she should go on weeping.

257. But afterwards on seeing some good omen indicating his arrival the Heroine should represent that the beloved one has drawn near by means of feeling¹ his smell.

          Heroine's reception of the beloved

258. On seeing him [come] she should joyfully get up and proceed to receive the beloved and look at him with eyes beaming in pleasure.

Receiving the guilty lover

259. But [in case of] the beloved one who has come with the signs [of meeting another woman] and green wounds¹ [received from her] she should point out [the man] after assuming the Ayata posture (sthāna) with her hand in the hand of her female friend².

260. And the beloved one being found guilty he should be given censure in due order by means of [appropriate] gestures and reproachful words as well as by Jealous Anger (māna), Insult (avanāna), Fainting (sandhīna) or Dissimulation (avabhīthā)¹.

261-263. Due to reasons like the application of Dissimulation, the use of hidden words or of laughter, curiosity, flattery, calamity and acceding to a situation of fun and to his

254 (C.XXXI.148; K.XXII.239b-240a).
255 (C.XXXI.149; K.XXII.240b-241a). ¹ That is, if the right eye and eyebrow etc. throb. ² K. reads 255 a as gauriṣṭhakā. अवनाने दर्दने बलिचे मन्नतः.
256 (C.XXXXI.150; K.XXII.241b-242a).
257 (C.XXXXI.151; K.XXII.242b-243a). ¹ That is, by representing it with gestures.
258 (C.XXXI.152; K.XXII.243b).
259 (C.XXXI.153). ¹ i.e. of biting and scratching. ² K. omits this.
260 (C.XXXXI.154-155a, K.XXII.244-245a).
261-263 (C.XXXXI.155b-157a; K.XXII.247-248). ¹ K. reads dharm- 
ärtha-kīma-yogeṣu.
concealing any fault, the Heroine should speak to the beloved even if [his guilts require that] he should not be spoken to.

263-264. Where there is affection there is fear also. And where there is jealousy there occurs love (madhava).

Causes of jealousy

The causes of this (i.e. jealousy) are fourfold: Depression (vaimanasya), Mixed Feeling (vyalika), Disgust (ripriya) and Anger (manya). Please listen about their description.

Depression

265. Depression (vaimanasya) arises from seeing the beloved one walking lazily due to sleepiness and lassitude, and discovering signs [of his Union with another woman] and fresh wounds [received from the latter].

266. This should be represented with an intensely jealous face, great trembling of limbs due to anger, and utterance of words like “It is good”, “It is nice” and “It is beautiful.”

Mixed Feeling

267. Mixed Feeling (vyalika) arises due to jealousy mixed with joy when one’s beloved stays [near by] even after he has been treated with insult.

268. Mixed Feeling should be represented by standing firmly on legs with the left hand on the breasts and the right one violently gesticulating.

Disgust

269. Disgust (ripriya) will arise when the beloved one

---

2 K. reads before this three hemistichs (245b-246) as follows: स्वच्छाद्य शुद्धत्वम्: बौधां माधवका मद्विता विश्वम् स्थायित संदेहं समयचतुः सुभवताः। पति न कर्तेऽक दृष्टिम् धरात्रि चंपणाम् (Women’s outburst of speech should be in Gathā [in the following cases]: in confidence, affection, suspicion, love, satisfaction, joy, courtesy and infliction of abuse).

263-264 (C.XXXI.157b-159a; K.XXII.219-250).

265 (C.XXXI.159bc; K.XXII.251).

266 (C.XXXI.160; K.XXII.259).

267 (C.XXI.161; K.XXII.253).

268 (C.XXI.162; K.XXII.254).

269 (C.XXI.163; K.XXII.255).
says that “I live while you live,” I am your slave” and “You are my love,” but behaves in a different manner.

270. Representation of Disgust should be made by a cold treatment to the female Messenger, disregard for the letters and indifference about giving reply to any question [made by the beloved] and also by shaking the head.

Anger

271. Anger (manyu) arises [in a woman] when the beloved one comes to her after his Union with a rival woman and boasts about his good luck in this matter, and discloses the signs of such a Union.

272. Anger should be represented by giving up the Valayas and throwing up the Raṣanā in a loose manner and by timid and tearful eyes.

On treating a lover at fault

273. On seeing the beloved one standing much ashamed, and afraid due to his guilt, [the Heroine] should harass him with rebuke made up of words spoken in jealous [indignation].

274. But no very cruel words should be uttered, and very angry words should also be avoided. [The Heroine] should speak tearfully things referring to her ownself.

275-277. This attitude should be represented by the middle finger touching the edge of the lower lip and a hand placed on the breast and by looking with eyes upturned, or by a Karanā in which a hand is placed on the hip and the fingers are separated (?), or by moving the head and bending it to see the nails or by a look of Dissimulation or by beautiful finger gestures indicating threat.

270 (C.XXI.164; K.XXII.256). 1 Or by the messenger.
271 (C.XXI.165; K.XXII.257).
272 (C.XXI.166; K.XXII.258).
273 (C.XXI.167; K.XXII.259).
274 (K.XXI.260). 1 Emend na caspadikrodhana into na copy-atikrodhana.
275-277 (C.XXI.168, 169a; XXIV. 268b-269; K.XXII. 261-263). 1 Read 273a as समसाहऽवाक्यं विवचनऽवाक्यं च मद्येवः रसद्विवित्तम्; for the rest we follow C.
278-279. After saying "You are shining", "You look well", "Why are you tarrying", "Don't touch me", "Go to the beloved who is in your heart", "And go away", one should turn back and make jokes with words which do not require any reply.

280. In case of being taken forcibly by the dress, the hand or the hair (lit. head) the woman should be softened even after seeing the guilt [of the beloved].

281. When taken by her hand, dress or hair the woman should slowly release herself from the beloved.

282. When taken by her hair, hand or dress the woman should enjoy (lit. take) his touch in such a way that the beloved one does not perceive it.

283. The woman should slowly release her hair [from the hands of the beloved] by standing first on her toes with limbs bent and then taking to the Apakrāntā Cāri.

284. Her hair being not released [due to efforts of the beloved] the woman should perspire on his touch and say "Hum, hum, let [my hairs] go", and "Go away".

285. After hearing the angry words like "Go away" the lover (lit. man) should [first] go away and then come back to start talking to her on any pretext.

286. Then the woman should make movements of her hand while uttering "Hum, hum", and during these movements she should speak to him with an imprecation (śāpotha).

287. In case of her clothes being taken away [by the beloved one] the woman should either cover her eyes, or turn them (i.e. eyes) to her back and cover her Nivi.
288. A woman should harass her [offending] lover till he will fall to her feet; but on his falling at her feet she should look to the female Messenger.

289-290. Then the Heroine should embrace the beloved and with the object of love's enjoyment she should joyfully walk [with him] to the bed. All these should be represented [only] by songs with a gentle dance.

290-291. When in a play there is any speaking to the sky depending on other men's speech, which relates to love's pleasures and the Erotic Sentiment, then the same line of representation should be followed by a woman.

292. The same should be the rule of representation in whatever [else] relates in a play to the inner appartment (harem) and is connected with the Erotic Sentiment.

Acts forbidden on the stage

293. One knowing the dramatic convention (nātyadharmā) should not represent sleeping on the stage. But some need occurring for it one should bring the Act to a close.

294-295. If out of any necessity anyone sleeps alone, or with anyone, no kiss or embrace or any other private acts such as biting, scratching with nails, loosening the Nīvi, the pressing of breasts and lips, should be presented on the stage.

296. Eating [anything] or sporting in water and doing any immodest act should not be presented on the stage.
297. As a Nāṭaka is to be witnessed by the father and the son, the mother-in-law and the daughter-in-law [all sitting together] these acts should be avoided.

298. Experts should write Nāṭakas with pleasant and not very harsh words giving rise to good counsel.

Endearing terms of address for the beloved

299. Now hear about terms which women in love are to use to their beloved ones when the Union takes place.


Angry terms of address for the beloved

301. In case of anger terms used may be “ill-natured” (dūṣhila), “tyrant” (dūrācāra, lit. ill-doing), “deceitful” (sātha), “hostile” (vāmuk, “indifferent” (vīrūpa), “shameless” (vīrlajja) and “cruel” (nighruva).

Endearing terms of address

302. He who does nothing undesirable, speaks nothing improper, and always conducts himself uprightly is called “dear” (priya).

303. He in whose lips or [other parts of] the body no sign of Union with another woman is visible is called “beloved” (kānta).

304. He who even in his anger does not cross words [with the woman he loves] and does not use any harsh word is called “affectionate” (vīnīta, lit. disciplined).

---

1 See above 294-295 note
2 BhP. (p. 107, l. 7-9) has eleven terms.
3 BhP. (p. 108, l. 10-11) has eight terms.
305. He who maintains an intercourse with a woman by sweet words (śāma, lit. conciliation), gifts (artha), providing, enjoyment, caress and maintenance, is called "lord" (vātha).

306. He who is a well-wisher [of his beloved woman], is able to protect her, is not conceited or jealous, is always alert on every occasion, is called "master" (sṛāmin).

307. He who takes to the bed to please the woman tactfully by providing enjoyments according to her wishes and desires, is called "life" (jirita).

308. He who is high-born, patient, clever, kind, master of words and fit to be praised among women friends, is called "joy" (mudrama).

309. These words are used to heighten the charm of love's enjoyment. I shall now speak of words which indicate an want of love. Hear about them.

Angry terms of address explained

310. He who is cruel, impatient, conceited, shameless, bragging, given to crossing words is called "ill-natured" (udṛṣṭha).

311. He who out of indiscretion restrains a woman's movement or beats her or uses harsh words to her, is called a "tyrant" (durācara).

312. He who for his own purpose speaks sweet words but does not put them into practice is called "deceitful" (śatha).

313. He who even being forbidden to do anything does that very thing, is called "hostile" (vāma).

---

307 (C.299 K.X.XII.293). 1 Cf. BhP. p. 108b, l. 4-5; the term here is jirita, 'lord of life'.
309 (C.301; K.X.XII.295).
314. He who has green wounds [received from a another woman] and is proud of it and remains silent [in conceit] is called "indifferent" (virājaṇa).  

315. He who approaches the woman more resolutely than ever even when he is guilty [towards her] and bears the marks of such a guilt and is forbidden to approach, is called "shameless" (nirājaṇa).  

316. He who being guilty towards her tries to enjoy a woman's embrace by force and does not think of conciliating her, is called "cruel" (nīṣṭhara).  

317. These are the ways of using words to indicate whether a lover is dear or not so. In different circumstances one should use the opposite [of these].  

318. These should be the rules [of address] in songs with a gentle dance as well as anything to be expressed in words for the Erotic Sentiment.  

319. This is the rule about the representation of incidents relating to the harem. I shall now describe in detail the rules regarding the goddesses (lit. celestial females).  

Goddesses in human roles  

320. The dress of goddesses is always brilliant, their mind is always full of joy and their time is always passed happily and in sports.  

321. Celestial males have no jealousy, anger and malice in life and they require no propitiation of their females.

---

317 (C.309; K.XXII.303). 1 That is, in irony (sollupthana-bhāṣita).  

See SD. 107.  
2 K. reads 317b as নাকোধিতা কারাভার বন্ধীবিধে নাটকে.  
318 (C.310; K.XXII.304). 1 K. reads 318b as যথজ্ঞাবতঃ সৌভাবঃ রূপিণঃ শিবায় বিদ্যমানঃ.  
319 (C.311; K.XXII.307). 1 K. repeats before this 277a and the following यथौः एवंशर यजनमयकामस्सिद्धार्थं नर्तकी विनाशः and XXII. 278 afterwards.  
322. When celestial women unite with human beings they are to assume all the States of a mortal.

323. When celestial women sustain a fall [from the heaven] due to a curse, they are to be united with human males and should be approached in a suitable manner.

324. [Remaining] invisible, she should tempt them with her voice and with [the scent of] flowers in her decoration and then revealing herself for a moment she should disappear¹.

325. Infatuation in a play grows out on coming to have dresses, ornaments, garlands [of Heroines] and letters [sent by them].

326. Love growing out infatuation will be pleasing, and that [love] which is natural will bring about different enjoyments.

327. Being reduced to human existence celestial males should assume all the States which are proper for men and should behave like them.

328. This should be the practice in connexion with kingly Etiquette in relation to the harem. The Etiquette in relation to the outsiders will be treated in rules regarding Courtezans (vaśika).

Here ends Chapter XXIV of Bharata's Nātyaśāstra which treats of the Basic Representation

¹ Read prañohayet (pulo bhavet, K. "trāpi ya bhavet, C.")

322 (C.314; K.XXII.310).
324 (C.316; K.XXII.312). 323 (C.315; K.XXII.311).
325 (C.317; K.XXII.313).
327 (C.319; K.XXII.315).
326 (C.318; K.XXII.314).
328 (C.320; K.XXII.316).
CHAPTER TWENTYFIVE

DEALINGS WITH COURTEZANS

The definition of a Gallant

1. One excelling (viśeṣayet) in all the arts (kalā) is called a Gallant (vaśīka) or one is so called because of his dealings with the courtezans (vaśyopacāra).

2. A man who has learnt all the arts (kalā) and is an adept in all the crafts (śilpa) and can besides captivate the heart of women, is called a Gallant.

Qualities of a Gallant

3. His thirtythree [characteristic] qualities are briefly of three classes: physical, extraneous (ākārya) and psychological (sāhuja, lit. natural).

4-7. One who is well-versed in the Śāstras, skilled in arts and crafts, well-formed, pleasant-looking, powerful, possessing self-command, desireable age, dress and pedigree, is friendly (surabhi),

1 (C.I; K.XXIII.1). 1 This is an instance of folk-etymology. Vaśīca the base of the participle viśeṣayet should have given rise to vaśīka and not to vaśīka. See BhP. p. 106, 1-10.

2 These are generally considered to be sixtyfour in number. See Vatsyāyana, KS. I. 3. 34. But the Jains have their number as seventytwo (See Anusha Chandra Sen, “Social Life in Jain Literature,” Calcutta, 1933, pp. 12-15).

3 This etymology is rather sensible. For veṣa (residence of courtezans) is connected with veṣyū (woman who is available for all the members of the tribe or the settlement).

2 (C.2; K.XXIII.2). 1 See above 1 note 2.

2 The word kalā is usually synonymous with śilpa. For the most of the sixtyfour items included by Vatsyāyana (l.c.) are nothing but crafts. But when the two words are used together in a sentence śilpa may be taken in the sense of ‘craft’ only.

3 Another name for vaśīka (Gallant) seems to be viṣa. See KS. I.4.16; SD.80 and also Nś. XXXV.74.

3 (C.3; K.XXIII.3).

4-7 (C.4-7; K.XXIII.4-7). 2 See BhP. p. 106, 1-2-9.
sweet-tempered (madhura), munificent, patient, free from bragging, fearless, accustomed to use sweet words, clever, prosperous, clean [in his habits], expert in the practice of love, honest, able to act suitably to time and place, speaker of no pitiful words, accustomed to speak smilingly, eloquent, careful, sweet-tongued, greedless as a partner, full of faith, firm in resolve, without trust even in accessible (gamyā) women and has a sense of self-respect, is called a Gallant.

8. [According to another authority] his six [special] qualities are: that he should be devoted [in his love affairs], clean [in his habits], self-possessed, honest, intelligent and able to talk on varied topics (citrabhidhāyi)\(^1\).

The female Messenger

9-10. A wise woman, female storyteller, a female ascetic or a woman of the stage\(^2\), an intelligent woman, a female neighbour, a female friend, a maid-servant, an unmarried girl, a crafts-woman\(^3\), a foster-mother, a nun\(^4\) or a female fortune-teller [can be employed as] a Messenger (ilāti)\(^5\).

Qualities of the Messenger

11. A wise person should never engage as a Messenger any persons (lit. male or female) who is foolish, beautiful, wealthy or diseased\(^6\).

12. Any woman should be engaged as a Messenger when she knows the art of encouraging [the beloved], is sweet in her words, honest, able to act suitably to the occasion, charming in her behaviour and is able to keep secrets\(^7\).

---

8 (C.8; K.XXIII.8). \(^1\) Read 8b as ।मन्‌विदनिधारणी। छात्ति तथा युध्य ।नयां। (मन्‌विदनिधारणी, C; मन्‌विदनिधारणी.K. and Ag. have the correct reading).

9-10 (C.9-10; K.XXIII.9). \(^1\) Ag. (p.480) explains raṅgopajātus as rajakastri.

\(^2\) Cf. DR. II. 29; SD. 157 separate the words kārū and ।सिलपिन।

\(^3\) A nun of the heretical sects like the Buddhists. See note 4 below.

\(^4\) Cf. KS. V. 4. 23.


\(^12\) (C.12; K.XXIII.11). \(^1\) Cf. KS. I.5.28; SD. 158.
Functions of the female Messenger

13. She should encourage [the beloved one] by mentioning the various ways of seeing [the lover] and should communicate the exact words [of the latter] and describe his condition.  \(^1\)

14. Besides this the Messenger should make an exaggerated statement about his birth, wealth and [capacity for giving] love’s enjoyment and say what [various] acts should be done [to facilitate the Union].  \(^1\)

15. The Messenger should in various ways bring about for the man an Union with a woman who is in love for the first time or a beloved woman who has been angry with him.  \(^1\)

16-17. The first meeting of men [with women] may be made on a festive occasion, during night, in a park, in the house of a kinsman, a foster-mother or a female, or in a dinner-party (vimantrana), on the pretext of seeing a sick person, or in an empty house.  \(^1\)

18. After meeting a woman in one of these various ways one should ascertain from different marks whether she is friendly or not.

The woman overcome with love

19. The woman who from her nature is smitten with love and does not conceal her amorous behaviour [at the sight of the beloved] is said to be “overcome with love” (madanāharā).

The attached woman

20-23. When a woman speaks of her lover’s a [good] qualities to her friend, gives him her own money, honours his friends, hates his enemies, seeks to unite with him, becomes much pleased to see him, looks pleased after a talk about him, sleeps after he has slept, kisses after he has kissed her, rises [in the morning] before he gets up, puts up with suffering [for his sake], remain the same in

---

\(^1\) Cf. KS. 1.5-28, BhP. p. 94, 1.4-13.

\(^1\) Cf. KS. 1.5-28, BhP. p. 94, 1.11-13.


\(^1\) Ag. (p. 480) says साध्विनि कै वेषता युज्ञमुखस्य रूपे: 2ef. BhP. p. 94, 1.16-19.

\(^1\) See BhP. p. 115, 1.2-8.
happiness and misery and never becomes angry, she is said to be "attached" (amurakta)\(^1\). These indicate her characteristics.

The hostile woman

24-27. The characteristics of a hostile woman are as follows: when kissed she wipes off her mouth, speaks unpleasant words, becomes angry even when sweet words have been spoken to her, hates his friends, praises his enemies, lies down on the bed with her back turned against him, goes to bed first, is never pleased even after a great deal of honour [has been shown her], never puts up with suffering, becomes angry without any provocation, does not look at him or greet him. The woman who betrays these signs should be marked as "hostile" (civakta).

Winning back of woman’s heart

28-29. [The following measures may lead to] the winning (lit. taking) back of women’s heart\(^4\): constant effort [in this direction], display of wealth, showing of good-will, proposal of giving money\(^2\), [actually] giving money, giving up the service of Messenger (lit. intervention)\(^3\) and tranference of attachment (bhāropakṣepita).\(^4\)

Causes of hostility

30-31. A man or a woman becomes hostile to the lover due to poverty, sickness, misery, harshness, want of learning, going abroad, offended self-esteem, excessive greed, transgression [of good conduct], coming back late [at day or night] and resorting to undesirable acts.\(^1\)

Acts winning women’s hearts

32. In connexion with love, one’s acts should be capable of winning the heart (lit. attachment) of women. Due to such acts

---

\(^1\) BhP. p. 116. 1. 4-5, 13, 6, also 7-12, 14-19.

\(^2\) Ag. (p. 481) explains this as follows: वयधितिनुम् = वयधिति निव. \(\text{ vy} \text{adhiti}\ n\text{i} \text{n} \text{um} \text{,}\ C. \text{ vy} \text{adhito} \ yah. K.\)

\(^3\) Ag. (p. 491) explains this as वयधितिनुम् = वयधिति निव. \(\text{ vy} \text{adhiti}\ n\text{i} \text{um} \text{,}\ C. \text{ vy} \text{adhito} \ yah. K.\)

\(^4\) C. (32; K.XXIII.30b-31a).
a woman may be kept out of anger and even if angry she may be pacified\(^1\).

33-35. A covetous woman should be won over by [making her] a gift of money, a learned woman by knowledge of arts, a clever woman by sportfulness, a sensitive woman by acting to her desire, a woman who hates man by stories to her liking, a girl below sixteen (bāla) by a present of playthings, a terrified woman by cheering her up, a proud woman by servile attendance and a noble lady by the practice of arts\(^1\).

The three types of woman

36. Women, are by nature of three classes: superior, middling and inferior.

The superior woman

37-39. The woman who remains unperturbed when she has been offended, does not use harsh words to her beloved, has a short-lived anger, possesses skill in arts and crafts, is desired by men for her high birth, wealth, capacity for giving enjoyment and the like, is an expert in the acts of love (kāmatantra), is honest, possesses physical charm, becomes angry only when there is a [proper] cause, speaks without malice and knows the proper occasion [for all acts] is of the superior class (uttama)\(^1\).

The middling woman

40-41. The woman who desires men and is desired by men, is skilled in the acts of love, jealous of her rivals, is overcome with malice and has a short-lived anger, is proud, and can be pacified in a moment, is of the middling class (madhyama)\(^1\).

The inferior woman

42. The woman who is angry without a suitable cause, ill-natured, very proud, fickle, harsh and remains angry for a long-time, is of the inferior class (uttama)\(^1\).

---

\(^1\) Read 32b. as yena ca private etc.

33-35 (C.33-35; K.XXIII.31b-33). \(^1\) K. omits. 54a.

36 (C.36; K.XXIII.34).


42 (C.42; K.XXIII.40). \(^1\) Cf. BhP. p. 103, l. 10-13.
The four stages of woman's youth

43. The youth of women when they have tasted love's pleasures is manifested in four stages through dresses, limbs and their movements as well as [inner] qualities.

The primary youth

44. The primary (yuthama) youth which has an enthusiasm for sexual acts, is characterised by plump thighs, cheeks, hips, lips and firm breasts which are conducive to (lit. charming in) love's pleasures.

The secondary youth

45. The secondary (diriyo) youth which affords the best pleasure of love is characterised by full and round limbs, plump breasts and slender waist.

The tertiary Youth

46. The tertiary (tryyo) youth which creates the utmost brilliance [in women] is full of all kinds of beauty, exciting sexual desire and is maddening and rich in various qualities.

The quartenary youth

47-48. The quartenary (caturtho) youth which is the enemy of love's pleasure, comes when the primary, the secondary and the tertiary youths have gone by [one after another]. It is characterised by reduced physical charm due to sunken (lit. pale) cheeks, hips, lips, breasts as well as lack of enthusiasm for sexual acts.

Behaviour in the primary youth

49. A woman in her first youth is to be known as one who cannot take much pains, is neither pleased or displeased with her rivals (females), and is attached to persons of mild qualities.

Behaviour in the secondary youth

50. A woman in her secondary youth takes offence lightly,
and her anger and malice is also not great, and in her anger she remains silent.

Behaviour in the tertiary youth

51. A woman in her tertiary youth is an expert in love's pleasures, full of malice for her rivals, has many qualities and is not secretive about her proud acts.

Behaviour in the quaternary youth

52. A woman in her quaternary youth is capable of captivating a man, has no malice to her rivals even if she is an expert in love's enjoyments, and she always desires to remain unséparated [from her beloved].

Five types of men

53-54. These are the four stages of youth for the Heroine in a drama. I shall now describe the types (lit. qualities) of men with regard to their love-affairs (kāmitunctra). With reference to their dealings (lit. application) with woman they are of five types, such as “excellent” (cāturā, lit. clever), “superior” (uttama), “middling” (madhyama), inferior” (adhama), and “too old” (samyaprādha).

The excellent man

55. A man is to be known as “excellent” when he is sympathetic, able to endure hardship, skilled in pacifying anger in connexion with love, expert in sexual acts and is honest.

The superior man

56-57. A man is to be known as “superior” when he does not do anything displeasing, is exalted (dhīrodatta), sweet-tongued, dignified, and knows thoroughly the mysteries of [human] feelings (lit. heart). One who is sweet [in manners], munificent and feels love, but is not overcome by passion, and when insulted by a woman gets disgusted with her, is [to be known as] a “superior” man.

---

52 (C.52; K.XXIII.50). 1 Cf. BbP. p. 105, l. 8-10.
53-54 (C.53-54; K.XXIII.51). 1 K. omits 53.
2 Cf. BbP. 91. l. 20ff.
55 (C.55; K.XXIII.52).
56-57 (C.56-57; K.XXIII.53). 1 The term is used in later classifications of Heroes. Cf. DR. II. 3-6a, BbP. p. 93 l. 2-3.

62
The middling man

58. A man who takes in every way the [emotional] states of a woman with calmness and is disgusted with her on discovering any fault of her, is to be known as "middling".

59. A man who makes a gift in proper time, does not have much anger even when he is insulted, but on discovering her act of deceit gets disgusted with a woman, is to be known as "middling".

The inferior man

60-61. A man who shamelessly approaches a woman with a steadfast love even when she has insulted him and loves her more strongly in spite of a friend's advice to the contrary even when he has come to know directly of her deceit, is to be known as "inferior".

The too old man

62-63. A man who does not care for fear or anger, is foolish, naturally inclined to women (♀), obdurately, shameless in acts of love, rough in love-quarrels [and] in striking connected therewith, a laughing stock (lit. play thing) of women, is to be known as "too old".

Psychological approach to women

64. Women are of different nature (♂) and their hearts are mysterious. Hence a wise man should know them properly before approaching them.

65. A man should deal with a woman according to the Science of Erotics (kāmatantra) after he has measured her feelings through different acts.

66. Such acts are: Conciliation (sāma), Gift (pradāna =

---

58 (C.58; K.XXIII.58).
59 (C.59; K.XXIII.55). 1 K. reads this as follows: समयं सच्चलो मान-प्रचं करीति नारोभास। विनिन्तिः हस्ताः निरेवने मान्यकान्तिपरमिति.
60-61 (C.60-61; K.XXIII.56-57).
64 (C.64; K.XXIII.60). 1 मनौतिष्ठ, K. मन्तुद्विः, C.
65 (C.65; K.XXIII.61).
66 (C.66; K.XXIII.69). 1 Cf. BhP. p. 214. 1. 7. These terms have been from the Arthasastra.
danā), Dissent (bheda), Chastisement (dāṇḍa) and Indifference (upeksā) to women.

Conciliation

67. Expressing one's attachment by saying "I am yours", "You are mine", "I am dear to you and you are dear to me" is called Conciliation (sāma).

Gift

68. Giving wealth, according to the measure of one's property as occasions arise, and concealing the same under some pretext is called Gift (pradāna = dāna)¹.

Dissent

69. Showing the faults of one's dear one by some device is Dissent (bheda).

Chastisement

Restraining one's movement or beating one is called Chastisement (dāṇḍa).

Application of Conciliation and Gift etc.

70. An indifferent woman is to be re-united by Conciliation, a covetous one by giving wealth, and a woman attached to another person should be won over by Dissent.

71. When from her indifferent attitude a woman begins to behave wickedly¹ she should be chastised with slight beating, and restraint of her movement.

72. If after an exhaustive adoption in due order of means such as Conciliation and the like, a woman does not come under control then a clever man should be indifferent to her.

Reading a woman's heart from her behaviour

73. It is from the expression of her face or from her eyes or from the movement of her limbs that one is to know whether a woman hates a man or loves him or is indifferent to him.

¹ That is, in joys and sorrows (Agni).
¹ Agni explains this as deśāntara[ya]layāyanam purusāntara-gamanam.
A courtesan's mercenary treatment of men

74. Courtesans except when they belongs to gods or the king are always available for money to a man whether he is dear to them or not.

75-76. [To them] a man [giving money] becomes dear even if they hated him before, becomes dearer than ever if she already was dear to them, appears to be well-behaved even if he is wicked, and to be possessed of good many qualities even if has none.

On seeing him their eyeballs dance [in joy] and they smile as it were with eyes, and due to simulation of [proper] feeling their faces put up a pleasant colour.

77. Hence after understanding the feeling or its want in women one should approach them according to the methods mentioned in the Science of Love (kāmatantra)\(^1\).

78. Passion arises in them after they have been treated properly or they have been separated after the first Union just as fire comes out of the wood.

79. This is the traditional method of dealing with women so far as Gallants are concerned. This should be utilised in suitable measure in the Nāṭaka or the Prakaraṇa.

80. This is the method of dealing with courtesans to be followed by the experts. Now listen about the Special Representation.

Here ends the Chapter XXV of Bharata's Natyaśāstra, which treats of the External Manners.

\(^1\) C. omits this passage which is merely a variant of 65 (K.61).

492 THE NATYAŚĀSTRA [XXV. 74
CHAPTER TWENTYSIX

SPECIAL REPRESENTATION

Special Representation

1. The peculiarity (citrābhinaṇa) which [is required] from time to time one in the use of Gestures and Words etc., and which has yet been left unmentioned is known as the Special Representation (citrābhinaṇa).

Day, night and season etc.

2-4. To indicate morning and evening, day and night, seasons, extreme darkness, wide expanse of water, directions, planets, stars, and anything that is slightly fixed, one is to make the following gestures: two hands raised with Pataka and Svastika gestures, Udālita head looking upwards with various eyes [fitting each occasion].

Objects on the ground

5. With same gestures of the hands and of the head together with the eyes looking downwards one is to indicate [objects] resting on the ground.

Moonlight, happiness and air etc.

6. To indicate moonlight, happiness, air, flavour (vasa) and smell, one is to use gestures for representing touch and horripilation.

---

1 (C.1; KXXV.1).  1 Aigūdyabhinayasyāvṛtu, K (Aigūbhīnayannya-syea, C.).

2 Ag. (p. 487) makes a scholastic discussion on the justification of the term citrābhinaṇa. But this does not appear to be convincing. The term seems to hint at the pictorial effect of the direct or indirect use of gestures and may be explained as citrātvam abhinayasya, See NŚ. XXIV. 1 note.

2-4 (C.2-4; K.XXV.2-4).  1 K. reads 3b as मन्त्र व्यक्त के नाम रूप रुपम अवेंटिक्रिष्ट। नांष (भृत्यम)स्वमोक्ती, 2)पाणि मानायास्यावं तिष्ठत.

3 See NŚ. IX.17-26  5 See NŚ. IX.134  6 See NŚ. VIII.27

5 (C.5; K.XXV.5).  1 As described above.

6 (C.6; K.XXV.6).
The sun, dust and smoke etc.

7. To indicate the sun, dust, smoke and fire one is to cover one's face with clothes. And heat of the ground and heat [of any other kind] are to be indicated by a desire for a shady place.

The midday sun

8. The mid-day sun is to be indicated by looking upward with half-shut eyes, and the rising or the setting sun by a representation of the idea of depth.

Pleasant objects

9. To indicate anything pleasant and happy, one is to use gestures for representing the touch of one's body together with horripilation.

Sharp objects

10. And to indicate things of sharp nature one is to use gestures for representing touch of one's limbs and uneasiness and to narrow down his mouth.

Deep and exalted feeling

11. To indicate these in connexion with deep and exalted feelings one is to have the Śauṣṭhava⁴ of the limbs and a display of pride and conceit.

Necklace and flowers etc

12. To indicate a necklace and a flower garland one is to hold the two Ārāśa hands¹ in the place where the sacred thread is held and then to separate them from the Śvastika² position.

The idea of entirety

13. To indicate the sense of "entirety" one is to move on the index finger, look round and press the Alapallava hand¹.

Audible or visible objects

14. To indicate anything audible or visible whether it relates to the speaker or to the person spoken to, or to anyone else, one should point to the ears and eyes respectively.

---

8 (C.8; K.XXV.8). ⁹ (C.9; K.XXV.9). ¹⁰ (C.10; K.XXV.10).
12 (C.12; K.XXV.12). ¹² See Nā. IX.134.
13 (C.13; K.XXV.13). ¹³ See Nā. IX.90.
14 (C.14; K.XXV.14).
Lightning and shooting stars etc.

15. Lightning, shooting stars, thunder, sparks [of fire] and flame should be indicated by relaxed limbs and vacant eyes.

Repugnant objects

16. To indicate anything repugnant to oneself, one is to practice Udveṣṭita¹ and Parāvṛttta (Parivartita)² Karṇas of hands and to bend the head and to look obliquely, or to avoid contact.

Hot wind and heat etc.

17. To indicate hot wind, heat from the sky, warding off of dust, rains, insects and bees one should cover one's face.

Lions and bears etc.

18. Lions, bears, monkeys, tigers and other beasts of prey should be indicated by holding Padmakosha¹ hands downwards in the form of a Svastika.

Worshipping superiors

19. To indicate worshipping the feet of the superiors (guru) one should hold Tripataka¹ and Svastika² hands, and taking up of the goad or the whip should be indicated by Svastika and Kaṭakā [mukha]³ hands.

Numerals

20-21. Numerals from one to ten should be indicated by fingers [of equal number]. Multiples of tens, hundreds and thousands are to be indicated by the two Pataka⁴ hands.

22. Any number above ten should be indicated indirectly and along with the general meaning of the sentence which includes it (?)

¹ See Nś. IX.208. ² Nś. IX.210. ³ Nś. IX.80. ⁴ See Nś. IX.26-32. ² See Nś. IX.134. ³ See Nś. IX.61-64. 20 (C.30; K.XXV.20). ²² (C.22; K.XXV.22).
The Natyasastra

Umbrellas and banners etc.

23. Umbrellas, banners and banner-staffs and the different weapons should be indicated by representation of the holding of any staff.

Memory and meditation etc.

24. Memory and meditation should be represented by indicating attention, downcast eyes, slightly bent head and the left hand with the Sandamps\(\textsuperscript{1}\) gesture\(\textsuperscript{2}\).

Height

25. Height\(\textsuperscript{4}\) should be indicated by the representation of offspring through making the head Udvahita\(\textsuperscript{2}\) and the hands Hamsapaksa\(\textsuperscript{3}\) on the right side.

Past and cessation etc.

26. The idea of past, cessation, destruction or words listened, is to be indicated by carrying from the left the Arala\(\textsuperscript{1}\) hand on the head.

The autumn

27. Autumn should be indicated by representing a composure of all the senses, tranquility of all the directions and a view of different flowers.

The early winter

28. Early winter (hemanta) should be indicated by the superior and the middling characters through narrowing down their limbs and seeking the sun, fire and [warum] clothing.

29. The same should be indicated by the inferior characters through groaning (lajuana) clicking (sitkara) and trembling of the head and the lips and the chattering of teeth.

---

23 (C.23; K.XXV.23).  \(\textsuperscript{1}\) chatra K. (citra. C.)
24 (C.24; K.XXV.24).  \(\textsuperscript{1}\) K. reads 24b as कुटिक पक्षम \(\textsuperscript{2}\) गतःत्यान्ग वितक.
3 See NŚ. IX.109.
25 (C.25; K.XXV.25).  \(\textsuperscript{1}\) K. reads this couplet as चहविन्य विस्म; हलन उदयवस्य चिन्होः। मद्यासुःकाबालः देवी, सदं धनृशितर्न.
\(\textsuperscript{2}\) See NŚ. VIII.27. \(\textsuperscript{3}\) See NŚ. IX.105.
26 (C.26; K.XXV.26).  \(\textsuperscript{1}\) śrute, C. (srunte-K.).  \(\textsuperscript{2}\) See NŚ. IX.46-52
29 (C.29; K.XXV.29).
30. The superior characters also may sometimes indicate the winter in this manner if due to accident they are in a miserable condition.

The winter

31. One is to indicate the winter by the representation of smelling the flowers, drinking wine and of feeling an unpleasant wind.

The spring

32. The spring (varṣaṅga) is to be indicated by the representation of acts of rejoicing, enjoyments and festivities and a display of various flowers.

The summer

33. The summer is to be indicated through the representation of the heat of the earth, fans, wiping off sweat and feeling the hot wind.

The rains

34. The rainy season (prāraga) is to be indicated through the representation of the Kadamba, the Nimba and the Kṛṣṇaja flowers, green grass, Indragopa insects and groups of peacocks.

The rainy night

35. A night in the rainy season should be indicated by the loud sound of the masses of clouds, falling showers of rain, as well as lightning and thunder.

Seasons in general

36. Each season should be indicated by the sign, costume, activity or scenery which is proper to it or whatever is specially desired or avoided (lit. undesired) in it.

30 (C.30; K.XXV.30).
31 (C.31; K.XXV.31). 1 Emend madhudāṅga into madhupāṇī; see Rś. V. 5 and 10.
32 (C.32; K.XXV.32).
33 (C.33; K.XXV.33). 1 savijanaḥ, K. (savijanan, C).
34 (C.34; K.XXV.34). 1 K. reads 34b as वर्षारंभकम्, तत्त्वधर्म: etc.
35 (C.35; K.XXV.35). 1 varṣārātram, C. (varṣārambhak K.)
36 (C.36; K.XXV.36).
37. These seasons according to the necessity should be indicated with proper Sentiments\(^1\) as being full of happiness for those who are happy, and full of distress for those who are afflicted.

The States

38. The States (bhāra)\(^1\) should be indicated by the representation of the Determinants (vībhāra)\(^2\) and similarly the States are also indicated (lit. accomplished) by the representation of Consequents (anubhāra)\(^3\).

The Determinants

39. Acts connected with the Determinants should be represented by means the Consequents; and the States relate to the feeling of one's own self, and the Determinants relate to an exhibition of another person [in relation to the self]\(^4\).

40. A preceptor, a friend, an affectionate companion (sakha), a relation from the mother's or the father's side who may come and be a announced\(^1\) [properly] is called a Determinant\(^2\).

The Consequents

41. The honour shown to him\(^1\) by rising from the seat, by offering him presents (arhyaa) and a seat and by using respectful words, is called the Consequents (anubhāva).

---


38 (C.38; K.XXV.39). ^ K. reads before this the following: वी धेन भाविनीपरं: स्युतिंदनिनेतिः स। स दशिदतस्खारार: स्यं पथति तत्वायम्: (He who is imbued with a state pleasant with itself, looks under it's influence everything as permeated by it). Besides this K. reads 38 as follows: विमानिनान्ते कार्यमुभव निवधवान्ते। तत्व यानायानां बालवायुर्गमनं स। For the def. of bhāra see NŚ. VII. 1-3. ^ See NŚ. VII. ^ See NŚ. VII. 4-5.

39 (C.39; K.XXV.40). ^ Ag. (p. 491) reads utmānubhāvanam for utmābhinayanam in the text and explains the same as यानायानां बाल बालायुर्गमनं सुखं-धर्मित्वं अभाव ह्वभं:। यानायानां घटनाभावम् भाव इत्यं समझत विषयनेत्र स्मरित। तवायं: यानायानां देव न च साधनं विश्वास्मि प्रश्नम् समजति ते यानायानां चैत्यं तदन्तं भाव इत्यं समझति.

40 (C.40; K.XXV.41). ^ Ag. (I.c) seems to read अनुद्यया for अनुद्यया.

41 (C.41; K.XXV.42). ^ One of the persons mentioned in 40 above.
42. Similarly in other cases also, from an observation of different incidents [in a play] one should find out the Determinants and the Consequents from actions [related to them].

43. Reply to a message given to the Messenger is [also] called a Consequent.

44. In these ways the States, the Determinants and the Consequents are to be represented by men as well as women.

General directions for the representation

45. In the representation of their own nature, men should assume the Vaispava posture \( (sthāna) \) and woman the Āyata\(^2\) or the Avalīhittha\(^3\) postures in relation to [appropriate] actions.

46. [But] there occurring special need for the same, other postures may [also] be introduced for the representation of different States in special (lit. different) types of plays.

Men’s and women’s efforts

47. Efforts of men should be characterised by patience as well as sportive limbs, and those of women by delicate Añgahāras.\(^1\)

Women’s movements of limbs

48. Women’s movement of hands, feet and other limbs should be graceful \( (utulit) \) while men’s movement of these should be restrained \( (ulkira) \) as well as vehement \( (uddhata) \).\(^1\)

Meanings of words

49. Representation of the meaning of words are to be made differently by men and women. I shall explain them in detail in connexion with the States and the Consequents.

Joy

50. One should indicate one’s joy \( (harṣa) \) by embracing the [other’s] body, by smiling eyes as well as by horripilation\(^1\).

---

\(^1\) See NŚ. XI.51-52.
\(^2\) See NŚ. XII.157-167.
\(^3\) See NŚ. ibid.

42 (C.43; K.XXV.43).
43 (C.43; K.XXV.44).
44 (C.44; K.XXV.45).
45 (C.45; K.XXV.46).
46 (K.XXV.47).
47 (C.46; K.XXV.48).
48 (C.47; K.XXV.49).
49 (C.48; K.XXV.50b-51a).
50 (C.49; K.XXV.51b-52a).
51. An actress (nartuki) should indicate joy by sudden horripilation, tearful eyes, smiling words and a loving attitude.

Anger

52. One should indicate anger by upturned red eyes, biting of lips, [deep] breathing and trembling limbs.

Jealous Anger of women

53-54. Jealous Anger (irṣyakrodha) of women should be indicated by tearful eyes, touching of the chin and the lips, shaking of the head, knitting of the eye-brows, keeping silent, curling of the fingers, leaving of garlands and ornaments and assuming the Ayata posture (śīhāna).¹

Men's sorrow

55. Men's sorrow should be indicated by much breathing and sighing, thinking with a downcast face and looking up towards the sky [in a pensive mood].

Women's sorrow

56. Women's sorrow should be indicated by weeping¹, sighing, beating the breast, falling on the ground and striking [the body against] the ground.

57. Crying¹ which has been mentioned before as arising from tears of joy and from jealousy should be applied in case of women and of the inferior male characters.

Men's fear

58. Men's fear should be indicated by acts of consternation (sampharaṇa), and of dismay (utvaya), full of weapons [from their hands], loss of self-control and the like.

Women's fear

59-60. Women's fear should be indicated by eyes with

¹ See NŚ. XIII.137-170.
moving eyeballs, throbbing and shaking limbs, glancing sideways for fear (lit. terrified heart), looking for someone to rescue them, weeping loudly and putting their arms round the man [staying close by].

Women's intoxicated condition

61. Intoxicated conditions (lit. intoxication) which have been mentioned before should be applied to women, and men of the inferior type. Adoption of gestures (lit. form) in such cases should be delicate and graceful.

62. Women's intoxication should be indicated by rolling of eyes, uttering of irrelevant words (*vīlāpa = pralāpa) and shaking of limbs.

63. These are the rules to be followed in a theatrical production for the representation of men's or women's States when occasion for these will arise.

64. In a theatrical production the States of women are all to be made graceful (*lalita) and that of men endowed with Self-control (*dhaiṛya) and Equanimity (*nāthunyā).

Parrots and Śārikās

65. Parrots, Śārikās and small birds like these are to be indicated by two moving fingers in the Tripatāka hand.

Big birds

66. But birds like peacocks, cranes and swans which are naturally big are to be indicated by proper Recakas and Āṅgahāras.¹

Asses and camels etc.

67. Asses, camels, elephants, tigers, cows, buffaloes and the like should be indicated by Gaits and gestures [suitable to them].¹

---

¹ K. reads 66b as ॥ प्राणायामवर्तितपपनिमित्राः ॥

¹ K. reads this as follows: ॥ खरीद शेषार्जुर-नानां तिष्ठातायांगानिकाः ॥ मथायवेशुहारसिंहिनिमित्र नवमविनिमित्र नवमविनिमित्र ॥
Blūtas and Piśācas etc.

68-69. Blūtas, Piśācas, Yakṣas, Dānavas and Rākṣasas when they are not visible should be indicated by the Aṅgahāras. But when they are visible they should be indicated by [the representation of] fear, dismay and astonishment.¹

70. When they remain invisible, gods are to be indicated according to the necessity by making obeisance to them and by movements suitable to the States.

Greeting an invisible person

70-71. Greeting a man when he is invisible is to be indicated by touching the head with the Atāla hand¹ raised from the side.

Greeting gods and superiors etc.

71-72. Greeting gods, superiors (guru), and ladies is to be indicated by the Kātakāvārdhamānas¹ or the Kapota hand² [touching the head similarly].

72-73. Gods and honourable persons when they appear physically should be indicated by obeisance to them and by the deep influence [they have over the surroundings].

A great crowd and friends etc.

73-74. A great crowd, friends, Viṭhas and rogues are to be indicated by means of the Parimaṇḍala (Uromaṇḍala)¹ hand.

Mountains and tall trees etc.

74-75. Mountains in connexion with their height, and tall trees are to be indicated by lifting upwards the outstretched hands.

Wide expanse of water

75-76. A wide expanse of sea-water¹ is to be indicated by two Pataīka hands thrown out [side-ways], and heroism, haughtiness,
pride, magnanimity and growth upwards also should be indicated by placing the Āraśa hand on the forehead.

77-78. The two Mṛgaśīra hands turned away from the breasts and held out quickly at a distance will indicate anything made open (nūrārtha).  

A house and darkness etc

78-79. A house, darkness, a hole or cave is to be indicated by holding slightly stretched hands which have their palms upturned and which point downwards.

Lovesick, cursed and possessed persons

79-80. Persons who are lovesick or under a curse, possessed of some evil spirit or enfeebled in mind by fever, should be represented by [suitable] movements of their face and other limbs.

A swing

80-82. A swing should be indicated by the representation of its movement, agitation of the limbs and the holding of the strings. It is by acting like this (lit. then) that the moving swing will be perceptible [to the spectators], and persons occupying their seats [just after representing a swing] will be taken as moving in a swing.

82-83. I shall now speak of [the indication of] “Speaking to the Sky” (ākāśaracana), “Speaking Aside” (ākṣayata), “Concealed Speaking” (āparyārata) and “Private Personal address” (īndānīṣita).

Speaking to the Sky

83-85. Addressing someone staying at a distance or not appearing in person or indirectly addressing to someone who is not close by, is called Speaking to the Sky (ākāśa-bhāṣita). This

---

2 Read चावलन बिलिजिक्ष (K.) for बसी बिलिजिक्ष प्रसाधिति.
77-78 (K.XXV.80).  
2 C. omits this, but K’s reading is slightly corrupt.
78-79 (C.75c; K.XXV.81a-82b).  
1 Read 78b as बहुतामूलाधानवति बही बिलिजिक्ष प्रसाधिति, C. (बिलिजिक्ष प्रसाधिति, K.).
79-80 (C.76; K.XXV.83).  
1 K. reads 80a as एवं विड्दा नरा व ज नेष अध्यात्म बिलिजिक्षः.
80-82 (C.77-78; K.XXV.84-85).
82-83 (C.79; K.XXV.86b-87a).
83-85 (C.80-81; K.XXV.87b-89a).  
1 चावलबाघातिकःवाकौ दुःखोऽभे रक्षित्व विपाविधि यह मामोऽभे भद्वे दि जस्मेविनिर्विढलित परीक्षक प्रतिदानस्माक्तिमिकविधिओऽभालिते अपीतं (Ag. p. 493).
mode of speaking will present [the substance of] a dialogue by means of replies related to various [imaginary] questions (lit. causes) which may arise out of the play².

Speaking Aside

85-86. When overwhelmed with excessive joy, intoxication, madness, fit of passion repugnance, fear, astonishment, anger and sorrow one speaks out words which are in one’s mind (lit. heart), it is called Speaking Aside (ābhuṣaya).

Concealed Speaking

And Concealed Speaking (āparākitaka) is related to secrecy.

Private Personal Address

87-88. When out of necessity persons standing close by are [supposed] not to hear what is spoken to someone else, this constitutes Private Personal Address (janāntika)³.

Thinking within oneself

It relates to something within one’s self (lit. heart) which is a matter of deliberation² and feeling⁸ and [which is] indeed a kind of Speaking Aside (ābhuṣaya).

88-90. Words in a play, which are connected with secrecy should be spoken in one’s ears preceded by “so, so”.

Mentioning incidents that occurred already

90-91. When one is to speak from necessity of something

---
² K. reads rasabhāva⁹.
³ 87-88 (C.88b-92; K.XXV.91a-92). ¹ It is because both the janāntika and the āparākitaka are supposed to be inaudible to others on the stage Ag. (p.24) quotes a view on their distinction as follows: जनान्तिका विधाय अपरान्तिकांसन्तिकानुस्तुत्तानीय वाक्येण विधिका भवस्य वाक्ये तद्विशय नौणाते च&च: प्रभु। विश्वविद्याकाळी चतुर्मात्रकारस्त्रविद्या अवमानितविद्या ब्रम्हक्रमणा।

And a late writer says: ए विधायादिकाली ब्रजली विधायादिकाली विधायादिकाली भवस्य विधायादिकाली विधायादिकाली. ND. p.31. But all this does not seem to fit in well with the examples of the āparākitaka available in extant dramas. Cf. Lévi. p.61.

---
² saśitarkam, C. (śvīkānapa, K.).
³ bhūvāsthām C. (bhūvāsthād, K.).
which has occurred earlier, for avoiding repetition this should be [similarly] spoken in one’s ears.

90-91. Without making any confusion (lit. mistake) [among these] one should resort to Speaking to the Sky (ākāśa-vacana), Private Personal Address (janātika) and Speaking Aside (ātmairya) which will [relate sometimes] to a visible or an invisible person and [sometimes] to one’s ownself or others.

Representing Concealed Speaking

91-92. Concealed Speaking (apavāritaka) and Private Personal Address (janātika) should be indicated by a Tripatākha hand covering [the speaker].

Repetition of words

92-93. Words which are uttered due to fright, calamity, anger and intense sorrow are to be repeated.

93-94. [In such cases] words such as “tell”, “well done”, “ah”, “alus”, “go away”, “what”, “let me go”, “no” and “speak” should be repeated twice or thrice.

Suspension of representation

94-95. Distorted or incomplete words used [in a play] should not be represented by gestures for explaining them (lit. for the sake of definition).

Observing proper States

95-96. The State (bhāva) which is proper to a superior [character] should not be applied to a middling one; and similarly the State which is proper to a middling [character] should not be applied to an inferior one.

\[\text{90-91 (C.86; K.XXX.96).} \]
\[\text{91-92 (C.87; K.XXX.96).} \]
\[\text{92-93 (C.88; K.XXX.114).} \]
\[\text{93-94 (C.89; K.XXX.115).} \]
\[\text{95-96 (C.81; K.XXX.118).} \]

1. Read this passage as follows: चविधि-विषयम् पौर्णिकानि-समविधिकाणि-पाणिकाणि। चुमरोपस्य श्रवणानि (C. पावे; K. श्रवण for पावे; C. पावृक्ष; K. पावृक्ष for श्रवण)। The trans. is tentative.

2. Cf. DR. I. 65b; BhP. p. 219, l. 21-22; SD. 425. Lévi. p. 61.

3. K. reads punaruklam na (as yaha.)

4. K. reads pratyairahinam, C. pratyairighlam, K.

5. laksanaksete, C. laksanakitas, K.
96-97. By means of different States and Sentiments which arise from movements proper to the superior, the middling and the inferior characters, a play will attain (lit. wish for) attractiveness.

No movement in the state of sleeping

97-98. In the somnolent condition (svapnāyita) the States should not be represented by any movement of hands. As in the representation of the Temperament, this should be done through speech (lit. the meaning of words) only.\(^1\)

Declamation in sleep

98-99. Declamation (prāthyā) in the somnolent condition should proceed with a slow voice; words in it should be [sometimes] distinct and [sometimes] indistinct and sometimes their senses should be repeated twice, and it should [also] depend on the recollection of the past [events].

Declamation of old people

99-100. Declamation of old people should be made with a faltering voice and dropping of syllables [now and then]; and

Children's words

that of children should be made with lisping (kalasvara) which will leave syllables unfinished.\(^2\)

Dying declamation

100-101 Indistinct declamation (kāhū) at the time of dying should be made with syllables produced by relaxed, and heavy speech-organs (kāraṇa); it should be a faltering voice resembling the sound of [small] bells and it should be accompanied by hiccup, [hard] breathing and [the action of] phlegm.

101-102. Occurrence of a swoon when followed by hiccup and [hard] breathing is considered similar to death. To indicate it the declamation should contain repetition.\(^3\)

---

96-97 (C.82; K.XXXV). \(^1\) Read bhāvarasair ātmaceśāsamulthitair (bhāvaceśār, K. ceśāsamutanvitaḥ, C.).

97-98 C.93; K.XXXV.97). \(^1\) K.'s reading seems to have been as follows: सकारात्मकसामालिकानि स वायु शपास्यथि: सकारात्मकसामालिकानि स वायु शपास्यथि: etc.

98-99 (C.94; K.XXXV.98).

99-100 (C.85; K.XXXV.101). \(^1\) asūmāpatēkṣaram, C. but asūmaśvarasāmyuktaṁ, K.

100-101 (C.96; K.XXXV.99).

101-102 (C.97; K.XXXV.100). \(^1\) Read the passage as follows:
Representation of death

102-103. Representation of death which may arise from different conditions will be of different nature. [For example] sometimes it is indicated by throwing out all the hands and feet, and sometimes by a paralysis of movement of all the limbs¹.

Death from disease

103-104. Death from an attack of disease should be represented by an occurrence of hiccough, [hard] breathing and imperceptible movement of limbs which should be relaxed¹.

Death from drinking poison

104-105. Death from drinking poison should be represented by throwing out of hands and feet and other limbs, and the power of the poison will lead to the quivering action of the [different] parts of the body.

The eight stages in death from poison

105-107. The first stage of the action of poison is the general weakness of the body, the second tremor, the third a burning sensation, the fourth hiccough, the fifth froth [in the mouth], the sixth breaking of the neck, the seventh paralysis and the eighth death⁴.

Weakness


Tremor

108-109. Tremor (vepathu) should be represented by shaking simultaneously according to the situation the head, the hands and the feet or one of these limbs separately.

¹ Read sannais tathā gātraḥ (sarvais tathā gātraḥ, C. samtrais tathā kāryah, K.).
² Read kāryo, K.(kārya,C.)
³ praviṣṭāṭvakā, C. (pravad-dha-tālaka, K).
⁴ Read kārio, K.(kārya,C.)
Burning sensation

109-110. Burning sensation (dākha) should be represented by shaking violently the entire body, scartching the [different] limbs and throwing out the hands and other limbs.¹

Hiccough

110-111. Hiccough (hikkā) should be represented by repeated blinking of eyes, belching, vomitting, convulsion (ākṣepa), and uttering of indistinct sounds.

Froth in the mouth

110-111. Froth (phena) [in the mouth] should be represented together with belching, vomitting, licking the corners of the mouth, senselessness and lack of movement of the eyes.

Breaking of the neck

111-112. Breaking of the neck (śirobhāṅga = uvābhaṅga) should be represented by the shoulder touching the cheek and the lowering of the head.

Paralysis

Paralysis (jadatā) should be represented by inaction of all the sense-organs.²

Death

112-114. Death (mavana) whether it is due to a growth of disease or to snake-bite should be represented, according to the dramatic convention (nātyadharmi) by the closing down of the eyes.

114-115. These particular representations should be combined with suitable Temperament (sattva) and States (bhāva).³

¹ K. reads sarvāṅga-vepanam vepathus tu for sarvāṅgavepanod-vejanena, C.
² C. omits 112a and reads the passage as follows : वेपाद्विद्वेदविद्वते निग्रहितानि विनिग्रहितानि विनिग्रहितानि, C.
³ C. omits 112b which K. reads as follows : पालसज्जातात्मकहयते विद्वेदविद्वते इत्यादि, C.
[representation of] other popular [objects and ideas] should be learnt (lit. accomplished) from the people.

General directions

115-116. Just as the garland-maker makes garlands from various kinds of flowers, the drama should be produced similarly by gestures of different limbs, and by Sentiments and States.

116-117. Movements and Gaits that have been prescribed by the rules for a character which has entered the stage\(^1\) should be maintained by the actor without giving up the [particular] Temperament till he makes an exit.

117-118. Now I have finished speaking about the representation to be made through Words and Gestures. Things omitted here by me should be gathered from [the usage of] the people\(^1\).

The triple basis of drama

118-119. The people, the Vedas and the spiritual faculty \((\text{adhyātma})\) are known as the three authorities. The drama is mostly based on objects related to the last two (the Veda and the \(\text{adhyātma}\)).

119-120. The drama which has its origin in the Vedas, and the spiritual faculty \((\text{adhyātma})\) and includes [proper] words and metre, succeeds when it is approved of by the people. Hence the people are considered as the [ultimate] authority on the drama\(^1\).

121. A mimicry of the exploits of gods, sages, kings as well as of householders in this world, is called the drama\(^1\).

122. When human character with all its different States is represented with [suitable] Gestures it is called the drama.

People supplying norm to the drama

123. Thus the events \((\text{vārta})\) relating to the people in all

---

115-116 (C.109; K.XXV.120).
116-117 (C.110; K.XXV.121). \(^1\) raṅgapraviṣṭasya, C. for raṅga-praviṣṭasya, K).
117-118 (C.111; K.XXV.122). \(^1\) K. reads 117b as follows: एतच्ये सत्ता मौलिकम् मति.
117-118 (C.112; K.XXV.123).
119-120 (C.113; K.XXV.124). \(^1\) K. omits 120b.
121 (C.114; K.XXV.125). \(^1\) See NS I. 120
their different conditions, may be (lit. should be) included in a play, by those well-versed in the Canons of Drama (nātyaśāstra).

124. Whatever Śāstras, laws, arts and activities are connected with the human usage (lokadharma) may be produced (lit. called) as a drama.

125. Rules regarding the feelings and activities of the world moveable as well as immovable cannot be formulated (lit. ascertained) exhaustively by the Śāstra.

126. The people have different dispositions, and on their dispositions the drama rests. Hence playwrights and producers (pravoktṛ) should take the people as their authority [as regards the rules of the art].

127. Thus they (pravoktṛ) should pay attention to the feelings, gestures and the Temperament in representing the States of various characters [that may appear in the drama]³.

128. The men who know in this order the art of Histrionic Representation and applies it on the stage, receives in this world the highest honour for putting into practice the theory of drama (nātyatattva) as well as [the art of] acting (abhinaya)⁴.

129. These are to be known as the modes of representation dependent on Words, Costumes, Make-up and Gestures. An expert in dramatic production should adopt these for the Success [in his undertaking]⁵.

Here ends Chapter XXVI of Bharata’s Nātyaśāstra which treats of the Special Representation.

---

126 (C.119; K.XXXV.130).
127 (C.120). 1 K. omits this.
128 (C.121; K.XXXV.131). 1 C. reads after this an additional couplet.
129 (C.122). 1 K. omits this.
CHAPTER TWENTYSEVEN

SUCCESS IN DRAMATIC PRODUCTION

1. I shall now describe the features of the two kinds of Success (śiddhi) relating to the drama. For the production of a drama is wholly meant for (lit. based on) attaining the Success in it\(^1\).

The two kinds of Success

2. The Success [in the dramatic production] which arises from Words, Temperament and Gestures and which relates to various States and Sentiments is of two kinds: divine (daivika), and human (mānasi)\(^1\).

The human Success

3. [Of these two] the human [Success] has ten features, and the divine [Success] two; and they (i.e. such features) consist [mostly] of various Temperaments expressed vocally (vānimayi) and physically (kārītī).

The vocal Success

4. Slight Smile (smita)\(^2\), Smile (ardhahāsa)\(^3\) and Excessive Laughter (atithāsu)\(^3\), 'well-done' (śādhu), 'how wonderful' (aho), 'how pathetic' (kastam), and tumultuous applause (pravṛddhanāla, swelling uproar) are the signs of the Success expressed vocally (vānimayi).

The physical Success

5. Joy expressed in horripilation (saromānca-pulaka), the rising up from the seat (abhyanthānā), and the giving away\(^1\)

---

\(^1\) (C. K. same). \(^1\) This chapter discusses the appreciation of theatrical productions by spectators who include persons of various types possessing different psychological and cultural traits.

\(^2\) (C. K. same). \(^1\) vāk-sattvāṅga. These three constitute the Basic Representation. See Nś. XXIV. \(^3\) (C. K. same).

\(^3\) (C. K. same). \(^1\) See Nś. VI. 52.

\(^3\) The ardhahāsa seems to be the same as hasita, smile; see note 1 above. \(^3\) See note 1 above.

\(^5\) (C. K. same). \(^1\) The age-long custom in India was that the wealthy among the spectators on being very highly pleased with a dramatic performance did at once take out from their own body the
of clothes (celudāna) and of rings (aṅgulikṣepa) are signs of the Success expressed physically (śāvīri).

6. When actors produce the Comic Sentiment slightly dependent on words of double entendre the spectators should always receive the same with a Smile (smīta).

7. When they (i.e. the actors) have a laughter not very clear, or words which do not directly cause laughter the spectators are always to receive the same with a Smile (ardhahāsya).

8. Laughter created by the bragging of the Jester or by some artifice (āśīpa)\(^1\) should always be received by the spectators with an Excessive Laughter (atihāsya).

9. [Representation of deeds] which relate to the practice of virtue and is endowed with excellence, should be greeted by the spectators with the word “well-done” (sāḍku).

10. Similarly, “how wonderful” should be uttered by the spectators in connexton with States like Astonishment (vismaya) and in course of the Erotic, the Marvellous and the Heroic Sentiments.

11. But in the Pathetic Sentiment they should utter with tears “how pathetic.” And in cases of Astonishment there should always be a tumultuous applause (pravṛddhanāda, lit. swelling uproar).

12. In cases of insulting words used in acting a play they should be attentively received with horripilation (lit. throbbing hairs) by the spectators whose curiosity has been evoked\(^1\).

costly shawls, other wearing apparels or ornaments to give them way to the talented actors. Cf. also NL 2289f. \(^*\) See note 1 above.

6 (C. K. same). \(^1\) kiṅcic-chiṣṇa, C. kiṅcicchiṭṭa, K.

7 (C. K. same). \(^2\) This prescription simply points out what should actually happen.

8 (C. K. same). \(^1\) viduṣakoccheha, K. viduṣakoccheda, C.

9 (C. K. same). \(^1\) dharma-padā, C. garvapada\(^2\), K.


12 (C. K. same). \(^1\) The trans. is tentative,
13-14. If the play is a brilliant one with [a plot containing] cutting and piercing [of limbs], fight, portentous calamity, terrific happening or minor personal combat, it should be received by the clever spectators with tears and rising up [from the seat, and with shaking the shoulder and head].

15. This is the manner in which the human Success\(^1\) gets expressed. Now listen about the divine Success which I am going to describe.

The divine Success

16. The Success [in dramatic production] which includes an excessive [display] of the Temperament, and expresses the States [clearly]\(^1\) is to be taken by the spectators as divine (daivi).

17. When there is no noise, no disturbance, no unusual occurrence [during the production of a play] and the auditorium is full [of spectators], the Success is called divine\(^1\).

Three kinds of Blemishes

18. These are the varieties of the Success to be known by the spectators as human and divine. I shall speak hereafter of the Blemishes (ghāta) coming from gods (deva).

19. Blemishes [in the production of a play] are of three kinds; [that coming] from gods\(^4\), from the actors themselves.

---

13-14 (C. K. same).

15 (C. K. same). \(^1\) This “human” Success seems to relate to the common “human” beings or average spectators, and they should be compared with men occupying the gallery of a modern theatre. They are generally moved by outward and not deep aspects of a dramatic performance. See below 16 note.

16 (C. K. same). \(^1\) These are the deeper aspects of a dramatic performance.

17 (C. K. same). \(^1\) The “divine” Success seems to relate to cultured spectators who generally take interest in deeper and more subtle aspects of a dramatic performance and as such are above ordinary human beings and may be called “divine”.

18 (C. K. same).

19 (C. K. same). \(^1\) “Gods” here means the source of various accidents. See 20 below.
(ātman)², and from an enemy (para)³. Sometimes a fourth variety of it is what comes up due to portentous calamity.

Blemishes from gods

20. Blemishes from gods are: [strong] wind, fire, rains, fear from an elephant or a serpent, stroke of lightning, appearance of ants, insects, ferocious and other animals.

Blemishes from an enemy

21. Blemishes created by an enemy¹ are: all round screaming, buzzing (visphotita), noisy clapping, throwing of cow dung, clods of earth, grass and stones [in the place of performance].

22. Blemishes created by an enemy¹ are considered by the wise to be due to jealousy, hostility [to the party injured], or being partial [to the party's enemy] or receiving bribe from the latter (arthaabheda)².

23. Blemishes resulting from portents (antrātika) are those due to earthquake, storm, the falling of meteors and the like¹.

Self-made Blemishes

I shall now describe Blemishes arising from the actors themselves (ātma-samnyatha).

24-25. Un-naturalness [in the acting], wrong movement [of the actors], unsuitability of a role [to an actor] (vibhūmikāteya)¹, loss

² Their acts of omission or commission are these Blemishes. See below 24-25.
³ See below 21-22.

20 (C. K. same).

21 (C. K. same). ¹ The rival groups of actors who contested for rewards from their patrons, became enemies to one another; see below 72ff.

² This kind of improper and dishonest acts sometimes occurs also now-a-days in meetings, supporting candidates from rival political parties. Human psychology has not much changed since the NŚ. was compiled more than sixteen hundred years ago.


² It seems that the leaders of actors did not scruple even to bribe individual spectators to gain their ends.

23 (C. K. same). ¹ It is possible that due to superstitious fear arising from an appearance of these natural phenomena confusion occurred during the performance.

24-25 (C.24,25b-26, K.24-25). ¹ Ag. (p. 509) explain this as anyabhūmikacita-svātva-kri-ca (P) svikāra.
of memory [of the actors], speaking other words\(^2\) (anyavacana i.e. those not in the play), [actor’s] cry of distress\(^3\), want of proper hand movements (vibhastava\), falling off of the crown and other ornaments, defects in playing the drums (puskaradose\), shyness of speech (nayyubhiti\), laughing too much and crying too much will be taken as Blemishes to the Success\(^4\).

26. Attack of insects and ants\(^4\) wholly spoils the Success, while the falling off of the crown and other ornaments will spoil the tumultuous applause [in appreciation of the production].

27. Blemishes in the shape of an appearance of animals\(^3\) should be disregarded. But shy speech [of the actors] and the wrong playing of the drums will [however] wholly spoil the Success\(^2\).

Blemishes without remedy

28. The two [kinds of] Blemishes which cannot be remedied in the production of a play (lit. poem), are faults due to a natural calamity, and the running out of water from the Nāḍika\(^1\).

\(^{1}\) Ag. (l.c.) explains this as tisphim visi amagn apahanyam anyah pakhatsi anyavanam.

\(^{2}\) Ag. (l.c.) explains this as urtavam hi chadman pradarahan ad asiddhi.

\(^{3}\) C. reads one fragmentary hemistich before 25.

26 (C.26b-27a; K.26b-28a).

\(^{4}\) C.26b-27b; K.26b.

27 (C.27b-28b; K.28b).

\(^{1}\) Ag. (p. 509) reads it as passu-prasavo and comments on it as follows: sukkaramyajale: bhojana-vyavahara kutoypadahe vishaparvata ananaparvata ghat, etd vishayatryakajata(t)atit bhayatvam, yah: bhishmane jata sukkara prastara bhaviyati varagamya va eva: matyangdurtavyathamapati vrishitali kariyati dhaamayatanam pramanayodhavamsh javahayati.

\(^{2}\) C. reads one additional hemistich between 27a and 27b. K. omits 27b.

28 (C.29; K.32).

\(^{1}\) Ag. (p. 508) says on this vedanavasakya kala dva lajante tathayogasam bhavanapambhishinam tirit yas kala yutthih kina tad satyadharmase. etc. Nālikā (text nālikā) is a measure of time. See NŚ. XX. 66 note 1. The ancient Indian device for measuring time consisted of a water vessel of particular size with a well-defined tube (nājikī) at its bottom. Time required for the complete running out of water from it, was known as a nājikī (nājī), sūryayajakṣevakamukulavatam. Tāravat uravatvajātimadhyatvam abhava kāriniśa svatām śa kālo ye nālikā. (See AS. II. 20; also AS. notes, p. 27). Here nājikā is used in the sense of the water-vessel used for measuring time. On the necessity of time-keeping see below 39 and NŚ. XX.23, 65-68. Ag’s explanation does not seem to be clear.
Palpable sources of Blemishes

29-30. Palpable (lit. large) sources of Blemish in a play are: repetition, defective use of compound words (asamāsī), wrong use of case-endings (vībhaktibheda), want of proper euphonic combination (vīṣṇulī), use of incoherent words (apārthā), faulty use of three genders, confusion between direct and indirect happenings (pratyaṅkasa-paroksa-samvīdāna), lapse in metre, interchange of long and short vowels, and observing wrong caesura

31. Absence of [proper] notes (vīśavā), of sweetness of notes (vīyuktavrāga), and of wealth of notes, and ignorance of voice registers (sthāna) and of tempo (laya) will disturb musical rules [in the production of a play]

32. Non-observance of Sama, Mārga and Mārjana, giving hard strokes, and ignorance about the beginning (lit. taking) and the stopping (mokṣa, lit. release) will spoil the beauty (rasa) of the music of drums

33-36. Omission due to loss of memory, and defective enunciation in the declamation, putting on ornaments in wrong places, falling off of the crown, not putting on any ornament, want of hand-movements owing to an ignorance about mounting or

---

29-30 (C.30-31, K.30-31). 1 Actors and actresses at the time of the Nās, usually being speakers of Middle Indo-Aryan (Prakrit) and not trained scholars, there occurred all sorts of japes in their Sanskritic recitation and declamation. Hence is to be justified the humorous reference to the naṭa (actor) in the following traditional couplet: भुजायितादिभिन्दस्यम्बुना: स वाँचिक समस्या। सन्निरेक्षितत्रित्वादिविभिक्लितस्यस्मानविभि दानि न सुः (Haldar, Itihāsa, p. 143), which in trans. is as follows: Where would the vulgarly-used words have gone for fear of hunter-like grammarians, if there were no mouth caves of astrologers, actors, gallants, singers and physicians?

31 (C.32; K.27). 1 For the technical terms of music used here see Nās. XXVIII.


2 graha, K. (gyha, C.).

3 Read rasam for mūṛṣam, C. and māṛṣam, K.

4 pūṣkaragāla, K. (pūṣpagāla, C). For technical terms of music used here see Nās. XXXIII.

33-34 (C.34-37; K.33-36). 1 Read bhūṣanasgraham for bhūṣanya.
dismounting chariots, elephants, horses, asses, camels, palanquins, aerial cars (vimaṇa) and vehicles [in general], wrongly holding or using weapons and armours, entering the stage without the crown, headgear or clothing, or entering too late² are the Blemishes which should be marked in proper places by the clever experts, but they should leave out of consideration the sacrificial post (yāpa), taking up of the fire-wood (caṇamā), Kuśa grass (clavīha), ladle (śrute) and other vessels (bhanda) [relating to a sacrifice].

Three grades of Blemishes

37. An expert in dramatic production should record Blemishes as “mixed” (niśra), “total” (sāvyaya) and “partial” (cakāvya), but should not record [merely] the Success or the Blemishes [without any detailed information about these].

38. The total Success or an all round Blemish expresses itself in many ways. But a matter affecting merely one aspect [of the production] should not be reckoned for lowering the order.

39. After the putting down of the Jarjara [by the Director] in a dramatic production, the Assessors (prāṇika)¹ should always achieve in due manner the accuracy of timing (naḍikasiddhi)² and of recording (lokhyasiddhi) [of all Blemishes as well as goods points].

Wrong Benediction

40. When during a god’s festival anyone foolishly recites a Benedictory Sloka in honour of the wrong god it is to be recorded as his Blemish in the Preliminaries¹.

Interpolation is a Blemish

41. When anyone interpolates the composition of one

² cira-pravasā, K. (ciraprakṣa, C.).
37 (C.88; K.37). ¹ Read siddher for siddhair, C. and siddhyā, K.
² Read na ghāta ca for na ghātaśya, C. vidhvāno vā, K.
³ K. reads 37b differently.
40 (C.41; K.40). ¹ Read 40a, as वोऽस्स नहु युक्त कायमीनिक प्रक्रिया प्रवृत्तम्। देशव यूजर्के पालनसामि निशिमाण नाते. 41 (C.42).
playwright into that of another it is also to be recorded by the experts as his Blemish

42. When anyone knowingly (lit. not out of ignorance) interpolates (lit. mixes) in [his] play the name of another author then his Blemish in it being definite, should be recorded in due order.

43. When anyone produces a play using costumes and languages in violation of the rules [regarding the same laid down in the Śāstra] then his Blemish about the same should be recorded.

Limitation of human efforts in a play

44. Who is able to observe properly the rules of [constructing] plays or producing [them on the stage]? Or who can be bold or keen (lit. eager) enough in mind to [claim to] understand properly all that have been said?

45. Hence one should include in plays words which have deep significance, are approved of by the Vedas as well as the people, and are acceptable to all persons.

46. And no play (lit. nothing) can be devoid of any merit.

---

1 This seems to show clearly that theatrical Directors did not hesitate sometimes to insert passages taken from one playwright’s work into that of another to add to the effect of the latter. K. omits this passage.

42 (C.43). 1 From this it appears that the practice of putting in the name of the author of a play in the Prologue (prastāvanā) was not a very old one. This seems to explain the absence of the authors name in dramatic the works ascribed to Bhāṣa. K. does not have this passage.

43 (C.44; K.41). 1 From a close study of available plays it does not appear that the rules laid down in the Śāstra were very scrupulously followed, or it is also likely that the rules regarding the use of different languages in a play, changed with the linguistic development as well as other conditions connected with the use of languages.

44 (C.45; K.47). 1 This seems to point out that no Śāstra can exhaustively lay down all the rules which can never be made very clear and precise, for many things in theatre relate to so many fluctuating factors.

45 (C.46; K.43). 1 One should mark the stress put on the Vedas and the popular practice in connexion with the Nāṭya. See Nā. XXVI. 118-120.

46 (C.47; K.44).
or totally free from faults. Hence faults in the production of a play should not be made much of.

47. But the actor (nāṭa) should not [for that reason] be careless about Words, Gestures and Costumes of minor importance (lit. non-essential) as well as about [minor] Sentiments and States, dance, vocal and instrumental music and popular usages of the same kind [relating to the performance].

Spectators of a performance

48. These are [the rules] defining the characteristics of the Success. I shall hereafter describe that of [an ideal] spectator (preśakā).  

49-52. Those who are possessed of [good] character, high birth, quiet behaviour and learning, are desirous of fame and virtue, impartial, advanced in age, proficient in drama in all its six limbs, alert, honest, unaffected by passion expert in playing the four kinds of musical instruments, acquainted with the Costumes and Make-up, the rules of dialects, the four kinds of Histrionic Representation, grammar, prosody, and various [other] Šāstras, are very virtuous, experts in different arts and crafts, and have fine sense of the Sentiments and the States, should be made spectators in witnessing a drama.

53. Anyone who has (lit. is characterised by) unruffled senses, is honest, expert in the discussion of pros and cons, detector of faults and appreciator [of merits], is considered fit to be a spectator in a drama.

54. He who attains gladness on seeing a person glad, and sorrow on seeing him sorry and feels miserable on seeing him miserable is considered fit to be a spectator in a drama.

---

1 This is a very wise counsel for the hasty critics of a play.
2 nepathyē, K. (nepathyāth, C).
3 rasahāsanāntagāte, K. (śrutyaśīlāth, K).
4 lokayukte, K. (śuktyā, C).
5 prēśkākām (prēśkānām, C; prāśnikānām, K).
6 prēśaka, C; prāśnika, K.
7 prēśkā, K; prāśnika, K.
55-56. All these various qualities are not known to exist in one single spectator. And because objects of knowledge are so numerous and the span of life is so brief, the inferior common (lit. men) in an assembly which consists of the superior, the middling and the inferior members cannot be expected to appreciate the performance of the superior ones.

57. Hence an individual to whom a particular dress, profession, speech and an act belong as his own, should be considered fit to appreciate the same.

Various classes of spectators

58. Different are the dispositions of women and men, young and old who may be of superior, middling or inferior talents, and on such dispositions [the Success of] a drama rests.

Disposition of different spectators

59. Young people are pleased to see [the presentation of] love, the learned a reference to some [religious or philosophical] doctrine, the seekers of money [topics of] wealth, and the passionless in topics of liberation (mokṣa).

60-61. Heroic persons are always pleased in the Odious and the Terrible Sentiments, the personal combats and battles, and the old people in Purānic legends, and tales of virtue. And [the common] women, children and the uncultured men (mūrkha) are always delighted with the Comic Sentiment and [remarkable] Costumes and Make-up (nepathya).

61-62. Thus the man who is fit to assume a particular role by imitating the States of the latter, can be considered a spectator possessing the [necessary] qualifications.

Assessors in a performance

62-64. These `should be known as spectators in connexion with a drama. But there being any controversy (samgharga)

55-56 (C.56-57; K.53-54). 1 K. reads 55b as follows विचित्रायामविवाह अवामायाभाष्य.

57 (C.58; K.55).

58 (C.59a, 60b; K.56).

59 (C.59b-60a; K.57). 1 samayākrite, C. (samayāvārīte, K.).


62-64 (C.63-64; K.60-61). 1 This is a very elaborate arrangement for judging in every detail the Success of a performance.
about the performance of individual actors, the following are the Assessors (prāśnīka) : an expert in sacrifice (yajñāvīt), an actor (nartaka), a prosodist (chandovīt), a grammarian (śabdavīt), a king (rājan), an expert in archery (iśvastravīt), painter (citraṇīt), courtezan (vēyā), musician (gandharvā) and a king’s officer (rājasevaka). Hear about them.

64-68. An expert in sacrifice will be an Assessor in the [representation of] sacrifice (yajñayoga), an actor in general His-trionic Representation, a prosodist in complicated metres, a grammarian in a lengthy declamation, a king in connexion with [personal] dignity, in dealings with the harem and in royal (lit. his own) roles, the archer (iśvāsā) ¹ in the Sauṣṭhava of the pose; and a painter is a very suitable Assessor of movements for salu-tation and other acts, of wearing clothes and ornaments, and of Dresses and Make-up which are at the root of dramatic production; the courtezan will be an Assessor in matters relating to the enjoyment of love, and a musician in the application of notes (svara) and observance Time (tāla), and an officer of the king in [the matter of] showing courtesies. These are the ten Assessors of a dramatic performance.

69. When there is a controversy among the persons ignorant of the [Nāṭya]-Śāstra they (i. e. the persons named above) are to pronounce justly the faults as well as the merits [of individual actors]¹. Then they will be known as Assessors of whom I have spoken to you.

70. When there occurs any learned controversy about the knowledge of the Śāstra the decision should be made on the testimony of the books (lit. Śāstra).

64-68 (C.65-68). ¹ Emend iśṭavāk (C). into iśvāsā.

69 (C.69). ¹ The significance of this rule seems to be that when in judging a drama the common people (i. e. who are not acquainted with the rules laid down in the Śāstra) fail to decide, the specialist Assessors mentioned above are to be called in. This passage is wanting in K.

70 (C.70). ¹ This rule seems to show that when the specialists in theatrical practice differed, they were to refer to the Śāstra or the traditionally handed down rules compiled in books. K. omits this passage.
Controversy about a performance

71. Controversy arises when the actors (bharata) have the desire of mutual contest at the instance of their masters or for [winning] money and the Banner (patākā) [as rewards].

Procedure in deciding controversies

72. In course of deciding a controversy one should observe [the performance of the parties] without any partiality. The decision about [the award of] the Banner should be according to the stipulation made (panam kṛtvā) [beforehand].

Recording of Blemishes

73. Blemishes affecting the Success should be recorded with the help of reckoners (gaṇaka) by these persons (i.e., Assessors) who are seated at ease, have clean intention, and whose intelligence is [generally] relied on [by the public].

Ideal position of Assessors in a performance

74. Assessors should neither be too near [the stage] nor too far [from it]. Their seats should be twelve cubits (six yards) apart from it.

75. They are to notice the points of the Success mentioned before, as well as the blemishes which may occur during the production of a drama.

Blemishes to be ignored

76. Blemishes which may be accidental (lit. caused by the

---

71 (C.71). ¹ An example of this is the contest between the two nāṭyācāryas in the Mālavi.
² The Indian literary tradition records the fact of Bhāsa’s winning Banners, possibly on the occasion of dramatic contests. See Harṣacarita, Introduction, 15.
72 (C.72). ¹ Read patākāsamnyavahāram (savyavahāram, C.).
² This stipulation may have the following forms: the Success in producing any particular play, or any new play, or a new play with a particular dominating Sentiment will entitle one group of actors or its leader to the award of the Banner. K. omits this passage.
73 (C.73; K.62a). ¹ K. omits 73a.
74 (C.74; K.62b-63a). ¹ Emend prakṣakāh into prāṇikāh.
75 (C.76-77a; K.63b-64a). ¹ ghūśā ca, K. for yūh kū ś ca, C.
76 (C.77b-78a; K.64b-65a),
the portents or the enemy are not to be recorded by the wise [observers]. But the Blemishes relating to the play
as well as the Blemishes arising from [the actors] themselves should be recorded.

Procedure of awarding the Banner

77. After mentioning him to the king the Bannar should be given to a person whose Blemishes, have been reckoned as few in number but points of the Success as many.

78. If expert actors are found to be of equal merit (lit. work and quality) in the production of a drama, the Banner should be awarded first to one whose Success is greater, or in case of equal success [of the two contestants] [the award should be made] at the king’s command.

79. If the king has similar admiration for the two rivals, then both of them should be awarded [the Banners]. With an eye to all these rules one should provide [in the production of a play] for the recitation, the [distribution of] roles and the Sentiments.

80. Thus cultured persons who are well-acquainted with the rules [of theatrical production] and capable of appreciating merits should sit at ease with an unruffled mind and see to the proper judgement [in awarding the Banners].

81. The Assessors are to point out (lit. take) the measure

---

1 daivotpālasamūttka. K. (daivotpānasamārthā, C.
2 ghāta, K. (vīśā, C.). Blemishes relating to a play seems to be its literary drawbacks. It is likely that in dramatic contests choice of defective plays brought discredit on the contestants.  
3 See above 24-25.

77 (C.75; K.65b-66a).
78 (C.76b-79a; K.66b). 1 Read bhuratāḥ prayogesu ca.
2 Depending on the vocal applause as well as the silent approbation of spectators. 3 sammasiddhau, K. (sammasiddhā, C). 4 vāñhayā nṛpatēḥ,
C.; K. omits 77a and reads 77b with some variation.
79 (C.79b-80a; K.67a). 1 K. omits 79b.
80 (K.88). 1 Read guṇādaibhiḥ for guṇādibhiḥ, K.
2 Read svasthacaitṭāḥ for svastacaitṭāḥ K.
3 Read vyanakāraḥ samāṇjasah for vyavahāraḥ samāṇjasam, K.
81 (K.69). 1 Emend prākaṣākaiḥ into prāṣnikaiḥ.
of] achievement as well as the slightest of faults\(^2\) which may relate to the theory of theatrical production\(^3\).

82. Hence producers\(^1\) [of plays] should know [properly] about Co-ordination (\(sama\)), Charm of Limbs (\(aṅgamañdūhṛya\)), Recitatives (\(vāṣhya\)), rôles (\(prakṛti\)), the Sentiments (\(rasa\)), songs (\(gāna\)), instrumental music (\(vādyā\)), and the Costumes and Make-up (\(nepathya\))\(^8\).

Co-ordination

83. Gestures (\(aṅga\)) which are simultaneously\(^1\) made in a play in harmony with the different aspects of the arts in course of the Dhruvā songs and of dances\(^8\) is called Co-ordination (\(sama\)).

84. When in course of the performance [of a play] Gestures of different limbs major and minor, are accompanied by songs with proper Time (\(tāla\)) and tempo (\(lāya\)) and by the playing of drums it is called Co-ordination.

Charm of Limbs

85. The position in which the chest is not bent\(^1\), the two arms are Caturasra and spread out (\(āyata\))\(^2\) and the neck is Añcita, gives rise to the Charm of Limbs (\(aṅgamañdūhṛya\)).

86. And as for the remaining subjects\(^1\) which are to be mastered (\(sādhya\))\(^2\) by the actors (\(sādhaka\)) they have been discussed before. But they are to look after the instrumental music (\(vādyā\))\(^8\), the rôles (\(prakṛti\), lit. the origin) and the songs (\(gāna\)).

87. The Success arising from the Gestures and the various Sentiments should be expressed out of joy through all the signs (lit. the places) of the same.

\(^2\) Read \(duṣṇaṅbhāsātm\) for \(duṣṇaṅbhāsā\), \(K\).

\(^3\) Read \(prayogasamayāśitām\) for \(prayoga-samayāśitaih\).

82 (C.80b; K.70). 1 \(prayokṭirbhīḥ\) C. (\(prayatnātāḥ\), \(K\)).

\(^9\) C. omits 82a). 83 (C.81; K.71). 1 samanāt, K. samartkāh, C.

\(^a\) dhruvānāyaprayoge, C. (\(gītādīṭtrāsādā\), \(K\)). 84 (K.72).

85 (C.82; K.73). 1 anirbhugnam, C. (\(sanirbhugnam\), \(K\)).

\(^2\) śrāyatāk bhujau, C. \(sraṃkṣṭaukara\), \(K\).

86 (C.83; K.74). 1 These are \(pāśya\), \(rasa\) and \(nepathya\); see NS. XIX, VI. and XXIII.

\(^8\) \(sādhya\). C. (\(pṛekṣyānti\), \(K\)).

\(^8\) Read \(vādyam prakṛtyo gānam\) for \(vādyam-prakṛtye\)gānām, C. and \(vādyam prakṛtyo jñānam\), K. 87 (C.84; K.75).
Suitable times for dramatic performance

88. Producers [of plays] should know the time (kāla) for a performance (rāva), which depends on various considerations to be [generally] day and night¹. Listen now when a performance may take place during these two periods.

89. The performance in the evening, the midnight and the dawn belongs to the night².

90. The performance in the forenoon and the afternoon belongs to the day.

Time of performance according the subject and the Sentiment

91. I shall now speak how these times are suited to [different] Sentiments after mentioning the time (kāla) to which a performance belongs.

92. [The performance] which is pleasant to the ear and is based on a tale of virtue (dharma), whether it is pure (āuddha) or mixed (vikṛta), should be held in the forenoon.

93. That which is rich in instrumental music, includes the story of strength and energy, and carries [a chance of] abundant success should be performed in the afternoon.

94. That which relates to the Graceful Style, the Erotic Sentiment and is full of vocal and instrumental music³ should be performed in the evening.

95. The drama which relates to the magnanimity [of the Hero], and contains mostly the Pathetic Sentiment should be performed in the morning and it will scare away sleep.

96. The drama should not be performed in the midnight or at noon or at the time of the Sandhya prayer or of taking meals.

97. Thus after looking into the time, place and the basis (plot) of a play one should bring about its production according to the States and the Sentiments it contains.

88 (C.85; K.76) ¹ Read 88b as विश्वासी वाणिज्य तद्धीतं विशेषतः.
89 (C.87; K.77). ¹ reads 89a as दुर्योगी बच समाहार अपारामक सर्वेखनम्. and 89b correspondingly.
97 (C.94; K.85). ¹ pārasmitkṣa sasanārājan, C. but pārṇadām ca samikaṣya tu, K. pārṇadām in K. may be a wrong reading for pārṇadām (assembly).
Emergency performances are independent of time

98. But when the patron (lit. master) orders, the time and place are not to be taken into consideration and the performance should be held without any hesitation.

99. Proper Co-ordination (lit. co-ordinated production) Brilliance [of Pageant] (samśārdayi), and actors capable of [good] production are the three [points of] merits [in a performance].

Qualities of an actor

100-101. Intelligence, strength, physical beauty, knowledge of Time (tāla) and tempo (laya), appreciation of the States and the Sentiments, [proper] age, curiosity, acquisition [of knowledge and arts], [their] retention, vocal music, dances, suppression of stage-fright, and enthusiasm will be the requisite qualities of an actor (pātra).

An ideal performance

102. That which includes good instrumental music, good songs, good recitatives as well as Co-ordination of all acts prescribed by the Śāstra, is called an [ideal] production.

Brilliance of Pageant

103. Use of proper ornaments, good garlands, clothes and proper painting or the Make-up [for the characters] gives rise to Brilliance of Pageant (sampādayi).

The best performance

104. According to the producers of plays the best (lit. the ornament) [of the performance] occurs when all these factors combine.

105. Thus I have spoken to you properly of the characteristics of the Success. Now I shall speak to you about the different branches of music (ātodya, lit. instrumental music).

Here ends Chapter XXVII of Bharata’s Nātyasāstra, which treats of the Success in Dramatic Production.

98 (C.98; K.86). 99 (C.96; K.87). 1 See below 103.
105 (C.102; K.93). 1 The Chapters XXVIII-XXXIII which treat of the theory and practice of the different branches of music, will be published in the second part of the present work.
CHAPTER THIRTYFOUR

TYPES OF CHARACTERS

Three types of character in a drama

1. Whether male or female, characters (prakṛti) in general [in a play] are of three types: the superior, the middling and the inferior\(^1\).

A superior male character

2-3. A man who has controlled his senses, is wise, skilled in various arts and crafts, honest, expert in enjoyment\(^4\), brings consolation to the poor, is versed in different Śāstras, grave, liberal, patient and munificent, is to be known as a “superior” (uttama) character\(^2\).

A middling male character

3-4. A man who is an expert in dealing with people, well-versed in books on arts and crafts as well as in Śāstras, has wisdom and sweetness [of manners] is to be known as a “middling, (madhyama) character\(^1\).

An inferior male character

5-7. A man who is harsh in words, ill-mannered, low-spirited, of small intelligence, irascible, violent, can kill his friend, can kill anyone cruelly, is treacherous, haughty in words, ungrateful, indolent, expert in insulting the honoured persons, covetous for women, fond of quarrel, doer of evil deeds and stealer of others’ property, is to be known as an “inferior” (adhama) character. Similarly female characters too are of three kinds\(^1\).

A superior female character

8-10. I shall now speak in due order of female characters. A woman who has a tender nature, is not fickle or cruel,

\(^1\) (C.1b-2a; K.XXIV.1). \(^1\) C. reads before this one additional couplet.
\(^2\) (C.2b-4a). \(^1\) Emend bhagalakṣā into bhagadakṣā.
\(^3\) Cf. K. XXIV. 86b-88a.
\(^4\) (C.4b-5a). \(^1\) Cf. K.XXIV. 88b-89.
\(^5\) (C.56-7a). \(^1\) Cf. K.XXIV. 89b-92a.
\(^6\) (C.8b-11a). \(^1\) Read smītabhāṣīnya.
speaks smilingly\textsuperscript{2}, is obedient to her superiors (guru)\textsuperscript{2}, bashful, good-mannered, has physical charm as well as high birth, and other natural qualities, and is grave and patient, is to be known as a “superior” (uttama) character\textsuperscript{2}.

A middling female character

11. A woman who does not possess these qualities to a great extent and always, and has some slight faults mixed with them, is to be known as a “middling” (madhyama) character.

An inferior female character

12. Description of the inferior male characters will generally apply in case of female characters of that type.

A mixed character

13. A hermaphrodite is to be known as a character of the “mixed” (sambūrṇa) and inferior type. Maid-servants and the like are also characters of the mixed type.

14. The Jester, the Śakara\textsuperscript{1} and all others like them in a play, are characters of the mixed type\textsuperscript{2}.

So much about the characters which may be male, female and hermaphrodite.

The four types of the Heroe

15-16. I shall now describe their classes\textsuperscript{1} according to their conduct. Among these [characters], Heroes (nāyaka) are known to be of four classes, and they belong to the superior and the middling\textsuperscript{2} types and have various characteristics.

17. The Hero is described as being of four kinds: the self-controlled and vehement (dhirodhāta), the self-controlled and light-hearted (dhīra-lalita), the self-controlled and exalted (dhīra-dātta) and the self-controlled and calm (dhīra-prakānta).

\textsuperscript{2} Read gurūṇām vacane. \textsuperscript{2} Cf. K.XXIV. 109-110a.
13 (13b-14a; K.XXIV.10b, 10a).
14 (14bc; K.XXIV.11). \textsuperscript{1} K.d. śakaras caiva cetaś ca.
\textsuperscript{2} Read sambūrṇa prakṛtir for samkūrṇa nātaka.
15-16 (C.15-16; K.XXIV.12ab. 2). \textsuperscript{1} viśhāgam, K. (viśhānam, C).
\textsuperscript{2} madhyottamāyūm, C. (tatottamāyūm, K.)
\textsuperscript{1} 17 (C.17; K.XXIV.8).
18-20. Gods are self-controlled and vehement (dhīrodhāta), kings are self-controlled and light-hearted (dhīralalita)\(^1\), the councillors are the self-controlled and exalted (dhīrodattā), and Brahmans and merchants are the self-controlled and calm (dhīraprāśānta) classes of Heroes. To these again belong the four classes of Jesters.

The four types of Heroines

20-21. These are always the Heroes in dramatic works (lit. poetical composition). I shall now speak of the Heroines who are of four classes: a goddess, a queen, a woman of high family and a courtesan.

21-22. These may, according to their characteristics, be of four types: self-controlled, (dhīrā), light-hearted (lalitā), exalted (mlāttā) and modest (nibhyā)\(^1\).

22-23. Goddesses may possess all these qualities, and women of high family may be exalted and modest, while the courtesans and the crafts-women light-hearted and exalted\(^1\).

Two classes of employment for characters

24. The characters [in a play] are of two kinds: external (bāhya) and internal (abhyanta)\(^2\). I shall now describe their characteristics\(^3\).

---

18-20 (C.18; K.XXIV.4). \(^\text{1} \) svṛ dhīrālālī tā byātāh. K. (lalitā tu nirād tā byātāh, C).

20-21 (C.19; K.XXIV.5). \(^\text{1} \) C. reads after this, three and a half additional (corrupt) couplets (C.20-23a) which may be tentatively translated as follows: They (Jesters) are serially [of two types]: lowborn and cultured. They are to be attached to gods, kings, ministers, and Brahmans. And in his separation [from the beloved] a friendly maid servant clever in conversation, who feels distressed at his misfortune should be attached to the king. Among many (lit. in the multiplicity of) male characters in a play, the chief one is called the Hero. When in a play (lit. there) more [male characters] than one meet the misfortune and get back the prosperity, then one whose conditions appear remarkable should be taken as the Hero.

21-22 (C.23b-24a; K.XXIV.6-8a). \(^\text{1} \) C. omits 20b-21 and reads 20a as follows: वि तु माय्या केवल नागराजकारिकाचे (वि), We with K.

22-23 (C.24b-25; K.XXIV.8b-9). \(^\text{1} \) K. reads 22b as follows: द्रव्यारोधाकारिता पूर्वायुक्त सवर्ण फि.

24 (C.28; K.XXIV.12b). \(^\text{1} \) Read prakāro dvividhāḥ svrāḥ.

---

\(^1\) K. omits 24b.
25. [The character which has dealings with of the king [only], is called internal and one who deals with the people outside [the king’s palace] is called an external character.

Female inmates of the harem

26-29. I shall now describe the classes and function of women who live in the harem and have dealings with the king. They are the chief queen (mahā-devī), other queens (devi), his high-born wives (śrāminī), ordinary wives (śhāyini), concubines (bhūyini), court-women (śilpakārīṇī), actresses (nāṭakīṇī)² dancers (vartakī), maids in constant attendance (aunaśārīkā), maids of special work (paricārīkā), maids in constant movement (saunāśārīkā), maids for running errands (prāṣaṇa-cārika), Mahattarīs (matron), old dames (sthāvīrī) Ayuktikās and (overseer), Prathihāris (usher), maidens (kumārī).

The chief queen

30-32. The chief queen (mahā-devī) is one who has been consecrated on her head, is of high birth and character, possessed of accomplishments, advanced in age, indifferent to her rivals, free from anger and malice, and who fully understands the king’s character, has sympathy in his joy and sorrow, is always engaged in propitiatory rites for the good of the [royal] husband, calm, affectionate, patient, and benevolent to the inmates of the harem¹.

Other queens

33-34. Those [wives of the king] who have all these qualities except that they are denied proper consecration¹, and who in spite of being proud of good fortune, are eager for enjoying affection², are always brilliantly dressed, jealous of their rivals and splendid on account of their [young] age, physical charm and [many other] qualities, are called queens (devī)⁵.

---

² Cf. BhP. p. 290, l. 15-18. ³ This shows that kings in ancient times had a large number of wives. According to the Ceylon tradition Bindusāra had sixteen wives (see Barua, Inscriptions of Asoka, p.276). In Svapa. (VI.9) Udayana refers to the sixteen wives of his father-in-law Malāsena. ⁴ Cf. Pali. nāṭakīṭṭhi.

³ (C.32-34; K.XXIV.18-20). ² Cf. BhP. p. 290, l. 15-18

⁴ (C.35-36; K.XXIV.21-22) ² satsamskāraś tu C.(bhūmāna,K.)

⁵ K. reads 33b as सामिता राज्येश्वरी च परिक्रोधिताय.

High-born wives

35-36. Daughters of generals or of ministers or of any other officers when they (i.e. their daughters) are elevated by the king through the bestowal of affection and honour, and become his favourite due to good manners and physical charm, and attain importance through their own merits, are known as the highborn wives (svāmini).\(^1\)

Ordinary wives

37-39. Ordinary wives (sthāgini) of the king are the women who have physical charm and young age, is violent [in sexual acts], full of amorous gestures and movements, expert in the enjoyment of love, jealous of rivals, honest, and who know the mind of the husband, are expert in writing and painting, follow the wishes of the king always, and are free from anger, sleep, indolence and cruelty, [always] alert and ready [to act] and capable of showing honour to persons according to their status.\(^1\)

Concubines

40. Concubines (bhūgini) to a king are known as well-behaved, gentle [in manners], not very haughty, and they are indifferent [to rivals], modest, affectionate but not held in high honour.\(^1\)

Women artistes

41-42. Those women who are conversant with various arts, skilled in various crafts, know the different branches of the art of perfume-making, and are skilled in different modes of painting, know all about the comforts of beds and seats, and are sweet in manners, clever, honest, pleasant-looking, distinct [in their words], honest and modest, are known as women-artistes (āśīpakārika).\(^1\)

Actresses

43-44. Women who have knowledge of notes (svāra), time-beat (tāla) and caesura (prati) [in a song], are associated with a master of the art (ācārya), clever, skilled in acting (nātya), capable

---

35-36 (C.37-38; K.XXIV.23-24). \(^1\) K. reads 36b as ज्ञानसंवर्धनवर्गम् ज्ञानोपनिषदेन। BhP. has nothing analogous. See p. 290.


41-42 (C.40b-41a, K.XXIV.29-30). C. omits 41. 43-44 (C.41b-42).
of speaking according to the occasion, have young age, and beauty of form, are known to be actresses (nājadakṣīyā)\(^1\).

**Dancers**

44-48. Women who are expert in the representation of Passion (hetā) and Feeling (bhāva), know [well] the representation of the Temperament (sāttva), have sweetness [of manners], are skilled in playing musical instruments, have beautiful limbs, are conversant with the sixtyfour arts and crafts, are clever and always bold, free from indolence, inured to hard work, capable of practising various arts, and skilled in dancing and singing, and due to their young age superior to all other women standing near by, in the beauty of form and in the brilliance of appearance, are known as dancers (nātakā)\(^1\).

**Maids in constant attendance**

48-49. Women who do not under any condition leave the king, are maids in constant attendance (anucaśikā)\(^1\).

**Maids of special work**

49-51. Those women who are clever, skillful, regular, and who know the art of making bed, serving wine and victuals, shampooing, preparing and applying perfumes, decorating one with ornaments and garlands, are to be known as maids of special work (paricāriki)\(^1\).

**Maids in constant move**

51-53. Those women who [always] roam about in different parts [of the palace], gardens, temples, pleasure pavilions, and strike

---

\(^1\) K.’s slightly different reading in trans. will be as follows: A woman who knows to begin [a song] and to stop it, and the proper tempo to be followed in it, can represent the Sentiments and the States, understand other people’s intention and hints, is obedient to the teacher, clever, expert in acting, skilled in discussion, conversant with the playing of drums and other musical instruments, is called an actress.

**Notes**

44-48 (C.44-45; 47; K.33b, 33a, 34). \(^1\) K. reads between 47a and 47b an additional couplet.


49-51 (C.48b-50a). \(^1\) K.’s reading which is slightly different will in trans. be as follows: A woman who is in charge of the king’s umbrella, bed and seat, and looks after the cooked food, shampooing, toilet, wearing of ornaments and garlands is his maid of special work (paricārikā).

Cf. AS, II. 27, 41.

51-53 (C.50b-52a; K.XXIV.40-41).
the [bell indicating] the Yama¹ and are prohibited intercourse by the playwrights, are to be known as maids in constant move (śaṅcārikā).

Errand girls

53-54. Women who are employed by kings in secret commissions connected with his love-affairs and are often to be sent [in some such work] are to be known as errand girls (parṣaṇācārikā)².

Mahattarīs

54-55. Women who for the immunity of the entire harem [from evils] and for [the king's] prosperity takes pleasure in [singing] hymns [to gods] and in performing auspicious ceremony, are known as Mahattarīs (matrons).

Pratihāris

55-56. Women who lay before the king any business related to various affairs [of the state] such as treaty (sandhi), war (vīraha) and the like, are called Pratihāris (usher).

Maideus

56-57. Girls who have no [experience of] love's union (ratisāmyoga) and are quiet, devoid of rashness, modest and bashful are said to be maideus (kumāri).

Old dames

57-58. Women who know the manners of the departed kings and have been honoured by them¹ and who know of the character of all [members of the harem]² are said to be old dames (vipādhā).

Āyuktikās

58-60. Women who are in charge of the stores, the weapons, the fruits, roots and grains, who examine the [cooked] food for [the king] and are in charge of (lit. thinkers of) the scent, ornaments

¹ yāma=a period of three hours.
² Read the passage as follows: पृवर्निषष्ठावाच पृवर्निषष्ठावाच यवधवके. । त्रैभृषत

1 (C.52bc; K.XXIV.42).
2 (C.53; K.XXIV.43).
55-56 (K.XXIV.44).
56-57 (K.XXIV.45).
57-58 (C. 54; K.XXIV.46).
1 पृवर्निषष्ठावाच पृवर्निषष्ठावाच सुर्वनिषष्ठावाच सुर्वनिषष्ठावाच च. ।
2 सर्वनिषष्ठावाच च. (पृवर्निषष्ठावाच) क.।
58-60 (C.55-57a; K.XXIV.36-37).
and garlands and clothes [he is to use], and who have under them many persons and are clever, are said to be Āyuktikās or Yuktikās (overseer). These are in general the women of the [royal] harem.

Qualities of women to be employed by the king

61-64. The qualities of those women who are to be employed [by the king] should be as follows: they should not be rash, restless, covetous and very cruel in mind; they are to be quiet, forgiving, satisfied; they must have conquered anger and controlled senses, they should have no passion; they are to be respectable, free from all female diseases, attached¹ and devoted² [to the king] and free from womanly pride³.

Others inmates of the harem

64-69. The Hermaphrodites who constitute the third class of characters, should be employed in a royal household for moving about in the harem. But Snātakas¹, Kaśeukins as well as Varṣadharas, Aupasthāyikas-Nirmuṇḍas are to be placed in different parts (kakeṣa) of the harem. Persons who are enmuchs or have given up sexual pleasures should always be made the inmates of the harem in a Nātaka. The Snātaka should be made to observe Aryan manners. In errands relating to the polity the Kaśeuki should be employed, and in errands relating to love-affairs (śramaṇa) the Varṣadhara are to be engaged. The Aupasthāyikas-Nirmuṇḍas are to be engaged in sending out women and in any place for the protection of maidens and girls².

70. And maids in constant attendance should be employed by kings in sending gifts¹ to women [they love]; women well-versed in all kinds of dance and in the use of different limbs [in dance and acting] should be placed in the [royal] theatre².

---

¹ Here occurs an expression mānāgāriaḥ: asamutthitāḥ which cannot be explained.
² K. omits 64a and reads the rest with a slight variation.
³ vanitā-madavajarjita, K. (sarva-dosa-pivarjitaḥ, C.).
⁴ 64-69 (C 61-63a; K.XXIV.50-54). ¹ snātakāḥ K. (kāraṇāḥ, C.).
⁵ C. omits 66-68 and K. 69b.
⁶ 70 (C.64a; K.XXIV.55). ¹ Read danaśāryaścu for māna² (texts).
The Varṣadharas

71. Those women who have poor vitality and the eunuchs who have the nature of women and are voiceless from birth are known as Varṣadharas (sub-men)\(^1\).

The Nirmuḍas

72. Those eunuchs who look like males and have nothing feminine in their nature and have no knowledge of sexual acts are called Nirmuḍas\(^2\).

The Kaṇcukins

73-74. Those who have learning, truthfulness, are free from the sexual passion, and have deep knowledge and wisdom, are known as the Kaṇcukins. [When they are] Brahmans by birth, clever, old and free from sexual passion, kings are always to employ them to look after the needs of the queens\(^3\).

75. These are the eighteen classes of inmates of the [king’s] harem. I shall now speak of persons who move about in public.

External persons

76-77. They are: the king (rājan), the leader of the army (senāpati), the chaplain (puruḍhaka), the ministers (mantrin)\(^4\), councillors (sācīna), judges (prādēśikā) and the wardens of princes (kumārādīkṛta)\(^2\) and many other members of the king’s court.

---

71 (C.64b-65; K.XXIV.56). \(^1\) The reading is corrupt.
72 (K.XXIV.57). \(^1\) K. omits this.
73-74 (C.65b-66a; K.XXIV.58). \(^1\) Though the later writers have opined that the Kaṇcukin should be a Brahmin, the author of the Ś. did not recognize any such rule. Bhāsa too seems to follow him. In Dūtavā (I. 5, 9) the Kaṇcukiya falls at the feet of Duryodhana. So we may infer that the Kaṇc. was not a Brahmin who could not degrade himself by falling at the feet of a Kṣatriya. For later def. of the Kaṇc. see Ś. XIII.112-113 notes.
75 (C.66b-67a; K.XXIV.59).
76-77 (C.67b-69a; K.XXIV.60-61). \(^1\) AS. (I 8 and 9) distinguishes between amāyya and mantrin. Kāmadhikāya Nitisāra (VIII. 1) also does the same; according to this latter authority amāyya seems to be identical with sācīva; see IV. 25, 35, 36. According to Sukraṇṭi sācīva, maritrum and amāyya are three diff. func ions. See II. 94, 95, 103.

\(^2\) Read kumārādīkṛta tathā for kumārābhītā tathā. K.
(sabhāstāra)\(^8\). I shall speak of their characteristics, please listen about them.

**The king**

78-82. A king should be [physically] strong, intelligent, truthful, master of the senses, clever, eloquent, high-minded, honest, far-sighted, greatly energetic, grateful, sweet-tongued, skillful; and he should take a vow of protecting his subjects and must know how to divide duties [amongst his officers]; and he should be always ready to act, alert, advanced in age and be an adept in the Smṛti and the Arthaśāstra literature, expert in detecting enemy’s weakness and the must understand one’s mind from his appearance, he should be magnanimous, well-protected, capable of taking logical view of anything, and a patron of various arts and crafts, and an expert in the Niti literature.

**The leader of the army**

82-83. One who is truthful and possesses a good character, is always active (lit. has given up idleness), sweet-tongued, knows the rules regarding the weakness of the enemy, and the proper time for marching against him, has a knowledge of the Arthaśāstra and everything about wealth, is devoted [to the king], honoured in the society and has a knowledge of the time and place, should be made the leader of the army (senāpati)\(^1\).

**Councillors**

84-85. Those who are intelligent, full of policy, heroic, sweet in speech, well-versed in the Arthaśāstra, attached to the subjects [of the king] and are followers of laws (dharma) should be appointed Councilors (amūtya) by the king\(^1\).

---

\(^8\) Read sabhāstārāḥ, K. for mānyā jñeyā, C.

78-82 (C.69b-73a). \(^1\) K. XXIV.62-66 seems to read the passage with some significant variation. On this see the Introduction.

82-83 (C.XXIV.67-68). \(^1\) The def. of the chaplain (purodhas) and the minister (mantri) expected here seems to be lost. See above 76-77 note.

84-85 (C.73b-74). \(^1\) (K.XXIV.69-70a) reads the passage differently and in trans, it will be as follows: The councillors (amūtya) and the ministers (mantri) are to be characterised by the following qualities: they should besides being fellow-countrymen [of the king] and devoted [to him], high-born, intelligent, honest, virtuous and well-versed in the Vedas (bruti) as well as in polity.
Judges

85-87. Those who know [well] about commerce and money, are intelligent, conversant with many departments of knowledge, impartial, followers of laws, able to discriminate between good and bad deeds, forbearing, self-controlled, overcome anger, and have the same respect for all people, are to be appointed as judges (prāśīvaka) by kings.

Courtiers

87-90. The members of the court (sabhāslāra) should be appointed after consulting the views of Bṛhaspati who thinks that the following are the qualities required for this office: they should be always ready for work, alert, free from indolence, undaunted by hard work, affectionate, forbearing, modest, impartial, skillful, trained in polity and good manners, deeply conversant with the art of agrumentation and all other branches of knowledge, and not affected by sexual passion and the like.

Next I shall tell you about the rules regarding the distribution roles in a drama.

Here ends Chapter XXXIV of Bharata's Nātyaśāstra, which treats of the Types of Different Characters.

---

85-87 (C.75-76; K XXIV.70b-72a). 1 The def. of the warden of the princes (kumārādhiśīla) expected here seems to be lost. See above 76-77.
87-90 (C.77-79; K.XXXIV.72b-73, 74b, 75a). 1 Read 89a, as विण्डक कांड. अपाधिशिकार वक्त्रम (cāpadhuryam-K. for cāpi karmājñāh, K. rudikātika- thanam, K. for ṛavikātāpanam, C.
CHAPTER THIRTYFIVE

DISTRIBUTION OF ROLES

1. I shall [now] speak of the distribution of roles in a play or of the kinds of men by which different roles are to be represented.

General principles of distribution

2. After considering together from their gait, speech and movements of the limbs as well as their strength and nature, the experts are to employ actors to represent different roles [in a play].

3. Hence the selection of actors should be preceded by an enquiry into their merits. The Director (lit. the master) will not feel difficulty in the choice [if such a procedure is followed].

4. After ascertaining their natural aptitudes he is to distribute roles to different actors.

The role of gods

5-6. Persons who have all the limbs intact, well-formed and thick-set, who are full-grown (rayo'wita) not fat or lean or tall or lazy, who have vivacity, pleasant voice and good appearance, should be employed to represent the role of gods.

The role of the Rākṣasas, the Dānavas etc.

7-8. Persons who are fat, and have a large body and a voice like the peal of thunder (lit. cloud), furious looking

---

1 (C. K. same). 1 vihāgam (vinyāsavām, K.).
2 K. reads lb. with a slight variation.
3 (C.2a; K.2). 3 satvāśīlaḥ, K. (satvāśīla, C.).
4 Emend yusṭūd, K. into yusjūd.
5 2b. and the following thirteen couplets have been omitted by C.
6 (K.3). 1 Literally, ‘this will not bring weariness to the intellect of the Director.’
7 (K.4). 1 This passage is slightly corrupt.
8 (K.5-6). 1 This seems to be comparable to the Hellenic conception of gods.
eyes and naturally knit eye-brows should be employed to represent the role of the Rākṣasas, the Dānavas and the Daityas, for the performance of male actors [should be] in conformity with their limbs and movements.

The role of kings

9-11. Actors (bharata) of the best kind, who have beautiful eyes, eyebrows, forehead, nose, lips, cheeks, face, neck and every other limb beautiful, and who are tall, possessed of pleasant appearance and dignified gait, and are neither fat nor lean and are well-behaved, wise and steady by nature, should be employed to represent the role of kings and princes (kumāra).

The role of army-leaders and councillors

12-13. Persons who have well-formed limbs, distinct speech, are neither tall nor fat, are heroic, skilled in debate, eloquent, ready-witted and not deficient [in anything] should be employed to represent the role of the leaders of the army (senāpati), and the councillors (amanīya).

The role of the Kañcukin and the Śrotriya

14. Persons who have brown eyes, long nose and who are either short or tall [in stature] should be employed to represent the roles of the Kañcukin (armour-bearer), the Śrotriya (master of the Vedas) and the like.

The role of minor characters

15. In other cases too, similar dramatic convention has been prescribed; roles should be assigned after considering the latter's age and physical condition.

16-17. [For example] persons who are slow-moving, very dwarfish, hunch-backed, uncouth, odd-faced and fat, who have

9-11 (K.9-11). 1 Kings, princes and army-leaders etc. which the author had in view seem to have been of Indo-Iranian origin.
12-13 (K.12-13). 1 This seems to mean a medium height. See above 9-11 note 1.
15 (C.8; K.15). 1 Read nītvinabhiṃ prāṣasyate.
2 dasāvasthānurūpā K. (dēaveṣānū C.).
16-17 (C.3b-4a; K.16-17).
expressionless (lit. motionless) eyes\(^1\), one eye blind\(^2\), small chin and low nose, ugly raiments, evil nature, deformed body and are born of slaves should be employed in the role of slaves (dāśa).

The role of fatigued persons

18. A person who is naturally thin, should be employed in a play (lit. there)\(^1\) to represent the tired characters.

The role of persons without disease

A fat person should be employed to represent the persons without any disease\(^2\).

Special cases of assigning roles

19. If, however, such persons are not available the Director (lit. the master) should exercise discretion to employ [some one] after a consideration of the latter’s nature and movement as well as the States [to be represented].

20. Such persons’ natural movements whether good, bad or middling should be regulated by a contact with the Director (lit. the master)\(^1\) and then they will properly represent [all] the States\(^2\).

21. In other cases too similar dramatic convention has been prescribed, and roles should be assigned to persons after considering their native place (leśū) and costume (vīśū).

The role of characters with extra or special limbs

22-23. In case of characters which have many arms, many heads, and uncouth faces, and faces of animals including beasts of prey\(^1\), asses\(^2\), camels, horses and like, the Director (lit. the

---

\(^1\) Read viṣṇabhdhanetram for viṣṇabhdhanetram, K. viṣṇetram, C.
\(^2\) kāvāksam, K. (kārvānām, C.).
18 (C.4b-5a; K.18). \(^1\) tatra śrāntesu, C. tapah(h)srānta K.
\(^2\) hyarogyu prā\(^2\), C. muparogesu, K. 19 (C.5b-6a; K. 19).
20 (C.6b-7b; K.20ab.). \(^1\) tathā cārtyayogena. K. (tathā cānyayo-
genā, C.).
\(^2\) C. 6b and 7a seem to be variant of each other. See K. 20a which we accept. 21 (C. 8). \(^1\) omits this.
22-23 (C.9-10; K.XXVI.13b-15a). \(^1\) śvāpadasātvirāga ca, K. śvā-
\(^\) padasimha ca, C.
\(^2\) khaṇḍasyavāmanas tathā K. khaṇḍastra vāraṇasa tathā, C.
\(^2\) C.11; K.XXVI.15b-16a).
master) should, according to his discretion, have the masks (lit. them) made by means of clay, wood lac and leather.

The first entry of a character

24. After concealing his identity (lit. his own form) by means of painting and make-up one should enter the stage in his natural State (bhāva).  

The result of proper impersonation

25-26. If in the production of a play a person is to be assigned a role which fits in with his nature and physical form, then he [very naturally] represents it (lit. renders his States). [He will be] like a man who renounces his own nature together with the body, and assumes another's nature by entering into the latter's body.

The psychological preparation for impersonation

27. Thus after thinking within himself that "I am he" a wise actor should represent the States of another person by speech, gait, movements and gestures.

Three kinds of impersonation

28. Human characters according as they are represented on the stage [by actors] fall into three classes: natural (anurūpā), unnatural (vīrūpā) and imitative (vāpānausārīpi).

The natural impersonation

29. When women impersonate female characters and men male characters, and their ages are similar to that of the characters represented, the impersonation is called "natural" (anurūpā).

The unnatural impersonation

30. When a boy impersonates the role of an old man, or an old man that of a boy, and betrays his own nature in acting, the representation is called "unnatural" (vīrūpā).

---

1 The implication of this is not clear.
25-26 (C.12-13; K.XXVI.16b-18a). 1 prayojanam, K. prayuktām, C.  
Cf. NŚ. XXIII. 79.
27 (C.14; K.XXVI.18b 19a). 1 A very practical instruction.
28 (C.15; K.XXVI.1).  
29 (C.17; K.XXVI.2). 1 C. reads 28 before this with a slight variation.
30 (C.18; K.XXVI.3).
Imitative impersonation

31-32. When a man impersonates a woman’s character the impersonation is called “imitative” (rūpāṇusārini). [Following this very principle] a man’s character may, at one’s option, be represented by a woman. But in cases of such an inversion of roles (lit. mutual efforts), one should see that persons employed are neither old nor ugly (lit. should make them old or ugly).

Suitability of women in some roles

33-35. Characters of delicate nature are always to be represented by women, and hence such roles of gods and mortals [are mostly to be represented] likewise. [For] just as among the gods (śvarge) drama depends on [females like] Rambhā, Urvaśī and the like, similarly among the mortals (mānuṣe loke) too the same rule holds good in the harem of kings. And [hence] teachers (ācārya) should instruct women [in acting], according to the Śāstras.

35-36. As amorousness (vilāsa) is natural in women they possess likewise naturally graceful limbs which are easily accessible to the Saṃśāra. But the men’s Lolling (līlīta) should depend on decorative movements (alabhāra).

Training for women in different roles

37. A good Director (lit. wise man) should not get women’s roles supervised by himself (asyayam). But masculine (lit. production depending on men when assigned to women should be carefully directed [by him].

Result of proper assignment of roles

38. Roles assigned to persons of various nature, and age,

---

Footnotes:

1 As in the Shakespearian stage. Ag. (p. 502) explains būlīsā as virūpa (ugly).
2 bhūmi, sukumāram, C. bhūyiśhtham, K.
3 nityam, C. svītām, K.
4 mānuṣinām, C. prakṛtīnām, K.
5 See NŚ. XI. 88-91.
6 The trans. is tentative.
7 C.26b-25; K.XXXVII.12-13a.
8 C.16; 26b; K.XXXVII.10b-11a.
who depend on natural limbs will very much embellish a dramatic performance.

Result of employing women for acting

39. Dance and music (sāngita) without fatigue is always [considered] a quality in women, and a dramatic production attains\(^1\) partly the sweetness and partly the strength due to this\(^2\).

40. A woman who is an adept in the practice of love and is an expert in [representing] love-affairs appears through her graceful acting on the stage (nātyavilāsa) like a creeper full of various charms on account of its [many] flowers.

41. Hence [a Director] should always bestow undivided attention to the [women’s] exercise (yogā) [in dance and music]. For without such an exercise the States, the Sentiments and the Sauṣṭhava cannot be produced [by them] in the least\(^4\).

The two types of dramatic production

42. The production of a drama which includes many States and Sentiments is of two kinds: delicate (sukumāra) and violent (āviddha)\(^5\).

The delicate type of production

43. The Nāṭaka, the Prakāraṇa, the Bhāṣa, the Vīthi, and the Ankā are known to be of the delicate type\(^6\). For they depend [for their production on the impersonation of] human beings only.

---

\(^1\) Read this couplet as follows: "नात्यायथायाधिकौ भूमिका प्रक्षिप्तम्। प्रक्षिप्तसाधनः भावाभूतसाधनः."

39 (C.27; K.XXVI.19). \(^1\) bhajāten; K. (bhavati; C.). Read nātyam prayoge ca for nātyam prayogena, C. K. \(^2\) The passage is corrupt.

40 (C.28). \(^1\) This shows the benefit of engaging actresses. The employment of boys to represent women on the stage was considerably a handicap with Shakespeare in depicting female characters. On this see "Shakespeare’s Dramatic Art" (p. 54) in A Companion to Shakespeare Studies, Cambridge, 1946. K. omits this.

41 (C.29). \(^1\) K. omits this. This passage seems to show the high standard of acting in the ancient Hindu theatre.

42 (C.30; K.XXVI.20, XIII.44). \(^1\) See NS. XIV. 56.

43 (C.31; K.XXVI.21, XXII.49). \(^1\) See NS. XIV. 61.
44. This delicate type of production is pleasing to kings. Hence plays of this class when they are found to possess [chiefly] the Erotic Sentiment, should be produced by women [only, for the enjoyment of kings].

45. The play in which there occurs violent fighting, great speed [of movement] and much excitement, should be enacted not by females but by males.

46-47. If a play includes ordinary (lit. not exalted) incidents and no hurried or violent movement of limbs, and requires the observance of proper tempo, Time and regulated utterance of syllables and of well-seperated words, and does not abound in all the eight Sentiments in their exuberance, then it may be made to be produced by women.

The violent type of production

48-49. The play which requires energetic (āvidhīka) Aṅga-hāras to represent cutting, piercing, and challenging, and includes [a representatation of] the use of magic and occult powers as well as artificial objects and costumes, and has among its dramatis personae many males and small number of females who are of quiet nature, and mostly the Grand and the Energetic Styles are applied in its production, is of the violent (āvidhīka) type.

50. By the expert producers, the plays of the Dīma, the Samavakāra, the Vyāyoga and the Ilaṁrga classes are known to be of the violent type.

51. Production of plays of this type should be made by [an impersonation of] gods, the Dānavas and the Rākṣasas who are majestic, and endowed with heroism, energy and strength.

---

52. Thus one should assign roles of different characters in the production of a play. Now I shall speak how the drama is to be produced with the help of the Costumes and Make-up.

The typical impersonation of a king

53-55. How are the kingly qualities to be represented by a limited number (niśpa) of dresses? In this connexion it has been said that when the dramatic conventions came into being among the people, the drama furnished with all these, was devised by me. And hence the actor (nata) covered with paint and decorated with ornaments will reveal the signs of kingship when he will assume a grave and dignified attitude. And thus a person will be [as it were] the refuge of the Seven Great Divisions (saptadrśī) of the earth.

56-57. Covered with paints [in the role of a king and having mild movement of the limbs] the actor under instruction of the teacher should assume the Saus̄thava pose, and then he will look like a king, and [ordinarily] the king also looks like an actor. Just as the actor is to be like a king, so the king is to be like an actor.

58-59. The States are to be represented (lit. accomplished) by the both by means of similar graceful movements and the similar Saus̄thava of limbs. Just as an actor under instruction of the teacher illuminates the stage, so the king too should always be naturally brilliant [in his dress and demeanour].

52 (C.37; K.XXXVI.26a).

53-55 (C. 38-40; K.XXXIV. 76-78). 1 gumbhīryaudārya K. gumbhīryāhārya, C.

56-57 (C. 41-42; K.XXXIV. 79-80). 1 The 56a should be emended as follows: चतुर्भुजस्तन्त्रितदेशां भाजविविशेषस्य (वर्णीकृतिः ज्ञेय बार्त, C). ūnātah (śāntam) in place of karthavyam in the next hemistich in K.

2 This is a very clever statement. The king though he is nothing but an ordinary human being, often assumes consciously or unconsciously an extraordinary appearance.

58-59 (K.XXXIV.81-82a). 1 samālitāugasaus̄thavā (text, vū for vū).

69
Impersonation of the attendants of gods

59-60. The attendants of gods\(^1\) should be made like those of kings, and in the drama they are to be given the costume, the language\(^2\) and movements suitable [to their character].

60-61. The producer should give to the actor the natural appearance of a character by giving him [suitable costume] and by associating him with suitable age through the make-up\(^1\).

61-62. Thus one should make a selection of persons for representing kingly manners. I shall speak hereafter of the qualities desirable in producers.

The characteristics of a Director

In this connexion, I shall speak of the qualities of a Director. An enumeration of his qualities will constitute these characteristics; they are: complete refinement of speech, knowledge about the Tālā, rules for timing of songs, and of the theory relating to musical notes and to the playing of musical instruments\(^1\).

63-68. One who is an expert in playing the four kinds of musical instrument, well-trained in rites prescribed in the Śāstras, conversant with the practices of different religious sects and with polity and the science of wealth, expert in the manners of courtiers, and in poetics\(^7\), knows the various conventional Gaits\(^2\) and movements, thoroughly appreciates [all] the States (bhārā) and the Sentiments (rasa), is an expert in producing plays, acquainted with various arts and crafts, conversant with the rules of prosody and the metrical feet, and is clever in studying the different Śāstras, acquainted with the science of stars and planets and with the working of the human body, knows the extent and customs of the earth, its continents and divisions, mountains and people, and the descendants of different royal lines\(^3\), is fit to attend to the Śāstras relating to his works, capable of understanding them and of giving

---

59-60 (C.43; K.XXIV. 83b-83a). \(^1\) dīryāṇāṃ, K. dravyāṇāṃ, C.).
60-61 (K.XXIV.83b-84a). \(^1\) This passage seems to be a variant of 25.
60-62 (C.44 and prose; K.XXIV.84b and prose). \(^1\) K. reads the prose passage differently.
63-4 (C.45-50; K.XXIV. 93-98). \(^1\) kānyāśāstra, K., kāmaśāstra, C.
63-4 \(\text{pratīcāra, K. gilāpracāra, C.}
63-4 \(\text{prasūtivit, K. prasūtivān, C.}

---
instruction [on the subjects]: should be made a teacher (ārya) and a Director (śūtradhārī).*

The natural qualities of a Director

69-71. Now listen to me speaking about the natural qualities [which he should possess]. He should be possessed of memory and judgement, be persevering, dignified, poetical, free from diseases, sweet [in his manners], forbearing, self-possessed, speaking sweet words with a smile, free from anger and greed, truthful, impartial, honest and resourceful (pratimāntā). These are his natural qualities.  

Characteristics of an Assistant to the Director

71-72. A person of the middling type who has slightly less number of qualities than that the Director is to possess, should be known as an Assistant (vāripārvīka) to the Director.

Characteristics of an actor

72-73. An actor (nāṭa) should be lively [lit. bright], possessed of good physique, acquainted with theatrical accessories and their uses, possessed of [good] memory, conversant with the rules [of the theatre] and an expert in his own work.1

Characteristics of the Parasite

73-74. Possessing the qualities which the Director (śūtradhārī) has with regard to the theatrical production the Parasite (vini) should be an expert in dealing with courtiers, sweet-tempered, impartial, poetic, capable of seeing the pros and cons in any argument and be eloquent and clever.

Characteristics of the Šakāra

75. The Šakāra1 who is to change his nature often will

---


71-72 (C.53b-54a; K.XXIV.101b-102a).


73-74 (C.55bc; K.XXIV.103b-104). 1 Emend yuktāḥ sarva eva pryojīnāḥ into yuktāḥ sarva eva pryojye ca.

75 (C.56; K.XXIV.105). 1 Sometimes connected with the Šakas; see Keith, Skt. Drama, p. 69.
generally be dressed with gaudy (lit. brilliant) clothes and ornaments, and will be angry without any reason and be pacified likewise, and he will speak the Māgadhi dialect.

Characteristics of the Jester

76. The Jester (cīḍārakā) should be short in stature, hunch-backed, twice-born, bald-headed and twany-eyed.

Characteristics of the servant

77. The servant (rēta) should be fond of crafts (kāla), garrulous, uncouth in form, using scents, expert in distinguishing between persons who are to be honoured or not to be honoured.

Characteristics of the courtesan

78-81. Thus I shall now speak of the nature of female characters who ātva [many] natural as well as acquired [lit. other] qualities. The courtesan (gaṇīkā) should be skilled in acting and have the following qualities: she should be always engaged in attending teachers [for learning] and in the application of the art, and be endowed with sportiveness, Emotion (kāvā), Feeling (bhāna), Temperament (sattva), good manners, and sweetness, and be acquainted with the sixty-four arts and crafts, expert in dealings with the king, free from female diseases, and should have sweet and endearing words, and be unreserved, clever and unconquered by fatigue.

Characteristics of the typical Heroine

81-83. A woman with the following qualities should be made the Heroine: she should be endowed with a good physical form, good qualities, character, young age, sweetness and strength, and she should be shining, tender, sweet, uttering charming words with a lovely voice, not unsteady (lit. perturbed) in the exercise (gojyā) and should be conversant with tempo (lāya) and Time (tālo) and the Sentiments.
Women disqualified for being Heroines

83-85. But women with the following characteristics should not be made Heroines (prakri, lit. character) in a play: smiling on wrong occasions, having violent gaits and efforts, persistent anger, being always haughty and unreserved and unruly [in their manners], having all kinds of diseases and lacking garlands and scent to adorn their body.

Members of the typical theatrical party.

85-88. I shall hereafter speak of different members of the theatrical party (bharata). [They are :] Bharata (actors) because of their following Bharata (the author of the Canons of Drama) the Jester (vīlaśāka), the musician (tānpa), the actor-dancer (antra), the Director (śātrāḥāra), playwright (nātyakāra), the maker of head-gears (nukṣṇākāra), the maker of ornaments and garlands, the dyer (vīja), the painter (vīṭa), the craftsman (lāri), and Kusālavaś who are to be known, O Brahmins, by their names.

88-89. As he conducts the performance of a drama by acting in many roles and by playing many musical instruments and by providing many household accessories (upakāraṇa) he is called Bharata or a member of the theatrical party.

Characteristics of the Jester

89-91. One who betakes himself to various places (lit. shelter) connected with the movement of all kinds of characters and creates [thereby] pleasure for them and sometimes takes shelter

---

83-85 (C.64b-66a; K.XXIV.117-118). 1 Read 85a as एवं विषय न वाचे भव. नावता।

85-86 (C.66b-69a; cf. XXXIV.21-22). 1 C. reads 85a as follows: तत्त्ववेतनादिरुपकारी स द्वितीय। 2 तानिरो, K. (tāriko, K).

86-88 (C.66b-69a; cf. XXXIV.21-22). 1 C. reads 85a as follows: नूतनसाधितं स द्वितीय। 2 तानिरो, K. (tāriko, K).

88-89 (C.69b; K.XXXX.23). 1 Read uddhar for uddhāra, K. C.

89-91 (C.70-71; K.XXXX.24-25). 1 89-91 seem to be corrupt.
with women [for the same purpose] and who is ready-witted, a maker of fums, and whose speech is always connected (lit. adorned) with the disclosure of extremely humorous ideas, is called the Jester (vidhyaka).

Characteristics of the master-musician

91-92. One who is an expert in playing all kinds of musical instruments and has taken [specially] to Tūrya, is called Tūrapati¹, Tūryapati or Tauripā (master-musician).

Meaning of the word 'Nāṭa'

92-93. The meaning of its root nāṭa is to act (lit. acts), and hence, as he acts (represents) the affairs of men with the Sentiments, the States and the Temperament, he is [called] an Actor (nāṭa)².

The Benediction defined

93-95. As one addresses by it the people with sweet words of blessing and auspicious ceremonies, it is called the Benediction. Because in the performance of a drama one speaks through it in many ways of the welfare³ of people by means of reading prayers in Prakrit or Sanskrit, it is called Benediction⁴.

Characteristics of the Director

95-96. One who knows from the instruction of the Śāstra the principles (sālra) of songs (gāna), instrumental music (vādyas) and the Recitatives, [and all these] in conformity with one another is called the Director (sālrahāra, lit. holder of principles).

Characteristics of the playwright

96-97. As one assigns [in a play] the [different] States together with the [different] Temperaments to different characters⁵, one is called the play-wright (nāṭyakāra)⁶.

---

¹ śūrapati, C. for turapati, K.
² For another def. see below 97-93.
³ nāṇyo, C. for nāṇḍyo, C.
⁴ These two def. of the Benediction (nāṇḍy) seem to be out of place here. For the other def. see NS. V. 24-25; 107-113.
⁵ 96-98 (C.76, K.XXXV.30).
⁶ 96-97 (C.77, K.XXXV.31). Read bhumi-vicaipam for vikaip, C.
⁷ sīkāplode, K.
⁸ His duty was to compose a play on any given theme. He is comparable to 'poet' employed by Elizabethan theatrical companies.
Characteristics of the Actor.

97-98. Any one who can act (lit. perform) a play according to the rules for the application of the four kinds of music, is called an Actor (nāṭaka).

Characteristics of the Actress

98-99. A woman who knows about the playing of drums the tempo, the Time and is able to create the Sentiments and is beautiful in all her limbs, should be made an Actress (nāṭakiṇā)¹.

The maker of headgears

99-100. He who makes masks and various special dresses together with head-gears (kīrṣaṇa = pratiśirṣa) suited to (lit. arising from) the various characters, is called the maker of headgears (mukkunāṭakāra).

The maker of ornaments

100-101. One who makes ornaments according to various rules is called the maker of ornaments (ābharagyakṛ) ; [each of the makers the different ornaments] is to be designated according to the name of the material he uses².

The maker of garlands

101-102. He who makes five kinds of garland is called the maker of garlands (māliyaṇa).

The costumer

And he who designs costumes is called the costumer (vṛṣabhu).

The painter and the dyer

One who knows painting, is a painter (citraśīvṛ), and from his knowledge of dying (vaiṣṇava) a person is called a dyer (vaiṣṇa)¹.

---

1 K. omits this: The word nāṭajī (nāṭalā) occurs in Prātimā. ¹ 97-98 (C.78; K.XXXV.33).
2 98-99 (C.79). ¹ The significance of this statement is not apparent.
3 100-101 (C.89; K.XXXV.34). ¹ This word often used in New Indo-Aryan in the sense of 'washerman'.
4 101-102 (C.82-83a; K.XXXV.35-36a).
The craftsman

103-104. One who fashions different objects out of lac, stone, iron and wood, is called a craftsman (kāraṇa).

The Kuśālama

He who knows the principles of applying the different branches of instrumental music (āditya) and is an expert in playing them, and who is [besides] clever, refined (aradāta), free from sickness, is called the Kuśālama.

The other members of the party

104-105. The man who takes to an art (śilpa), a profession or a practice and has himself acquired proficiency in it, is called by its name. So much about the communities (jāti) known in connexion with the rules of theatre as the Naṭas who relate to various accessories [needed] in the production of various types of plays.

106. I have spoken about the assignment of roles and about the producers of a drama according to their function, and have delivered the Canons of Drama. Please mention, O sages, what more is to be said now.

Here ends Chapter XXXV of Bharata's Nāṭyaśāstra, which treats of the Distribution of Roles.

103-104 (C.83b-84; K.XXXV.36b-37). ¹ K. reads 104a differently. The etymology of kuśilava has very much exercised the ingenuity of modern scholars. See Keith, Skt. Drama. p. 30

104-104 (C.85-86; K.XXXV.38-39) ¹ Even now-a-days the people of the Naṭa community play drums, make dolls flower-garlands, and print pictures. ¹ 106 (C.87). ¹ K. omits this.
CHAPTER THIRTY-SIX

THE DESCENT OF DRAMA ON THE EARTH

Sages question

1-2. Being pleased, the sages again spoke out of curiosity to the omniscient Bharata as follows: "The ancient Nātyaveda which you have recounted, has been properly comprehended by us listening it attentively."

3. [But] you, revered sir, should also satisfy (lit. explain) any [further] curiosity (lit. doubt) we may have in this matter. For who else can speak definitely about the Nātyaveda?

4-5. We shall enquire from you [more] about the drama for our enlightenment and not out of distrust or rivalry or jealousy. We did not speak earlier (lit. then) lest it should interrupt you then. So speak to us exhaustively about the mystery of the drama.

6. You have said [already] that exploits of the people constitute the drama; hence you should speak definitely about the rest of things about the people, which are still unknown (lit. hidden).

7-9. O the best Brahmin (lit. the bull of the twice-born) tell us about the character of the god who appears in the Preliminaries. Why is he worshipped, and what does he do when worshipped (lit. meditated upon)? Are gods pleased with it, and what do they do on being pleased? Why does the Director

---

1-2 (C.8-7; K.1-2). 1 C. reads before this five couplets, giving the names of the sages as follows: Ātreya, Vaiśṭha, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Aṅgiras, Gautama, Agastya, Manu, Āyus, Aruvat, Viśvāmitra, Śtūlasīras, Saṃvarta, Pratimardana, Uśanas, Brahaspati, Vatsa, Cyavana, Kaśyapa, Dhruta, Durvāsas, Jamadagni, Mārkandeya, Gālava, Bharadvaja, Raivya, Vālmiki, Śtūlākṣa, Kanva, Medhātithi, Kuṣa, Nārada, Parvata, Sūrman, the two Ekadhavanus, Niśṭhuti, Bhavana, Dhaunyā, Śatānanda, Kṛtvārjuna, Jāmadagnya Rāma, and Jamadagni Vāmana. These however seem to be an interpolation. 3 (C.8; K.3).

4-5 (C.9-10; K.4-5). 1 K. reads 5b as follows: "प्राणीं जनविषारं अक्षयं जयन्ति प्राण. 3 (C.11; K.6).

7-9 (C.12-14; K.7-9).
being himself clean, perform ablution again on the stage? How, O lord, the drama has come (lit. dropped) down to the earth from heaven? Why have your descendants been known as Śūdras?

Bharata’s reply

10. Bharata said, “I shall tell you, O men of excellent vows, the inner meaning of (lit. confidential) the story about the Preliminaries. Listen it properly.

The Preliminaries and their uses

11. The Preliminaries have been described by me in continuation of whatever I have said [earlier] about the destruction of obstacles.

12-16. Just as the body is covered with armours for warding off missiles, so the sins of all kinds are checked by Homa. After I have thus destroyed the obstacles and warded off sins by worshipping the gods with Japa, Homa, words of adoration and blessing, and songs about their deeds and attitude, the playing of all musical instruments and the [sweet] sound of [other] songs [as well], they (the gods) being pleased with the singing of the praise said, ‘We are exceedingly delighted with this performance of yours; as it pleases the people after pleasing the gods and the Asuras, this performance will be called the Benediction’.

17. The region which is resounded with music [vocal and instrumental] and in which speech with charming intonation can be heard (lit. arise) will destroy [all] evils and will bring prosperity.

18. As far as the space is filled with the sound of musical instruments, so far there will stay there no Rākṣasas or leaders (vīraṇa) of Vighnaś.

19. In marriages of all kinds and the sacrifices performed

---

1 See NŚ. V. 80-83. ² K. omits lb but reads 9b which is lacking in C. ¹ See NŚ. V. 12-16 (C.17-20; K.18-17). ³ śarīrāvāraṇam, K. sarīrāvaraṇam, C. ⁴ śastrāṇām, K. (śastrāṇām, C.). ⁵ hulenaiva, K. (samtenaiva, C. ⁴ gītasvanena ca, K. gītasvanān ca, C.). ¹⁷ (C.21; K.18). ¹⁸ (C.22; K.19). ¹ Read 16b as न सुरक्षिति विद्यति न ग विधिविनाशकः न वा सुरक्षिति विद्यति सं देवविनाशकः K., सङ्करर्या ग्याग्य प्रक्षिपः न ग विधिविनाशकः, C. ¹⁹ (C.23; K.20). ¹ विधवा ca vīdūhe ca,
for the prosperity of the king, the ferocious beings will make themselves scarce on hearing the sound of the Benediction.

20. The instrumental music, or the drama\(^1\) or the songs together with the instrumental music, will be equal [in importance] to the exposition of the Vedic hymns\(^2\).

21. I have heard from the god of gods (Indra)\(^1\) and afterwards from Śaṅkara (Śiva) that music [vocal and instrumental] is superior to a bath [in the Ganges] or Jāpas for a thousand times\(^2\).

22. The places in which there occur the instrumental music and dramatic performance\(^1\), or the song and instrumental music, will surely\(^2\) never know any kind of inauspicious happening.

23. Thus I have devised the Preliminaries as a ceremony of adoration for worshipping the deities with laudatory verses and Mantras\(^1\).

The ablution of the Director on the stage

24. As the head\(^1\) becomes fatigued by bowing on the stage, the rule permits the Director to bathe it with water\(^2\).

25. After the ablution the Director should worship the Jārjara with Mantras. All this has been said in connexion of the Preliminaries\(^1\). This is the reason for the ablution.

---

20 (C.24; K.21). \(^1\) nāyam, K. (śruti, C.).
2 This seems to show that in the beginning, the early Vedic people were not favourably disposed to the dramatic performance. For more on this see the Introduction.

21 (C.25; K.22). \(^1\) Cf. 20 note. \(^2\) above.
2 This seems to indicate that not only the early Vedic people who cared little for the asceticism, but other religious sects as well, did not favour the dramatic performance. This may be the reason to put the theatrical performances which included music above the religious practices of such sects. For more about this see the Introduction.

22 (C.26; K.23). \(^1\) Read utodyānāyās c. for nāyāsakaśa, C.
2 nāyasya, K.
2 Read niśayam for nīcayatn, C; niśakam, K.

23 (C.27; K.24). \(^1\) This seems to show that the drama was also connected with a particular religious cult\(^2\).

24 (C.28a; K.25). \(^1\) Read śiras tu for śrasat, C; śram tu, K.
2 C. omits 34b. See below 25 note.

25 (K.26). \(^1\) C. omits this. See Ns. V. 10-83.
26. I shall now tell you in detail how the drama came (lit. dropped down) to the earth from Heaven, for I am unable to withhold anything from you.  

Bharata's sons offended the sages by caricature

27-29. All these sons of mine being intoxicated with [the knowledge of] the Nātyaveda tired the entire people with the Prahasanas connected with laughter. In course of time they devised a play (lit. art) which treated the indulgence in vulgar passions. And by them was produced in the assembly of the people a drama (lit. poem) which was unacceptable, full of wicked deeds, inspirer of vulgar passions, cruel, unworthy of any praise and in which they caricatured the sages by means of buffoonery (bhāṇḍa).

The sages curse Bharata's sons

30-31. On hearing this, the sages were extremely angry and excited, and spoke to them (sons of Bharata) burning them as it were [with their words], 'O Brahmins, it is not proper that we should be thus caricatured. What is this insult [for], and what is your intention?

32. As, due to pride in the knowledge [of the drama] you have resorted to arrogance (avāmaya) your evil knowledge will get destroyed.
33. In the community of the sages and Brahmins, or in meeting them you will appear as being no followers of the Vedas and will attain the conduct of the Śūdras.

34. You will become mere Śūdras, and attain their functions, and those to be born in your line will be Śūdras [too].

35. Those actors (nārākha) who are already born in your line will be Śūdras, and so will be those together with their women, boys and young men, who associate with them.

36. The gods on learning the origin of the curse on my sons became anxious and went to the sages.

Gods intercede in favour of Bharata’s sons

37. Then the gods with Śakra (Indra) as their leader said that, afflicted with this misery the drama would perish¹.

38. The sages said in reply that the drama would not perish, but the remaining portion only of their curse will take effect in its entirety.

Bharata’s sons approach their father

39-40. On hearing these words of the very spirited sages, my sons¹ became [very] sad and with a desire to defend themselves approached me in anger and said, ‘We have been ruined by you, for the fault of the drama we have been endowed with the character of Śūdras’.

Bharata pacifies them

41-42. For their consolation I said, ‘Do not to be sorry for it; the rule that words of the sages will never prove untrue, has indeed been made by Fate (prānta); so you should not turn to the destruction [of the art]. These are my words of consolation.

43. Know this dramatic art that has been described

---

¹ K. omits 34a.

1 Read 37b as follows: दृष्टीं दुःखबुद्धि साध्योंगतस्वप्नम्.

38 (C. 40; K. 38b-39a).

39-40 (C. 41-42; K. 39b-41a). ¹ Read satāḥ, for surīḥ, C. and tataḥ, K.

41-42 (C. 43-44; K. 41b-42).

43 (C. 45; K. 43).
by Brahmān [himself], and teach it to your disciples and others through its application.

44. Do not destroy this drama which has been devised with great difficulty and which includes great things, brings great merit and has its origin in the Aṅgas and the Upāṅgas of the Vedas.

45. After holding the dramatic performance according to the rules which I heard from the Apsarasas, you all are to undergo a purificatory ceremony (prāṇaśīlā).

Nahuṣa invites divine artists to the earth.

46. In course of time a king named Nahuṣa attained the kingdom of Heaven through his piety, intelligence and prowess.

47. He then governed the kingdom and felt a divine desire. And on seeing the musical performance (prāṇādvarna) and the drama [of the gods] he became anxious [about these].

48. He thought within himself how the dramatic performance by the gods should take place in his house [on the earth].

49. Then for such a performance the king said to the gods with folded palms: ‘Let the drama [produced] by the Apsarasas be performed in our house (i.e. on the earth).’

Gods rejected the request

50. But in reply, the gods with Bṛhaspati as their leader said to him: The meeting of divine damsels and mortals has not been prescribed [anywhere].

51. As you are the lord of Heaven you should be given an advice which is both good and pleasant. Let the master [of the dramatic art] go there (i.e. at your place) and please you.'

44 (C.46; K.44). 1 Cf. above 20 notes.
45 (C.47; K.45). 1 Emend 45a as follows: अनुसरणम् सत्वविन मधात्तलं मन्त्र गुप्तम्.
46 (C.48; K.XXXXVII.1b-2a). 1 Nahuṣa mentioned in the Ṛgveda, Rām., Mbh. and several Purāṇas, was possibly an historical person. See J.K. sub voce. 2 K. reads one fragmentary hemistich before this.
47 (C.49; K.XXXXVII.2b-3a).
48 (C.50; K.XXXXVII.3b-4a). 1 Read सोविनात सुन्न for सोविनात, C. inācātātva, C. inācātātva, K. 2 Read bhaved demagnisah kṛtah for bhaved His sasambharmah, C. bhaved divi deva eva san. K.
50 (C.52; K.XXXXVII.5b-6a). 51 (C.53; K.XXXXVII.6b-7a).
52. Then the king with folded palms said to me, 
'O revered sir, I should like to see this dramatic performance
established on the earth.

53. I have been promised earlier the help of your profes-
sional service (ācāryakā). O the best of Brahmins, I have now
got it directly (vyaktabhāvārāyam kṛtvā).

Urvāśī and the mundane drama

54. In the house of my grandfather (Pururavas) this
[drama] together with his work has been described by Urvāśī
to the members of the harem.

55. But when the members of the harem were distressed
by the death of the king who turned mad due to her disappearance
from the earth, this (dramatic art) was lost.

56. I wish this again to be openly produced on the earth,
so that the sacrifices to be done on different days of the moon
(tithi) may be rendered auspicious and happy.

57. Hence plays (bandha, lit. composition) relating to
many characters produced in my house through the graceful move-
ments of women, will add to your fame.'

Bharata grants the request and sends his sons to the earth

58-61. 'Let this be so' said I then [in reply] to Nahuṣa
the king, and I called my sons along with the gods in a spirit
of conciliation and said to them:

'This king Nahuṣa begs us with folded palms that you
may go down with your associates to the earth to produce the
drama there. The drama being properly produced there, I
shall make an end of your curse and you will no longer be
deepsed by Brahmins and kings. So go down to the earth to

52 (C.54; K.XXXVII.7b-8a).
53 (C.55; K.XXXVII.8b-9a). ¹ Read 53a as follows: दृविकार्तस् देव
नस्ति त्रिप्रज्ञानम्.
54 (C.56; K.XXXVII.9b-10a).
55 (C.57; K.XXXVII.10b-11a). ¹ See Viṣṇu P. IV. 6, 7. Ref, JK.
56 (C.58; K.XXXXVII.11b-12a).
57 (C.59; K.XXXVII.12b-13a).
58-61 (C.60-63; K.XXXXVII.13b-17a).
produce dramas there, [for] I shall not be able to disregard the words of this earthly king.

**Kohala is the successor of Bharata**

62-63. For us and for Nahuṣa, the self-born one (Brahman) has spoken in brief on the dramatic art which depends on his own instruction. The rest will be uttered by Kohala¹ in his supplementary treatise (uttara-tāntra) which consists of the application [of the rules], the Memorial Verses (kārikā) and the Etymologies (nirukta).

64. This Śāstra for the purpose of diversion (lit. toy) has been established by me in Heaven with the help of the Apsarasas and the sages Śvāti and Nārada.

**Bharata's sons come down to the earth**

65. Then, O Brahmins, they went down to the earth in the house of Nahuṣa and devised in due order the production of various plays with the help of women.

66. Then they, my sons, begot progeny in women of the earth and devised for them more dramas (lit. creation) on various themes.

67. After begetting sons and devising plays in due order they were permitted to return again to Heaven.

68. Thus through a curse the dramatic performance has been brought down to the earth, and the future generation of the dramatic artists (bharata) came into being.

**Kohala and his associates**

69-70. Kohala Vaṭṣya¹, Śāṇḍilya², Dhūrtila (Duttīlita)³ and others stayed in the earth for sometime as mortals and put into practice this Śāstra which augments the intellect of men, deals with the deeds of the Three Worlds and is an epitome of all other Śāstras.

---

¹ See the Introduction.
² See the Introduction.
³ See the Introduction.
Value of the Nāṭyaśāstra

71-73. He who always hears the reading of this [Śāstra] which is auspicious, sportful, originating from Brahmān’s mouth, very holy, pure, good, destructive of sins, and who puts this into practice or witnesses the performance [of a drama] will attain the same [blessed] goal which the masters of the Vedic path and the masters of the Vedic lore, the performers of sacrifices or the givers of gifts, will [in the end] attain.

Value of the dramatic show

74. Of all the duties of the king, this has been proclaimed as possessing the best result (mahāphala). For of all kinds of gifts, a free gift of the [dramatic] show [to people] has been most praised.

75. The gods are never so pleased on being worshipped with the scents and garlands as they are delighted with the performance of dramas.

76. The man who properly attends the performance of music gāudhārva or dramas will [after his death] attain the happy and meritorious path in the company of the Brahmānic sages.

The popular practice supplements dramatic rules

77. Thus many practices sanctioned by the Śāstra have been described in connexion with the performance of dramas. Whatever remains unmentioned should be included into practice by experts from an observation (lit. imitation) of people (i.e. their usage).

The Final Benediction

What more should I say? Let the earth for all time be free from diseases. Let there be peace to cows and to Brahmans, and let the king give protection to this entire earth.

Here the ends Chapter XXXVI of Bharata’s Nāṭyaśāstra, which treats of the Descent of Drama on the Earth.

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS

Page XLVI  line last Read 'depends'
'' XLVIII  14  'XXVII. 63-69'
'' LXIV   14  'Nātyaśāstra'
'' LXXII  16  'corresponding'
''          3 (from the bottom) Read 'about' after 'doubt', and
             'of' for 'are'
'' LXXIII  3 Read 'summcd'

Page 1 line 13 Read 'Pitāmaha' for 'Pitmāha'
'' 3  26  'Brāhmaṇa' for 'Brāmaṇa'
'' 5  14 Omit the fullstop after 'ordered'
'' 6  3 (from the bottom) Read SD. (294)
'' 7  2 Read 'Bhayānaka' for 'Bhyānaka'
'' 7  15  'Need of the Graceful Style'
'' 8  4  'for practising the Graceful Style'
'' 9  4 (from the bottom) Read 'case-endings' for 'nominal'
'' 11  13 Read 'said' for 'saids'
'' 14  20  'of the gods' for 'of the Daityas'
'' 16  9 (from the bottom) Read 'reads one' for 'readson'
'' 19  7 Read architect for 'architect'
'' 19  12  (avara) for (avara)
'' 19  23 Omit 'According' from here and put it before 'to
             Ag.'s' in the next line.
'' 19  25 Read 'medium' after (iv)
'' 27  2 (from the bottom) Carry 'and' after raṅgapālha
'' 29  12 (   ) Read राजसिक् for राजसिक्
'' 31  17 Put 1 at the end of the line.
'' 3 (from the bottom) Read B. 102b for 1026.
'' 34  10 (   ) Read 'rather' for 'very'
'' 9 (   ) Add the following: Yājñavalkya
             who has been assigned to the 400 A.C. by Jolly,
             mentions Gaṇesā, (See Hindu Law and Customs,
             pp. 42-44)
'' 4 (from the bottom) Read samprayujya
'' 35  17 Read '18-20' for '18'.
'' 35  2 (from the bottom) Omit See 'diagram 1.'
'' 37  12 Put a comma after 'sweet meats'
'' 40  20 'Then an' for 'Then a'.
'' 57  23 Omit 'Vaktra' after 'Āviddha' (for 'āviddha')
             28 Put 'krama' after 'Śāri' last. Omit 'Defined
             nowhere in the NS.'
Page 58 line 3 (from the bottom) Read "Talāgra".

"67", 6 ("", "") Read Hariavāṇa for Hraivāṇa.

"73", 12 ("", "") Read (sukumāra) for (sukmāra).

"76", 2 ("", "") Put *(p.194)* after HīP. and 'See also' before SR. and Read परिपक्व for परिपक्व.

"82", 4 (from the bottom) Add after 'drama' the following:

Sitar probably is developed from the citra (vīṇā).

"86", 6 (from the bottom) Put 2 before 'B. reads'.

"97", 24 25 Read prayujya for prayujya.

"105", 7 Close the bracket after 'meaning'.

"108", 12 (from the bottom) Read 'family' for 'famiy'.

"9", ... Read 'traditional authority'.

"111", 9 Read 'Excessive' for 'Violent'.

"17", middling typo'.

"113", 1 'Sentiments'.

"118", 11 'bhavita' for 'bhimita'.

"119", 9 'Determinant' for 'Determinate'.

"127", 15 'Mouth' for 'Moto'.

"128", 18 'Intoxication' for 'fotoxication'.

"130", 5,6,12 Correct the misspelt 'Depression'.

"132", 18 Omit the comma after 'biting'.

"134", 14 Read prakrīti-nyasana.

"140", 9 (from the bottom) Insert 'and' after 'potsherdl'.

"141", 2 Read 'is' for 'ic'.

"142", 10 Omit the fullstop after 'mounts' and insert 'and'.

"143", 11 (from the bottom) read 'stage' for 'tage'.

"145", 10 (", ", ) Insert 'and' after 'sleeping'.

"146", 16 Read 'Sentiment'.

17, 'depend' for 'depends'.

"150", 11 चहर्वस्त for चहर्वस्ति.

"152", 10 Omit '[slightly]' and insert 'up' after 'raised'.

"164", 5 (from the bottom) Read पर्या (full).

"165", 6, 18 Read 'lip' for 'lips'.

"168", 10 Add the following after 'will' [enhance the charm of the night].

"173", 13 Read 'With' after the fullstop.

"174", 7 (from the bottom) shift 'from' before 'Kunžala'.

", 2 (", ", ) Read 'André et'.

"224", 11 (", ", ) Read वक्षीमन्दिरस्थि.

", 2 (", ", ) kañcūkim.

"230", 16 Read 'gait of women'.

"240", 17 'distant place'.
Page 248 line 17  "ākhyāta.

253 19  "kālavī" for kālayānā.

255 14  "combines" for combine.

272 17  "bhuhumānā" for bhuhumāna.

277 19  "gaccheta" for gaccheta.

284 5  "shoulders" for shoulders.

4 (from the bottom) Read before this as follows : For long ears as signs of beauty see the Buddha images of the Mathura school belonging to 100 B.C. onwards.

287 4 (from the bottom) Read 'Halāyudha's.

294 9 Read 'fall upon' for 'rise from'

298 13  "jugglers" for juggler's

330 at the bottom. Add after notes the following. See Introduction, section VIII para 4.

331 18 Read 'leaders'.

333 5 (from the bottom) Read 'does not change' for 'changes'

335 21 Read āyuṣman āyuṣman.

336 7  'extant' for 'extent'

337 (at the bottom) Read before 'Ex.' the following Dusyanta's charioteer addressing him (śak. 1.)

338 2 (from the bottom) Add the following after the fullstop:

Magadhan prince is referred to as bhaddamuhā by the female ascetic in Svapna. i. 7. 20. For the use of bhaddamuhā in inscriptions see Select Inscriptions, no. 72. and Keith, Skt. Drama. p. 69.

342 11 Read 'may also' for 'are to'

12 Omit 'mistress (bhatis) and'.

345 6 (from the bottom) Read 'Jayasena' for Jayasena.

351 6 (from the bottom) Read 'na mama' for nāma ma.'

381 7 Read 'a Supporting' for an 'Explanatory'.

11 (from the bottom) Read 'a supporting' for 'an Explanatory'.

362 4 Read 'those' for 'these'.

366 21 Add after 'available' the following : 'unless the Pañcarātra is to be taken as such' (See ID. p. 52).

368 13 Insert 'of' after 'use'.

369 13 (from the bottom) Read 'kara' for 'kara' at the end of the line.

370 23 "basis" for basis.

7 (from the bottom) Insert after 'men' the following : 'unless Kara is also to be taken as such (See ID. p. 52).
line up to the bottom "diptakāvyarasayomiḥ.
(Śrīśakya Śrībhadrācārya: द्य अवधे दोभि: काव्यमयं Ag.)

Page 388

12 (from the bottom) Omit 'but parts of scenes'.
9 ( ) Read viṣkambhakāḥ sanskṛtāḥ.
5 ( ) Add the following: 'Also cf. NŚ. XX. 38.

404
19 Read 'Kathodgāتا'.
408 line 18 Read 'the Theme' for 'the Various Feelings'.
411
14 'samghātyaka'.
420
10 Gauḍa for Gauḍa
20 Ulekhyā
21 " Kumbhipadaκa, Avarta
425
21 " non-Aryans
25 " Add 'See NŚ. XVIII 44 note'
4 (from the bottom) Read B. C. for A. C.
431
26 line the bottom at Read 'Jātāmuktiā'.
431
7 (from the bottom) Add as following:
The Uṣṭiṣa of the Buddha images may probably be an imitation of the crown of matted hair.

489
13 Read 'their lover' for 'her lover'
486
14 " women's heart, for 'woman's heart'
22 " self-esteem' for 'self-esteem'
488
19,20 " 'quaternary'
419
8 (from the bottom) Read 'known' for 'known'
491
2 ( ) Add after the fullstop the following:
The husband's conjugal right of punishment such as blows with a chord or rod, is often referred to in the Smṛti literature (Manu, 8, 209f., Śaṅkha, 4. 16 etc.) See Jolly, Hindu Law and Customs, p. 145, see also Kaṇṭhilya, III. 3.

493
5 'one' after 'time'
7 (from the bottom) Read 'abhinayasya'.
502
21 Read 'great' for 'great'.
508
11 '111-112' for '110-111'.
15 '112-113 for 111-112,'
521
19 Put 'of' before 'Time'.

Note: The content above is a mixture of Sanskrit and English, with various instructions and corrections to the text.